



Class _____

Book _____

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT



20258
307-A

6



MONT SAINT-MICHEL

HEATH'S MODERN LANGUAGE SERIES

FRASER · SQUAIR · CARNAHAN

STANDARD FRENCH GRAMMAR

By

W. H. FRASER & J. SQUAIR

and

DAVID HOBART CARNAHAN

*Professor of Romance Languages
University of Illinois*

D · C · HEATH · AND · COMPANY

BOSTON NEW YORK CHICAGO LONDON

ATLANTA SAN FRANCISCO DALLAS

PC 2111
F883

COPYRIGHT, 1931,
BY D. C. HEATH AND COMPANY

No part of the material covered by this
copyright may be reproduced in any form
without written permission of the publisher.

3 H 1



PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

SEP 10 1931
©C1A 41550

PREFACE

THE principal aim of Part I of this book is to present a concise treatment of the essentials of French grammar in a form especially adapted to early reading.

The excellent choice of grammatical material provided by the original authors has been retained; but a number of the rules have been reworded, and new illustrative sentences have been supplied. The order of the paragraphs has been somewhat changed to allow earlier treatment of the personal pronouns and verbs.

Emphasis has been laid on the teaching of the more common irregular verbs, twenty-five of them being introduced as an intrinsic part of the grammatical work. The study of the verb begins with the very first lesson. Experience has shown that students who are accustomed early to verb study have much less difficulty later with the irregular verbs.

Each lesson has been made flexible to meet the requirements of different classes. Abundant exercises have been provided for those teachers who wish to give full time to practice in reading, speaking, and writing French. Certain parts of each lesson, however, may be omitted by the teachers who wish to cover the ground more rapidly. Either Section C or Section D of any lesson, or parts of them, may be omitted without affecting the completeness of the lesson. With mature classes, the five Review Lessons may be omitted or used for test examinations. Similarly, the intensive drill work on the irregular verbs in Lesson XXIX and XL may be omitted or postponed until later.

To meet the varying needs of classes, Lesson XXIV (the Past Definite), which prepares for early formal reading, has been made an independent unit which can be given earlier or later, as desired.

The vocabulary in the drill exercises has been purposely kept small to allow the student to concentrate his efforts on grammatical constructions instead of on words. By the repeated use of the same

words he obtains active command of a small, practical vocabulary. Opportunity to build up a good passive vocabulary is furnished by special reading sections placed at the end of each lesson.

Since new expressions are best retained in the memory when connected with familiar events, a background of school life has been provided for the two sections, A and B, devoted to connected reading and writing. The dialogue form has been freely used because it allows greater flexibility in the practice of gender, person, and number.

To facilitate "early reading," a special section, "E", *Practice in Rapid Reading*, is given at the end of each lesson. This section is not an organic part of the work and should not be used for grammatical study. The first twenty-three of these reading sections deal with Paris while the others describe a trip around France. In addition to furnishing material for the early development of reading ability, they supply the student, in an informal manner, with interesting facts regarding Paris and France. Many of the names and places mentioned will be met later by the student in his historical and literary readings. Abundant illustrations have been furnished for these sections, including maps of Paris and France.

The ten lessons entitled *Reading Selections* (Exercises XLI to L) will be found useful for easy reading material in French as well as for drill in elementary grammar particularly in the regular and irregular verb forms.

In this edition new exercises have been provided for Part II, based on the comprehensive grammatical section, long recognized as a valuable feature of the original book. Thus, this edition may be used, not only as a reference grammar, but also for study and drill in advanced grammar. The exercises furnish a cumulative presentation of grammar which introduces the various parts of speech, not as isolated words, but in groups expressing complete thought. The general grammatical topic to be discussed is placed at the head of each exercise, together with the paragraph numbers of the rules upon which the exercise is based.

The book, as now constituted, presents to the students of French an opportunity for the complete study of French grammar, elementary and advanced.

The author wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness in the preparation of Part I to Professor A. G. Williams of Atlantic University, for helpful suggestions, and to Mme Maria Tastevin Miller, formerly of Vassar College, now of the Lycée Victor Hugo, Paris, and to Mlle Georgette Delvoye, licenciée de l'Université de Paris, for their valuable aid in the preparation of the French exercises. The new exercises of Part II are entirely the work of Mr. John Alexander of the University of Illinois, assisted by Mlle Suzanne Kissel of the same university.

D. H. C.

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS

June, 1931

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PHONETIC INTRODUCTION	3
TABLE OF FRENCH LETTERS, SYMBOLS, AND SOUNDS . .	16
EXERCISE IN PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION	21
CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS	23

PART I

LESSON

I. Definite Article. Gender. Some Forms of avoir, être	27
LA FAMILLE MELVIN EN FRANCE	
II. Indefinite Article. Present Indicative of avoir . Affirmative. Interrogative. Some Forms of être	29
ERNEST ÉTUDIE LA GÉOGRAPHIE	
III. Some Possessive Adjectives. Possession. Pres- ent Indicative of être . Affirmative. Interrog- ative	34
LES LIMITES DE LA FRANCE	
IV. Some Personal Pronoun Objects. Negation. Present Indicative of avoir, être . Negative. Negative-Interrogative	38
LES FLEUVES ET LES MONTAGNES	
REVIEW LESSON No. 1 (I-IV)	42
V. Regular Conjugations. Infinitive. Present Indicative of donner . Affirmative. Inter- rogative. Negative. Negative-Interrogative. Imperative of donner	43
LE PALAIS ET LE JARDIN DU LUXEMBOURG	

LESSON	PAGE
VI. Plural Forms. Personal Pronouns le, la, les with Affirmative Imperative. Possessive Adjectives (<i>complete</i>)	47
LA PLACE DE LA CONCORDE	
VII. Contractions. Partitive Construction. Present Indicative and Imperative of finir . .	51
LES CHAMPS-ÉLYSÉES	
VIII. Interrogation. Interrogative Pronoun que? Present Indicative and Imperative of vendre	56
L'ARC DE TRIOMPHE. LE BOIS DE BOULOGNE	
IX. Past Participles of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être . Past Indefinite. Word Order in Compound Tenses. Use of Past Indefinite. Demonstrative Adjectives	60
LE MÉTRO	
REVIEW LESSON No. 2 (V-IX)	65
X. Plural Forms (<i>continued</i>). Contractions (<i>continued</i>)	66
L'ÎLE DE LA CITÉ. LA CONCIERGERIE	
XI. Agreement of Past Participle. Some Relatives. Use of y	71
LE PALAIS DE JUSTICE. LA SAINTE-CHAPELLE	
XII. Feminine of Adjectives. Irregularities. Position of Adjectives. Interrogative Adjectives	75
NOTRE-DAME DE PARIS	
XIII. General Nouns. On . Pronoun Objects lui, leur . Present Indicative and Imperative of aller .	81
LE LOUVRE	
XIV. Verbs Conjugated with être	85
L'INTÉRIEUR DU LOUVRE	

LESSON	PAGE
XV. Personal Pronoun Objects (<i>continued</i>). Position. Present Indicative and Imperative of faire	89
LES TUILERIES	
XVI. Position of Pronoun Objects with Affirmative Imperative. Imperatives of avoir, être . Present Indicative and Imperative of dire	94
LES ÉGOUTS	
XVII. Reflexive Verbs. Present Indicative. Past Indefinite. Agreement of Past Participle. Definite Article for Possessive Adjective. Some Orthographic Changes	98
LES CATACOMBES	
XVIII. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. Uses. Ce for il(s), elle(s) . Orthographic Changes (<i>continued</i>)	103
L'HÔTEL DES INVALIDES. LE TOMBEAU DE NAPOLEON	
REVIEW LESSON No. 3 (X-XVIII).	110
XIX. Partitives (<i>continued</i>). Idioms with avoir . Tout	111
LE MUSÉE DE L'ARMÉE. LA TOUR EIFFEL	
XX. Comparison of Adjectives. Comparison of Adverbs. Present Indicative of pouvoir . . .	116
LE QUARTIER LATIN. L'UNIVERSITÉ DE PARIS. LA CITÉ UNIVERSITAIRE	
XXI. Imperfect Indicative of donner, finir, vendre . First Person Singular Imperfect Indicative of aller, avoir, commencer, dire, être, faire, manger, pouvoir . Use of Imperfect	122
LA SEINE ET SAINT-CLOUD	
XXII. Future Indicative of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être . Future Indicative of Irregular	

LESSON	PAGE
Verbs aller, faire, dire, pouvoir. Use of Future	127
LE SPORT EN FRANCE	
XXIII. Impersonal Verbs. Pleuvoir. Falloir	132
VERSAILLES. LA FÊTE NATIONALE	
XXIV. Past Definite of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être. Past Definite of Irregular Verbs aller, dire, faire, pouvoir, venir, falloir, pleuvoir. Use of Past Definite	138
HISTOIRE DU CHEVALIER BAYARD	
XXV. The Infinitive. Use. Present Participle. Present Participle of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être. Agreement of Present Participle	141
LETTRE D'ERNEST À JEAN BERNARD	
XXVI. Present Subjunctive of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être. Use of Subjunctive. Tense Sequence. Infinitive instead of Subjunctive	148
LA NORMANDIE	
XXVII. Use of Subjunctive (<i>continued</i>). Present Sub- junctive of aller, dire, faire, falloir, pleuvoir, pouvoir	153
LA BRETAGNE	
XXVIII. Conditional of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être. Use of Conditional. Future and Con- ditional of faire. Conditional of aller, dire, pouvoir, falloir, pleuvoir	159
LA TOURAINE	
XXIX. Formation of Tenses. Principal Parts. Princi- pal Parts of aller, avoir, dire, être, faire, falloir, pleuvoir, pouvoir	164
L'Auvergne (Le Massif Central)	
REVIEW LESSON. No. 4 (XIX-XXIX) . . .	172

LESSON	PAGE
XXX. Use of Definite Article. Synopses of partir, venir	173
LE BASSIN D'AQUITAINE	
XXXI. Possessive Pronouns. Agreement. Use. Synopses of savoir, vouloir	179
LES PYRÉNÉES	
XXXII. Demonstrative Pronouns. Use. Synopses of envoyer, voir	186
LE LANGUEDOC	
XXXIII. Relative Pronouns. Agreement. Use. Synopses of écrire, lire	192
LA PROVENCE ET LA RIVIERA	
XXXIV. Interrogative Pronouns. Use. Synopses of boire, croire	199
LES ALPES	
XXXV. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns. Summary of Common Negative Forms. Synopsis of connaître	206
LYON ET LA BOURGOGNE	
XXXVI. Cardinal Numbers. Synopses of mettre, prendre	213
L'ALSACE	
XXXVII. Ordinal Numbers. Dates. Titles. Days. Months. Seasons. Idioms of Date and Age. Synopses of naître, mourir	220
LA LORRAINE	
XXXVIII. Fractions. Time of Day. Synopses of devoir, recevoir . Use of devoir	227
LA CHAMPAGNE	
XXXIX. Imperfect Subjunctive of donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être . Tense Sequence (<i>continued</i>). First Person Singular Imperfect Subjunctive of aller, boire, connaître, croire, devoir, dire,	

LESSON	PAGE
écrire, envoyer, faire, falloir, lire, mettre, mourir, naître, ouvrir, partir, pleuvoir, pouvoir, prendre, recevoir, rire, savoir, venir, voir, vouloir. Synopses of ouvrir, rire . .	234
LA RÉGION DU NORD	
REVIEW LESSON No. 5 (XXX-XXXIX) . .	240
XL. EXERCISES ON TENSE FORMATION. . . .	243
READING SELECTIONS	
XLI. LA THÉIÈRE DU MATELOT	246
XLII. L'ARABE ET LES PERLES	247
XLIII. LE PAYSAN ET LES ÉPIS DE BLÉ	248
XLIV. LE TRÉSOR DU LABOUREUR	250
XLV. LOUIS XIV ET JEAN BART	251
XLVI. LA FOURMI ET LE BRIN D'HERBE	253
XLVII. M. LAFFITTE ET L'ÉPINGLE	255
XLVIII. LE SIFFLET DE BENJAMIN FRANKLIN . .	257
XLIX. HENRI IV ET LE PAYSAN	259
L. THOMAS ET LES CERISES	261

PART II

THE VERB.	263
THE NOUN	354
THE ARTICLE	367
THE ADJECTIVE	381
THE PRONOUN	396
THE ADVERB	436
THE NUMERAL	448
THE PREPOSITION	455
THE CONJUNCTION	465
THE INTERJECTION	468

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	470
EXERCISES ON PART II	471
The Correlation of Tenses	471
Orthographical Peculiarities	474
Irregular Verbs	475
Use of Auxiliary Verbs	481
Use of Verb Phrases	482
Agreement of Verb and Subject	485
Position of Subject	486
The Passive Voice	487
The Reflexive Verb	488
The Impersonal Verb	488
The Indicative	490
The Subjunctive	493
The Conditional	495
The Infinitive	496
The Present Participle	500
Government of Verbs	502
The Noun	503
The Article	504
The Adjective	508
The Personal Pronoun	510
Possessive Adjectives and Pronouns	515
Demonstrative Adjectives and Pronouns	516
Interrogative Adjectives and Pronouns	518
The Relative Pronouns	519
Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns	521
The Adverb	521
The Numeral	523
The Preposition	524
Conjunctions and Interjections	525
VOCABULARIES:	
French-English	529
English-French	572
INDEX	607
APPENDIX: Tolérances	621

STANDARD
FRENCH GRAMMAR

PART ONE
BRIEF FRENCH GRAMMAR

PHONETIC INTRODUCTION

1. General Distinctions. The pronunciation will be explained, as far as possible, by comparison with English sounds, but it must never be forgotten that the sounds of two languages rarely correspond. Important general distinctions between English and French are the following:

1. English has strong stress (§ 7) and comparatively weak action of the organs in articulation.

2. French has weak stress, while the action of the organs in articulation is very energetic.

3. Hence, French sounds, both vowels and consonants, are almost all 'narrow,' *i.e.*, uttered with tenseness of the organs concerned in their articulation. (To understand 'narrow' and 'wide,' compare the narrow sound of *i* in 'machine' with its wide sound in 'sit.')

4. Tongue and lip positions for French vowels are more definite, and more promptly taken, than in English. Lip-rounding (as in 'who,' 'no,' 'law') and lip-retraction (as in 'let,' 'hat') are much more definite and energetic in forming French vowels.

5. The tongue, both for vowels and consonants, is, in general, either farther advanced or farther retracted than in forming English sounds requiring tongue action.

6. English long vowels (like *a* in 'lady') shade off into other vowels (especially in the South of England), while all French vowels are free from this *off-glide*, and are uniform throughout their utterance.

7. The nasal vowels of French are foreign to standard English. They are formed by allowing the soft palate to hang freely, as in ordinary breathing, thus causing the air to escape through both nose and mouth at once. If, for example, the *a* of 'father' be uttered with the soft palate hanging freely, the resulting sound will be approximately that of the nasal [ã] in *tante* [tã:t]. The position of the soft palate in forming this sound may be readily observed

with a mirror. It must be carefully noted that there is absolutely no sound of **n**, **m**, or **ng**, in French nasal vowels, and hence that great care must be taken neither to raise the tongue nor close the lips until the sound is complete.

2. Sounds. The French language has thirty-seven sounds, exclusive of minor distinctions. French spelling, like that of English, is irregular and inconsistent. Hence, to avoid confusion in indicating the pronunciation, we shall employ a phonetic alphabet (that of the *Association Phonétique Internationale*), in which each sound is represented by its own symbol, and each symbol has but one sound.

3. Table of Symbols. In the following table, the examples are in ordinary orthography, the heavy type indicates the sounds which correspond to the symbols, and the phonetic transcription is given within brackets:

SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES	SYMBOLS	EXAMPLES
i	ni, vive [ni, vi:v]	b	beau, robe [bo, rɔb]
y	pu, muse [py, my:z]	d	dame, fade [dam, fad]
e	été [ete]	f	fort, neuf [fɔ:r, nœf]
ø	creux, creuse [krø, krø:z]	g	gant, dogue [gã, dɔg]
ə	le [lə]	h	aha! [a(h)a]
ɛ	près, père [prɛ, pɛ:r]	k	car, roc [kar, rɔk]
ẽ	fin, prince [fẽ, prẽ:s]	l	long, seul [lɔ̃, sœl]
œ	neuf, neuve [nœf, nœ:v]	m	mot, dame [mo, dam]
œ̃	un, humble [œ̃, œ̃:bl]	n	ni, âne [ni, a:n]
a	patte, part [pat, pa:r]	ɲ	agneau, digne [aɲo, diɲ]
ɑ	pas, passe [pa, pa:s]	p	pas, tape [pa, tap]
ã	tant, tante [tã, tã:t]	r	drap, par [dra, pa:r]
ɔ	note, tort [nɔt, tɔ:r]	s	si, pense [si, pã:s]
õ	rond, ronde [rõ, rõ:d]	ʃ	chou, lâche [ʃu, la:ʃ]
o	sot, chose [so, ʃo:z]	t	tas, patte [ta, pat]
u	tout, tour [tu, tu:r]	v	vin, cave [vẽ, ka:v]
j	viande [vjã:d]	z	zone, rose [zo:n, ro:z]
ɥ	lui [lɥi]	ʒ	je, rouge [ʒə, ru:ʒ]
w	oui [wi]	i	sign of length

4. The Alphabet. The letters of the alphabet, with their French names, are as follows:

a	a [ɑ]	j	ji [ʒi]	s	esse [ɛs]
b	bé [be]	k	ka [ka]	t	té [te]
c	cé [se]	l	elle [ɛl]	u	u [y]
d	dé [de]	m	emme [ɛm]	v	vé [ve]
e	é [e]	n	enne [ɛn]	w	double vé [dubløve]
f	effe [ɛf]	o	o [o]	x	iks [iks]
g	gé [ʒe]	p	pé [pe]	y	i grec [i grɛk]
h	ache [aʃ]	q	ku [ky]	z	zède [zɛd]
i	i [i]	r	erre [ɛr]		

NOTE. — These names are often all treated as masculines (**un** a, **un** h, etc.), but some treat **f**, **h**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **r**, **s**, as feminines (**une** h, **une** r, etc.).

5. Other Orthographic Signs. In addition to the letters of the alphabet, the following signs are used:

1. The acute accent ´ Fr. **accent aigu** [aksãtegý], *e.g.*, l'été, l'Écosse.

NOTE. — The word 'accent' does not denote stress; see § 7.

2. The grave accent ` Fr. **accent grave** [aksãgraiv], *e.g.*, voilà, père, où.

3. The circumflex accent ^ Fr. **accent circonflexe** [aksãsirkõ-fleks], *e.g.*, âne, tête, île, hôte, flûte.

4. The cedilla ¸ Fr. **cédille** [sedij], used under **c** to give it the sound of [s], before **a**, **o**, **u** (§ 17, 13), *e.g.*, façade, leçon, commençait.

5. The diæresis ¨ Fr. **tréma** [trema], shows that the vowel bearing it is divided in pronunciation from the preceding vowel, *e.g.*, Noël, naïf.

6. The apostrophe ' Fr. **apostrophe** [apɔstrɔf], shows omission of final vowel before initial vowel sound, *e.g.*, l'amie (= la amie), l'ami (= le ami), l'homme (= le homme), s'il (= si il), § 19.

7. The hyphen - Fr. **trait d'union** [trɛdynjɔ̃], used as in English.

6. Syllabication

1. A single consonant sound between vowel sounds, including the four nasalized vowels, always belongs to the following syllable.

Ex.: Ma-rie, in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té, bon-té, con-scién-cieu-s(e)-ment.

2. When the second of two consonant sounds is **l** or **r**, both usually belong to the following syllable, except **lr**, **rl** and a few more.

Ex.: ta-**bleau**, é-**cri-vain**, ap-**pli-quer**.

3. Other combinations of consonants representing two or more sounds are divided.

Ex.: par-**ler**, per-**dre**, es-**ca-lier**, sep-**tem-bre**.

N.B. — Great care should be taken to avoid the consonantal ending of syllables, so frequent in English. Compare French **ci-té**, **ta-bleau**, with English 'cit-y,' 'tab-leau.'

Parallel rules hold in script and print where division occurs.

7. Stress

'Stress' is the force with which a syllable is uttered as compared with other syllables in the same group.

In French, the syllables are uttered with almost equal force, a very slight stress falling on the last syllable of a word of two or more syllables, or, on the last but one, if the last vowel of the word is [ə].

Ex.: che-**val**, par-**ler**, par-**lai**, per-**dre**, cré-di-bi-li-**té** (compare the strong stress of English 'cred-i-bil-it-y').

NOTE. — In connected discourse the rule above stated varies considerably, but a full treatment of the subject would exceed the limits of an elementary work. The safest practice for the beginner is to pronounce all syllables with almost equal force. All vowels except [ə], see § 19, whether stressed or unstressed, are carefully sounded and not slurred over as in English.

8. Vowel Quantity. The most important general rules are:

1. Final vowel sounds (including nasals) are usually short, *e.g.*, **fini** [fini], **vie** [vi], **loue** [lu], **parlé** [parle], **rideau** [rido], **mais** [mɛ], **donner** [done], **enfant** [ãfã], **parlerons** [parl(ə)rõ].

2. Stressed vowels are long before the sounds [v], [z], [ʒ], [j], [r final], *e.g.*, **rive** [ri:v], **ruse** [ry:z], **rouge** [ru:ʒ], **feuille** [fœ:j], **faire** [fœ:r].

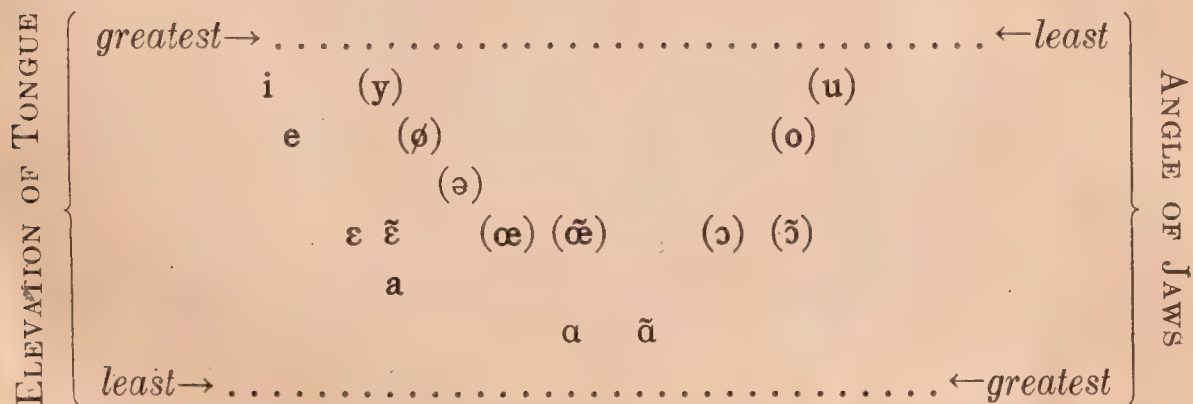
3. Of stressed vowels standing before other consonant sounds, nasals are long, *e.g.*, **prince** [prẽ:s]; [o], [ø], long, *e.g.*, **faute** [fo:t],

meule [mø:l]; [ɑ], long (almost always), *e.g.*, passe [pɑ:s]; [ɛ], long or short, *e.g.*, reine [rɛ:n], renne [rɛn]; other vowels regularly short, *e.g.*, cap [kap], poche [pɔʃ], coupe [kup], pipe [pip], seul [sœl], lune [lyn].

NOTE. — It is possible to distinguish also between ‘long’ and ‘half long’ vowels, but it has been thought best to omit, in an elementary work, the rules relating to this distinction, and to indicate only ‘long’ vowels in the transcriptions.

VOWELS

9. Tongue Position. The relative position of the tongue for the various vowels may be seen from the following diagram. Rounded vowels are enclosed in parentheses:



N.B. — In the following descriptions of sounds, the word ‘like’ means, of course, only ‘resembling,’ or ‘approximately like’ (§ 1). The examples given after the word ‘also’ show the less common orthographical equivalents.

10.

i, y

1. **i** — Like **i** in ‘machine’; the corners of the mouth are slightly drawn back (§ 1, 4); avoid the sound of **i** in ‘sit’; avoid ‘off-glide’ (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: ni [ni], vive [vi:v]; also, île [i:l], lyre [li:r].

2. **y** — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [i] above; very tense lip-rounding (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3). The sound may be best acquired either by

prolonging [i], and at the same time effecting the rounding, or by holding the lips rounded and taking the tongue position of [i].

Ex.: *pu* [py], *muse* [my:z]; also *fût* [fy], *il eut* [il y], *nous eûmes* [nuzym], *j'ai eu* [ʒe y].

11.

e, ø, ə

1. **e** — Like the first part of the sound of **a** in 'day,' but with the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: *été* [ete]; also, *parler* [parle], *donnai* [døne].

2. **ø** — Has no counterpart in English. The tongue position is practically the same as for [e], with rounding of the lips for **o** (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, as explained for [y] above, the lip-rounding with the [e] position.

Ex.: *creux* [krø], *creuse* [krø:z]; also, *bœufs* [bø], *yeux* [jø].

3. **ə** — Like English **e** in 'the man,' or **a** in 'Louisa,' but slightly rounded; best acquired by relaxing the tension of the organs required for the production of the [ø] sound.

Ex.: *le* [lə], *premier* [prəmje]; also, *monsieur* [məsjø], *faisant* [fəzɑ̃].

12.

ɛ, ɛ̃, œ, œ̃

1. **ɛ** — Like the sound of **e** in 'let,' with the mouth more definitely open and the lips more retracted (§ 1, 4); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: *près* [pre], *père* [pe:r]; also, *fête* [fɛ:t], *terre* [tɛ:r], *secret* [sɛkre], *parlais* [parlɛ], *paix* [pɛ], *reine* [rɛ:n].

NOTE. — The **e** of a stressed syllable followed by a syllable containing **e** mute has almost always this sound (orthographically denoted by *è*, *ê*, or *e* + double consonant), *e.g.*, *je mène* [mɛn], *tête* [tɛ:t], *chère* [ʃɛ:r], *j'appelle* [apɛl], *ancienne* [ɑ̃sjɛn]. This principle accounts for the apparent irregularities of certain verbs and adjectives.

2. **ɛ̃** — The [ɛ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: *fin* [fɛ̃], *prince* [prɛ̃:s]; also, *faim* [fɛ̃], *sainte* [sɛ̃:t], *Reims* [rɛ̃:s], *plein* [plɛ̃], *simple* [sɛ̃:pl], *symbole* [sɛ̃bɔl], *syntaxe* [sɛ̃taks], *viendrai* [vjɛ̃dre], *soin* [swɛ̃].

3. **œ** — Has no counterpart in English. It has practically the tongue position of [ɛ], combined with definite rounding of the lips for [ɔ]; narrow (§ 1, 3); best acquired by combining, with the [ɛ] position, the rounding described.

Ex.: *neuf* [nœf], *neuve* [nœ:v]; also, *cœur* [kœ:r], *œil* [œ:j], *orgueil* [ɔrgœ:j].

4. **œ̃** — The [œ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more open.

Ex.: *un* [œ̃], *humble* [œ̃:bl]; also, *à jeun* [aʒœ̃], *parfum* [parfœ̃].

13.

a, ɑ, ã

1. **a** — This sound is similar to but requires wider mouth opening than **a** of 'pat,' and lowering of the tongue, though with the point still touching the lower teeth; narrow (§ 1, 3). It is generally short, resembling English 'madam.'

Ex.: *patte* [pat], *part* [pa:r]; also, *là* [la], *femme* [fam], *moi* [mwa], *boîte* [bwa:t]; and, by exception, *parlâmes* [parlam], *parlâtes* [parlat], *parlât* [parla].

2. **ɑ** — Like **a** in 'father'; the mouth well open, the tongue lying flat, and so far retracted that it no longer touches the lower teeth; lips absolutely neutral, *i.e.*, neither rounded nor retracted; avoid especially rounding, as of **a** in 'fall.'

Ex.: *pas* [pa], *passe* [pa:s]; also, *pâte* [pa:t], *roi* [rwa], *poêle* [pwa:l].

3. **ã** — The [ɑ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7). (Written *an*, *am*, *en*, *em*.)

Ex.: *tant* [tã], *tante* [tã:t]; also, *lampe* [lã:p], *enfant* [ã:fã], *entre* [ã:tr], *membre* [mã:br].

14.

ɔ, ɔ̃, o

1. **ɔ** — Like the vowel in 'law,' but with definite bell-like rounding (§ 1, 4), avoid 'off-glide' to **u** (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: *note* [nɔt], *tort* [tɔ:r]; also *Paul* [pɔl], *album* [albɔm].

2. **ɔ̃** — The [ɔ] sound nasalized (§ 1, 7), but slightly more close.

Ex.: *rond* [rɔ̃], *ronde* [rɔ̃:d]; also *tomber* [tɔ̃be], *comte* [kɔ̃:t].

3. **o** — Like **o** in 'omen,' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to **u** (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: *sot* [so], *chose* [ʃo:z], *fosse* [fo:s]; also, *côté* [kote], *côte* [ko:t], *faute* [fo:t], *beauté* [bo:te].

15.

u

1. **u** — Like **oo** in 'pool' but with more protrusion and much tenser rounding of the lips (§ 1, 4); avoid 'off-glide' to **w** (§ 1, 6); narrow (§ 1, 3).

Ex.: *tout* [tu], *tour* [tu:r]; also, *goût* [gu], *août* [u].

CONSONANTS

16.

j, ɥ, w

When the sounds [i], [y], [u], § 10 and § 15, come before a vowel of stronger stress, they are pronounced with the tongue slightly closer to the palate, and hence assume a consonantal value, indicated by [j], [ɥ], [w], respectively. They are sometimes called semi-vowels.

1. **j** — Like very brief and narrow **y** in 'yes.'

Ex.: *viande* [vjɑ:d]; also, *yeux* [jø], *aïeul* [ajoel], *filles* [fi:j], *travailler* [travaje], *travail* [travaj], the last three being examples of *l mouillée*.

2. **ɥ** — Has no counterpart in English, but is similar to a **w** pronounced with the tongue pressed close to the lower teeth; may also be acquired by at first substituting [y] for it, and afterward increasing the speed of the utterance and the elevation of the tongue until it can be pronounced in the same syllable with the vowel which always follows.

Ex.: *lui* [lɥi], *huit* [ɥit]; also, *nuage* [nɥa:ʒ], *écuelle* [ekɥel].

3. **w** — Like very brief and narrow **w** in 'we,' 'west.' It is best, however, to proceed from the sound of [u] in the manner described for [ɥ] above.

Ex.: *oui* [wi]; also, *poids* [pwa], *tramway* [tramwe].

17. The remaining consonantal sounds can be sufficiently described by noting the differences between their mode of formation and that of the nearest English sounds (see § 1).

1. **b** — Like **b** in ‘*barb.*’

Ex.: *beau* [bo], *robe* [rɔb], *abbé* [abe].

2. **d** — Like **d** in ‘*did,*’ but with the tongue so far advanced that its point, or upper surface, forms a closure with the inner surface of the upper teeth and gums; or the point of the tongue may be thrust against the lower teeth, the upper surface forming a closure with the upper teeth and gums. It must be remembered that in forming English **d** (also **l**, **n**, **r**, **s**, **t**, **z**) the tongue touches at some little distance above the teeth (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: *dame* [dam], *fade* [fad], *addition* [adisjɔ̃].

3. **f** — Like **f** in ‘*fat.*’

Ex.: *fort* [fɔ:r], *neuf* [nœf], *difficile* [difisil].

4. **g** — Like **g** in ‘*go.*’

Ex.: *gant* [gɑ̃], *dogue* [dɔg], *guerre* [gɛ:r]; also, *second* [səgɔ̃].

5. **h** — In orthography the letter **h** is known as ‘**h** mute’ (Fr. *h* *muet* or *h* *muette*), or ‘**h** aspirate’ (Fr. *h* *aspiré* or *h* *aspirée*), according as it does, or does not, cause elision (§ 19). The learner may regard it, in either case, as absolutely silent.

Ex.: **h** mute in *l’homme* [lɔm], *l’histoire* [listwa:r], *l’héroïne* [lerɔin]; **h** aspirate in *le héros* [lə ero], *le hêtre* [lə ɛ:tr], *la haine* [la ɛ:n], *la hâte* [la ɑ:t], *je hais* [ʒə ɛ].

In hiatus, however, a sound resembling, but much weaker than, **h** in ‘*hat,*’ is permissible, and is actually used by many Frenchmen.

Ex.: *aha!* [aɦa], *le héros* [lə hero], *fléau* [fleɦo].

6. **k** — Like **k** in ‘*take*’; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: *car* [kar], *roc* [rɔk], *accorder* [akɔrde]; also, *chrétien* [kretjɛ̃], *cinq* [sɛ̃:k], *bouquet* [bukɛ̃], *acquérir* [akeri:r], *kilo* [kilo], *maxime* [maksim].

7. **l** — Like **l** in 'law,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: long [lɔ̃], seul [soɛl], aller [ale], mille [mil], village [vila:ʒ].
For soft *l* see § 16, 1.

8. **m** — Like **m** in 'man,' 'dumb.'

Ex.: mot [mo], dame [dam], homme [ɔm].

9. **n** — Like **n** in 'not,' 'man,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: ni [ni], âne [ɑ:n], donner [dɔne].

10. **ɲ** — Somewhat like **ny** in 'ban-yan,' except that [ɲ] is a single, not a double, sound, and is formed by pressing the middle of the tongue against the hard palate, the tip being usually thrust against the lower teeth.

Ex.: agneau [ano], digne [dip].

11. **p** — Like **p** in 'pan,' 'top'; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: pas [pa], tape [tap], appliquer [aplike].

12. **r** — Has no English counterpart. It is formed by trilling the tip of the tongue against the upper gums, or even against the upper teeth. This **r** is called in French *r linguale*. The tongue must, of course, be well advanced towards the teeth, and not retracted and turned upward, as in our **r** sound (§ 1, 5). The sound may be advantageously practised at first in combination with **d**, e.g., 'dry,' 'drip,' 'drop,' 'drum' (as in Scotch or Irish dialect), and afterwards in combinations in which it is less easily pronounced.

Ex.: drap [dra], par [par], torrent [tɔrɑ̃], rond [rɔ̃].

NOTE. — Another **r** sound (called in French *r uvulaire*), used especially in Paris and in the large cities and towns, is formed by withdrawing and elevating the root of the tongue so as to cause a trilling of the uvula. This **r** is usually more difficult for English-speaking people to acquire.

13. **s** — Like **s** in 'sea,' 'cease,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: **si** [si], **pense** [pɑ̃s], **casser** [kɑsɛ]; also **scène** [sɛ:n], **place** [plas], **façade** [fasad], **leçon** [ləsɔ̃], **reçu** [rɛsy], **commençait** [kɔmɑ̃sɛ], **commençons** [kɔmɑ̃sɔ̃], **reçûmes** [rɛsym], **portion** [pɔrsjɔ̃], **soixante** [swasɑ̃t].

14. **ʃ** — Like **sh** in 'shoe,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: **chou** [ʃu], **lâche** [la:ʃ], also, **schisme** [ʃism].

15. **t** — Like **t** in 'tall,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above; avoid the slight aspiration which generally follows the English sound.

Ex.: **tas** [ta], **patte** [pat].

16. **v** — Like **v** in 'vine,' 'cave.'

Ex.: **vin** [vɛ̃], **cave** [ka:v]; also, **wagon** [vagɔ̃], **neuf heures** [nœv œ:r].

17. **z** — Like **z** in 'zone,' or **s** in 'rose,' but with the tongue advanced as for [d] above.

Ex.: **zone** [zo:n], **rose** [ro:z]; also, **deux heures** [døzœ:r], **exact** [egzakt].

18. **ʒ** — Like **z** in 'azure' or **s** in 'pleasure,' but with the tongue more advanced (§ 1, 5).

Ex.: **je** [ʒə], **rouge** [ru:ʒ]; also **mangeant** [mɑ̃ʒɑ̃], **Jean** [ʒɑ̃].

19. A *doubled consonant* has usually the same sound as a single consonant, *e.g.*, **aller** [ale], **ville** [vil], **tranquille** [trākil], **donner** [dɔne], **terre** [tɛ:r]. Exceptions are, however:

(1) The liquid **l**, Fr. **l mouillée** [muje], *i.e.*, double **l** after **i** [j] (§ 16, 1), *e.g.*, **filles** [fi:j], **billet** [bi:jɛ], **bataille** [batɑi:j], **veiller** [vɛje], **feuille** [fœ:j].

N.B. — Note also that liquid **l** may be spelled **-ail**, etc., *e.g.*, **travail** [travai:j], **soleil** [sɔlɛ:j], etc.

(2) The verb forms **acquerrai** [akerre], **courrai** [kurre], **mourrai** [murre].

(3) The doubled consonant in such words as **illégal**, **intellectuel**, **intelligence**, **littérature**, **connexe**, **immoral**, etc., is pronounced double, *i.e.*, given double its usual length, by many people. But

foreigners beginning French may neglect this manner, regarded by many as an affectation.

18. Liaison. Final consonants are usually silent, but in oral speech, within a group of words closely connected logically, a final consonant (whether usually sounded or not) is regularly sounded, and forms a syllable with the initial vowel sound of the next word. This is called in French *liaison* [ljɛzɔ̃] = *linking, joining*.

Ex.: C'est_un petit_homme [sɛ-tœ-pə-ti-tɔm].

1. A few of the consonants change their sound in *liaison*, thus, final **s** or **x** = **z**, **d** = **t**, **g** = **k**, **f** = **v**, *e.g.*, nos_amis [no-za-mi], quand_on parle [kɑ̃-tɔ̃-parl]; the **t** of *et* is silent; for examples see *Exercise in Phonetic Transcription*.

2. The **n** of a nasal is carried on, and the nasal vowel loses its nasality in part, or even wholly, *e.g.*, un bon_ami [œ-bɔ̃-na-mi, or œ-bɔ-na-mi].

19. Elision. The letters **a**, **e**, **i**, are entirely silent in certain cases:

1. The **a** and **e** are silent and replaced by apostrophe in *le*, *la*, *je*, *me*, *te*, *se*, *de*, *ne*, *que* (and some of its compounds) before initial vowel or **h** mute (not, however, *je*, *ce*, *le*, *la* after a verb); so also **i** of *si* before *il(s)*.

Ex.: L'arbre (= *le* arbre), l'encre (= *la* encre), j'ai (= *je* ai), qu'a-t-il (= *que* a-t-il), jusqu'à (= *jusque* à), s'il (= *si* il).

2. In prose the letter **e** is silent at the end of all words (except when **e** is itself the only vowel in the word), silent in the verbal endings *-es*, *-ent*, silent within words after a vowel sound, and in the combination *ge* or *je* [ʒ]. In verbs which have stem **g** [ʒ], **g** becomes *ge* [ʒ] before **a** or **o** of an ending, to preserve the [ʒ] sound.

Ex.: rue [ry], donnée [dɔne], rare [rar], place [plas], ai-je [ɛ:ʒ], table [tabl], sabre [sɑ:br], prendre [prɑ̃:dr], tu parles [ty parl], ils parlent [il parl], gaieté [gete], mangeons [mɑ̃ʒɔ̃], Jean [ʒɑ̃].

NOTE. — In ordinary discourse, this sound is usually slighted or wholly omitted in most cases in which consonantal combinations pro-

duced by its weakening or elision can be readily pronounced, but beginners will do well to sound it fully, except in the cases above specified. The treatment of the [ə] in verse is beyond the scope of this work.

20. Punctuation. The same punctuation marks are used in French as in English, but not with identical values.

1. Their French names are:

. point	-	trait d'union	[]	crochets
, virgule	—	tiret, <i>or</i> tiret de	{	accolade
; point et virgule		séparation		
: deux points	...	points de suspension	*	astérisque
? point d'interrogation	“ ”	guillemets	†	croix de
! point d'exclamation	()	parenthèse		renvoi

2. They are not used exactly as in English, especially the colon and the dash, the latter being very useful in showing a change of speaker in dialogue.

Ex.: « Qui est là? dis-je. — Personne. — Quoi! personne! — Personne, dit-il. »

21. Capitals. Some of the differences between French and English in the use of capital letters (Fr. **lettres majuscules, capitales**) may be seen from the following examples:

Un livre américain écrit en français par un Américain. Des Moines, le lundi 3 janvier. Je lui ai dit ce que je pensais.

BRIEF FRENCH GRAMMAR

TABLE OF FRENCH LETTERS, SYMBOLS, AND SOUNDS ¹

LETTER	SYM- BOL	RULE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	PRONUN- CIATION
a (1)	[a]	§ 13, 1	pat	patte	[pat]
		1. Used more frequently than a = [a].			
a (2)	[ɑ]	§ 13, 2	father	pas	[pa]
		1. With circumflex accent; pâte [pat].			
		2. Before final s; pas [pa].			
		3. Before the sounds [s] and [z]; passe [pa:s], raser [raze].			
b	[b]	§ 17, 1	barb	beau	[bo]
c (1)	[k]	§ 17, 6	take	car	[ka:r]
		1. Before a, o, u; car [ka:r], école [ekol], curé [kyre].			
		2. When final; lac [lak].			
c (2)	[s]	§ 17, 13	sea	ce	[sə]
		1. With cedilla; leçon [ləsɔ̃].			
		2. Before e, i, y; ce [sə], ici [isi], bicyclette [bisiklet].			
ch	[ʃ]	§ 17, 14	shoe	chou	[ʃu]
d	[d]	§ 17, 2	did	de	[də]
e (1)	[e]	§ 11, 1	day	été	[ete]
		1. With acute accent; été [ete].			
		2. In the endings er and ez (r, z silent); donner [done], donnez [done].			
		3. Initial before ff and ss; effacer [efase], essayer [eseje].			
e (2)	[ɛ]	§ 12, 1	let	père	[pe:r]
		1. With grave accent; près [pre].			
		2. With circumflex accent; fête [fet].			

Only the general rules of pronunciation are given in this Table, and most of these have exceptions. The English equivalents are only approximate. For the pronunciation of individual words, see the Vocabulary.

LETTER	SYM- BOL	RULE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	PRONUN- CIATION
		3. Followed in the same syllable by a pronounced consonant; <i>avec</i> [avɛk], <i>fermer</i> [fɛrme]. 4. Before <i>l mouillée</i> (il, ill); <i>soleil</i> [sɔlɛ:j], <i>merveille</i> [mɛrvɛ:j].			
e (3)	[ə]	§ 11, 3	the man	le	[lə]
		1. In monosyllables; <i>que</i> [kə]. 2. Ending a syllable; <i>venir</i> [vənɪ:r].			
f	[f]	§ 17, 3	fat	fort	[fɔ:r]
g (1)	[g]	§ 17, 4	go	gant	[gɑ̃]
		1. Before a, o, u, or consonant; <i>gant</i> [gɑ̃], <i>goût</i> [gu], <i>guerre</i> [gɛ:r], <i>grand</i> [grɑ̃].			
g (2)	[ʒ]	§ 17, 18	azure	gens	[ʒɑ̃]
		1. Before e, i, y; <i>Georges</i> [ʒɔ:rʒ], <i>rougir</i> [ruʒɪ:r], <i>Égypte</i> [ɛʒipt].			
gn	[ɲ]	§ 17, 10	banyan	agneau	[aɲo]
h	(Si- lent)	§ 17, 5	—	l'homme	[lɔm]
i	[i]	§ 10, 1	machine	ni	[ni]
j	[ʒ]	§ 17, 18	azure	je	[ʒə]
k	[k]	§ 17, 6	take	kilo	[kilo]
l	[l]	§ 17, 7	law	long	[lɔ̃]
(i)l(1)	[j]	§ 16, 1; 16, 19 (1)	yes	travailler	[travaje]
		1. il final and ill not initial have the liquid sound and are called <i>l mouillée</i> ; <i>travail</i> [trava:j], <i>fille</i> [fi:j].			
m	[m]	§ 17, 8	man	mot	[mo]
n	[n]	§ 17, 9	not	ni	[ni]
o (1)	[ɔ]	§ 14, 1	law	note	[nɔt]
		1. More common than o = [o].			

LETTER	SYM- BOL	RULE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	PRONUN- CIATION
		2. Followed in the same syllable by a pronounced consonant, except one with the sound [s] or [z]; donne [dɔ̃n]. 3. Especially when followed by [r]; porte [pɔ̃rt].			
o (2)	[o]	§ 14, 3	omen	sot	[so]
		1. With circumflex accent; le nôtre [ləno:tr]. 2. As a final sound in a word; nos [no]. 3. Before the sounds [s] and [z]; grosse [gro:s], rose [ro:z].			
p	[p]	§ 17, 11	pan	pas	[pa]
q	[k]	§ 17, 6	take	bouquet	[bukɛ]
		1. When final; cinq [sɛ:k]. 2. qu = [k]; quand [kɑ̃].			
r	[r]	§ 17, 12	—	Paris	[pari]
s (1)	[z]	§ 17, 17	rose	rose	[ro:z]
		1. When between vowels; chaise [ʃɛ:z].			
s (2)	[s]	§ 17, 13	sea	si	[si]
		1. When not between vowels; si [si], pense [pɑ̃:s].			
t	[t]	§ 17, 15	tall	tas	[ta]
		1. th = [t]; théâtre [teɑ:tr]. 2. Exception: ti + vowel except after s or x = [sj] nation [nasjɔ̃]; but question [kestjɔ̃].			
u	[y]	§ 10, 2	—	pu	[py]
v	[v]	§ 17, 16	vine	vin	[vɛ̃]
w	[v]	§ 17, 16	vine	wagon	[vagɔ̃]

LETTER	SYM- BOL	RULE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	PRONUN- CIATION
x (1)	[ks]	§ 17, 6 & 13	maxim	maxime	[maksim]
x (2)	[gz]	§ 17, 4 & 17 1. Regularly in initial ex followed by a vowel.	exact	exact	[egzakt]
y (1)	[i]	§ 10, 1 1. When not followed by a vowel.	machine	lyre	[li:r]
y (2)	[j]	§ 16, 1 1. When followed by a vowel.	yes	yeux	[jø]
z	[z]	§ 17, 17	zone	zone	[zo:n]
VOWEL COMBINATIONS (ORTHOGRAPHICAL)					
ai (1)	[ɛ]	§ 12, 1 1. More common than ai = [e]. 2. With circumflex, aî; maître [mɛ:tr]. 3. In verb endings when not final; aurais [ɔrɛ].	let	parlais	[parle]
ai (2)	[e]	§ 11, 1 1. Final in verb endings; aurai [ɔre].	late	parlai	[parle]
au (1)	[o]	§ 14, 3 1. More common than au = [ɔ]. 2. eau is also [o]; beau [bo].	omen	faute	[fo:t]
au (2)	[ɔ]	§ 14, 1 1. Followed in the same syllable by a pronounced consonant, except one with the sound [s] or [z]; Paul [pɔl].	law	aurai	[ɔre]
ay	[ɛj]	§ 16, 1 1. When followed by pronounced vowel.	pay	payer	[peje]
ei	[ɛ]	§ 12, 1	let	reine	[rɛ:n]
eu (1)	[ø]	§ 11, 2 1. As a final sound; peu [pø].	—	creux	[krø]

LETTER	SYM- BOL	RULE	ENGLISH EQUIVALENT	EXAMPLE	PRONUN- CIATION
eu (2)	[œ]	2. Before s [z]; creuse [krø:z]. 3. œu is also [ø]; bœufs [bø]. § 12, 3	—	neuf	[nœf]
		1. Before a final consonant sound except [z]; neuve [nœ:v]. 2. œ, ue and œu are also [œ]; œil [œ:j], orgueil [ɔrgœ:j]; cœur [kœr].			
oi (1)	[wa]	§ 16, 3; 13, 1	wax	moi	[mwa]
oi (2)	[wa]	§ 16, 3; 13, 2	water	roi	[rwa]
ou	[u]	§ 15	pool	tout	[tu]

NASAL VOWELS

LETTER	SYMBOL	RULE	EXAMPLE	PRONUNCIATION
an, am en, em	[ā]	§ 13, 3	{ tant, lampe enfant, temps	[tā], [lā:p] [āfā], [tā]
ain, aim ein, eim in, im yn, ym	[ē]	§ 12, 2	{ sainte, faim plein, Reims fin, simple syntaxe, symbole	[sē:t], [fē] [plē], [rē:s] [fē], [sē:pl] [sētaks], [sēbəl]
on, om	[ɔ]	§ 14, 2	rond, tomber	[rō], [tōbe]
un, um eun	[œ]	§ 12, 4	{ un, humble à jeun	[œ], [œ:bl] [aʒœ]

EXERCISE IN PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION

[The sign (:) in unstressed syllables indicates 'half long.']

Tu aimeras le Seigneur ton Dieu de tout ton cœur, de toute
 ty ɛ:mra l sɛpœ:r tɔ̃ djø d tu tɔ̃ kœ:r, də tut
 ton âme, de toute ta force, et de toute ta pensée; et ton
 tɔ̃n a:m, də tut ta fɔ:rs, e d tut ta pɑ̃:se; e tɔ̃
 prochain comme toi-même ...
 prɔʃɛ̃ kɔm twa mɛ:m ...

Un homme descendait de Jérusalem à Jéricho; et il est
 œn ɔm desɑ̃:de d ʒeryzalem a ʒeriko; e il ɛ
 tombé parmi des brigands, qui l'ont dépouillé, ils l'ont chargé
 tɔ̃:be parmi de brigɑ̃, ki l ɔ̃ depuʒe, i l ɔ̃ ʃarʒe
 de coups, et ils sont partis, en le laissant à moitié mort. Et
 d ku, e i sɔ̃ parti, ɑ̃ l lesɑ̃ a mwa:tje mɔ:r. e
 par hasard un prêtre descendait par ce chemin-là, et en le
 par aza:r œ prɛ:tʁə desɑ̃:de par sɛ ʃmɛ la, e ɑ̃ l
 voyant, il a passé outre. De même aussi un lévite, arrivé
 vwajɑ̃, il a pa:se utr. də mɛ:m o:si œ levit, a:rive
 dans cet endroit, il est venu, et en le voyant, il a passé outre.
 dɑ̃ st ɑ̃:drwa, il ɛ vny, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃, il a pa:se utr.

Mais un Samaritain, qui voyageait, est venu là, et en le voyant,
 me œ samaritɛ̃, ki vwajaʒe, ɛ vny la, e ɑ̃ l vwajɑ̃,
 il a été ému de pitié; et il s'est approché pour bander ses
 il a ete emy d pitje; e il sɛt apɔʃe pur bɑ̃:de se
 blessures, en y versant de l'huile et du vin; puis il l'a mis sur
 blesy:r, ɑ̃n i versɑ̃ də l ɥil e dy vɛ; pɥi i la mi syr
 sa propre bête pour le conduire à une auberge, et il a pris soin
 sa pɔpʁə bɛ:t pur lə kɔ̃:du:r a yn ɔberʒ, e il a pri swɛ
 de lui. Et le lendemain il a tiré deux deniers, et il les a
 d lɥi. e l lɑ̃:dmɛ il a tire dɔ̃ dɔ̃nje, e il lez a
 donnés à l'aubergiste, en disant, 'prends soin de lui, et ce que
 dɔne a l ɔberʒist, ɑ̃ di:zɑ̃, pɾɑ swɛ d lɥi, e s kə

tu dépenseras de plus, moi je te le rendrai à mon retour.'
 ty depāsra d plys, mwa ʒ tə l rā:dre a mō rtu:r.

— Reprinted with some modification, by permission, from Paul Passy's *Version populaire de l'Évangile de Luc en transcription phonétique*. Note, however, that in pronouncing ils the l may be sounded.

LA MARSEILLAISE

la marseje:z

Allons, enfants de la patrie,
 alō zāfā də la patri(ə),

Le jour de gloire est arrivé!
 lə ʒu:r də glwa:r ɛ tarive!

Contre nous de la tyrannie
 kōtrə nu də la tirani(ə)

l'étendard sanglant est levé. (*bis*)
 letāda:r sāglā tɛ ləve.

Entendez-vous dans les campagnes
 ātāde vu dā le kāpaŋ(ə)

Mugir ces féroces soldats?
 myʒi:r se ferəsə sōlda?

Ils viennent jusque dans nos bras,
 il vjenə ʒyskə dā no bra,

Égorger nos fils, nos compagnes!
 egərʒe no fis, no kōpaŋ(ə)!

Aux armes, citoyens! formez vos bataillons!
 o zarmə, sitwajē! fōrme vo batajō!

Marchons, marchons!
 marʃō, marʃō!

Qu'un sang impur abreuve nos sillons!
 kœ sū kēpy:r abrøvə no sijō!

ROUGET DE LISLE [ruʒɛ d lil], 1760-1836.

CLASSROOM EXPRESSIONS

Bonjour [bõʒu:r].

Monsieur [møsjø].

Messieurs [mesjø].

Madame [madam].

Mesdames [medam].

Mademoiselle [madmwazel].

Mesdemoiselles [medmwazel].

Ouvrez (fermez) votre livre [uvre
(ferme) vøtrəli:vɾ].

Quelle est la leçon pour aujourd'hui?
[kələlələsõ purəʒuirdʒi?]

Au haut (au milieu, au bas) de la
page [o o (omiljø, obɑ) dəlapa:ʒ].

Commencez à lire [kõmãsezali:vɾ].

Lisez la quatrième phrase (or phrase
quatre [lize lakatriemfra:z (fra:z-
katr)]).

Lisez depuis la ligne . . . jusqu'à la
ligne . . . [lize dəpuɣilaliɲ . . . ʒys-
kalaliɲ . . .].

Voulez-vous lire la phrase suivante.
[vulevuli:v lafra:zsqivã:t].

Répétez cette phrase, s'il vous plaît.
[repete sətfra:s silvuplə].

Lisez tous à la fois (ensemble) [lize
tusalaɸwa (ãsã:bl)].

Prononcez distinctement [prønõse
distẽiktəmã].

Encore une fois, s'il vous plaît
[ãkõ:rynfwa silvuplə].

Je ne sais pas [ʒənsepɑ].

*Good morning, good after-
noon, good day.*

Sir, Mr.

Messrs., Gentlemen.

Madam, Mrs.

Ladies, Mesdames.

Miss.

Young ladies, Misses.

Open (close) your book.

*What is the lesson for to-
day?*

*At the top (middle, bottom)
of the page.*

Begin reading.

*Read the fourth sentence (or
sentence four).*

*Read from line . . . to
line . . .*

Read the following sentence.

Repeat that sentence, please.

Read all together.

Pronounce distinctly.

Once more, please.

I do not know.

Je ne comprends pas [ʒənkõprãpa].	<i>I do not understand.</i>
Il faut parler plus haut [ilfoparleplyo].	<i>You must speak louder.</i>
C'est très bien [setrebjẽ].	<i>That's very good.</i>
Comprenez-vous ce que vous lisez?	<i>Do you understand what</i>
[kõprãnevu skəvulize?]	<i>you are reading?</i>
Que veut dire (signifie) ce mot?	<i>What does that word mean?</i>
[kəvødi:r (siɲifi) səmo?]	
Traduisez (Voulez-vous traduire)	<i>Translate that sentence.</i>
cette phrase [traduize (vulevu-	
tradui:r) setfra:z].	
Continuez à traduire [kõtinqe a	<i>Continue translating.</i>
tradui:r].	
Comment dit-on en français? [kəmã-	<i>How does one say in</i>
ditõ ãfrãse?]	<i>French?</i>
On dit en français [õdi ãfrãse].	<i>One says in French.</i>
Écoutez bien [ekutebjẽ].	<i>Listen closely.</i>
Regardez le tableau (noir) [rəgarde-	<i>Look at the blackboard.</i>
lɔtablo (nwa:r)].	
Faites attention [fetzatãsjõ].	<i>Pay attention.</i>
Allez au tableau (noir) [alezotablo	<i>Go to the board.</i>
(nwa:r)].	
Prenez un morceau de craie et écri-	<i>Take a piece of chalk and</i>
vez [prãnezõemørsodəkre e ekrive].	<i>write.</i>
Écrivez en français [ekrive ãfrãse].	<i>Write in French.</i>
Comment écrit-on ce mot en fran-	<i>How does one spell this</i>
çais? [kəmãtekritõ səmo ãfrãse?]	<i>word in French?</i>
Est-ce qu'il y a des fautes? [ɛskil-	<i>Are there any mistakes?</i>
jadefo:t?]	
Répondez en français [repõde	<i>Answer in French.</i>
ãfrãse].	
Corrigez les fautes [kəriʒelefo:t].	<i>Correct the mistakes.</i>
Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela? [kəs-	<i>What is that?</i>
kəsəkəsla?]	
C'est un . . . [setœ . . .]	<i>It is a . . .</i>
Ce n'est pas correct [sənɛpakərəkt].	<i>It is not correct.</i>
Il faut ajouter la lettre "a" [ilfo-	<i>You must add the letter</i>
tagute laletr a].	<i>"a."</i>
Effacez ce mot. [efasesəmo].	<i>Rub out that word.</i>

Y a-t-il des questions? [jatildekes-tjō?]

Are there any questions?

Levez la main [ləvelamẽ].

Raise your hand.

Allez à votre place. Vite! [aleza-votrɛplas. vit!]

Go to your seat. Quickly!

Asseyez-vous [asɛjevu].

Sit down.

Préparez pour demain (la prochaine fois) [prepare purdãmẽ (laprɔ-ʃɛnfwa)].

Prepare for to-morrow (the next time).

Apprenez par cœur [aprəneparkoeir].

Learn by heart.

La grammaire. La conjugaison [la-gramɛir. la kōzygezō].

The grammar. The conjugation.

La lecture. Le vocabulaire [lalektyir. lɔvɔkabyleir].

Reading lesson. Vocabulary.

Le devoir (l'exercice m.). Le thème. [lədɔvwair (legzersis). lɔtɛim].

Drill work. Composition.

Cela suffit pour aujourd'hui, merci. [sɛlasyfipurɔʒuirdɥi mɛrsi].

That is enough for to-day, thank you.

Au revoir. À demain (mardi) [orə-vwair. adãmẽ (mardi)].

Good-bye. I'll see you to-morrow (Tuesday).



PART I

LESSON I

22. Definite Article. 1. The definite article has the following forms in the singular:

The = $\begin{cases} \text{le } [\text{lə}] & \text{before a masculine noun beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{la } [\text{la}] & \text{before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.} \\ \text{l' } [\text{l}] & \text{before any noun beginning with a vowel or silent h.} \end{cases}$

Le crayon, la plume.

The pencil, the pen.

L'histoire (f.), l'encre (f.).

The history, the ink.

2. The definite article must be repeated before each noun to which it refers.

La plume et le crayon.

The pen and pencil.

23. Gender. All French nouns are either masculine or feminine.

Le livre (m.), la table (f.).

The book, the table.

a. Names of male beings are masculine, and names of female beings are feminine, as in English.

24. Some Forms of *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be:

<i>j'ai</i>	$[\text{ʒe}]$	I have		
<i>vous avez</i>	$[\text{vuzave}]$	you have	<i>avez-vous?</i> ¹	$[\text{avevu}]$ have you? (§ 26)
<i>a</i>	$[\text{a}]$	has	<i>est</i>	$[\text{ɛ}]$ is

¹ In questions the subject pronoun comes after the verb (as in English) and is joined to it by a hyphen:

Avez-vous le livre?

Have you the book?

VOCABULARY

la boîte [bwa:t] box	mademoiselle [madmwazɛl] Miss
bonjour [bɔ̃ʒu:r] good day! good morning! good after- noon!	Marie [mari] Mary
le crayon [kʁɛjɔ̃] pencil	(le) monsieur [məsjø] sir, Mr.
dans [dɑ̃] in, into	non [nɔ̃] no
l'encre [ɑ̃kr] <i>f.</i> ink	où [u] where
et [e] and	oui [wi] yes
l'histoire [istwa:r] <i>f.</i> history	la plume [plym] pen
Jean [ʒɑ̃] John	le professeur [pʁɔfɛsœ:r] pro- fessor, teacher
le livre [livr] book	sur [syr] on, upon
madame [madam] madam, Mrs.	la table [tabl] table

EXERCISES

A. Bonjour, Jean! — Bonjour, monsieur! — Bonjour, mademoiselle! — Jean, avez-vous le livre? — Non, monsieur, Marie a le livre. — Marie, avez-vous l'histoire? — Non, monsieur, l'histoire est sur la table. — Jean, avez-vous la plume? Où est le crayon? — Vous avez la plume, monsieur; le crayon est dans la boîte. — Marie, vous avez l'encre. Où est la boîte? — J'ai le crayon, monsieur; la boîte est sur la table.

B. *Written:* 1. Miss Mary Martin [martɛ̃], Mr. John Bernard [bernair] and the professor. 2. Good morning, Mary! 3. Good morning (sir)! 4. Where is the ink, Mary? 5. I have the ink, and John has the pen. 6. Have you the history, John? 7. Yes (sir), I have the book. 8. Mary has the pencil. 9. You have the pencil, Mary? 10. No (sir), the pencil is in the box. 11. Where is the box? 12. The box is on the table.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks:* 1. Où — le livre? 2. Le livre est — la table. 3. Avez-vous — plume? 4. Jean — la plume

et — livre. 5. — encre est dans — boîte. 6. — est la boîte? 7. —-vous l'encre? 8. L'encre est sur — table. 9. — ai le livre. 10. Vous — le crayon. 11. Où est — histoire? 12. Le professeur — l'histoire.

(2). *Make sentences using the following words:* 1. où. 2. sur. 3. vous. 4. a. 5. est. 6. et. 7. encre. 8. professeur. 9. dans. 10. Jean. 11. table. 12. j'ai.

D. *Oral:* 1. Good morning (Miss)! 2. Good morning (sir)! 3. Yes (sir); no (sir). 4. Yes (Madam); no (Madam). 5. Yes (Miss); no (Miss). 6. I have the book. 7. Have you the ink? 8. You have the ink. 9. Where is the pen? 10. The teacher has the pen and pencil. 11. The box is on the table. 12. Where is the history? 13. John has the history.

E. *Practice in rapid reading:*

LA FAMILLE¹ MELVIN EN² FRANCE

La France est en Europe. La capitale de³ la France est Paris. Paris est sur la Seine. L'oncle et la tante⁴ de Marie, monsieur et madame Melvin, sont⁵ en France. Le cousin et la cousine de Marie, Ernest et Alice Melvin, sont à⁶ Paris. Ils⁷ sont dans un⁸ hôtel, boulevard Raspail. Alice est dans une⁸ école⁹ où elle étudie¹⁰ le français, le latin et l'histoire. Ernest étudie la physique¹¹ et l'algèbre.

¹ family. ² in. ³ of. ⁴ aunt. ⁵ are. ⁶ at. ⁷ they. ⁸ a. ⁹ school. ¹⁰ she studies. ¹¹ physics.

LESSON II

25. Indefinite Article. The indefinite article has the following forms, which must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

A or an = $\begin{cases} \text{un } [\text{œ}] & \text{before a masculine noun.} \\ \text{une } [\text{yn}] & \text{before a feminine noun.} \end{cases}$

Un livre et une plume.

A book and (a) pen.

Une histoire, une école.

A history, a school.

26. Present Indicative of *avoir*, to have, Affirmative and Interrogative:

1. Affirmative			2. Interrogative		
j'ai	[ʒe]	I have	ai-je? ¹	[ɛ:ʒ]	have I?
tu as	[tya]	you have	as-tu?	[aty]	have you?
il a	[ila]	he has	a-t-il? ²	[atɪl]	has he?
elle a	[ela]	she has	a-t-elle? ²	[atɛl]	has she?
nous avons	[nuzavɔ̃]	we have	avons-nous?	[avɔ̃nu]	have we?
vous avez	[vuzave]	you have	avez-vous?	[avevu]	have you?
ils ont	[ilzɔ̃] (m.)	they have	ont-ils?	[ɔ̃til] (m.)	have they?
elles ont	[ɛlzɔ̃] (f.)	they have	ont-elles?	[ɔ̃tɛl] (f.)	have they?

NOTE. — *You* is regularly **vous**; the form **tu**, *thou* or *you*, is used in familiar address. Translate *you* by **vous** in the exercises unless the use of **tu** is required by the context.

27. Some Forms of *être*, to be:

il est	[ilɛ]	he is	est-il?	[ɛtil]	is he?
elle est	[ɛlɛ]	she is	est-elle?	[ɛtɛl]	is she?
ils sont	[ilsɔ̃] (m.)	they are	sont-ils?	[sɔ̃til] (m.)	are they?
elles sont	[ɛlsɔ̃] (f.)	they are	sont-elles?	[sɔ̃tɛl] (f.)	are they?

VOCABULARY

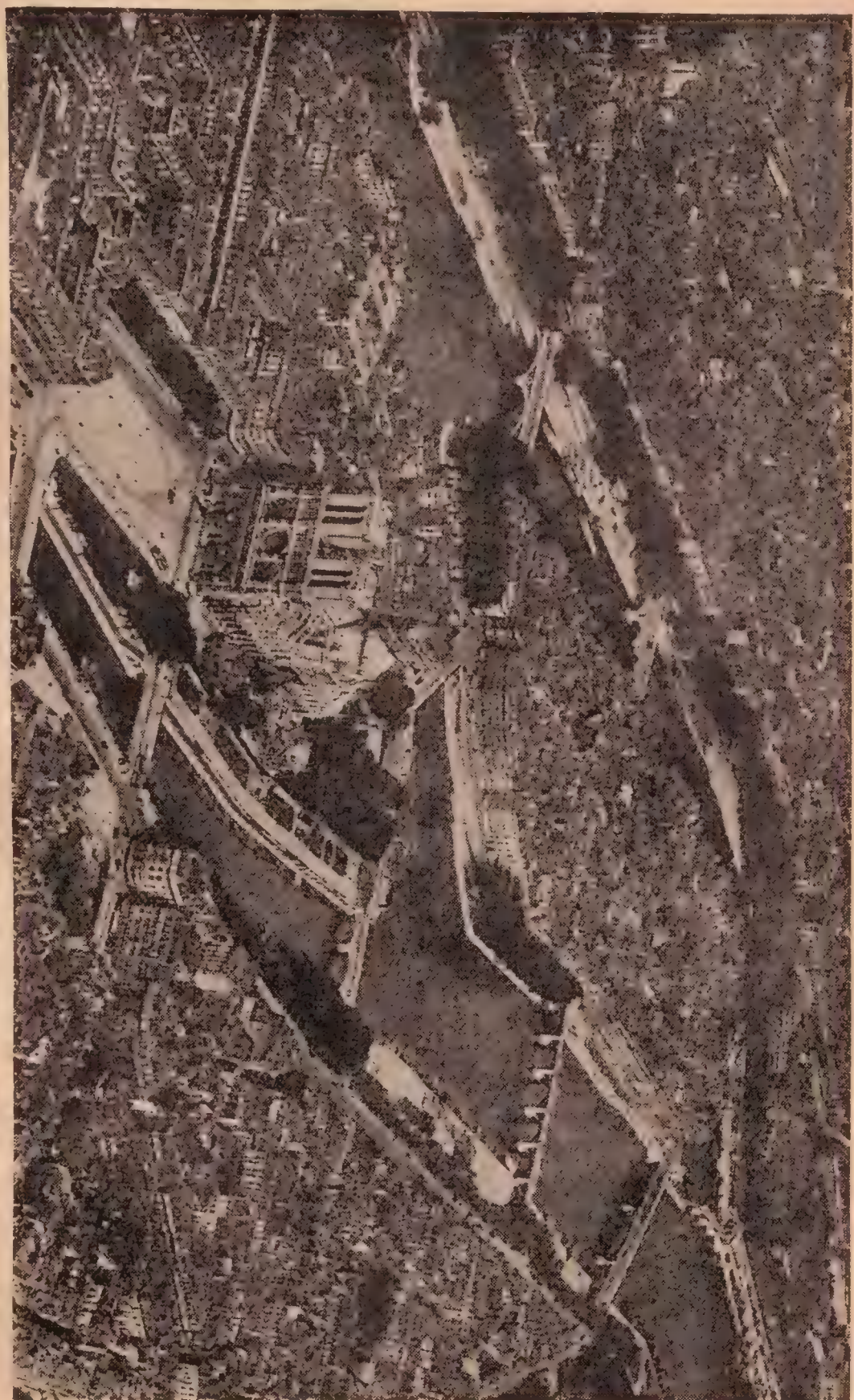
l'auto [oto] <i>f.</i> automobile, car	la fenêtre [fənɛ:tr] window
l'automobile [otomobil] <i>f.</i> automobile, car	il y a [ilja] there is, there are (<i>simple statement without idea of pointing</i>)
avec [avɛk] with	le journal [ʒurnal] newspaper
le cahier [kaje] notebook	Louise [lwi:z] Louise
la chaise [ʃɛ:z] chair	la porte [pɔrt] door
derrière [dɛrjɛ:r] behind	Robert [rɔbɛ:r] Robert
devant [dɛvɑ̃] in front of, before (<i>place</i>)	la salle de classe [saldɛkla:s] classroom
l'école [ekɔl] <i>f.</i> school	

¹ The usual interrogative form for the first person singular of the present indicative of verbs is **Est-ce que** [ɛskə] (*Is it that?*) + subject + verb. (§ 44, 3.)

Est-ce que j'ai le livre?

Have I the book?

² In the third person singular, when the verb ends in a vowel, it is joined to the following subject pronoun by **-t-**: **A-t-il?** *Has he?* **A-t-elle?** *Has she?*



PARIS ET LA SEINE

EXERCISES

A. Louise et Marie sont dans la salle de classe. Elles sont devant la fenêtre. Robert et Jean sont dans une automobile devant l'école. Le professeur est dans la salle de classe derrière la table. La salle de classe a une porte et une fenêtre. Il y a un cahier et un livre sur la table. Il y a un crayon et une plume dans une boîte sur une chaise.

Bonjour, monsieur! — Bonjour, mademoiselle! Louise, où est Jean? Est-il devant la porte? — Non, monsieur, il est dans l'auto. — L'auto? A-t-il une automobile? — Oui, monsieur, l'automobile est devant l'école. — Et Robert, où est-il? — Il est avec Jean dans l'automobile. — Ont-ils le journal? — Non, monsieur, nous avons le journal. Le journal est sur la chaise derrière la table.

B. *Written:* 1. There is an automobile in front of the school. 2. John is in the car. 3. The professor is in front of the car. 4. Good afternoon, John, where is Robert? 5. Has he a newspaper? 6. No (sir), Mary has the paper. 7. Where is Mary? 8. Is she with Louise in the classroom? 9. Yes (sir), Mary and Louise are in front of a window in the classroom. 10. There is a table behind Mary. 11. She has the newspaper. 12. Upon the table there is a notebook and a box. 13. A pen and pencil are in the box. 14. A chair is in front of the door. 15. There is a book on the chair.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks using the indefinite article:* 1. Est-ce que j'ai — journal? 2. Non, monsieur, j'ai — livre et — cahier. 3. La salle de classe a — porte et — fenêtre. 4. — plume et — crayon sont devant — boîte. 5. — chaise est derrière — table. 6. — automobile est devant l'école.

(2) *Fill in the blanks using the proper forms of avoir and être:* 1. —-vous le journal? 2. Nous — un journal. 3. Où est Jean? —-il avec Robert? 4. —-il un livre? 5. Il — avec

Robert, et il — un livre. 6. Où — Jean et Robert? 7. — -ils une auto? 8. — -ils dans l'auto? 9. Ils — dans la salle de classe. 10. Où est Marie? — -elle avec Louise? 11. Elles — devant l'école. 12. (*Long form, 1st pers. sing.*) — une boîte? 13. Oui, j' — une boîte.

D. *Oral*: 1. Where is Robert? 2. Is he with John? 3. Are they in the classroom? 4. There is an automobile in front of the school. 5. They are in the automobile. 6. Where is Mary? 7. Is she in the car? 8. Has she a newspaper? 9. She is with Mrs. Bernard in the classroom. 10. They are in front of a window. 11. They have the newspaper. 12. Mary, have you a pen? 13. (*Long form*) Have I a pen? 14. No (madam), I have a pencil.



Un Café à Paris

E. *Rapid reading*:

ERNEST ÉTUDIE LA GÉOGRAPHIE

Ernest est dans un grand ¹ restaurant derrière l'hôtel. Il dîne ² à la carte. À ³ l'hôtel, il dîne à la table d'hôte. Il est assis ⁴ à une table devant la fenêtre. Le dîner est très bon, ⁵ et Ernest est content. Après ⁶ le dîner, il consulte une géographie de la France.

La France a une population d'environ ⁷ quarante ⁸ mil-

lions d'habitants. Paris est une grande ville.⁹ Paris a plus de ¹⁰ trois ¹¹ millions d'habitants.

¹ large. ² is dining. ³ at. ⁴ seated. ⁵ very good. ⁶ after. ⁷ of about.
⁸ forty. ⁹ city. ¹⁰ more than. ¹¹ three.

LESSON III

28. Some Possessive Adjectives. Possessive adjectives agree with the object possessed and not, as in English, with the possessor. They must be repeated before each noun to which they refer.

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
mon [mɔ̃]	ma [ma]	my
ton [tɔ̃]	ta [ta]	thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	sa [sa]	his, her, its
votre [votr]	votre [votr]	your

Mon (m.) livre et **ma** (f.) plume. My book and (my) pen.
Ton (m.) livre et **ta** (f.) plume. Thy (your) book and thy (your) pen.
Son (m.) livre et **sa** (f.) plume. His or her book and pen.¹
Votre (m.) livre et **votre** (f.) plume. Your book and (your) pen.

29. Possession. The idea of possession, indicated in English by the apostrophe and s, is expressed in French by the preposition **de** (of) + noun.

Le dictionnaire de Jean.	John's dictionary.
Le livre de la mère.	The mother's book.

30. Present Indicative of être, to be, Affirmative and Interrogative:

1. Affirmative

je suis	[ʒəsɥi]	I am
tu es	[tyɛ]	you are
il est	[ilɛ]	he (it) ² is
elle est	[ɛlɛ]	she (it) ² is

2. Interrogative

suis-je?	[sqi:ʒ]	am I?
es-tu?	[ɛty]	are you?
est-il?	[etil]	is he (it)?
est-elle?	[ɛtɛl]	is she (it)?

¹ Son (sa) may mean *his*, *her* or *its*, according to the context.

² Il and elle mean not only *he* and *she* but also *it*, since there are but two grammatical genders in French.

Où est la plume? **Elle** est ici. Where is the pen? It is here.

nous sommes	[nusəm]	we are	sommes-nous?	[səmnu]	are we?
vous êtes	[vuzɛ:t]	you are	êtes-vous?	[ɛ:tvu]	are you?
ils sont	[ilsɔ̃]	they are	sont-ils?	[sɔ̃til]	are they?
elles sont	[ɛlsɔ̃]	they are	sont-elles?	[sɔ̃tɛl]	are they?

a. The form **est-ce que je suis?** [ɛskɛʒəsɥi] is frequently used for the first person singular of the interrogative.

VOCABULARY

à [a]	at	la grammaire	[gramɛ:r]	grammar
de [də]	of, from	ici	[isi]	here
le dictionnaire	[diksɔ̃nɛ:r]	la maison	[mezɔ̃]	house; à la —,
	tionary			at home, home
l'école	[ekɔl]	la mère	[mɛ:r]	mother
	f. school; à l'—,	le père	[pɛ:r]	father
	at school	qui?	[ki]	who? whom?
Georges	[ʒɔʁʒ]			
	George			

EXERCISES

A. Robert Dufour [dyfu:r] et Georges Lambert [lābɛ:r] sont à l'école. Georges est devant la porte de la salle de classe. Il a sa plume et son cahier. Marie Martin est dans la salle de classe avec Louise Duval. Le cahier de Marie est sur la table avec son crayon et sa plume. La grammaire de Louise est sur une chaise.

MARIE. — Bonjour, Georges!

GEORGES. — Bonjour, Marie! Où êtes-vous?

MARIE. — Où suis-je? Je suis dans la salle de classe.

GEORGES. — Qui est avec vous?

MARIE. — Louise; nous sommes ici devant la fenêtre.

GEORGES. — Où est Jean? Avec qui est-il?

MARIE. — Jean est à la maison avec son père et sa mère.

GEORGES. — A-t-il mon dictionnaire et ma grammaire?

MARIE. — Non, votre grammaire est ici sur la table. Votre dictionnaire est sur une chaise derrière la table.

B. *Written*: 1. Mary and Louise are at school. 2. John is at home. 3. George Lambert is in his father's automobile in front of the house. 4. He has his notebook and his dictionary.

GEORGE. — 5. Good morning, Mrs. Martin! 6. Where is John? 7. Is he at home?

MRS. MARTIN. — 8. John! George is here.

GEORGE. — 9. Where are you, John? 10. Are you with your father?

JOHN. — 11. No, I am with Robert. 12. We are here in the house.

GEORGE. — 13. Who has my grammar? 14. Is it on your table?

JOHN. — 15. No, it is on a chair in front of the window.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French, using pronouns when possible*: 1. Où sont Robert et Georges? 2. Où est Georges? 3. A-t-il sa plume? 4. Où est Marie Martin? 5. Avec qui est-elle? 6. Où est le cahier de Marie? 7. Où est la grammaire de Louise? 8. Où sont Marie et Louise? Sont-elles devant la porte? 9. Où est Jean? 10. Avec qui est-il? 11. Où est Georges? A-t-il son dictionnaire et sa grammaire? 12. Où est sa grammaire? 13. Et son dictionnaire?

D. *Oral*: 1. Good morning, Miss Duval [dyval]! 2. Good morning (sir). 3. Have you your pencil? 4. Yes (sir), I have my pencil and pen. 5. Where is George? 6. Is he with Robert? 7. Has he John's newspaper? 8. They are at home. 9. Are they in your car? 10. Where are you? 11. We are at school. 12. Where is my mother? 13. Is she here? 14. Where is her chair? 15. Is it here? 16. John has my mother's book. 17. She has her book. 18. (*Long form*) Am I in the classroom? 19. I am in front of the door. 20. Where are George's father and mother? 21. There is a car in front of the house. 22. Are they in the car?

E. *Rapid reading:*LES LIMITES¹ DE LA FRANCE

Ernest et son père sont sur un banc² dans un petit³ jardin⁴ derrière leur⁵ hôtel. Il y a beaucoup⁶ de fleurs⁷ à Paris, et ce⁸ jardin est orné⁹ de¹⁰ roses, de tulipes, de violettes et de marguerites.¹¹ Une fontaine se trouve¹² au milieu.¹³ Ernest regarde¹⁴ une carte¹⁵ de France.

La France est bornée ¹⁶ au nord ¹⁷ par ¹⁸ la Manche, ¹⁹ la mer ²⁰ du Nord et la Belgique; à l'est par l'Allemagne, ²¹ la Suisse et l'Italie; au sud par la Méditerranée et l'Espagne; à l'ouest par l'océan Atlantique et la Manche.

¹ boundaries. ² bench. ³ small. ⁴ garden. ⁵ their. ⁶ many.
⁷ flowers. ⁸ this. ⁹ adorned. ¹⁰ with. ¹¹ daisies. ¹² is. ¹³ in the middle.
¹⁴ is looking at. ¹⁵ map. ¹⁶ bounded. ¹⁷ at the north. ¹⁸ by. ¹⁹ English Channel. ²⁰ sea. ²¹ Germany.

LESSON IV

31. Some Personal Pronoun Objects. *Him* or *it*, expressed by **le** (*m.*), and *her* or *it*, expressed by **la** (*f.*), both become **l'** before a vowel or silent **h**. They generally precede the verb (but see later § 39) and precede also **voici**, *here is*, *here are* and **voilà**, *there is*, *there are*.

Où est la plume? Je l'ai. Where is the pen? I have it.
 Où est le livre? Le voici. Where is the book? Here it is.
 Où est Marie? La voilà. Where is Mary? There she is.

32. Negation. The verb is made negative by placing **ne** before and **pas** after it. Before a vowel **ne** becomes **n'** (§ 19, 1).

Je n'ai pas, vous n'avez pas. I have not, you have not.

33. Present Indicative of avoir, to have, Negative and Negative-interrogative:

1. Negative

I have not, etc.

je n'ai pas	[ʒənepa]	n'ai-je pas?	[nɛ:ʒpa]
tu n'as pas	[tynapa]	n'as-tu pas?	[natypa]
il (elle) n'a pas	[il(ɛl)napa]	n'a-t-il (elle) pas?	[natil(ɛl)pa]
nous n'avons pas	[nunavõpa]	n'avons-nous pas?	[navõnupa]
vous n'avez pas	[vunavepa]	n'avez-vous pas?	[navevupa]
ils (elles) n'ont pas	[il(ɛl)nõpa]	n'ont-ils (elles) pas?	[nõtil(ɛl)pa]

2. Negative-interrogative

Have I not? etc.

a. The form **est-ce que je n'ai pas?** [ɛskəʒənepa] is frequently used for the first person singular of the negative-interrogative.

34. Present Indicative of *être*, to be, Negative and Negative-interrogative:

1. Negative

I am not, etc.

je ne suis pas	[ʒənsɥipa]
tu n'es pas	[tyɛpa]
il (elle) n'est pas	[il(ɛl)nɛpa]
nous ne sommes pas	[nunsɔmpa]
vous n'êtes pas	[vunɛ:tpa]
ils (elles) ne sont pas	[il(ɛl)nəsɔpa]

2. Negative-interrogative

Am I not? etc.

ne suis-je pas?	[nəsɥi:ʒpa]
n'es-tu pas?	[nɛtpa]
n'est-il (elle) pas?	[nɛtil(ɛl)pa]
ne sommes-nous pas?	[nəsɔmnupa]
n'êtes-vous pas?	[nɛ:tvupa]
ne sont-ils (elles) pas?	[nəsɔtil(ɛl)pa]

a. The form *est-ce que je ne suis pas?* [ɛskəʒənsɥipa] is frequently used for the first person singular of the negative-interrogative.

VOCABULARY

le canif [kanif] penknife	sous [su] under
la lettre [lɛtr] letter	voici [vwasi] here is, here are
mais [mɛ] but	voilà [vwala] there is, there
montrez-moi [mɔ̃tremwa] show me	are (<i>with idea of pointing</i>)
n'est-ce pas? [nɛspa] isn't it so?	
are (do) you (they) not? haven't you? etc.	

EXERCISES

A. Marie est dans l'automobile de son père. Louise n'est pas dans l'automobile. Elle est devant la porte de l'école.

LOUISE. — Marie, où est Jean? N'est-il pas ici?

MARIE. — Non, il n'est pas ici; il est à la maison.

LOUISE. — Vous avez la lettre de ma mère, n'est-ce pas?

MARIE. — Non, je ne l'ai pas; la voilà dans votre livre.

LE PROFESSEUR. — Bonjour, mademoiselle Louise! Montrez-moi le journal de votre père. Vous l'avez, n'est-ce pas?

LOUISE. — Non, monsieur, nous ne l'avons pas; le voilà sous l'auto.

MARIE. — Où est Robert, monsieur? N'est-il pas avec Georges dans la salle de classe?

LE PROFESSEUR. — Non, mademoiselle, ils ne sont pas à l'école. Ne sont-ils pas à la maison?

B. *Written*: 1. Louise and Mary are not at school. 2. John is at school, but he is not in the classroom. 3. He is in front of the door. 4. Robert is in the classroom behind the table. 5. There is a book on the table.

THE PROFESSOR. — 6. Good morning, Robert! Where are Mary and Louise? 7. Are they not here?

ROBERT. — 8. No (sir), they are not at school.

THE PROFESSOR. — 9. Have you your history, John?

JOHN. — 10. Yes (sir). Here it is with my notebook.

THE PROFESSOR. — 11. Robert, have you the dictionary?

ROBERT. — 12. No (sir), I haven't it; there it is on the table.

THE PROFESSOR. — 13. Show me your father's letter. 14. You have it, haven't you?

ROBERT. — 15. Here it is (sir).

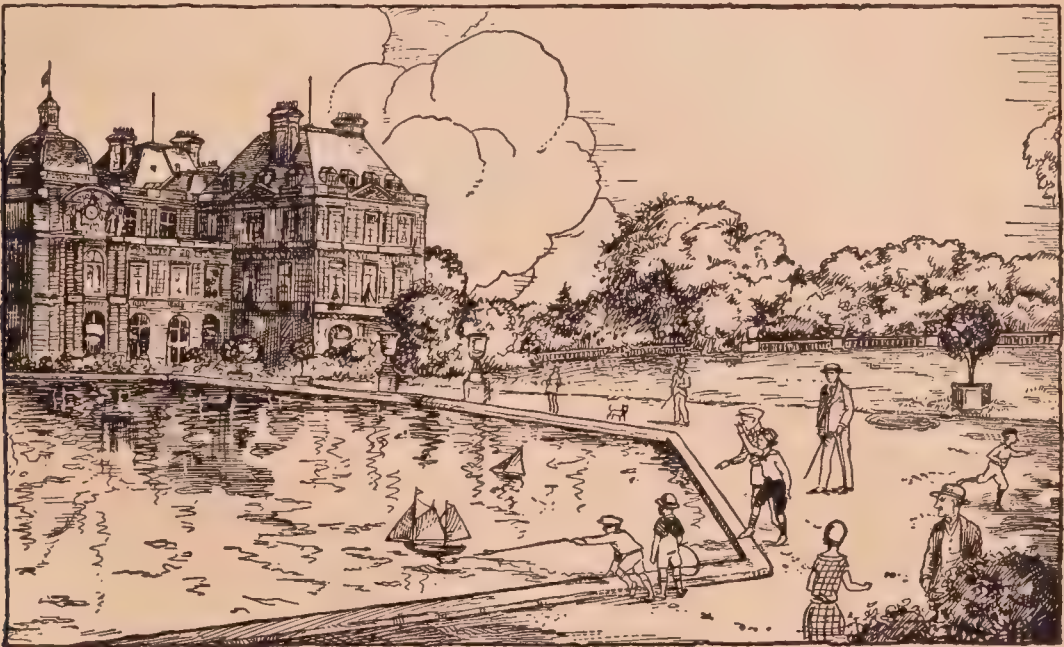
Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Make the following sentences (a) negative, (b) interrogative, (c) negative-interrogative*: 1. Elle est ici. 2. Nous sommes à l'école. 3. Vous êtes dans la salle de classe. 4. Ils ont la lettre. 5. Elles sont à la maison. 6. Je suis à l'école.

(2) *Answer the following questions (a) affirmatively, (b) negatively, substituting a pronoun for the noun*: 1. Avez-vous (sing.)

mon canif? 2. Avez-vous (*pl.*) mon canif? 3. A-t-il sa lettre? 4. Avons-nous l'encre? 5. Ont-elles votre journal? 6. Est-ce que j'ai votre chaise?

D. *Oral*: 1. Show me your knife. 2. Where is it? 3. Haven't you it? 4. Here it is. 5. It is here. 6. Who has his letter? 7. You have it, haven't you? 8. No (sir), I haven't it. 9. Haven't you her book? 10. Yes (sir), we have it. 11. Where is Mary's father? 12. Isn't he here? 13. Yes (sir), there he is in front of the house. 14. Where are Robert and George? 15. Are they not here?



Au Jardin du Luxembourg

E. *Rapid reading*:

LES FLEUVES¹ ET LES MONTAGNES

Il y a quatre ² grands fleuves en France; la Seine au nord, la Loire au centre, la Garonne et le Rhône au sud. Deux ³ grandes chaînes de montagnes limitent ⁴ la France à l'est et au sud; les Alpes la ⁵ séparent ⁶ de la Suisse et de l'Italie, et les Pyrénées de l'Espagne.

Ernest est fatigué. Il va ⁷ au ⁸ Jardin du Luxembourg qui ⁹ est près de ¹⁰ son hôtel. Il y a des statues dans le

jardin et beaucoup de fleurs, des lilas,¹¹ des lis¹² et des pensées.¹³ Au milieu du Jardin se trouve¹⁴ une jolie¹⁵ fontaine avec un grand bassin.

¹ rivers. ² four. ³ two. ⁴ bound. ⁵ it. ⁶ separate. ⁷ goes. ⁸ to the. ⁹ which. ¹⁰ near. ¹¹ lilacs. ¹² lilies. ¹³ pansies. ¹⁴ is. ¹⁵ pretty.

REVIEW LESSON No. 1 (I-IV)

(1) *Put le, la or l' before each of the following words:* 1. crayon. 2. lettre. 3. boîte. 4. journal. 5. encre. 6. plume. 7. canif. 8. école. 9. porte. 10. livre.

(2) *Put un or une before each of the following words:* 1. chaise. 2. dictionnaire. 3. table. 4. professeur. 5. automobile. 6. fenêtre. 7. cahier. 8. grammaire. 9. père. 10. maison. 11. école.

(3) *Make sentences with the following prepositions:* 1. dans. 2. avec. 3. devant. 4. derrière. 5. sous. 6. sur. 7. à. 8. de.

(4) *Answer in French, using a possessive adjective in the answer:* 1. Avez-vous le canif de Robert? 2. Qui a mon dictionnaire? 3. Où est votre plume? 4. Qui a la lettre de Jean? 5. Où est votre journal?

(5) *Conjugate:* 1. Je suis à l'école. 2. Je ne suis pas à la maison. 3. J'ai le livre. 4. Je n'ai pas le livre. 5. Je ne l'ai pas.

(6) *Make the following sentences interrogative and negative-interrogative:* 1. Il a la lettre. 2. Vous avez un livre. 3. Ils sont ici. 4. Ils ont le journal. 5. Elle a une plume. 6. Elle est ici. 7. J'ai une auto. 8. Je suis à la maison.

(7) *Answer the following questions in the negative, substituting pronouns for nouns when present:* 1. Avez-vous (sing.) votre canif? 2. Avez-vous (pl.) le journal? 3. Sont-elles ici? 4. Ont-ils votre crayon? 5. Est-il ici? 6. A-t-il votre lettre?

(8) *Oral:* 1. Good morning, Mr. Rambaud! 2. John and Mary are here, aren't they? 3. His mother and father are here. 4. His mother and her father are not here. 5. Here are my pencil and pen. 6. Where is your knife? Is it on the table? 7. There it is. 8. Who has my letter? It is not in the box. 9. Here it is on the chair. 10. We are not in front of the window. 11. Are you behind

the door? 12. Is he with John? 13. Has he his father's newspaper? 14. Have they a dictionary? 15. They haven't the notebook. 16. You have it, haven't you? 17. They (*f.*) are not in an automobile. 18. You are here, aren't you?

(9) *Written*: 1. We are in the classroom with the teacher. 2. My dictionary is on his table. 3. There it is under the notebook. 4. Has he a pen and pencil? 5. He hasn't his pencil, but he has his pen. 6. Has he George's book? 7. He hasn't it. 8. Have you your grammar? 9. No (*sir*), I haven't it. 10. You have it, haven't you? 11. We haven't it. 12. Is it (*f.*) here? 13. It's not here. 14. Isn't it at home? 15. There it is behind the door. 16. Where is Robert? 17. Has he his paper? 18. Who has your letter? 19. It's in the car.

LESSON V

35. Regular Conjugations. French verbs are conveniently divided, according to the infinitive endings **-er**, **-ir**, **-re**, into three conjugations.

I	II	III
Donner [dɔnɛ] <i>to give</i>	Finir [finiʁ] <i>to finish</i>	Vendre [vɑ̃dr] <i>to sell</i>

Like these are conjugated all regular verbs with corresponding infinitive endings.

36. Present Indicative of *donner*, to give:

1. Affirmative	2. Interrogative
<i>I give, do give, am giving, etc.</i> ¹	<i>Am I giving? do I give? etc.</i>
je donn <i>e</i> [ʒədɔn]	donné-je? ² [dɔnɛ:ʒ]
tu donn <i>es</i> [tydɔn]	donnes-tu? [dɔnty]
il donn <i>e</i> [ildɔn]	donne-t-il? [dɔntil]
nous donn <i>ons</i> [nudɔnɔ̃]	donnons-nous? [dɔnɔ̃nu]
vous donn <i>ez</i> [vudɔnɛ]	donnez-vous? [dɔnevʊ]
ils donn <i>ent</i> [ildɔn]	donnent-ils? [dɔntil]

¹ Periphrastic forms, so common in English, are not used in French. *I do give* and *I am giving*, as well as *I give*, are all expressed in French by **Je donne**.

² See § 26, footnote 1.

a. The form **est-ce que je donne?** [ɛskəʒədɔ̃n] is more frequently used for the first person singular of the interrogative.

3. Negative

I do not give, am not giving, etc.

je ne donn e pas	[ʒəndɔ̃npɑ]
tu ne donn es pas	[tyndɔ̃npɑ]
il ne donn e pas	[ilnədɔ̃npɑ]
nous ne donn ons pas	[nundɔ̃nɔ̃pɑ]
vous ne donn ez pas	[vundɔ̃nepɑ]
ils ne donn ent pas	[ilnədɔ̃npɑ]

4. Negative-interrogative

Am I not giving? do I not give? etc.

ne donné-je pas? ¹	[nədɔ̃nɛ:ʒpɑ]
ne donnes-tu pas?	[nədɔ̃ntypɑ]
ne donne-t-il pas?	[nədɔ̃ntilpɑ]
ne donnons-nous pas?	[nədɔ̃nɔ̃nupɑ]
ne donnez-vous pas?	[nədɔ̃nevupɑ]
ne donnent-ils pas?	[nədɔ̃ntilpɑ]

a. The form **est-ce que je ne donne pas?** [ɛskəʒəndɔ̃npɑ] is more frequently used for the first person singular of the negative-interrogative.

37. Imperative of *donner*, to give:

donn e	[dɔ̃n]	give (<i>familiar 2nd pers. sing.</i>)
donn ons	[dɔ̃nɔ̃]	let us give
donn ez	[dɔ̃ne]	give

NOTE. — The imperative forms of the first conjugation are the same as the corresponding forms of the present indicative with the pronoun subjects omitted, except that the *s* of the second singular is dropped: **Nous donnons — donnons; vous donnez — donnez; but tu donnes — donne.**

VOCABULARY

aimer [ɛme] to like, love	le corridor [kəridɔ̃r] corridor, hall
beaucoup [boku] (very) much,	la cour [ku:r] yard
a great deal	donnez-moi [dɔ̃nemwa] give me

¹ See § 26, footnote 1.

entrer [ãtre] (dans) to enter, go (come) into	montrer [mõtre] (à) to show (to)
étudier [etydje] to study	regarder [rəgarde] to look (at)
fermer [ferme] to close	le tableau [tablo] picture; — noir
la leçon [ləsõ] lesson; — de gram- maire grammar lesson	[nwair] blackboard

EXERCISES

A. Georges est avec Robert dans la cour de l'école. Ils entrent dans le corridor. Ils n'étudient pas. Georges regarde un tableau. Il le montre à Robert. Louise et Marie sont dans la salle de classe. Louise est devant le tableau noir. Robert la regarde. Elle ferme la porte.

GEORGES. — Vous n'étudiez pas beaucoup, Robert. Où est votre histoire? Vous l'avez, n'est-ce pas?

ROBERT. — Non, je ne l'ai pas. Elle est à la maison. Donnez-moi votre livre. Étudions la leçon.

GEORGES. — Non, fermez le livre. Je n'aime pas la leçon d'histoire. Étudions la grammaire. Montrez-moi votre cahier. (*Robert donne son cahier à Georges. Ils étudient.*)

ROBERT. — Voilà le professeur. Il entre dans la salle de classe. Il ne ferme pas la porte Où sont Louise et Marie?

GEORGES. — Elles sont devant la table et elles regardent le professeur. La leçon est sur le tableau (noir). Entrons!

B. *Written*: 1. Mary and Louise are in the classroom. 2. They are not studying much. 3. They are looking at a picture. 4. Mary doesn't like the grammar lesson. 5. She closes her book. 6. She gives it to Louise.

LOUISE. — 7. There's the teacher, Mary, in the hall. 8. Don't close your grammar. 9. Study the lesson. 10. Give me my notebook. 11. There it is under the chair. (12. *The professor enters the room.* 13. *He closes the door.* 14. *Mary and Louise look at him.*)

THE PROFESSOR. — 15. Good morning, Louise, you are studying your lesson, aren't you?

LOUISE. — 16. Yes (sir), we are studying the grammar. 17. We like the lesson very much.¹

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Make sentences using the first and second persons plural of the imperative:* 1. fermer. 2. donner. 3. regarder. 4. étudier. 5. entrer. 6. montrer.

(2) *Give the following sentences in the affirmative and negative using the proper form of the verb:* 1. Je (avoir) le canif. 2. Elle (être) devant le tableau noir. 3. Je (étudier) ma leçon. 4. Nous (regarder) le professeur. 5. Elles (fermer) la porte. 6. Elle (entrer) dans la maison. 7. Je (aimer) mon père. 8. Vous (être) ici. 9. Ils (avoir) ma lettre.

D. *Oral:* 1. Louise is with Mary in the yard. 2. Does she like her very much? 3. Yes, she likes her a great deal. 4. She goes into the house. 5. Do not go into the house. 6. Let's go into the school. 7. John comes into the hall. 8. Who is closing the door? 9. We are closing it. 10. John's dictionary is on his chair. 11. Give me his grammar. 12. It isn't here. 13. There it is under the box. 14. The teacher is in front of the blackboard. 15. George, look at the blackboard.

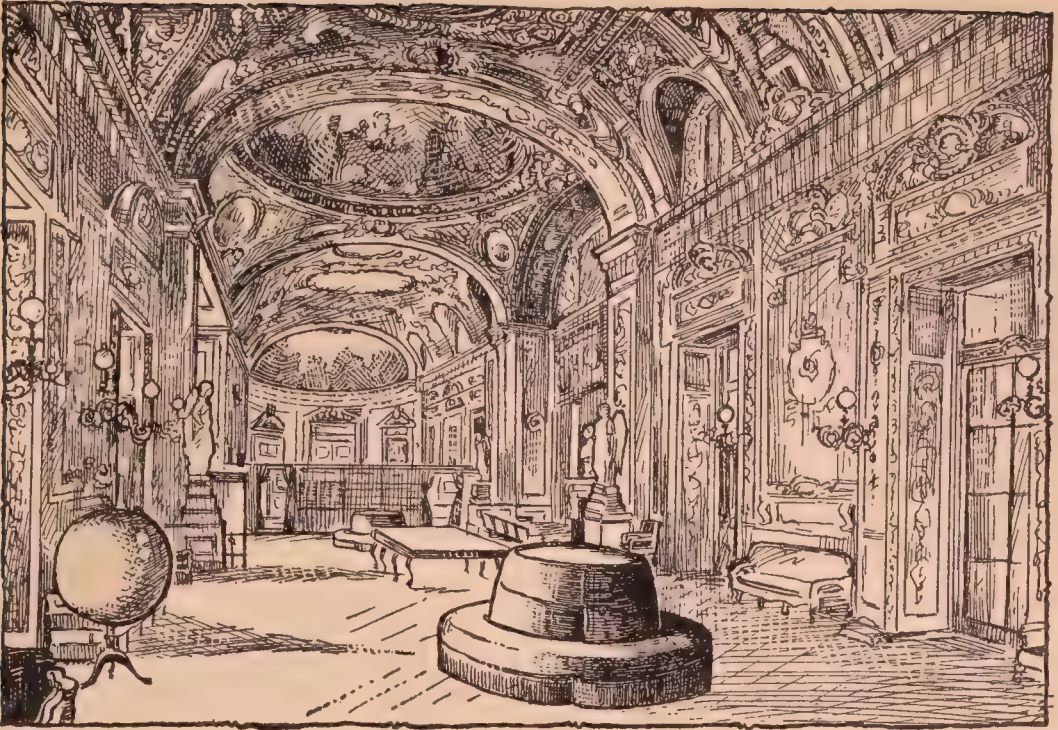
E. *Rapid reading:*

LE PALAIS ET LE JARDIN DU LUXEMBOURG

Ernest regarde les enfants qui lancent ¹ des bateaux ² dans le bassin. Ensuite, ³ il entre dans le Palais du Luxembourg, construit ⁴ au dix-septième ⁵ siècle ⁶ pour ⁷ Marie de Médicis, mère de Louis Treize.⁸ Le Sénat tient ⁹ ses ¹⁰ séances ¹¹ régulières dans cet ¹² édifice. Le Sénat et la Chambre des députés choisissent ¹³ ensemble ¹⁴ le Président de la République. Il est élu ¹⁵ pour une période de sept ¹⁶ ans.¹⁷

Près du ¹⁸ Palais se trouve le musée du Luxembourg avec

¹ An adverb commonly stands immediately after its verb.



L'Intérieur du Musée du Luxembourg

ses galeries de peintures et de sculptures modernes. Les peintures et les sculptures anciennes sont au musée du Louvre.

¹ launch. ² boats. ³ afterwards. ⁴ built. ⁵ 17th. ⁶ century. ⁷ for.
⁸ Louis XIII. ⁹ holds. ¹⁰ its. ¹¹ meetings. ¹² this. ¹³ choose. ¹⁴ together.
¹⁵ elected. ¹⁶ seven. ¹⁷ years. ¹⁸ near the.

LESSON VI

38. Plural Forms. 1. The plural of a noun or an adjective is regularly formed by adding *-s* to the singular. The *-s* is silent.

L'ami est riche [riʃ].

The friend is rich.

Les amis [lezami] sont riches [riʃ].

The friends are rich.

2. The plural of the definite article *le*, *la*, *l'* is *les* [le]. The *s* is pronounced [z] in linking.

Les livres [lelivr], *les arbres* [lezarbr].

The books, the trees.

3. The plural of the personal pronoun *le*, *la*, *l'* is also *les*.

Je *les* ai [leze].

I have them (*books, pens, etc.*).

39. Personal Pronouns *le, la, les* with Affirmative Imperative. The personal pronouns *le, la, les* follow the affirmative imperative as in English and are joined to it by a hyphen.

Donnez-<i>le</i> à votre ami.	Give him (<i>or it m.</i>) to your friend.
Montrons-<i>la</i> à Jean.	Let's show her (<i>or it f.</i>) to John.
Regardez-<i>les</i>.	Look at them.

40. Possessive Adjectives. 1. The following are the forms of possessive adjectives in full (for agreement and repetition, see § 28):

MASCULINE	FEMININE	PLURAL	
mon [mɔ̃]	ma [ma]	mes [me]	my
ton [tɔ̃]	ta [ta]	tes [te]	thy, your
son [sɔ̃]	sa [sa]	ses [se]	his, her, its
notre [nɔtr]	notre [nɔtr]	nos [no]	our
votre [vɔtr]	votre [vɔtr]	vos [vo]	your
leur [lœr]	leur [lœr]	leurs [lœr]	their

2. The forms **mon, ton, son** are used instead of **ma, ta, sa** before feminine words beginning with a vowel or silent *h*.

<i>Mon</i> automobile (<i>f.</i>)	My automobile.
<i>Son</i> histoire (<i>f.</i>)	His history.

VOCABULARY

l'ami [ami] <i>m.</i> friend	la fleur [flœr] flower
l'amie [ami] <i>f.</i> friend	le jardin [ʒardɛ̃] garden
l'arbre [arbr] <i>m.</i> tree	Lucie [lysi] Lucy
au revoir [orəvwɑr] good-bye	merci [mɛrsi] thank you,
aussi [osi] also, too	thanks
beaucoup [boku] many, a great	riche [riʃ] rich
(good) many (<i>requires de when</i>	la rose [roʒ] rose
<i>followed by a noun</i>)	s'il vous plaît [silvuple] please,
chez [ʃe] at (to <i>or in</i>) the house	if you please
(home) of	la tulipe [tylip] tulip

EXERCISES

A. Marie est chez Lucie Dupont. Le père de Lucie est riche. Son automobile est devant la maison. Marie et

Lucie entrent dans le jardin derrière la maison. Elles n'étudient pas leurs leçons. Elles regardent les fleurs. Lucie a beaucoup de fleurs. Elle les montre à son amie.

LUCIE. — Voici mes tulipes. Les aimez-vous?

MARIE. — Je les aime beaucoup. J'aime aussi les roses. Montrez-moi vos roses.

LUCIE. — Les voilà sous l'arbre. Regardez-les.

MARIE. — Donnez-moi une rose, Lucie, s'il vous plaît. Ma mère les aime aussi.

LUCIE. — Voilà la rose et une tulipe aussi. Donnez-les à votre mère.

MARIE. — Merci beaucoup, Lucie. . . . Entrons dans la maison. Voilà mon père et ma mère dans leur automobile. Au revoir!

B. *Written:* 1. Mary Martin is at Lucy's (the home of). 2. They are studying their lessons under a tree in the garden. 3. Mary's mother, Mrs. Martin, is in her car in front of the house. 4. Mary closes her grammar. 5. She looks at her mother.

MARY. — 6. There's my mother, Lucy. 7. Let's go into the house. 8. Give me my books, please.

LUCY. — 9. Here they are. 10. Where are our flowers? 11. There they are on the table. (12. *She gives a rose and a tulip to her friend.*) 13. Give them to your mother, Mary. 14. She likes them, doesn't she?

MARY. — 15. Yes, she likes them very much. 16. My father likes them, too. 17. Give me a rose, Lucy. 18. Thank you very much. 19. We haven't many flowers. 20. Good-bye.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with the possessive adjective corresponding to the subject of the sentence:* 1. Nous étudions — leçons. 2. Il entre avec — amis. 3. J'ai — automobile. 4. Elles montrent — lettres à Robert. 5. Elle ferme — livres. 6. Nous avons

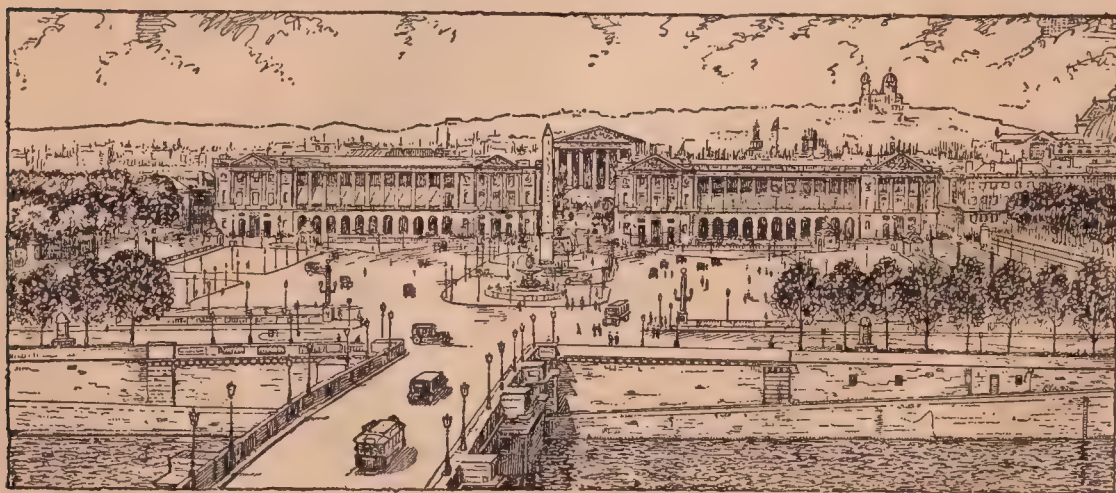
—— boîtes. 7. Elles n'ont pas —— journal. 8. Vous n'avez pas —— dictionnaires. 9. Elle est chez —— amie. 10. Je n'ai pas —— livres. 11. Elles entrent dans —— maison.

(2) *Substitute the personal pronoun objects le, la, les for the italicized words:* 1. Je ferme *la porte*. 2. Fermez-vous *la fenêtre*? 3. Ne regardez-vous pas *le tableau noir*? 4. Ne regardez pas *le tableau noir*. 5. Regardez *le professeur*. 6. Regardez-vous *les roses*? 7. Nous regardons *les tulipes*. 8. N'étudiez-vous pas *les leçons*? 9. Étudions *la grammaire*. 10. Ne fermons pas *les livres*.

D. *Oral:* 1. Let's go into your garden. 2. Show me your roses. 3. Give them to my father and mother. 4. They show them to John. 5. Has she their flowers? 6. There they are under the tree. 7. Who has my books? 8. Have you them? 9. Where is her history? 10. We haven't it. 11. You have it, haven't you? 12. Let's not study our lessons. 13. They close their books. 14. Show me your roses, please. 15. Thank you very much. 16. Where is her car? 17. Show it to her friend (*f.*). 18. My friends (*m.*) are not rich. 19. Their friends (*f.*) are rich.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA PLACE¹ DE LA CONCORDE



Mme Melvin et Alice désirent voir² la belle³ promenade des Champs-Élysées, située⁴ entre⁵ la place de la Concorde et l'Arc⁶ de triomphe de l'Étoile.⁷ Elles prennent⁸ un taxi pour⁹ aller¹⁰ à la place de la Concorde. Elles descendent à cette¹¹ place et continuent leur promenade à pied.¹²

La place de la Concorde est l'une ¹³ des plus ¹⁴ belles places du monde ¹⁵ avec ses huit ¹⁶ statues représentant ¹⁷ les principales villes de la France, ses deux fontaines monumentales et le grand obélisque de Louqsor, apporté ¹⁸ d'Égypte en mil huit cent trente-six.¹⁹ Pendant ²⁰ la Révolution, on ²¹ dressa ²² la guillotine sur cette place.

Le long des ²³ Champs-Élysées se trouvent ²⁴ de grands restaurants et des cafés-concerts et, aussi, le Grand Palais et le Petit Palais des Beaux-Arts.²⁵

¹ square. ² to see. ³ beautiful. ⁴ situated. ⁵ between. ⁶ arch.
⁷ star. ⁸ take. ⁹ in order to. ¹⁰ to go. ¹¹ that. ¹² on foot. ¹³ one.
¹⁴ most. ¹⁵ world. ¹⁶ eight. ¹⁷ representing. ¹⁸ brought. ¹⁹ 1836.
²⁰ during. ²¹ they. ²² erected. ²³ along. ²⁴ are. ²⁵ fine arts.

LESSON VII

41. Contractions. The form **de + le** contracts into **du** and **de + les** into **des**; the remaining forms do not contract, thus, **de la**, **de l'** in full.

La plume <i>du</i> [dy] père.	The father's pen.
Les plumes <i>des</i> [de] mères.	The mothers' pens.
But: La plume <i>de l'</i> ami.	The friend's pen.

42. Partitive Construction. 1. *Some* or *any*, whether expressed or implied before a noun in English, is regularly expressed in French by **de +** the definite article.

J'ai <i>du</i> papier.	I have (some) paper (<i>lit.</i> of the paper).
J'ai <i>de l'</i> encre.	I have (some) ink (<i>lit.</i> of the ink).
A-t-il <i>des</i> amis?	Has he (any) friends?

2. In a general negation the partitive is expressed by **de** alone, without the definite article.

Il n'a pas <i>de</i> papier.	He has no (not any) paper.
Il n'a pas <i>d'</i> amis.	He hasn't any friends.

3. *Some* or *any* as a pronoun (*i.e.*, unaccompanied by a noun) is expressed by **en**. It must be expressed in French,

even when omitted in English. It comes directly before the verb except in the affirmative imperative, where it follows.

A-t-il de l'encre? — Il *en* a. Has he (any) ink? — He has (some).

Avez-vous des lettres? — J'*en* ai. Have you (any) letters? — I have (some).

En voici. Here is (or are) some.

But: *Donnez-en* à Jean. Give some to John.

a. *En* may also mean *of it*, *of them*, especially with numerals and adverbs of quantity and must be expressed in French even when only implied in English.

A-t-il des plumes? — Il *en* a trois. Has he (any) pens? — He has three (of them).

Avez-vous de l'encre? J'*en* ai beaucoup. Have you (any) ink? — I have a great deal (of it).

43. *Finir*, to finish, Present Indicative and Imperative:

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

je <i>fini s</i>	[ʒəfini]
tu <i>fini s</i>	[tyfini]
il <i>fini t</i>	[ilfini]
nous <i>finiss ons</i>	[nufinisɔ̃]
vous <i>finiss ez</i>	[vufinise]
ils <i>finiss ent</i>	[ilfinis]

2. IMPERATIVE

<i>fini s</i>	[fini]
<i>finiss ons</i>	[finisɔ̃]
<i>finiss ez</i>	[finise]

VOCABULARY

<i>l'assiette</i> [asjet] <i>f.</i> plate	<i>un</i> [œ̃], <i>une</i> [yn] one
<i>choisir</i> [ʃwazi:r] to choose	<i>deux</i> [dø] two
<i>maintenant</i> [mêt(ə)nã] now	<i>trois</i> [trwa] three
<i>manger</i> ¹ [ma:ʒe] to eat	<i>quatre</i> [katr] four
<i>le papier</i> [papje] paper	<i>cinq</i> [sɛ̃:k] ² five
<i>la poire</i> [pwa:r] pear	<i>six</i> [sis] ² six
<i>la pomme</i> [pɔm] apple	<i>sept</i> [set] ² seven
<i>très</i> [trɛ] very	<i>huit</i> [ɥit] ² eight
<i>vite</i> [vit] quickly	<i>neuf</i> [noɛf] ² nine
	<i>dix</i> [dis] ² ten

¹ In conjugating verbs ending in *-ger*, like *manger*, change *g* to *ge* before *o* (§ 79, 2) as: *Nous mangeons*; but *vous mangez*.

² The final consonants of most numbers are silent before a word beginning with a consonant (not silent *h*) when this word is multiplied by the number (§ 137, 2).

EXERCISES

A. Jean et Georges sont chez Robert Dufour. Ils étudient leurs leçons. Ils finissent la leçon de grammaire. Jean a du papier et une plume, mais il n'a pas d'encre. Il y a des pommes et des poires dans deux assiettes sur la table. Robert en donne à ses amis. Georges finit sa leçon.

GEORGES. — Donnez-moi une poire, s'il vous plaît, Robert. En voilà cinq sur la table. (*Robert en choisit deux et les donne à Georges.*) Merci! Je les aime beaucoup. N'avez-vous pas de pommes?

ROBERT. — J'en ai quatre. (*Il donne une assiette à Georges.*) Les voilà. Choisissez. (*Georges en choisit trois.*)

JEAN. — Mangez-les vite, Georges. Vous les aimez beaucoup, n'est-ce pas? . . . Maintenant, mes amis, finissons nos leçons. Voici du papier et de l'encre.

B. *Written:* 1. George and John are at Robert's. 2. They have notebooks and many pencils, but they haven't any pens.

ROBERT. — 3. Have you paper and pencils? 4. Let's finish our lesson very quickly.

JOHN. — 5. I have the professor's dictionary, but I haven't any pens.

ROBERT. — 6. Here are ten in my box. 7. Choose. (8. *John and Robert finish their lesson.*)

JOHN. — 9. Look at George. 10. He isn't studying. (11. *Robert gives some apples to his friends.* 12. *George chooses three.*)

GEORGE. — 13. Don't give any apples to John. 14. He has a good many (of them) at home. 15. Where are your pears? 16. You have some, haven't you?

ROBERT. — 17. I haven't many. 18. There's one in the plate. 19. Eat it quickly and finish your lesson.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks:* 1. Je fini—— le livre. 2. Je —— ferm——. 3. Elles ne fini—— pas le livre. 4. Elles ne —— ferm—— pas. 5. Fini—— notre leçon. 6. Ferm—— notre livre. 7. Fini—— votre leçon. 8. Ne ferm—— pas vos livres. 9. Voici —— pommes et —— poires. 10. Nous —— choisi—— deux. 11. Nous —— mang——. 12. Ils choisi—— des poires. 13. Ils —— mang——.

(2) *Fill in the blanks using the partitive construction:* 1. Avez-vous —— encre? 2. Nous —— —— . 3. Nous n'—— —— pas. 4. A-t-il —— crayons? 5. Il —— —— . 6. Avez-vous —— papier? 7. Je n'—— —— pas beaucoup. 8. A-t-elle —— roses? 9. Elle —— —— deux. 10. Avons-nous —— papier? 11. Nous —— —— beaucoup.

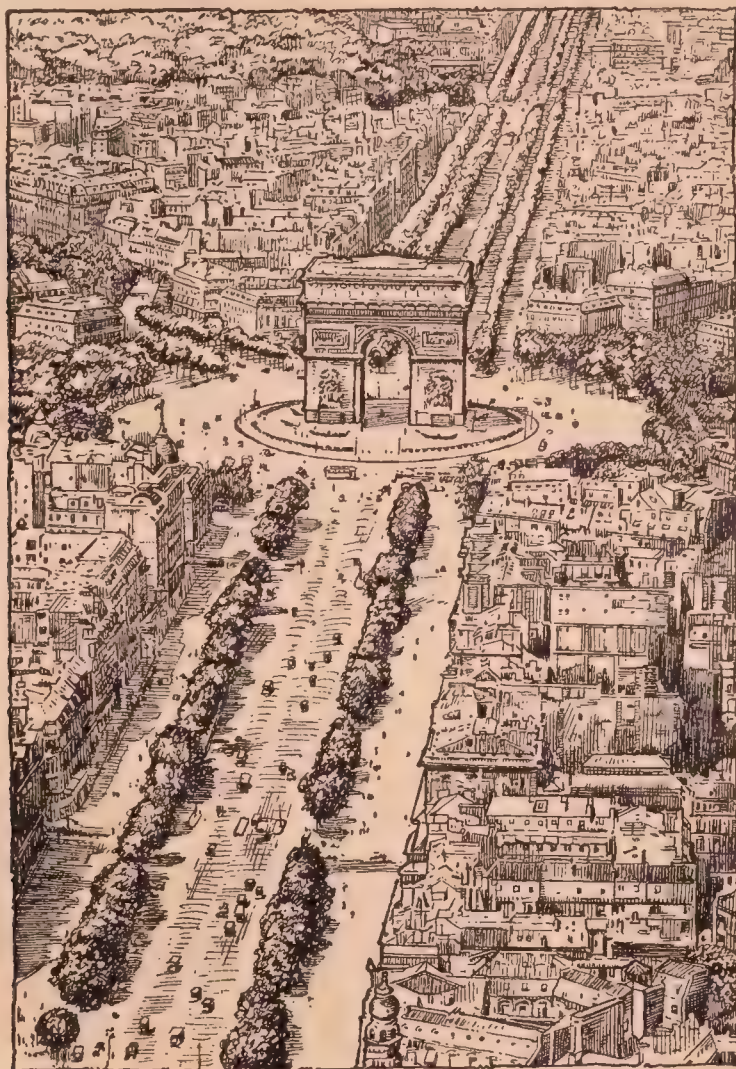
D. *Oral:* 1. They (*m.*) show apples and pears to their friends. 2. Her friend (*f.*) chooses an apple. 3. Our friend (*m.*) chooses two. 4. You eat our apples. 5. Does she eat your pears? 6. They (*f.*) give many flowers to their friend (*f.*). 7. They choose eight. 8. Here are some. 9. Have you any? 10. We haven't any. 11. They look at the professor's house. 12. He closes the door. 13. Finish your lessons. 14. We finish them very quickly. 15. We close our books. 16. They do not finish their lessons. 17. They do not like the history lessons.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LES CHAMPS-ÉLYSÉES

L'avenue des Champs-Élysées a une longueur¹ de deux kilomètres.² L'après-midi,³ un long défilé⁴ d'automobiles monte cette avenue vers⁵ l'Arc de triomphe et le Bois⁶ de Boulogne, un grand parc, situé à l'ouest de Paris. On⁷ y⁸ admire le monde⁹ élégant habillé¹⁰ à la dernière¹¹ mode. Toutes¹² les dames sont belles et les automobiles somptueuses. On y voit beaucoup de voitures¹³ américaines parce que¹⁴ toutes les grandes marques¹⁵ des États-Unis¹⁶ ont des succursales¹⁷ à Paris.

À l'extrémité de l'avenue des Champs-Élysées se trouve l'Arc de triomphe de l'Étoile, commencé en mil huit cent



Les Champs-Élysées et l'Arc de Triomphe

six¹⁸ par¹⁹ Napoléon Premier.²⁰ On l'a terminé²¹ en mil huit cent trente-six²² sous Louis-Philippe. C'est le plus grand arc de triomphe du monde.²³ Il a environ²⁴ quarante-neuf²⁵ mètres de hauteur²⁶ et quarante-cinq²⁷ mètres de largeur.²⁸ Il est orné de belles sculptures. Sous la grande arcade est le Tombeau du Soldat inconnu.²⁹

¹ length. ² kilometer = about $\frac{3}{5}$ of a mile. ³ afternoon. ⁴ procession. ⁵ towards. ⁶ wood(s). ⁷ one. ⁸ there. ⁹ society. ¹⁰ dressed. ¹¹ latest. ¹² all. ¹³ cars. ¹⁴ because. ¹⁵ makes, companies. ¹⁶ United States. ¹⁷ branch offices. ¹⁸ 1806. ¹⁹ by. ²⁰ First. ²¹ finished it. ²² 36. ²³ world. ²⁴ about. ²⁵ 49. ²⁶ height. ²⁷ 45. ²⁸ width. ²⁹ unknown.

LESSON VIII

44. Interrogation. 1. When the subject of an interrogative sentence is a noun, the word order is noun + verb + pronoun.

L'homme est-il là?

Is the man there?

2. This form of question may be combined with an interrogative word.

Jean où est-il?

Where is John?

Combien d'argent Robert a-t-il?

How much money has Robert?

3. By prefixing the words **est-ce que?** literally, *is it that?* any statement may be turned into a question.

L'homme est là.

The man is there.

Est-ce que l'homme est là?

Is the man there?

Vous avez mon canif.

You have my penknife.

Est-ce que vous avez mon canif?

Have you my penknife?

45. Interrogative Pronoun *que?* *what?* as the direct object of a verb is expressed by **que?** or **qu'est-ce que?** (§ 131, 3)

Qu'avez-vous là?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez là?

} What have you there?

46. Vendre, to sell, Present Indicative and Imperative:

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

je vend s [ʒəvã]

tu vend s [tyvã]

il vend ¹ [ilvã]

nous vend ons [nuvãdõ]

vous vend ez [vuvãde]

ils vend ent [ilvã:d]

2. IMPERATIVE

vend s [vã]

vend ons [vãdõ]

vend ez [vãde]

¹ **Vendre** is irregular in this one form. The regular verb **rompre**, to break, has **rompt** but **vendre** is here given as being more useful for practice.

VOCABULARY

à [a] to	l' homme [ɔm] <i>m. man</i>
l'argent [arʒɑ̃] <i>m. money</i>	là [la] there (<i>ordinarily with idea of pointing</i>)
attendre [atɑ̃:dr] to wait, wait for	le panier [panje] basket
aujourd'hui [ɔʒurdi] to-day	près de [prɛdə] near
combien? [kɔ̃bjɛ̃] how many?	la rue [ry] street
how much? (<i>requires de before a noun</i>)	voulez-vous? [vulevu] do you want (wish)? will you?
debout [dəbu] standing	

EXERCISES

A. Lucie est dans la salle de classe. Elle attend le professeur. Elle est debout près de la fenêtre et regarde un homme dans la rue. L'homme vend des fleurs. Il en a beaucoup dans son automobile. Louise entre dans la salle.

LOUISE. — Bonjour, Lucie! Qui attendez-vous? Le professeur n'est-il pas ici, aujourd'hui? Qu'est-ce que vous regardez là? Jean et Georges sont-ils dans la rue?

LUCIE. — Non, ils sont dans la cour. Je regarde des hommes devant l'école. Ils vendent des roses. En voulez-vous? Combien d'argent avez-vous? Vous en avez, n'est-ce pas?

LOUISE. — Non, je n'en ai pas, mais voilà Jean près de l'auto. Il a beaucoup d'argent. (*L'homme montre des roses à Jean. Il en choisit six.*) Attendons-le. (*Georges entre dans la salle.*) Où est Jean? Est-ce qu'il a des roses?

GEORGES. — Oui, il en a six. Il les donne à sa mère. Elle les aime beaucoup. Est-ce que vous en voulez?

B. *Written:* 1. John and George are standing near the door of the school. 2. They are waiting for the professor. 3. They are looking at some men in an automobile. 4. The men are selling apples, pears and flowers. 5. They have a great many.

GEORGE. — 6. What are the men in the car selling? 7. What have they there in their baskets? 8. Have they flowers? 9. Does your mother like them?

JOHN. — 10. Yes, she likes them very much. 11. The men are selling apples also, aren't they? 12. Do you want some apples? 13. I haven't any money. 14. Have you any?

GEORGE. — 15. Yes, I have (some). 16. How many apples do you want?

THE MAN, *to George*. — 17. Here are apples and pears. 18. We are selling a good many to-day. 19. What do you want, sir? 20. And your friend, what does he choose?

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Make sentences with:* 1. Qui? 2. Combien? 3. Où? 4. Que? 5. Est-ce que? 6. Qu'est-ce que?

(2) *Make the following sentences interrogative, giving two forms when possible:* 1. Lucie est dans la rue. 2. Je ferme la porte. 3. Nous choisissons des roses. 4. Louise et Lucie les aiment. 5. Je mange des poires. 6. Nous finissons son livre. 7. Jean a quatre pommes. 8. Nous en mangeons. 9. Vous les mangez. 10. L'homme est là dans son auto.

(3) *Supply the proper forms for the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. Nous (fermer) nos livres. 2. Nous (finir) la leçon. 3. Ils (vendre) leurs fleurs. 4. Elles (choisir) vos roses. 5. Il (attendre) le professeur. 6. Elle (montrer) la maison de son père. 7. Vous (finir) votre lettre. 8. Je (vendre) mon auto. 9. (1st pers. pl. imperative, regarder) le tableau noir.

D. *Oral: (Use two forms when possible.)* 1. What are you selling there (Miss)? 2. Are you selling flowers? 3. Am I selling flowers? 4. Yes, I have many. 5. Do you want some? 6. What have you in your basket? 7. Have George and John any money? 8. They haven't much. 9. Is the professor's car here? 10. Yes, it is near the door. 11. Are you finishing your letters? 12. Yes, we are finishing them. 13. What are they looking at? 14. They are choosing some flowers. 15. What are you eating? 16. We



LA PLACE DE L'ÉTOILE ET L'ARC DE TRIOMPHE

are eating pears. 17. How many have you? 18. We have three. 19. I am waiting for Mrs. Dupont. 20. Here she is.

E. *Rapid reading:*

L'ARC DE TRIOMPHE. LE BOIS DE BOULOGNE

Alice Melvin monte au faite¹ de l'Arc, d'où² elle jouit³ d'une vue⁴ merveilleuse.⁵ Du sommet,⁶ on a une vue magnifique sur Paris, la Seine et le Bois de Boulogne. La place où est situé l'Arc de triomphe s'appelle⁷ la place de l'Étoile parce que douze⁸ avenues y aboutissent.⁹ C'est¹⁰ l'un des quartiers favoris des Américains. L'ambassade¹¹ des États-Unis se trouve non loin¹² de là, rue Chaillot, près de l'avenue du Président-Wilson.

Alice et sa mère descendent de l'Arc et prennent¹³ un taxi pour aller¹⁴ au Bois de Boulogne. Elles visitent le grand Lac Inférieur,¹⁵ puis¹⁶ elles déjeunent¹⁷ au Pré Catalan, un restaurant très à la mode et très cher¹⁸ aussi. L'après-midi, elles visitent le célèbre Hippodrome de Longchamp, où ont lieu¹⁹ les revues militaires et les grandes courses de chevaux.²⁰

¹ top. ² whence. ³ enjoys. ⁴ view. ⁵ marvelous. ⁶ from the summit. ⁷ is called. ⁸ twelve. ⁹ end. ¹⁰ it is. ¹¹ embassy. ¹² not far. ¹³ take. ¹⁴ in order to go. ¹⁵ lower. ¹⁶ then. ¹⁷ take lunch. ¹⁸ dear. ¹⁹ take place. ²⁰ horse races.

LESSON IX

47. Past Participles of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être*:

1. <i>given</i>	2. <i>finished</i>	3. <i>sold</i>	4. <i>had</i>	5. <i>been</i>
donné [dɔne]	fini [fini]	vendu [vādy]	eu [y]	été [ete]

48. Past Indefinite. This tense, which corresponds in form to the English perfect, is formed from the present indicative of *avoir* (or *être*)¹ with the past participle.

¹ For verbs that take *être* as auxiliary instead of *avoir*, see § 65.

*I gave (finished, etc.) or I have given (finished, etc.)
or I did give (finish, etc.)*

j'ai	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)
tu as	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)
il a	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)
nous avons	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)
vous avez	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)
ils ont	donné (fini, vendu, eu, été)

49. Word Order. In compound tenses all rules of word order apply to the auxiliary.

Nous n'avons pas donné.	We did not give.
N'avons-nous pas donné?	Did we not give?
Nous l'avons donné.	We gave it.
Nous en avons donné.	We gave some.

50. Use of Past Indefinite. The past indefinite denotes not only what has happened or has been happening, as in English, but also what happened (= English simple past tense). It is the ordinary past tense of French. (For the past tense of narrative in the literary style, see § 97.)

J'ai fini ma leçon.	I have finished my lesson.
Elle a étudié dix minutes.	She studied ten minutes.
Il a été longtemps ici.	He was here for a long time.
J'ai vendu ma maison hier.	I sold my home yesterday.

a. The present indicative is used idiomatically in certain phrases to denote what has been and still continues to be.

Depuis quand êtes-vous ici?	How long have you been here?
Je suis ici depuis longtemps.	I have been here for a long time.
Je vous attends depuis dix minutes.	I have been waiting for you for ten minutes.

51. Demonstrative Adjectives. 1. The following are their forms, and they must be repeated before each noun to which they refer:

<i>This, that</i> =	{	ce [sə], before a masculine word beginning with a consonant.
	{	cet [set], before a masculine word beginning with a vowel or silent <i>h</i> .
	{	cette [set], before any feminine word.

These, those = **ces** [se], before any plural word.

Ce matin.	This (that) morning.
Cet ami.	This (that) friend (<i>m.</i>).
Cet homme.	This (that) man.
Cette rue.	This (that) street.
Cette amie.	This (that) friend (<i>f.</i>).
Ces fleurs.	These (those) flowers.

2. To distinguish *this* from *that*, or for emphasis, add **-ci** (= *ici*) and **-là** respectively to the noun.

Cet homme-ci et cet homme-là.	This man and that man.
Ce crayon-ci et ces plumes-là.	This pencil and those pens.

VOCABULARY

acheter [aʃte] to buy	longtemps [lɔ̃tɑ̃] a long time,
aimer mieux [amemjø] to like	long
better, prefer	le matin [matɛ̃] morning
la banane [banan] banana	la minute [minyt] minute
depuis [døpqi] since, for, from;	ou [u] or
— quand? how long? (<i>i.e.</i>	parler [parle] to speak, talk
since when?)	plusieurs [plyzjø:r] several
le fruit [fruqi] fruit (<i>pl. when more</i>	puis [pqi] then
<i>than one piece of fruit meant</i>)	quand [kɑ̃] when
hier [jɛ:r] yesterday	le sac [sak] sack, bag

EXERCISES

A. Ce matin Jean a été à l'école. Il a vite fini la leçon d'histoire. Puis il a attendu Georges plusieurs minutes, mais Georges n'a pas fini ses leçons. Jean est chez Robert depuis dix minutes. Robert a acheté des fruits dans la rue, et il a donné des pommes à Jean.

JEAN, *debout près de la fenêtre.* — Qui est cet homme sous cet arbre-là devant l'école? Depuis quand est-il dans cette rue?

ROBERT. — Cet homme-là? Il vend des fruits et des fleurs. Il est là depuis longtemps. Hier il a vendu des fleurs

à Georges, et ce matin je lui (*from him*) ai acheté des pommes et des poires.

JEAN, *qui mange une pomme*. — Je n'aime pas cette pomme! N'avez-vous pas de bananes?

ROBERT. — Il y en a dans ce sac sur la table. Mais ne voulez-vous pas de poires?

JEAN. — Non, merci, j'aime mieux cette banane-ci. Nous n'en avons pas chez nous.

B. *Written*: 1. George has been at school a long time to-day. 2. He studied his history lesson, and then he finished a letter. 3. Robert didn't wait for him. 4. Here is George now in front of Robert's house.

ROBERT. — 5. Who's there? Come in! 6. Good afternoon, George; where have you been? 7. We have been talking of you for several minutes.

GEORGE. — 8. I have been at school. 9. I finished to-day's lesson. 10. How long have you been here? 11. But what have you there? 12. What have you eaten?

ROBERT. — 13. We are eating bananas and apples. 14. Do you want this apple or that banana? 15. John likes those bananas better. 16. There are also some pears in that sack.

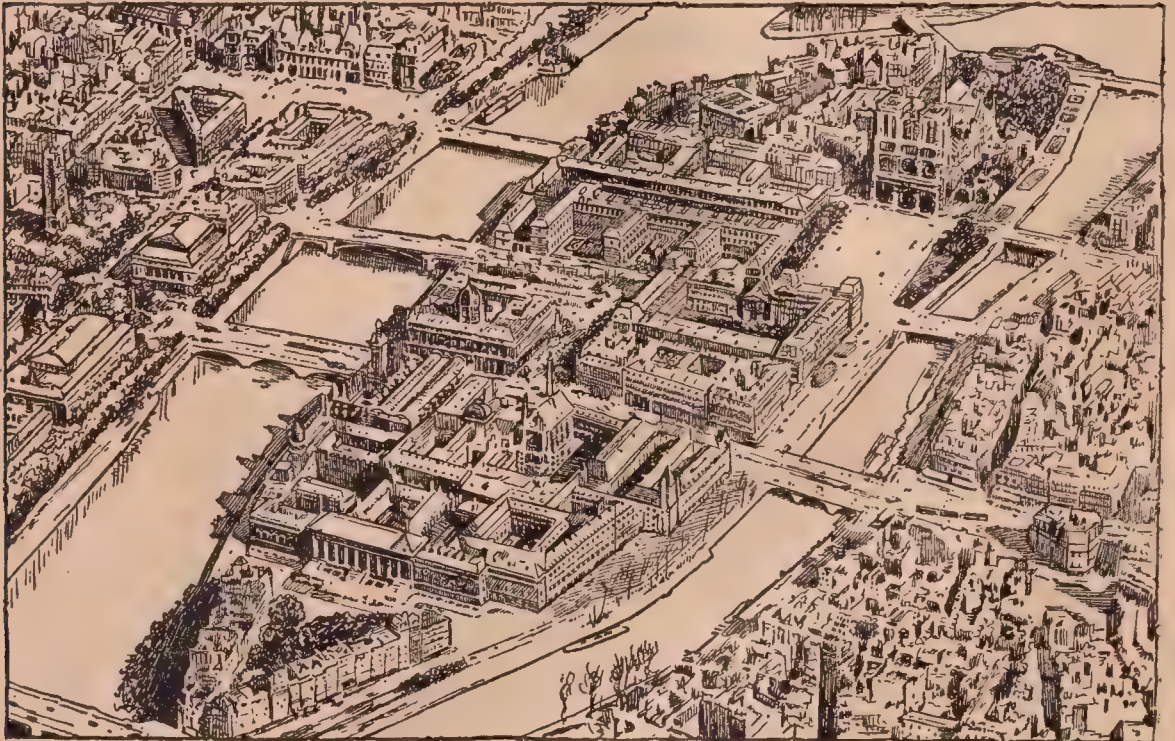
GEORGE. — 17. Give me that banana on the table near John. 18. I ate a good many apples yesterday.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French*: 1. Depuis quand Jean est-il chez Robert? 2. Où a-t-il été ce matin? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fini? 4. Qui a-t-il attendu? 5. Georges a-t-il fini ses leçons? 6. Qu'est-ce que Robert a acheté? 7. En a-t-il donné à Jean? 8. Où est l'homme? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il vend? 10. Est-il dans la rue depuis longtemps? 11. Qu'a-t-il vendu à Georges? 12. Qu'est-ce que Robert a acheté? 13. Qu'est-ce que Jean n'aime pas? 14. Où sont les bananes? 15. Jean a-t-il des bananes à la maison?

D. *Oral*: 1. How long have you been here? 2. We have been in the house for several minutes. 3. Close this window and that

door. 4. Where have you been this morning? 5. We were at school. 6. What did you study? 7. We studied our history lesson. 8. Your friend had a great deal of money yesterday, didn't he? 9. He bought those pictures and these books. 10. Did he sell his car? 11. How much money did he give to his father this morning? 12. I have been talking for five minutes. 13. Give me some fruit (*pl.*), please. 14. Do you prefer these apples or those pears?



L'Île de la Cité

E. *Rapid reading* (*Extraits* ¹ *du journal* ² *de la famille Melvin. Ernest relate les événements* ³ *de la journée.*⁴):

LE MÉTRO ⁵

Ce matin, j'ai pris ⁶ le Métro pour aller visiter l'île ⁷ de la Cité, ⁸ située entre deux bras ⁹ de la Seine, au centre de la ville. Il y a deux réseaux ¹⁰ de chemins de fer ¹¹ souterrains ¹² à Paris: le Métropolitain et le Nord-Sud. Leur service est excellent. Un Américain se sent ¹³ tout à fait ¹⁴ chez lui ¹⁵ dans les wagons du Métro. Il faut ¹⁶ se dépêcher ¹⁷

pour entrer et pour sortir, et, souvent,¹⁸ on reste debout¹⁹ à cause du²⁰ grand nombre de voyageurs.

La ligne du Métro descend à une profondeur²¹ considérable pour passer au-dessous²² de la Seine. En arrivant²³ à la station de la Cité, j'ai pris l'ascenseur²⁴ pour sortir, au lieu de²⁵ monter par l'escalier.²⁶

¹ extracts. ² diary. ³ events. ⁴ day. ⁵ **Métropolitain**, subway.
⁶ taken. ⁷ island. ⁸ City. ⁹ arms. ¹⁰ systems. ¹¹ railways. ¹² subter-
 ranean. ¹³ feels himself. ¹⁴ entirely. ¹⁵ at home. ¹⁶ one must. ¹⁷ hurry.
¹⁸ often. ¹⁹ remain standing. ²⁰ on account of. ²¹ depth. ²² beneath.
²³ arriving. ²⁴ elevator. ²⁵ instead of. ²⁶ stairway.

REVIEW LESSON No. 2 (V-IX)

(1) *Put before each of the following nouns the French term for (a) my, (b) her, (c) your, (d) this, (e) of the:* 1. papier. 2. argent. 3. chaise. 4. histoire. 5. ami. 6. amie. 7. arbre.

(2) *Supply the verb endings:* 1. J'entr——. 2. Nous vend——. 3. Elles attend——. 4. Je fini——. 5. Il étudi——. 6. Ils mang——. 7. Nous mang——. 8. J'attend——. 9. Elles fini——. 10. Nous regard——. 11. Elle choisi——. 12. Elles vend——. 13. Vous fini——. 14. J'ai achet——. 15. Ils ont attend——. 16. Avez-vous chois——?

(3) *Fill in the blanks using a form of the verb in parenthesis:*
 1. (finir) —— votre lettre. 2. (manger) —— nos bananes.
 3. (regarder) Elles ont —— cet arbre. 4. (choisir) —— nos livres.
 5. (vendre) Il a —— ce canif. 6. (fermer) —— votre cahier.
 7. (choisir) Elle a —— une rose. 8. (avoir) Il a —— des fruits.
 9. (être) A-t-elle —— dans la rue?

(4) *Make sentences with the following expressions:* 1. que? 2. est-ce que? 3. combien? 4. en. 5. avec. 6. n'est-ce pas? 7. beaucoup. 8. chez. 9. près de. 10. hier. 11. eu. 12. là. 13. où. 14. ou. 15. vite. 16. été.

(5) *Make the following sentences negative and interrogative:* 1. Je suis à l'école. 2. Jean et Robert ont attendu le professeur. 3. Ils l'ont attendu. 4. Il vend nos maisons. 5. Il les vend. 6. Les

professeurs sont devant l'école. 7. Je finis ma lettre. 8. Je la finis. 9. Cet homme a regardé l'argent. 10. Il l'a regardé. 11. J'ai fermé la fenêtre. 12. Jean ferme la boîte. 13. Nous en avons vendu.

(6) *Translate*: 1. He sold this ink. 2. Wait a minute, if you please. 3. Is John's car in the street? 4. Am I in his car? 5. That man's money is there on the table. 6. They haven't studied their history lesson. 7. Finish your lessons. 8. Finish them now. 9. Are Louise and Lucy finishing their letters? 10. They haven't finished their books. 11. Have I ink? 12. What did she choose? 13. She hasn't chosen any. 14. They didn't look at our windows. 15. Does she like her friend (*f.*)? 16. Let's eat our bananas. 17. They haven't any. 18. Did she choose that rose? 19. No, she likes this tulip better. 20. Was the professor here? 21. How much money have we? 22. Who has any? 23. George had some this morning. 24. Who gave it to George? 25. I have many. 26. He has four. 27. Has she some paper? 28. I haven't any money to-day. 29. Do not go into that house. 30. Come into this house. 31. How long has he been here? 32. He has been talking for four minutes. 33. Is the professor standing near the blackboard? 34. His friends (*m.*) are rich. 35. We bought many books. 36. Haven't you sold any? 37. No, we haven't sold any.

LESSON X

52. Plural Forms. Note the following exceptions to the rule (§ 38) that the plural of nouns and adjectives is formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z**, and adjectives in **-s**, **-x**, remain unchanged in the plural.

SING.	PL.			SING.	PL.		
fil	fil	[fis]	son(s)	gris	gris	[gri]	grey
prix	prix	[pri]	price(s)	vieux	vieux	[vjø]	old
nez	nez	[ne]	nose(s)	heureux	heureux	[œrø]	happy

2. Nouns and adjectives in **-au**, nouns in **-eu** and a few nouns in **-ou** add **-x**.

chapeau (x)	[ʃapo]	hat(s)	beau (x)	[bo]	beautiful, fine
neveu (x)	[nəvø]	nephew(s)	nouveau (x)	[nuvo]	new (<i>recently acquired</i>)
bijou (x)	[biʒu]	jewel(s)			
chou (x)	[ʃu]	cabbage(s)			

3. Nouns in **-al** change to **-aux**.

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
animal [animal]	animaux [animo]	animal(s)
journal [ʒurnal]	journaux [ʒurno]	newspaper(s)
cheval [ʃəval]	chevaux [ʃəvo]	horse(s)

4. Note also:

œil [œ:j] yeux [jø] eye(s)

53. Contractions. The form **à + le** contracts into **au** and **à + les** into **aux**; the remaining forms do not contract; thus, **à la**, **à l'**, in full.

Je parle **au** [o] père, **aux** [o] mères, **aux** [oz] hommes. I speak to the father, to the mothers, to the men.
But: Je parle **à la** mère, **à l'**homme. I speak to the mother, to the man.

VOCABULARY

l' animal [animal] <i>m.</i> animal	gris [gri] grey
apporter [apɔrte] to bring	heureux [œrø] happy, fortunate
le bâtiment [batimā] building	jeune [ʒœn] young
beau [bo] fine, beautiful	le mur [my:r] wall
la campagne [kāpaŋ] country;	le neveu [nəvø] nephew
à la —, in the country	nouveau [nuvo] new (<i>recently acquired</i>)
le chapeau [ʃapo] hat	l' oiseau [wazo] <i>m.</i> bird (<i>pl. oiseaux</i>)
le cheval [ʃəval] horse	l' oncle [ɔ:kl] <i>m.</i> uncle
Ernest [ɛrnest] Ernest	porter [pɔrte] to carry, wear
la ferme [fɛrm] farm	la tante [tā:t] aunt
la fil le [fi:j] daughter; jeune —, girl	utile [ytil] useful
le fil s [fis] son	vieux [vjø] old
le gâteau [gato] cake (<i>pl. gâteaux</i>)	

EXERCISES

A. Aujourd'hui Jean Bernard est à la campagne chez son oncle, M.¹ Ernest Bernard. Il a apporté des journaux à son oncle et des livres à sa tante. Les livres sont nouveaux. M. Bernard a deux fils, deux filles et plusieurs neveux. Monsieur et madame Bernard ne sont pas riches, mais ils sont heureux.

Les bâtiments de la ferme sont très beaux. Il y a deux chevaux devant la maison. Il y a un cheval dans la cour. Ces animaux sont très utiles, mais une automobile est utile aussi. Il y en a deux à la ferme.

Mme ¹ Bernard donne une pomme à Jean. Jean la donne au cheval. Jean entre dans le jardin derrière la maison. Les murs du jardin sont gris. Il y a beaucoup d'oiseaux dans ce jardin.

B. *Written:* 1. Mrs. Bernard and her daughters are in their garden. 2. The daughters are not wearing any hats. 3. They have some, but they don't like them. 4. They are not beautiful. 5. Their aunt chose those hats. 6. There are animals and birds in the garden. 7. Miss Bernard gives cakes to the birds. 8. There are horses in the yard near the garden. 9. Two are grey. 10. These horses are old, but they are useful. 11. There are some newspapers on a table. 12. Mr. Bernard and John are not in the garden. 13. They are in the street near an automobile. 14. A man and his sons are in that car. 15. They are selling fruits. 16. Mr. Bernard spoke to the men. 17. Then he bought some pears and bananas.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Use ce, cet, cette or ces before the following nouns:*
1. bâtiment. 2. amie. 3. ami. 4. murs. 5. tantes. 6. ferme.
7. encre. 8. fruits. 9. homme. 10. histoire.

¹ Notice the following abbreviations: *M.* = monsieur; *Mme* = madame; *Mlle* = mademoiselle.

(2) *Put the nouns in the plural and make the necessary changes in the rest of the sentence:* 1. L'homme a un fils et une fille. 2. Cet homme a-t-il été riche? 3. Sa fille est riche. 4. Donnez un gâteau à l'oiseau. 5. Ce chapeau est vieux. 6. Apportez-moi le journal du professeur. 7. Le cheval est utile. 8. Le chapeau de mon neveu est gris. 9. Cet arbre est beau. 10. Montrez le tableau à l'homme.

D. *Oral:* 1. John is at the home of his uncle and aunt in the country. 2. Are they (*m. pl.*) rich? 3. No, but they are happy. 4. Have your nephews been in the country? 5. They were at the farm yesterday with Mr. Bernard's nephews. 6. The buildings are beautiful, aren't they? 7. This building is beautiful. 8. Those buildings are old and grey. 9. There are many animals in the country. 10. There are some horses near that wall. 11. There are birds in the trees behind the house. 12. Look! there's a bird in that tree. 13. Give some cakes to the birds. 14. Why do you not wear your hats? 15. They are not beautiful. 16. Do you like this hat or that hat? 17. I prefer this hat.

E. *Rapid reading:*

L'ÎLE DE LA CITÉ. LA CONCIERGERIE

L'île de la Cité est la partie la plus ¹ ancienne et la plus centrale de la ville. Au temps ² de Jules César, cette île de la Sequana ³ portait ⁴ le nom ⁵ de Lutetia.⁶ Elle avait ⁷ pour habitants les Parisii, d'où ⁸ est venu ⁹ le nom de Paris.

La sortie de la station de la Cité est près du Marché ¹⁰ aux Fleurs. Les Français aiment bien ¹¹ les fleurs; on en voit partout ¹² en France.

J'ai visité d'abord ¹³ la Conciergerie, prison célèbre, qui fait partie ¹⁴ du grand Palais de Justice. Elle date du treizième ¹⁵ siècle, de l'époque de Saint Louis.¹⁶ Pendant ¹⁷ la Terreur,¹⁸ le Tribunal Révolutionnaire était installé ¹⁹ dans une des salles de cet édifice. Près de ²⁰ trois mille ²¹ personnes en ²² sortirent pour aller à la guillotine. J'ai vu ²³

les cachots²⁴ de la reine²⁵ Marie-Antoinette et de Robespierre. En sortant, j'ai regardé avec intérêt l'une des deux



Le Marché aux Fleurs et la Conciergerie

tours²⁶ qui flanquent l'entrée de la Conciergerie, la *tour de l'Horloge*.²⁷ Cette tour date du quatorzième²⁸ siècle.

En quittant la Conciergerie, j'ai passé par le Marché aux Fleurs où j'ai acheté des bottes²⁹ de marguerites,³⁰ de pensées³¹ et de violettes.

¹ most. ² time. ³ Seine (*Latin*). ⁴ bore. ⁵ name. ⁶ Lutèce. ⁷ had. ⁸ whence. ⁹ come. ¹⁰ market. ¹¹ well. ¹² everywhere. ¹³ first. ¹⁴ forms a part. ¹⁵ thirteenth. ¹⁶ Louis IX. ¹⁷ during. ¹⁸ Reign of Terror. ¹⁹ was installed. ²⁰ nearly. ²¹ thousand. ²² from it. ²³ seen. ²⁴ dungeons. ²⁵ queen. ²⁶ towers. ²⁷ clock. ²⁸ fourteenth. ²⁹ bunches. ³⁰ daisies. ³¹ pansies.

LESSON XI

54. Agreement of Past Participle. In a compound tense with *avoir* the past participle agrees in gender and number with a direct object preceding it. The masculine plural adds -s, the feminine singular adds -e, the feminine plural adds -es. The past participle does not agree with *en*.

Le chapeau que j'ai acheté.

The hat (that) I bought.

Les chapeaux que j'ai achetés.

The hats (that) I bought.

Quelle maison avez-vous achetée?

What house did you buy?

(Maisons) Je les ai achetées.

(Houses) I bought them.

But: J'ai acheté les maisons.

I bought the houses.

Avez-vous des fleurs? Oui, j'en ai
acheté hier.

Have you any flowers? Yes,
I bought some yesterday.

55. Some Relatives. 1. The relative pronouns of most common use are *qui*, *who*, *which*, *that*, as subject, and *que*, *whom*, *which*, *that*, as direct object of a verb.

L'homme *qui* entre.

The man who is coming in.

Les chevaux *qui* sont ici.

The horses which are here.

Les pommes *que* j'ai achetées.

The apples that I have bought.

Les amis *que* j'attends.

The friends for whom I am waiting.

2. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French.

Les livres *que* j'ai achetés hier. The books I bought yesterday.

56. Use of *y*, *there*, *in that place*. *Y* stands for a place already mentioned, and does not imply the idea of pointing as does *là*. It stands before the verb like a pronoun object.

Est-il à l'école? Il *y* est.

Is he at school? He is (there).

VOCABULARY

agréable [agreabl] agreeable,
pleasant
le bijou [bizu] jewel (pl. bijoux)

le chou [ʃu] cabbage (pl. choux)
demeurer [dəmœre] to dwell,
live

le frère [frɛr] brother	la sœur [sœ:r] sister
le légume [legym] vegetable	trop [trɔ] too, too much, too many (<i>requires de before a noun</i>)
Marguerite [margɛrit] Margaret	trouver [truve] to find; se —, be (<i>location</i>)
la pension [pãsɔ̃] boarding house, board	la ville [vil] city; en —, downtown
la pomme de terre [pɔ̃mdɛtɛ:r] potato	y [i] there (<i>place already mentioned; no idea of pointing</i>)
la propriétaire [prɔpriɛtɛ:r] proprietor, landlady	
la salle à manger [salamã:ʒɛ] dining room	

EXERCISES

A. Jean demeure dans une pension. Mme Thomas en est la propriétaire.

Le frère de Mme Thomas, monsieur Durand, qui demeure à la campagne, a apporté des légumes à sa sœur. Les choux qu'elle a choisis se trouvent sur la table dans la salle à manger près d'un sac de pommes de terre. Il y a aussi des gâteaux sur la table.

Les deux filles de M. Durand se trouvent dans la salle à manger. Les chapeaux qu'elles portent sont beaux.

MME THOMAS. — Ces chapeaux sont très beaux. Où les avez-vous achetés, Marguerite?

MARGUERITE. — Nous les avons achetés en ville. Nous y avons été ce matin. La jeune fille qui les a vendus est très agréable. Elle en a vendu beaucoup. Nous avons acheté aussi des bijoux.

M. DURAND. — Vous parlez trop, Marguerite. L'auto attend à la porte.

B. *Written*: 1. John and Robert are in the dining room of the boarding house. 2. They have been waiting several minutes for Mrs. Thomas. 3. Robert is standing near a window which he has closed. 4. He is looking at Mr. Durand's daughters who are in the garden.

ROBERT. — 5. There are Mr. Durand's daughters in the garden, John. 6. They are young and pleasant, but they wear too many jewels. 7. Look at those hats! Where did they buy them?

JOHN. — 8. They live in the country. 9. They are with their father who has brought some vegetables to his sister, Mrs. Thomas. 10. The cabbages which he brought are in the kitchen.

ROBERT. — 11. Cabbages! We had some yesterday. 12. I didn't eat any. 13. I don't like them.

JOHN. — 14. Where are the cakes Mrs. Thomas bought this morning? 15. Here they are on the table; do you want some?

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with qui or que and use the proper form of the verb in parenthesis:* 1. Qui est l'homme — a (vendre) ces canifs? 2. Voilà les bijoux — elles ont (porter) hier. 3. Voici l'homme — les a (vendre). 4. Qui est la jeune fille — vous avez (regarder)? 5. Ces livres — Jean a (acheter) hier sont utiles. 6. Où se trouvent les pommes de terre — M. Bernard a (apporter)? 7. La propriétaire en a-t-elle (acheter)? 8. Les avez-vous (manger)? 9. J'en ai beaucoup (manger).

(2) *Pronounce the following expressions, then change them to the singular:* 1. les oiseaux. 2. les villes. 3. aux jeunes filles. 4. les fils. 5. aux écoles. 6. les journaux. 7. aux yeux. 8. aux hommes. 9. gris. 10. aux tantes. 11. les choux. 12. les beaux bijoux. 13. heureux. 14. aux histoires.

D. *Oral:* 1. Show me the books which you brought. 2. There they are on the table. 3. Are they new? 4. Yes, and they are very beautiful. 5. Where did you buy them? 6. I bought them downtown. 7. Were you there yesterday? 8. Is Margaret in the dining room? 9. Yes, she is there with her sister. 10. Where are the jewels that she chose? 11. There they are on the table. 12. There are also some in that box. 13. Did you buy some yesterday? 14. No, I didn't buy any.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LE PALAIS DE JUSTICE. LA SAINTE-CHAPELLE

L'immense salle du Palais de Justice appelée ¹ la Salle des Pas-Perdus, ² avec sa grande table ³ de marbre, ⁴ est



intéressante au point de vue historique. C'était sur cette table que La Basoche, une société composée de jeunes clercs du Palais et de poètes, jouait ⁵ au moyen âge ⁶ des farces et des moralités. ⁷ Victor Hugo parle de cette salle dans son roman, ⁸ *Notre-Dame de Paris*.

Dans le même ⁹ groupe de bâtiments il y a une magnifique petite église, ¹⁰ la Sainte-Chapelle, élevée par Saint Louis. C'est un bijou d'architecture gothique.

Le Palais de Justice et la Sainte-Chapelle

La plus intéressante des églises de Paris se trouve aussi dans l'île de la Cité; c'est Notre-Dame de Paris. J'avais lu ¹¹ le roman de Victor Hugo, *Notre-Dame de Paris*, et j'avais vu ¹² au cinéma le film tiré ¹³ du roman et qui, bien entendu, ¹⁴ ne lui ¹⁵ ressemble pas beaucoup. J'étais enchanté de voir, enfin, ¹⁶ l'église elle-même. ¹⁷

¹ called. ² lost steps. ³ slab. ⁴ marble. ⁵ used to play. ⁶ Middle Ages. ⁷ morality plays. ⁸ novel. ⁹ same. ¹⁰ church. ¹¹ had read. ¹² seen. ¹³ drawn. ¹⁴ of course. ¹⁵ it. ¹⁶ finally. ¹⁷ itself.

LESSON XII

57. Feminine of Adjectives. The feminine of adjectives is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
grand [grɑ̃]	grande [grɑ̃d]	large, tall
joli [ʒoli]	jolie [ʒoli]	pretty
facile [fasil]	facile [fasil]	easy

a. Some adjectives change, in addition, **e** to **è** (§ 75, footnote 1):

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
cher [ʃɛr]	chère [ʃɛr]	dear

58. Irregularities. Change of stem takes place in certain adjectives on adding **-e**. The following lists show the commoner types:

1. Some adjectives change final **-f** to **-v**; **-x** to **-s**; **-c** to **-ch**; **-g** to **-gu(e)**:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
neuf [nœf]	neuve [nœ:v]	new (<i>recently made</i>)
heureux [œrø]	heureuse [œrø:z]	happy
blanc [blɑ̃]	blanche [blɑ̃:ʃ]	white
long [lɔ̃]	longue [lɔ̃:g]	long

2. Some adjectives double the final consonant and add **-e**:

MASCULINE	FEMININE	
ancien [ɑ̃sjɛ̃]	ancienne [asjɛn]	ancient, former
bon [bɔ̃]	bonne [bɔn]	good
gros [gro]	grosse [gro:s]	big
gentil [ʒɑ̃ti]	gentille [ʒɑ̃ti:j]	nice

3. The following adjectives have two masculine forms; the one ending in **-l** is regularly used only before a vowel or silent **h**:

MASCULINE				FEMININE		
beau	[bo]	bel	[bɛl]	belle	[bɛl]	beautiful, fine, handsome
nouveau	[nuvo]	nouvel	[nuvɛl]	nouvelle	[nuvɛl]	new (recently acquired)
vieux	[vjø]	vieil	[vjɛ:j]	vieille	[vjɛ:j]	old

59. Position of Adjectives. 1. Adjectives usually follow their nouns, especially (a) adjectives of physical qualities (shape, color, etc.); (b) adjectives of class (nationality, religion, etc.); (c) participles used as adjectives.

Une table <i>carrée</i> .	A square table.
Un chapeau <i>gris</i> .	A grey hat.
Un livre <i>français</i> .	A French book.
Une histoire <i>intéressante</i> .	An interesting story.
Une fenêtre <i>fermée</i> .	A closed window.

2. The following important adjectives usually precede their nouns:

bon	[bɔ̃]	good	vieux	[vjø]	old
gentil	[ʒɑ̃ti]	nice	grand	[grɑ̃]	large, tall, great
mauvais	[mɔvɛ]	bad	petit	[pəti]	small, little
beau	[bo]	beautiful, fine	long	[lɔ̃]	long
joli	[ʒoli]	pretty	court	[ku:r]	short
jeune	[ʒœn]	young			

Une <i>gentille petite</i> fille.	A nice little girl.
Une <i>belle vieille</i> maison.	A beautiful old house.

60. Interrogative Adjectives. *Which? what?* (and also the exclamation *what a!*) are expressed by *quel? m., quels? m. pl., quelle? f., quelles? f. pl.*

<i>Quel</i> [kɛl] bateau?	Which (what) boat?
<i>Quelle</i> [kɛl] rue?	Which (what) street?
<i>Quel joli</i> parc!	What a pretty park!

VOCABULARY

le bateau [bato] boat (<i>pl. bateaux</i>)	bon [bɔ̃], bonne [bɔn] good
blanc [blɑ̃], blanche [blɑ:ʃ]	carré [kare] square
white	difficile [difisil] difficult, hard

l'enfant [âfã] *m. & f.* child
 facile [fasil] easy
 français [frãse] French; leçon
 de —, French lesson (§ 80, 6)
 gentil [ʒãti], gentille [ʒãt:j]
 nice
 grand [grã] large, tall
 gros [gro], grosse [gro:s] big
 l'histoire [istwa:r] *f.* story
 intéressant [êteresã] interesting

jaune [ʒo:n] yellow
 jeune [ʒœn]: — fille girl
 joli [ʒoli] pretty
 le lac [lak] lake
 long [lõ], longue [lõ:g] long
 le parc [park] park
 petit [pəti] little, small
 pourquoi [purkwa] why
 rouge [ru:ʒ] red

EXERCISES

A. Les trois jeunes amies, Marie, Lucie et Louise, se trouvent dans un grand parc près de leur école. Elles y sont depuis longtemps. Elles ont apporté leur grammaire française, mais elles ne l'ont pas étudiée. Elles sont sous un bel arbre qui porte des fleurs blanches. Derrière cet arbre se trouve un joli petit lac. Près de ce lac il y a une vieille maison grise. Un vieil homme y demeure qui vend aux enfants des bateaux rouges et jaunes.

LUCIE. — Vous n'étudiez pas votre leçon de français, Louise. Quels livres avez-vous apportés? Voulez-vous ma grammaire française ou mon crayon?

LOUISE. — Non, merci. J'ai une bonne grammaire et aussi du papier blanc et une bonne plume. . . . Je n'aime pas cette leçon. Elle est trop difficile.

LUCIE. — Oui, le professeur a donné une longue leçon aujourd'hui. Ne l'étudions pas.

B. *Written:* 1. Mr. Duval is waiting for his daughter in a little street near the beautiful park. 2. He is in a large red automobile which he bought yesterday. 3. He wears a grey hat. 4. There is a large square box in the car. 5. In that box there are some red and yellow apples and some pears. 6. He is talking to an old friend who lives in a fine white house near the park. 7. His friend has a nice little daughter who is standing near the automobile.



NOTRE-DAME DE PARIS

MR. DUVAL. — 8. What a pretty little girl you have there, my friend! (9. *He gives an apple to the little girl.*)

THE LITTLE GIRL. — 10. Thank you very much, sir. 11. What a beautiful apple! 12. Those pears are good also, aren't they, sir? 13. Thank you, sir. Good-bye!

MR. DUVAL. — 14. I am waiting for my daughter who is studying her French lesson in the park. 15. She has a long lesson to-day. 16. She has been studying a long time.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Use the correct form of the adjectives in parenthesis and place them in their proper position in the sentence:* 1. (intéressant) Ils demeurent dans une ville. 2. (grand, jaune) Son père a une automobile. 3. (quel) Ferme a-t-il achetée? 4. (quel, beau) Enfant (m.)! 5. (très riche) Il a une tante. 6. (gentil, petit) La fille de M. Bernard demeure ici. 7. (quel, gris) Grands yeux! 8. (heureux) Voilà une jeune fille! 9. (bonne) Elle a une mère. 10. (vieux) Jean a parlé à un homme. 11. (nouveau) Ils attendent leur ami. 12. (long) Avez-vous fini votre lettre? 13. (petit, rouge) Pourquoi avez-vous choisi cette tulipe? 14. (joli, blanc) J'aime mieux ces roses. 15. (facile) Il nous a donné une leçon. 16. (vieux, carré) Nous demeurons dans une maison.

D. *Oral:* 1. Louise is waiting for her new friend, Mrs. Durand. 2. She has been waiting for her for ten minutes. 3. Louise is wearing a red hat. 4. It is new. 5. There's her friend in that large yellow car. 6. What a fine car! 7. A pretty child (f.) is (**se trouver**) in the car. 8. She is very happy. 9. There is a large basket near the little girl. 10. In the basket are (**se trouver**) white roses and red tulips. 11. What books have you there, Louise? 12. Have you an interesting book? 13. No, I have my French dictionary. 14. We have a long lesson to-day. 15. We are studying an old French story.

E. *Rapid reading:*

NOTRE-DAME DE PARIS

La cathédrale de Notre-Dame est l'une des merveilles ¹ de l'architecture gothique. Elle fut ² commencée au dou-

zième ³ siècle. La façade est majestueuse, et l'intérieur produit ⁴ un effet ⁵ solennel ⁶ dans la douce ⁷ lumière ⁸ qui tombe ⁹ de ses belles rosaces. ¹⁰



Une Chimère de Notre-Dame

Je suis monté ¹¹ dans les tours pour voir les cloches, ¹² tant aimées ¹³ de ce pauvre ¹⁴ bossu, ¹⁵ Quasimodo. Il y en a une, dans la tour du sud, qui pèse ¹⁶ seize ¹⁷ mille kilogrammes. ¹⁸

On m'avait montré ¹⁹ en Amérique des cartes-postales représentant ²⁰ les « Chimères ²¹ de Notre-Dame », des animaux et des oiseaux grotesques. Eh bien! ²² les voilà, devant moi, sur la ba-

lustrade de la galerie. Le diable, ²³ lui-même, ²⁴ est de leur nombre et regarde la ville avec des yeux sombres. J'aime bien cette église *Notre-Dame de Paris*!

¹ marvels. ² was. ³ 12th. ⁴ produces. ⁵ effect. ⁶ solemn. ⁷ soft. ⁸ light. ⁹ falls. ¹⁰ rose windows. ¹¹ went up. ¹² bells. ¹³ so much beloved. ¹⁴ poor. ¹⁵ hunchback. ¹⁶ weighs. ¹⁷ sixteen. ¹⁸ kilogram = about 2½ lbs. ¹⁹ had shown. ²⁰ representing. ²¹ gargoyles. ²² well! ²³ devil. ²⁴ himself.

LESSON XIII

61. General Nouns. Nouns used in a general sense take the definite article in French, though not commonly in English.

<i>L'histoire est difficile.</i>	History is difficult.
<i>Les chevaux sont utiles.</i>	Horses are useful.
<i>Les affaires sont les affaires.</i>	Business is business.

62. The Indefinite Pronoun *on*. 1. *One, some one, we, you, they, people*, used indefinitely, are represented in French by *on*, with the verb always in the singular.

<i>On [ɔ̃] parle de Jean.</i>	We (you, they, etc.) speak of John.
<i>On va souvent au théâtre.</i>	We (you, they, etc.) often go to the theater.

2. When following a verb with a final vowel, *on* is joined to it by *-t-* (§ 26, footnote 2).

<i>Où va-t-on maintenant?</i>	Where do we (etc.) go now?
<i>A-t-on fini la leçon?</i>	Have they (etc.) finished the lesson?

3. An *on* construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not mentioned.

<i>Ici on parle français.</i>	French is spoken here.
<i>Que vend-on ici?</i>	What is sold here?

63. Pronoun Objects. 1. The personal pronoun has, for the indirect object of the third person, the following forms:

<i>lui</i> [lɥi] (to, for) him, (to, for) her	<i>leur</i> [lø:r] (to, for) them
---	-----------------------------------

2. *Lui* and *leur* precede the verb but follow *le, la, les*. (*En* follows all of these pronouns; *y* precedes *en*.)

<i>Nous lui parlons.</i>	We speak to him (to her).
<i>Je la lui donne.</i>	I give it to him (to her).
<i>Je les leur donne.</i>	I give them to them.
<i>Je leur en donne.</i>	I give them some.

64. *Aller, to go* (no preposition before following infinitive¹; auxiliary *être*, § 65):

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE ²	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
<i>aller</i> [ale] <i>to go</i>	<i>allant</i> [alã] <i>going</i>	<i>allé</i> [ale] <i>gone</i>
4. PRESENT INDICATIVE	5. IMPERATIVE	
<i>je vais</i> [ʒəve]		
<i>tu vas</i> [tyva]	<i>va</i> [va]	
<i>il va</i> [ilva]		
<i>nous allons</i> [nuzalõ]	<i>allons</i> [alõ]	
<i>vous allez</i> [vuzale]	<i>allez</i> [ale]	
<i>ils vont</i> [ilvõ]		

VOCABULARY

<i>l'affaire</i> [afɛr] <i>f. affair, thing;</i> <i>les —s business</i>	<i>cher</i> [ʃɛr], <i>chère</i> [ʃɛ:r] <i>dear,</i> <i>expensive</i>
<i>le billet</i> [biʒe] <i>ticket</i>	<i>envoyer</i> [ãvwaje] <i>to send</i>
<i>le bonbon</i> [bõbõ] <i>piece of candy;</i> <i>les —s candy (collective)</i>	<i>gai</i> [ge] <i>gay</i>
<i>le cinéma(tographe)</i> [sinema- (tõgraf)] <i>moving-picture,</i> <i>"movies"</i>	<i>gros</i> [gro], <i>grosse</i> [gro:s] <i>big</i>
	<i>la pêche</i> [pɛ:ʃ] <i>peach</i>
	<i>le théâtre</i> [tea:tr] <i>theater</i>
	<i>travailler</i> [travaje] <i>to work</i>

EXERCISES

A. Jean Bernard se trouve à la pension, avec deux amis. Georges n'y est pas. Ils vont étudier leur leçon de français. Aujourd'hui le professeur leur a donné une longue leçon. Jean a acheté des bonbons. Il les leur donne. On est gai, on parle et on mange des bonbons. On ne travaille pas beaucoup. Georges entre. Il apporte des pêches qu'on lui a données. Il va à la table.

GEORGES. — Que mange-t-on ici? Des bonbons! Les jeunes filles aiment les bonbons. Les hommes ne les aiment

¹ Some verbs take no preposition before a following infinitive; some take *de, à*, etc. See Lesson XXV.

² The present participle of all verbs ends in *-ant* (§ 99). It is translated into English by verb + *-ing*.

pas Voici des pêches. Elles ne sont pas chères, mais elles sont bonnes. (*Il leur en donne.*)

JEAN. — Vous parlez trop, Georges. Est-ce que vous n'allez pas travailler? . . . Nous allons au théâtre cet après-midi. Paul a acheté des billets. (*Jean apporte à Georges un gros dictionnaire français et des bonbons. Il les lui donne. On travaille.*)

B. *Written:* 1. John and George are not now at John's. 2. They are in Paul Melvin's car. 3. His father sent it to him yesterday. 4. Automobiles are dear, but Mr. Melvin is rich. 5. He has three. 6. George is behind Paul. 7. He is talking to him. 8. He is happy. 9. He likes candy. 10. Some has been given to him.

GEORGE. — 9. Do you want some candy, Paul? 10. Here is the box. (11. *He gives it to him.*) 12. Where are we going now?

PAUL. — 13. I am going to the movies. 14. Do you want to go (there)? 15. Here are some tickets which were sold to me. (16. *He shows them to his friends; then he gives them to them.* 17. *A man is in front of the door of the theater.* 18. *They give him their tickets, and they go in (there).*)

Supplementary Drill

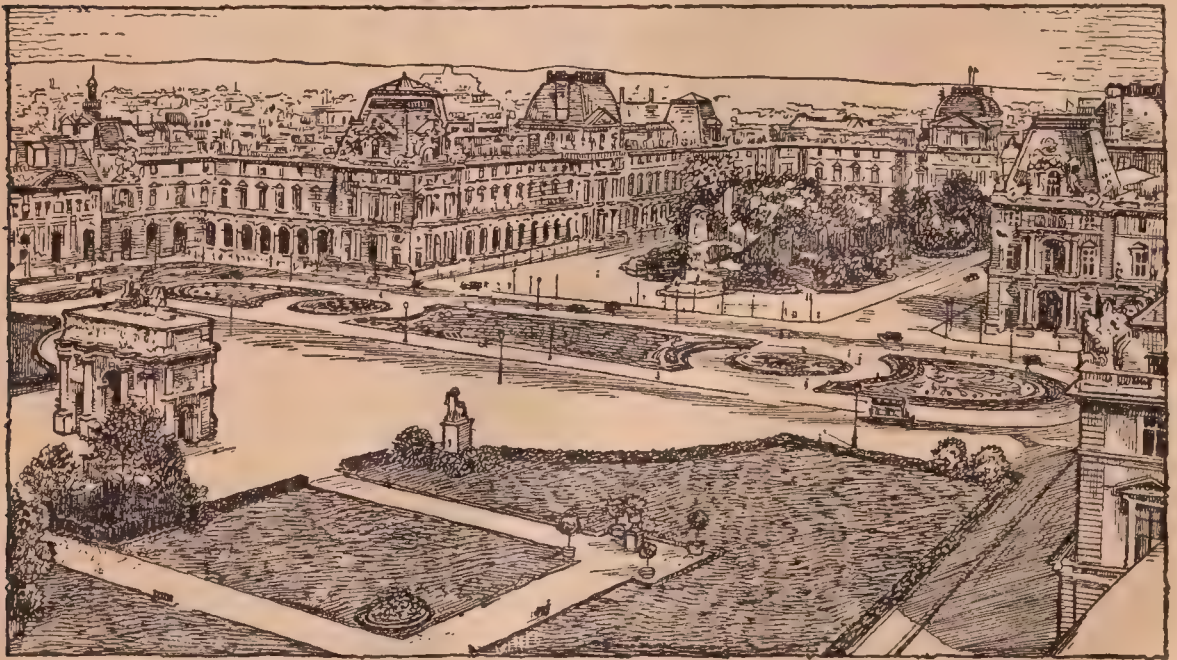
C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with the definite article or with some form of the partitive construction:* 1. J'aime — fleurs. 2. Avez-vous — roses jaunes? 3. Je n'ai pas — roses. 4. Aimez-vous — bonbons? 5. Voulez-vous — bonbons? 6. — dictionnaires sont utiles. 7. Avez-vous — papier? 8. Je n'ai pas — papier. 9. — papier gris n'est pas bon. 10. Est-ce qu'il y a — encre rouge ici? 11. — chevaux sont — animaux.

(2) *Substitute le, la, les, lui, leur, y or en for the words in italics:* 1. Je ne parle pas à Louise. 2. Nous n'allons pas au théâtre. 3. On a vendu des bonbons. 4. Il a montré le billet à ses amis. 5. A-t-on vendu le cheval à votre oncle? 6. Avez-vous montré les animaux à

vos amis? 7. Nous avons été à la maison. 8. J'ai donné l'assiette à ma sœur. 9. Il a envoyé les fleurs à sa tante 10. Nous ne donnons pas de roses à nos mères. 11. Elles ont acheté des chapeaux en ville.

D. *Oral:* 1. Are hats sold here? 2. I don't like grey hats. 3. They are selling many of them now. 4. Business is business. 5. Do they sell fruits in the street? 6. Yes, they are sold there. 7. Have you peaches? 8. Peaches are good. 9. My brother likes them. 10. Did you bring him some? 11. Some were sent to him. 12. Let's go to the "movies." 13. Are the tickets bought? 14. Were the tickets sent to our friends? 15. Yes, they were sent to them. 16. Did George give you a ticket? 17. No, he didn't give it to me.

E. *Rapid reading (Le Journal d'Alice):*



LE LOUVRE

Nous avons quitté l'hôtel hier, et nous sommes maintenant dans une pension de famille. La propriétaire est très agréable et nous donne souvent ¹ l'occasion de parler français.

Cet après-midi, ma mère et moi, nous avons visité le Louvre, ancienne ² résidence royale, transformée en musée.

Ernest n'a pas voulu ³ venir ⁴ avec nous. Il est trop paresseux.⁵ Il dit ⁶ que les musées le fatiguent.

Le musée du Louvre est situé sur la rive droite ⁷ de la Seine, au centre de la ville. C'est un bâtiment immense, le plus grand palais du monde, couvrant une superficie ⁸ d'environ vingt ⁹ hectares.¹⁰ On m'a dit ¹¹ qu'à l'origine c'était une petite maison où les chasseurs ¹² se réunissaient ¹³ pour aller à la chasse aux loups.¹⁴ C'est pourquoi on l'appelle ¹⁵ « Louvre ». Philippe-Auguste le transforma en château vers ¹⁶ le début ¹⁷ du treizième ¹⁸ siècle. Il fut considérablement ¹⁹ agrandi ²⁰ par Charles Cinq,²¹ François Premier et leurs successeurs.

¹ often. ² former. ³ wanted. ⁴ to come. ⁵ lazy. ⁶ says. ⁷ right bank. ⁸ area. ⁹ twenty. ¹⁰ hectare = about 2½ acres. ¹¹ told. ¹² hunters. ¹³ used to meet. ¹⁴ wolves. ¹⁵ call. ¹⁶ towards. ¹⁷ beginning. ¹⁸ 13th. ¹⁹ greatly. ²⁰ enlarged. ²¹ Fifth.

LESSON XIV

65. Verbs with *être* as Auxiliary. 1. The verb *être* + the past participle forms the compound tenses of some intransitive verbs, denoting largely change of place or condition. The following are of most frequent use:

INFINITIVES			PAST PARTICIPLES	
aller	[ale]	to go	allé	[ale]
arriver	[arive]	to arrive	arrivé	[arive]
entrer	[ãtre]	to enter, go (come) in	entré	[ãtre]
mourir	[muri:r]	to die	mort	[mɔ:r]
naître	[nɛ:tr]	to be born	né	[ne]
partir	[parti:r]	to leave, depart	parti	[parti]
rester	[ræste]	to remain, stay	resté	[ræste]
sortir	[sɔrti:r]	to go (come) out	sorti	[sɔrti]
tomber	[tɔ̃be]	to fall	tombé	[tɔ̃be]
venir	[vɛni:r]	to come	venu	[vɛny]

2. The past participles of such verbs agree with the subject, thus:

Past Indefinite of *arriver*, to arrive

je suis arrivé(e)	[arive]
tu es arrivé(e)	[arive]
il (elle) est arrivé(e)	[arive]
nous sommes arrivé(e)s	[arive]
vous êtes arrivé(e)s	[arive]
ils (elles) sont arrivé(e)s	[arive]

VOCABULARY

encore [ãkɔ:r] still, yet	parce que [parskə] because
enfin [ãfẽ] finally, at last	raconter [rakɔ̃t] to relate, tell
fatigué [fatig] tired	retard [rɛta:r]: être en —, to be late (belated)
l'heure [œ:r] <i>f.</i> hour; de bonne —, early	stupide [stypid] stupid, silly
malade [malad] ill, sick	le verbe [verb] verb

EXERCISES

A. Ce matin les amies de Louise sont arrivées de bonne heure à l'école. Elles sont entrées dans la salle de classe. Elles étudient les verbes français. Enfin Louise est arrivée. Elle leur a parlé. Voici l'histoire qu'elle leur a racontée.

Elle est en retard parce qu'elle est allée ce matin chez une petite amie qui est malade. Elle y est restée une heure. Cette petite fille a été au parc hier. Elle est tombée dans le lac. Elle n'est pas morte, mais elle est encore très malade. Le vieil homme qui demeure près du lac l'a portée à la maison. Louise a apporté des bonbons à sa petite amie, mais on ne les lui a pas donnés.

Enfin Louise est sortie de la maison, et elle est venue à l'école. Elle est très fatiguée parce qu'elle est venue très vite.

B. *Written:* 1. George is waiting for Lucy in the classroom. 2. She is late. 3. He has been waiting for her a long time. 4. They (ils) are going to study the French verbs which the professor gave them yesterday. 5. Lucy

came early, but she stayed in the yard. 6. Finally she entered the room.

LUCY. — 7. Yesterday the professor told (related) a good story. 8. Here it is. 9. He spoke of a little girl who was born in this city. 10. She went out of the house, she departed, she went to school. 11. She came to the school, she arrived there quickly, she went in. 12. She fell, and she stayed there, dead.

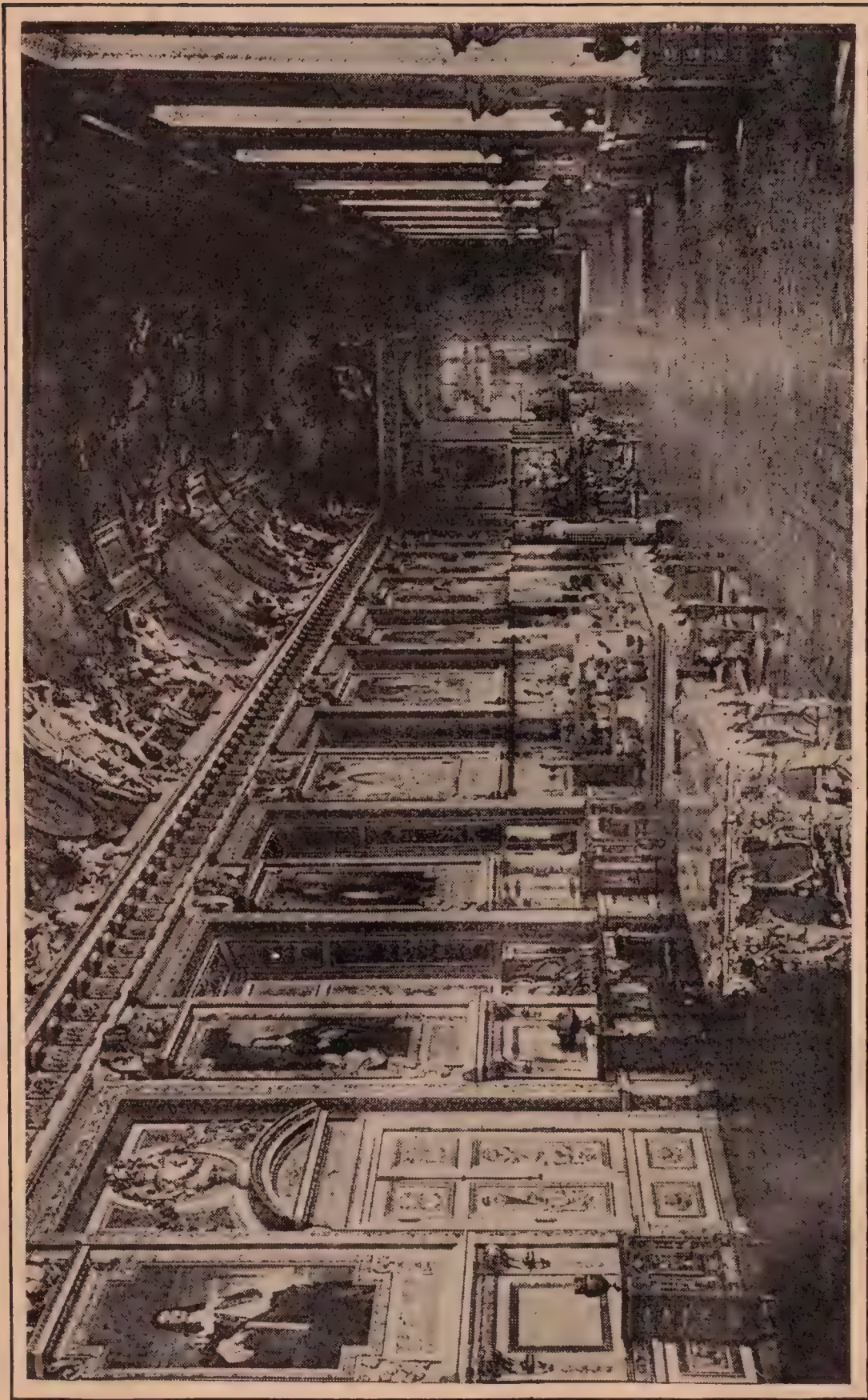
GEORGE. — 13. That story is silly. 14. Why did she die? 15. Where did she fall? 16. Why did the professor tell that story?

LUCY. — 17. Why? What a man! 18. Because in that story you have the verbs which are found (*se trouvent*) in the lesson.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Fill in the blanks with the past indefinite tense of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (*travailler*) Nous ——— beaucoup ——— hier. 2. (*aller*) Nous ——— ——— chez Louise. 3. (*rester*) Nous y ——— ——— long-temps. 4. (*venir*) Enfin Marie y ——— ———. 5. (*entrer*) Elle ——— ——— dans la salle à manger. 6. (*raconter*) Voici l'histoire qu'elle ——— ———. 7. (*mourir*) Son oncle ——— ——— hier. 8. (*naître*) Il ——— ——— dans cette ville. 9. (*arriver*) Les tantes de Marie ——— ——— ce matin. 10. (*apporter*) Elles lui ——— ——— des livres. 11. (*apporter*) Voici les livres qu'elles ——— ———. 12. (*sortir*) Une de ses tantes ——— ——— ce matin. 13. (*tomber*) Elle ——— ——— dans la rue. 14. (*partir*) Enfin Marie ——— ———.

D. *Oral:* 1. Here is a letter which has arrived. 2. They brought it yesterday. 3. Mrs. Durand's mother has died. 4. She was born in this city. 5. My mother went to Mrs. Durand's house. 6. She entered the house. 7. She talked with Mrs. Durand. 8. She stayed there a long time. 9. Finally she came out. 10. I left quickly. 11. I came to school. 12. Am I late? 13. Did the professor stay a long time? 14. What story did he tell? 15. I am tired because I came quickly.



LA GALERIE D'APOLLON, MUSÉE DU LOUVRE

E. *Rapid reading:*

L'INTÉRIEUR DU LOUVRE

Les galeries de peintures et de sculptures nous ont surtout ¹ intéressés. Les salles d'antiquités, avec leurs sarcophages ² et leurs momies, ne m'amuse pas du tout.³ Mon oncle, qui est professeur d'histoire, dit que je suis une ignorante.

Nous avons vu ⁴ beaucoup de belles statues, entre ⁵ autres, la célèbre Vénus de Milo, qui est un chef-d'œuvre ⁶ de la sculpture antique. Les galeries de peinture dont je me souviens ⁷ le mieux ⁸ sont la Grande Galerie, la Salle Carrée et la Galerie d'Apollon.⁹ La Grande Galerie contient ¹⁰ beaucoup de chefs-d'œuvre de grands maîtres ¹¹ comme ¹² Raphaël, Titien, Murillo et bien ¹³ d'autres. Là se trouve le tableau célèbre de Léonard de Vinci, *la Joconde* ou *Mona Lisa*, à l'énigmatique sourire.¹⁴ Ce portrait a été volé ¹⁵ en mil neuf cent onze,¹⁶ mais on l'a retrouvé,¹⁷ deux ans après, en Italie. Dans la Salle Carrée, on voit un tableau de grandes dimensions, *les Noces* ¹⁸ *de Cana* par Paul Véronèse. Il a presque ¹⁹ sept mètres de haut ²⁰ et environ dix mètres de large.²¹

¹ especially. ² sarcophagi, coffins. ³ not at all. ⁴ seen. ⁵ among. ⁶ masterpiece. ⁷ which I remember. ⁸ the best. ⁹ Apollo. ¹⁰ contains. ¹¹ masters. ¹² like. ¹³ many. ¹⁴ smile. ¹⁵ stolen. ¹⁶ 1911. ¹⁷ found again. ¹⁸ wedding. ¹⁹ almost. ²⁰ height. ²¹ width.

LESSON XV

66. Personal Pronoun Objects. The remaining forms (in addition to *le, la, les, lui, leur*, previously given) serve both as direct and indirect objects of verbs. (For elision, see § 19.)

me [mə]	me, to (for) me	nous [nu]	us, to (for) us
te [tə]	thee, to (for) thee	vous [vu]	you, to (for) you
se [sə]	himself, herself, itself, oneself to (for) himself, etc.	se [sə]	themselves, to (for) themselves

67. Position. 1. Personal pronouns used as direct or indirect objects of the verb always precede it, except in the affirmative imperative when they follow (§ 69).

Il *le leur* donne.

He gives it to them.

Ne *le leur* donnez pas.

Do not give it to them.

But: *Donnez-le-leur.*

Give it to them.

2. **En**, of it, of them, some, any and **y**, to it, to them, there, follow the same rules for sentence position as the personal pronoun objects.

Il *leur en* donne.

He gives them some.

Donnez-leur-en.

Give them some.

(Paris) *J'y* vais.

(Paris) I am going there.

N'y allons pas.

Let's not go there.

3. Order before verb or auxiliary:

me	}	before	{ le la les }	before	{ lui leur }	before y }	before en
te							
se							
nous							
vous							

ORDER: — Indir. object, dir. object, **lui, leur, y, en** (verb or auxiliary).

Il *nous les* donne.

He gives them to us.

Il *le leur* donne.

He gives it to them.

Il *m'en* donne.

He gives some to me.

Il *y en* a.

There are some.

68. Faire, to do, make (no preposition before following infinitive):

1. INFINITIVE

2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE

3. PAST PARTICIPLE

faire [fɛr] to do,
make

faisant [fəzɑ̃] doing,
making

fait [fɛ] done,
made

4. PRESENT INDICATIVE

5. IMPERATIVE

je fais [ʒəfɛ]

tu fais [tyfɛ]

il fait [ilfɛ]

nous faisons [nufəzɔ̃]

vous faites [vufɛt]

ils font [ilfɔ̃]

fais [fɛ]

faisons [fəzɔ̃]

faites [fɛt]

VOCABULARY

le bruit [brɥi] noise	le macaron [macarɔ̃] macaroon
la carotte [karɔt] carrot	la pâtisserie [patisri] pastry (<i>pie, cake, etc.</i>)
délicieux [delisjø], délicieuse [delisjø:z] delicious	toujours [tuʒur] always, still
le dîner [dine] dinner; au or à —, at (to) dinner	tout de suite [tudsɥit] immediately, at once
là-bas [labɑ] yonder, over there	

EXERCISES

A. Jean et Robert sont sortis de leur chambre ce matin, mais ils ne sont pas partis tout de suite. Ils ont fait du bruit. Mme Thomas est sortie de la cuisine et leur a parlé.

MME THOMAS. — Où allez-vous M. Bernard? Vous faites beaucoup de bruit. . . . Voulez-vous entrer dans la salle à manger? (*Ils y sont entrés.*) Mon frère est venu à la pension hier. Voilà des légumes qu'il a apportés. Vous aimez les légumes. Je vais vous les montrer. Regardez ces belles carottes là-bas. (*Elle les leur montre.*) M. Bernard, je vais vous en donner au dîner ce soir.

JEAN. — Merci beaucoup, madame, mais ne m'en donnez pas, s'il vous plaît. Donnez-en à Robert. Il aime les légumes.

ROBERT. — J'aime mieux les gâteaux. Mais les gâteaux qu'on vend en ville ne sont pas bons. Les pâtisseries que vous faites, madame, sont toujours délicieuses. Avez-vous fait ces jolis petits macarons qui sont sur la table? Vous allez nous en donner, n'est-ce pas?

B. *Written:* 1. John and Robert came early to school. 2. They entered the yard and talked with Louise and Mary. 3. They showed them the macaroons. 4. Finally they gave them several. 5. They made a great deal of noise. 6. George came at once out of the school.

GEORGE. — 7. What are you doing there, John? 8. You have some cakes, haven't you? 9. You are going to give me one, aren't you?

LOUISE. — 10. Don't give it to him, John. 11. Children are always ill when they eat cakes.

JOHN. — 12. There are still several in the bag over there, George. 13. I am going to give them to you. 14. You always give us some.

THE PROFESSOR, *who has just arrived*. — 15. Good afternoon, my friends. 16. You are making a great deal of noise. 17. I spoke to you yesterday of a little girl who died. 18. She died because she ate too many cakes.

LOUISE, *to John*. — 19. Where is the bag, John? I am going to give a great many to George.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Substitute personal pronouns and y or en for the words in italics*: 1. Est-ce que vous faites *des macarons* dans la cuisine? 2. Elle nous montre *les carottes*. 3. Il m'a vendu *les bonbons*. 4. On nous a raconté *l'histoire*. 5. Vous faites beaucoup de bruit *dans la classe*. 6. Elle a envoyé *du papier au professeur*. 7. Ne nous envoyez pas *les billets*. 8. N'envoyez pas *l'argent à vos neveux*. 9. Pourquoi m'avez-vous apporté *les billets*? 10. Est-elle née *dans cette ville*? 11. Il apporte *le papier à sa tante* tout de suite. 12. N'envoyez pas *la lettre à ma mère*. 13. Qu'est-ce que nous faisons *dans la classe*? 14. Nous mangeons *des gâteaux dans la salle à manger*. 15. N'allez pas *en ville*.

D. *Oral*: 1. What are you doing over there? 2. Don't make any noise. 3. What did you do yesterday? 4. We went to the "movies." 5. The tickets we bought are dear. 6. They were sold to us downtown. 7. My brother sent them to me immediately. 8. He sent some also to my sister. 9. Don't give them to her. 10. I am going to show them to them. 11. They stayed a long time at the "movies." 12. They made a good deal of noise there. 13. What are you doing in the house? 14. We are studying verbs. 15. Did the professor give them to you yesterday? 16. Yes, he

gave us nine. 17. Why did he give them to you? 18. He gave them to us because they are very useful.



Le Jardin des Tuileries

E. *Rapid reading:*

LES TUILERIES

Dans la Galerie d'Apollon se trouvent, exposés dans des vitrines,¹ les précieux bijoux de la Couronne² et d'autres objets d'art de très grande valeur.

Dans les salles de la collection Chauchard, nous avons admiré *l'Angélus* de Millet ainsi que³ les œuvres⁴ de Corot et des autres peintres de l'école de Barbizon. Puis, nous sommes sorties. Nous avons remarqué⁵ dans le square, devant le Louvre, la statue de La Fayette, offerte à la France par les écoliers⁶ des États-Unis.

À l'ouest du Louvre s'étend⁷ le Jardin des Tuileries⁸ avec ses beaux parterres de fleurs⁹ et ses nombreuses statues. La garde suisse de Louis Seize¹⁰ fut massacrée dans le palais des Tuileries en dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-treize.¹¹ Plus tard¹² cet édifice devint¹³ la résidence de Napoléon Premier et des souverains qui lui succédèrent¹⁴ sur le trône de

France. Il fut incendié ¹⁵ en dix-huit cent soixante-onze ¹⁶ pendant la Commune.

Dans le Jardin, ma mère m'a montré une statue de Charles Perrault, l'auteur des contes de fées ¹⁷: *le Chaperon* ¹⁸ *rouge*, *Cendrillon*, ¹⁹ *le Chat botté*, ²⁰ etc. Je ne savais pas que ces charmants petits contes avaient été écrits ²¹ par un Français.

¹ show cases. ² Crown jewels. ³ as well as. ⁴ works. ⁵ noticed. ⁶ school children. ⁷ extends. ⁸ tile factories (*originally there*). ⁹ flower beds. ¹⁰ 16th. ¹¹ 1793. ¹² later. ¹³ became. ¹⁴ succeeded him. ¹⁵ burned. ¹⁶ 1871. ¹⁷ fairy tales. ¹⁸ hood. ¹⁹ **cendres**, ashes, cinders. ²⁰ in boots. ²¹ written.

LESSON XVI

69. Position of Pronoun Objects with Affirmative Imperative. 1. Personal pronoun objects follow the affirmative imperative, and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens.

Donnez-*lui* la carte.

Give him the bill of fare.

Donnez-*la* à Marie.

Give it to Mary.

Donnons-*leur* de l'argent.

Let us give them some money.

2. **Moi** and **toi** are used after an imperative instead of **me** and **te**.

Donnez-*moi* des pommes.

Give me some apples.

3. When the affirmative imperative has two objects, they are usually arranged after it in the same order as in English, and are joined to it and to one another by hyphens.

le (*la, les*)

before *moi* (*toi, lui, nous, vous, leur*).

me (*te, lui, nous, vous, leur*)

before *y* (*en*).

y

before *en*.

ORDER:— Verb + direct object + indirect object + **y** + **en**.

Donnez-*le-moi*.

Give it to me.

Donnez-*leur-en*.

Give them some.

70. Imperatives of *avoir* and *être*¹:

1. <i>avoir</i>			2. <i>être</i>		
aie	[ɛ]	have (2nd pers. sing.)	sois	[swa]	be (2nd pers. sing.)
ayons	[ɛjɔ̃]	let us have	soyons	[swajɔ̃]	let us be
ayez	[ɛje]	have (2nd pers. pl.)	soyez	[swaje]	be (2nd pers. pl.)

71. *Dire*, to say, tell, order (*de* before following infinitive):

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
<i>dire</i> [di:r] to say	<i>disant</i> [dizã] saying	<i>dit</i> [di] said
4. PRESENT INDICATIVE		5. IMPERATIVE
je dis	[ʒədi]	
tu dis	[tydi]	dis [di]
il dit	[ildi]	
nous disons	[nudizɔ̃]	disons [dizɔ̃]
vous dites	[vudit]	dites [dit]
ils disent	[ildi:z]	

VOCABULARY

assis [asi] seated, sitting (<i>p. p. of</i> asseoir)	le garçon [garsɔ̃] waiter; (<i>petit</i>) —, boy
bientôt [bjɛto] soon	la patience [pasjũ:s] patience
le café [kafe] coffee, café	prêt (à) [pre] ready
la carte [kart] bill of fare, menu	le restaurant [restɔrã] restaurant
dîner [dine] to dine, take dinner	la salade [salad] salad
la glace [glas] ice, ice cream; <i>une</i> — à la vanille [vani:j] a vanilla ice cream	le soir [swa:r] evening; <i>au</i> (le) —, in the evening
	la viande [vjã:d] meat

EXERCISES

A. Jean et Robert sont assis à une table dans un joli petit restaurant près du lac. Ils y dînent. Georges n'est pas encore arrivé.

¹ The forms of the present subjunctive are used for the 3rd singular and the 3rd plural of the imperative (§ 101).

Qu'il soit ici ce soir.

Let him be here this evening.

Qu'ils finissent la leçon.

Let them finish the lesson.

JEAN. — Qu'est-ce que Georges fait? Il est toujours en retard. Je lui ai dit ce matin, « Nous allons dîner ce soir au petit restaurant; soyez-y. »

ROBERT. — Ayez de la patience! Il va bientôt arriver; attendons-le.

JEAN. — Je ne vais pas l'attendre longtemps. Je suis prêt à dîner. Ayons de la patience, mais n'en ayons pas trop. . . . Voilà la carte sur la table. Donnez-la-moi, s'il vous plaît. Le garçon est là-bas. Dites-lui de venir, Robert.

ROBERT, *au garçon*. — Donnez-nous une viande, des légumes et des glaces à la vanille. Mais ne nous apportez pas de salade. . . . Vous voulez du café, n'est-ce pas, Jean? Garçon, donnez-nous-en aussi. (*Il le leur apporte. On dîne, on parle. Georges n'arrive pas.*)

B. *Written*: 1. John and Robert are sitting at a table in the restaurant. 2. They haven't yet finished their dinner. 3. Meat, vegetables and ice cream have been brought to them. 4. Coffee is now brought to them. 5. They are going to leave soon. 6. George has finally arrived.

JOHN. — 7. There you are at last. 8. You are always late. 9. Where were you? 10. Tell us (it to us) at once.

GEORGE. — 11. You are making a good deal of noise. 12. Have patience, my friend. 13. I am going to tell you (it to you) immediately. 14. I stayed at my uncle's. 15. You said to me: 16. "We are going to take dinner at the little restaurant; be there." 17. Here I am; where is the bill of fare, Robert?

JOHN. — 18. Don't give it to him, Robert. 19. We have finished, George. 20. Let's go to the "movies."

GEORGE. — 21. No, I'm not going (there) to-day. 22. I'm going to work, — good-bye! . . . 23. Now that they have left I'm ready to take dinner. 24. Waiter, where's the bill of fare? 25. Give it to me quickly.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Substitute le, la, les, lui, leur, y or en for the words in italics:*

1. Ne faites pas *de bruit*. 2. Parlez *au petit garçon*. 3. Racontez *cette histoire à votre oncle*. 4. Ne racontons pas *cette histoire à notre tante*. 5. N'allons pas *au cinéma*. 6. Pourquoi vont-elles *à la campagne?* 7. Envoyez *la lettre à Marie*. 8. Faisons *la salade*. 9. N'envoyez pas encore *cette lettre à mon père*. 10. Est-ce qu'elles font *des gâteaux dans la cuisine?* 11. Ne vendez pas *la viande à mes tantes*. 12. Soyez *au restaurant ce soir*. 13. Montrez *les fleurs à ma mère*. 14. Y a-t-il *des carottes dans la cuisine?* 15. Soyons *chez le professeur cet après-midi*. 16. Ne donnez pas *de glace à cette enfant*.

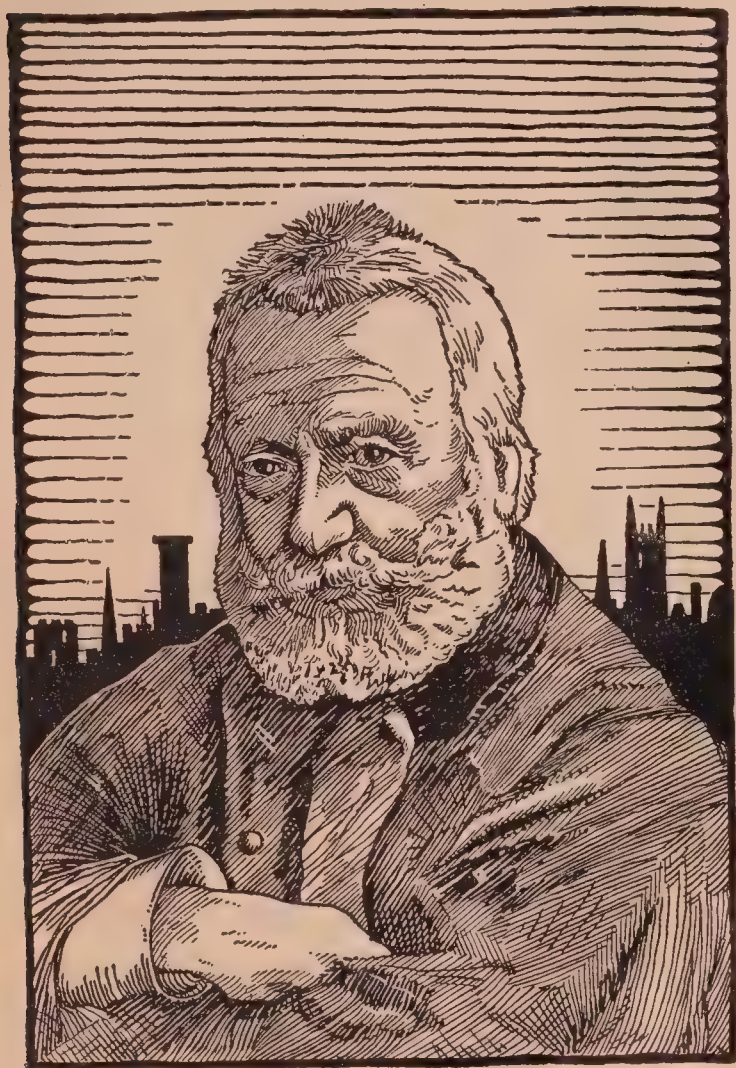
- D. *Oral:* 1. Soon the salad is brought. 2. I don't like salads. 3. Don't give me any. 4. Tell him to come. 5. I told him to come. 6. Make him come at once. 7. Let's buy some newspapers. 8. Give them to them. 9. What an interesting story! 10. Tell it to her. 11. Don't tell it to him yet. 12. The professor related it yesterday. 13. Here is the meat she bought. 14. Send it to me. 15. Those white flowers are very beautiful. 16. Send her some quickly. 17. Have patience, my friends. 18. Don't be late. 19. Why did they (*f.*) come late? 20. Are papers sold in that building? 21. Yes (*Miss*), they are sold there. 22. The waiters go to the kitchen. 23. They make the salad there. 24. They say that it is ready.

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Ernest):*

LES ÉGOUTS ¹

Hier, j'ai prié ² Alice de visiter les égouts de Paris avec moi; mais elle n'a pas voulu.³ Elle a eu tort,⁴ car ce voyage n'a rien de ⁵ désagréable. Beaucoup de dames visitent les égouts. Mon père n'a pas voulu venir non plus,⁶ parce qu'on lui a dit qu'il fallait ⁷ descendre un petit escalier,⁸ en passant d'abord ⁹ par un regard.¹⁰ Mon père est assez ¹¹ gros et gras.¹²

La visite a duré ¹³ plus d'une demi-heure.¹⁴ Nous avons fait la première partie du trajet ¹⁵ dans un petit tramway



Victor Hugo

électrique et le reste en bateau, sur le canal lui-même. Tout était bien éclairé ¹⁶ à l'électricité, mais, de temps en temps,¹⁷ nous avons remarqué de sombres couloirs ¹⁸ qui m'ont fait penser ¹⁹ à certaines scènes du film *Les Misérables* que j'ai vu au cinéma.

Les collecteurs ²⁰ d'égouts forment tous ensemble un réseau ²¹ immense. On voit aussi dans ces galeries les conduites d'eau ²² et les fils ²³ télégraphiques et téléphoniques de la ville.

¹ sewers. ² asked. ³ wasn't willing. ⁴ was wrong. ⁵ nothing. ⁶ either. ⁷ was necessary. ⁸ stairway. ⁹ first. ¹⁰ manhole. ¹¹ rather. ¹² big and fat. ¹³ lasted. ¹⁴ half an hour. ¹⁵ trip. ¹⁶ lighted. ¹⁷ from time to time. ¹⁸ passageways. ¹⁹ made me think. ²⁰ collecting pipes. ²¹ network. ²² water pipes. ²³ wires.

LESSON XVII

72. Reflexive Verbs. The compound tenses of reflexive verbs, *e.g.*, *se lever*, *to raise oneself*, *to get up*, are formed with *être*. (For the explanation of the vowel change *e* to *è* in the present indicative, see below, § 75.)

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE

*I raise myself, get up, etc.***je me lève** [ʒəmlɛv]**tu te lèves** [tytlɛv]**il (elle) se lève** [il(ɛl)s(ə)lɛv]**nous nous levons** [nunuləvɔ̃]**vous vous levez** [vuɥuləve]**ils (elles) se lèvent** [il(ɛl)s(ə)lɛv]

2. PAST INDEFINITE

*I raised myself, got up, etc.***je me suis****tu t'es****il (elle) s'est****nous nous sommes****vous vous êtes****ils (elles) se sont**} **levé(e)**
[ləve]} **levé(e)s**
[ləve]

73. Agreement of Past Participle. The past participle agrees in gender and number with a *direct* object which precedes it.

Nous nous sommes promenés.**Elle s'est levée.****But: Elle s'est lavé les mains.**

We took a walk.

She got up (raised herself).

She washed her hands (to herself the hands).

74. Definite Article for Possessive Adjective. The definite article often replaces a possessive adjective when there is no ambiguity as to the possessor, especially in referring to parts of the body, clothing, etc.

Je vous donne la main.**Ma mère leur lave les mains.****Ils se lavent les mains.**

I give you my hand.

My mother washes their hands.

They are washing their hands.

75. Some Orthographic Changes. Most verbs whose stem vowel is unaccented **e** change this vowel to **ê** when the next syllable contains a mute **e**. Some of the verbs ending in **-eler** and **-eter**, however, double the **l** and **t** instead.¹

PRESENT INDICATIVE

1. **mener** [məne] *to lead, take***je mène** [ʒəmen]**tu mènes** [tymen]**il mène** [ilmen]**nous menons** [numnɔ̃]**vous menez** [vumne]**ils mènent** [ilmen]2. **acheter** [aʃte] *to buy (at or for)***j'achète** [ʒaʃɛt]**tu achètes** [tyaʃɛt]**il achète** [ilaʃɛt]**nous achetons** [nuzaʃtɔ̃]**vous achetez** [vuzaʃte]**ils achètent** [ilzaʃɛt]

¹ The general principal involved here is the avoidance of the combination mute **e** + consonant + mute **e**.

3. **appeler** [aple] *to call*

j'appelle	[ʒapɛl]
tu appelles	[tyapɛl]
il appelle	[ilapɛl]
nous appelons	[nuzaplɔ̃]
vous appelez	[vuzaple]
ils appellent	[ilzapɛl]

a. Verbs whose stem vowel is *é*, *i.e.*, **espérer** [ɛspere], *to hope*, **répéter** [repete], *to repeat, etc.*, are like **mener** in the present tense: **j'espère** [ʒɛspɛr], *I hope*; **il répète** [ilrepɛt], *he repeats*.

b. The verb **jeter** [ʒɛte], *to throw*, doubles the consonant like **appeler**: **je jette** [ʒɛʒɛt], *I throw*; **ils jettent** [ilʒɛt], *they throw*.

VOCABULARY

amuser [amyze] <i>to amuse</i> ; s'— (à) <i>amuse oneself, have a good time</i>	la main [mɛ̃] <i>hand</i>
appeler [aple] <i>to call</i> ; s'— , <i>be called, be named</i>	les nouvelles [nuvɛl] <i>f. pl. news</i> ; donner de ses — , <i>to give news of him</i>
comment? [kɔmɑ̃] <i>how? what?</i>	novembre [nɔvɑ̃br] <i>m. November</i>
se coucher [səkuʃe] <i>to lie down, go to bed</i>	partager [partaʒe] <i>to share</i>
le cousin [kuzɛ̃] <i>cousin</i>	pauvre [po:vʁ] <i>poor</i>
la cousine [kuzin] <i>cousin</i>	se porter [səpɔʁte] <i>to be (health)</i>
demander [dəmɑ̃de] <i>to ask (à + persons; de + infinitive)</i>	pour [pur] <i>in order to, to, for</i>
se dépêcher (de) [sədəpeʃe] <i>to hasten, hurry (to)</i>	se promener [səprɔmne] <i>to go walking or riding, take a walk or ride</i> ; se — en automobile <i>take an automobile ride</i>
dévoué [devwe]: votre bien — , <i>yours truly</i>	souvent [suvɑ̃] <i>often</i>
laver [lave] <i>to wash</i> ; se — , <i>wash (to) oneself</i>	Suzanne [syzan] <i>Susan</i>
	tard [ta:r] <i>late (at a late hour)</i>
	trouver [truve]: se — , <i>to be</i>

EXERCISES

A. Voici une lettre que Louise a envoyée à Marie:

Le 4 novembre.

Ma chère amie,

Vous m'avez demandé de vous donner de mes nouvelles. En voici. Je me porte bien, et je m'amuse beaucoup à la

campagne. Je me trouve fatiguée le soir. On se couche, et on se lève de très bonne heure. Mon oncle nous appelle le matin. Il dit toujours, « Levez-vous vite, mes enfants! Dépêchez-vous! »

Je partage avec ma cousine, Suzanne, une gentille petite chambre carrée. Ce matin nous nous sommes vite levées; nous nous sommes lavé les mains et nous sommes sorties.

On mène des chevaux à la ville aujourd'hui pour les vendre. L'un des chevaux, qui est vieux, s'appelle « Georges ». On répète souvent, « Ce pauvre vieux Georges! » Ne le dites pas aux amis de Georges Lambert.

Nous nous sommes promenées cet après-midi en auto. J'espère que vous vous portez bien.

Votre bien dévouée,
LOUISE.

B. *Written:* 1. Mary and Lucy are tired because they went to bed late last night. 2. They got up quickly this morning and washed their hands. 3. Then they hurried in order to go to school. 4. They arrived there late. 5. The professor hasn't come; he is (*se porter*) not well. 6. They walk in the yard. 7. They talk and have a good time. 8. John and Robert are also in the yard. 9. Mary calls John.

MARY. — 10. Here is a letter which Louise sent me. 11. She is having a good time in the country with her cousin (*f.*). 12. She says that at the farm there is a poor old horse which is called "George." 13. Where is George Lambert? 14. I hope that you are not going to tell it to him. 15. There he is near the door; call him. 16. Hurry up; he is going to leave. 17. Don't tell him that I told it to you. 18. Have a good time! 19. Poor old George!

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French:* 1. Qu'est-ce que Louise a envoyé à Marie? 2. Pourquoi la lui a-t-elle envoyée? 3. Où est Louise?

4. Comment se porte-t-elle? 5. Comment se trouve-t-elle le soir? 6. Pourquoi se trouve-t-elle fatiguée? 7. Qui appelle les jeunes filles le matin? 8. Que dit-il? 9. Quelle chambre Louise partage-t-elle? 10. Qu'est-ce que Louise et Suzanne ont fait ce matin? 11. Où mène-t-on ces chevaux? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on y fait? 13. Comment s'appelle l'un des chevaux? 14. Est-il jeune? 15. Que fait-on souvent? 16. Est-ce que Louise va le dire aux amis de Georges Lambert? 17. Qu'est-ce qu'elles ont fait cet après-midi? 18. Qu'est-ce que Louise espère?

D. *Oral*: 1. What's your name? 2. My name is John Durand. 3. How are you this morning? 4. I hope that you are well. 5. I am well, thank you. 6. We are taking a walk with my cousin (*m.*). 7. Call him. 8. Hurry up! 9. Be ready soon. 10. You are late. 11. Yes, I went to bed late. 12. We always get up early. 13. Have a good time! 14. My aunt got up early. 15. She washed her hands. 16. She washed the children. 17. My uncle leads the horses to the farm. 18. He has found an old hat and is wearing it. 19. My aunt finds it and throws it in the street

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Alice)*:

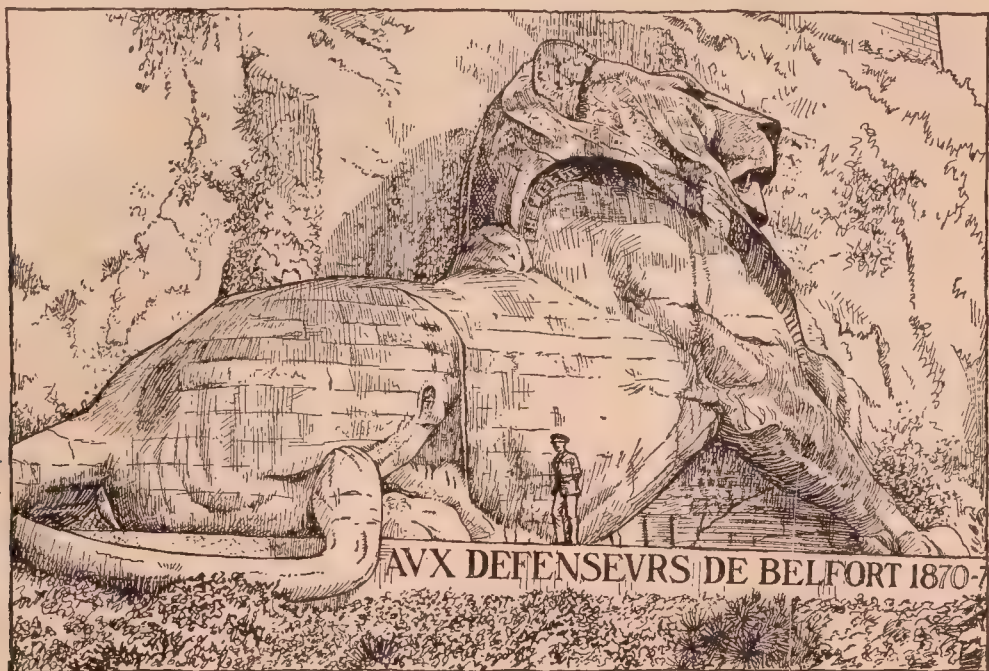
LES CATACOMBES

Pendant qu'Ernest¹ visitait les égouts, je descendais, avec une centaine² de personnes dans les sombres cavernes des catacombes, situées au sud de Paris. L'entrée est près de la place Denfert-Rochereau où se trouve aussi le fameux Lion de Belfort, statue en bronze de Bartholdi symbolisant la défense héroïque de Belfort pendant la Guerre franco-allemande.

Les catacombes étaient, à l'origine, des carrières³ datant de l'époque romaine. Au dix-huitième⁴ siècle, on y apporta les ossements⁵ d'anciens cimetières⁶ de Paris. Les restes⁷ de plusieurs millions de corps humains se trouvent dans ces galeries. Ils sont disposés de manière à⁸ former deux murs, hauts de plus de deux mètres, entre lesquels⁹ passent les visiteurs.

Au-dessus de¹⁰ ces murs sont attachées aux parois¹¹ des cavernes des figures géométriques faites d'os¹² et de têtes de

morts.¹³ On voit aussi gravées, çà et là¹⁴ sur les murs, des phrases qui rappellent¹⁵ aux passants¹⁶ la mortalité de tous les êtres¹⁷ humains.



Le Lion de Belfort
(Statue originale, à Belfort)

Les galeries ne sont éclairées¹⁸ que¹⁹ par la faible lumière²⁰ des bougies²¹ que portent les visiteurs. Quel émouvant²² spectacle pour moi qui aime le lugubre!

¹ while E. ² about a hundred. ³ quarries. ⁴ 18th. ⁵ bones. ⁶ cemeteries. ⁷ remains. ⁸ so as. ⁹ which. ¹⁰ above. ¹¹ walls. ¹² bones. ¹³ skulls. ¹⁴ here and there. ¹⁵ recall. ¹⁶ passers-by. ¹⁷ beings. ¹⁸ lighted. ¹⁹ ne . . . que, only. ²⁰ light. ²¹ candles. ²² exciting.

LESSON XVIII

76. Disjunctive Personal Pronouns. The personal pronouns already given are used as subject or object with the verb and are hence called “conjunctive.” The following forms, not being immediately connected with a verb, are called “disjunctive”:

moi [mwa] I, me
toi [twa] thou, thee, you
lui [lɥi] he, him
elle [ɛl] she, her

nous [nu] we, us
vous [vu] you
eux [ø] they (m.), them (m.)
elles [ɛl] they (f.), them (f.)

77. Use of Disjunctive Pronouns. The following are some of their uses:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed.

Qui est là? — Moi (eux, elles). Who is there? — I (they).

2. After a preposition.

Pour elles; avec moi; chez eux. For them; with me; at their house.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être**. (See § 78, below.)

C'est moi, c'est toi.

It is I, it is you (thou).

C'est lui, c'est elle.

It is he, it is she.

C'est nous, c'est vous.

It is we, it is you.

Ce sont eux, ce sont elles.

It is they (*m.*), it is they (*f.*).

78. Ce for il(s), elle(s). Hitherto in the exercises **il(s)**, **elle(s)**, standing before a verb as subject, have been used for *he, she, it, they*. When the logical subject follows the verb **être**, *he, she, it, they* are expressed by **ce**, as representative subject, in cases like the following:

C'est Marie et sa mère.

It is Mary and her mother.

C'est nous, ce sont eux.

It is we, it is they (*m.*).

C'est un homme riche.

He is a rich man.

Ce sont des amis de Jean.

They are friends of John.

C'est à nous qu'il parle.

It is to us that he is speaking.

C'est ici qu'il demeure.

It is here that he lives (he lives here).

C'est aujourd'hui lundi.

To-day is Monday.

a. **Il(s)**, **elle(s)** are employed, however, before a predicate noun used adjectively, denoting membership in a class (nationality, profession, etc.).

Il est professeur.

He is a professor.

Elles sont Françaises.

They are French (women).

79. Orthographic Changes (*continued*). 1. Verbs ending in **-cer** change **c** to **ç** before **a** or **o** in an ending, in order to keep the soft [s] sound of **c**.

commencer [kəmã:se] *to begin*

But:

commençant [kəmã:sã]

commencez [kəmã:se]

commençons [kəmã:sõ]

commencent [kəmã:s]

2. Verbs in **-ger** change **g** to **ge** before **a** or **o** in an ending, to keep the soft [ʒ] sound of **g**.

manger [mã:ʒe] *to eat*

But:

mangeant [mã:ʒã]

mangez [mã:ʒe]

mangeons [mã:ʒõ]

mangent [mã:ʒ]

3. Verbs in **-yer** change **y** to **i** before **e** mute. Verbs in **-ayer**, however, may retain the **y**.

envoyer [ãvwaje] *to send*

payer [peje] *to pay, pay for*

envoie [ãvwa]

paye [pei] or **paie** [pei]

envoient [ãvwa]

payent [pei] or **paient** [pei]

VOCABULARY

d'abord [dabɔ:r] *at first, first*

même [mɛ:m] *same, self; moi-*

amener [amne] *to lead, bring,*
take

—, *myself; lui* —, *himself*

après [apre] *after, afterwards*

Noiraud [nwa:ro] *Blacky*

le **chien** [ʃjẽ] *dog*

le **pied** [pje] *foot; à* —, *on foot*

commencer [kəmãse] (*à*) *to begin*

la **promenade** [prɔmnad] *walk,*

la **cravate** [kravat] *necktie*

drive; faire une — *à pied*

le **Français** [frãse] *Frenchman*

(*en auto*) *to take a walk*

marcher [marʃe] *to walk, go,*

(*car ride*)

march

vers [vɛ:r] *towards*

EXERCISES

A. Après le dîner, Marie Martin se trouve chez elle dans le jardin. Lucie est avec elle. Il y a des livres sur une table près d'elles. C'est une grande table carrée. Le petit chien de Lucie se couche sous la table. Il s'appelle « Noiraud ».

MARIE. — Commençons à travailler, Lucie. C'est une leçon très facile. Ce sont les verbes « faire » et « dire » D'abord mangeons des bonbons. On m'en envoie souvent. Les voilà sur cette table. Donnez-les-moi.

LUCIE. — Regardez là-bas dans la rue. Ce sont Jean et Robert dans une jolie automobile grise. Georges n'est pas avec eux. Appelez-les!

MARIE. — Moi? Je ne vais pas les appeler. (*Elle se lève. Noiraud se lève aussi et marche vers la porte.*)

ROBERT, à Jean. — Allons trouver Marie. C'est ici qu'elle demeure. C'est elle, n'est-ce pas, qui est là-bas sous cet arbre? Lucie est avec elle, et son chien y est aussi. Je n'aime pas ce chien. . . . Parlez-leur, Jean.

JEAN. — Bonjour, Marie! Voulez-vous faire une promenade en auto avec nous? Vous allez venir aussi, n'est-ce pas, Lucie?

LUCIE. — Oui, et je vais apporter mon cher petit Noiraud. (*Elle appelle Noiraud.*)

B. *Written*: 1. Mr. and Mrs. Bernard went out after dinner. 2. They are walking now in the park. 3. John is not with them (*m. pl.*). 4. They begin to talk. 5. A fine grey automobile arrives.

MR. BERNARD. — 6. Who is in that car over there? 7. It is John himself, isn't it? 8. Robert is with him and Mary Martin also. 9. John is always with her. 10. He buys flowers and sends them to her. 11. He goes too often to her house. 12. I am going to tell him so (it).

MRS. BERNARD. — 13. Robert and he (*disjunctive*) go to her house to (in order to) study. 14. They are in the same class. 15. It is the French class. 16. The lessons are not easy. 17. It is the verbs which are hard. 18. They studied them three hours last night. 19. It is a friend of John who told me so. 20. His name is George Lambert.

MR. BERNARD. — 21. Is it he who is repeating that story? 22. He talks too much; he wears red and yellow ties; he is always at the "movies." 23. That young man doesn't study; *he*, he has too good a time.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Conjugate the following sentences:* 1. Je les achète, moi; tu les achètes, toi, etc. 2. Je le fais, moi; tu le fais, toi, etc. 3. Je le leur dis, moi; tu le leur dis, toi, etc.

(2) *Substitute personal pronouns and y or en (adverbs or pronouns) for the words in italics:* 1. On envoie les journaux chez mon père. 2. Donnez les journaux à mon père. 3. Je me promène avec mon frère. 4. Ils envoient les fleurs à ma mère. 5. Donnez les fleurs à ma mère. 6. Il se promène avec sa sœur. 7. Nous envoyons de l'argent à nos cousins. 8. Donnez de l'argent à nos cousins. 9. Nous nous promenons avec nos amis. 10. Il apporte les fleurs à vos cousines. 11. Donnons les fleurs à vos sœurs. 12. Il se promène avec vos amies. 13. Je me promène dans le parc. 14. Qui est là-bas? C'est le professeur. 15. C'est Marie. 16. Ce sont vos cousins.

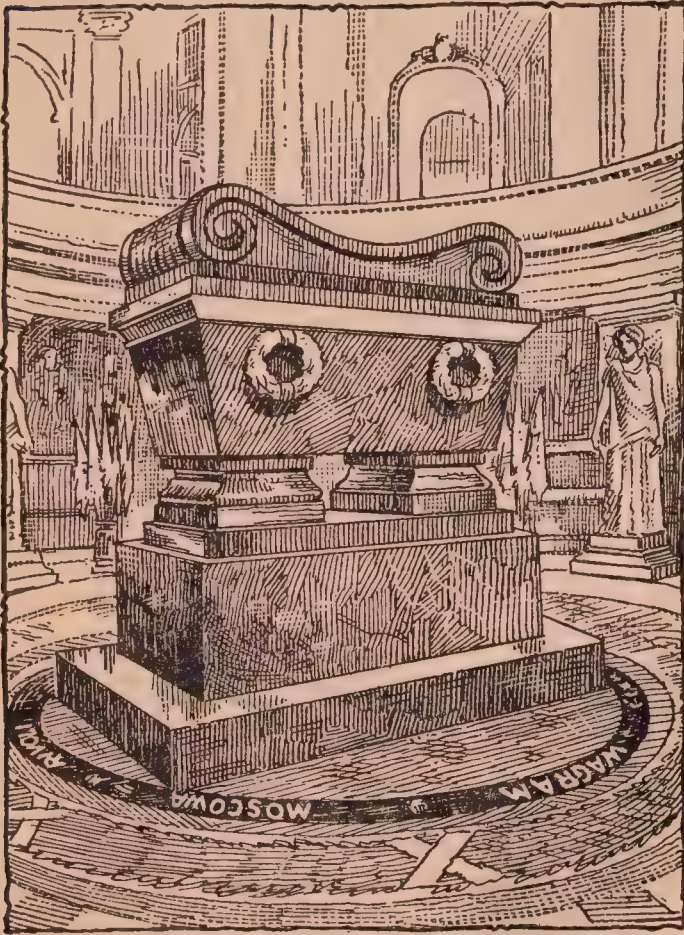
D. *Oral:* 1. Who is over there with your cousin (*m.*)? 2. With him? It is John himself. 3. And who is with them? 4. It is a friend of John. 5. He is a professor. 6. He is very old. 7. Yes, but he is a very rich man. 8. Lucy is at home. 9. Who came in? 10. *I!* . . . Who is with you? 11. Mary is with me. 12. Is it Louise who came in behind her? 13. It is not she; it is Blacky. 14. We took a walk with them (*f.*) yesterday. 15. What have you there in that bag? 16. They are the cakes which my mother sent us. 17. My mother sends me cakes. 18. I send her flowers. 19. Give them to her. 20. Hurry up! 21. My cousins (*m.*) arrived this morning. 22. They are French. 23. These tickets are for them. 24. Send them to them. 25. It is to you that I speak. 26. It is here that he lives. 27. Is he here? 28. I am going to take a walk.

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Alice):*

L'HÔTEL DES INVALIDES.¹ LE TOMBEAU DE NAPOLÉON

Mon père m'a priée aujourd'hui de l'accompagner pour aller visiter les Invalides. J'étais très contente d'y aller, car

j'avais souvent vu cette grande coupole ² dorée ³ qui, avec sa flèche, ⁴ s'élève à une hauteur ⁵ de cent ⁶ mètres.



Le Tombeau de Napoléon

C'est Louis Quatorze ⁷ qui a fait construire cet édifice, au dix-septième siècle, pour y loger les soldats blessés ⁸ dans ses guerres. ⁹

Mon père s'intéressait principalement au musée de l'Armée, qui est installé aux Invalides. Moi, je préférais voir l'église Saint Louis et le tombeau de Napoléon.

Il faisait chaud ¹⁰ quand nous sommes arrivés et dans la cour la lumière du soleil ¹¹ était éblouissante. ¹²

Mais à l'intérieur de cet immense dôme il faisait frais, ¹³ et une douce lumière tombait d'en haut. ¹⁴ Quel contraste avec l'extérieur ! Quelle atmosphère de tranquillité et de calme !

Nous avons contemplé en silence le massif tombeau de ce Napoléon, qui, par son ambition et son grand génie, ¹⁵ a rempli ¹⁶ le monde d'alarmes. Nous avons lu ¹⁷ avec émotion, à l'entrée de la crypte, l'inscription empruntée ¹⁸ au testament ¹⁹ de l'Empereur : « Je désire que mes cendres ²⁰ reposent sur les bords de la Seine, au milieu de ce peuple français que j'ai tant aimé. »

¹ Old Soldiers' Home. ² cupola. ³ gilded. ⁴ spire. ⁵ height. ⁶ one hundred. ⁷ Fourteenth. ⁸ wounded. ⁹ wars. ¹⁰ was warm. ¹¹ sun. ¹² dazzling. ¹³ was cool. ¹⁴ from above. ¹⁵ genius. ¹⁶ filled. ¹⁷ read. ¹⁸ borrowed. ¹⁹ will. ²⁰ ashes.



LES INVALIDES

REVIEW LESSON No. 3 (X-XVIII)

(1) *Translate the words in italics:* 1. Les *eyes* des enfants sont *beautiful*. 2. Les *newspapers* sont *useful*. 3. Les jeunes filles sont *rich*, mais elles ne sont pas *happy*. 4. Il a acheté des *birds* gris. 5. Elle est venue avec un *old friend* (*m.*). 6. *Those animals* sont jeunes; *these animals* sont vieux. 7. Voici les *cabbages* qu'il a *sold*. 8. *His sons* ont donné de l'argent *to the* hommes. 9. *There are* beaucoup de *cakes* dans la cuisine. 10. Voilà un *beautiful* enfant. 11. Oui, il est *beautiful*. 12. Voilà son *new friend*.

(2) *Translate the words in parenthesis and put them in their proper places:* 1. (*large, French*) Il demeure dans une ville. 2. (*them, m.*) Il demeure avec. 3. (*he, she*) C'est, ce n'est pas. 4. (*it to me*) Dites. 5. (*large, red*) Il achète une automobile. 6. (*it to me*) Il a montrée. 7. (*which*) Leçon finissez-vous? 8. (*hard*) Le professeur nous donne des leçons. 9. (*little, yellow*) Regardez ce chien. 10. (*it to her*) On a montré. 11. (*pretty, square*) Qui demeure dans cette maison? 12. (*old, there*) Un homme demeure. 13. (*little, him*) Ma cousine demeure chez. 14. (*her*) Il se promène avec. 15. (*long, white*) Ma cousine a trouvé une plume. 16. (*it to me*) Ne donnez pas. 17. (*it to them*) Donnez. 18. (*it to them*) Elle a donnée. 19. (*what a*) Bonne salade! 20. (*made*) Qui l'a? 21. (*it*) N'est pas moi. 22. (*they, m.*) Ce sont. 23. (*delicious*) La salade est. 24. (*they are*) Est-ce que vos cousins?

(3) *Fill in the blanks with the past indefinite tense of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (*naître*) Où ———-elle ———? 2. (*mourir*) Elles ——— ——— hier. 3. (*dire*) Qui vous l'—— ———? 4. (*arriver*) Ses filles ne ——— pas encore ———. 5. (*laver*) Elle s'—— ——— la main. 6. (*lever*) Elle s'—— ———. 7. (*coucher*) Pourquoi vous ———-vous ——— de bonne heure? 8. (*travailler*) J'—— beaucoup ——— hier soir. 9. (*être*) Où ———-vous ——— aujourd'hui? 10. (*étudier*) Ils ——— ——— une longue leçon ce matin. 11. (*acheter*) Voici les pommes de terre que j'—— ———. 12. (*vendre*) On en ——— beau-
coup ———. 13. (*amuser*) Ils se ——— bien ———. 14. (*partir*) Les petits garçons ——— ——— tout de suite. 15. (*raconter*) Voici l'histoire qu'ils ——— ———.

(4) *Make sentences with the following expressions and translate:*

1. combien (de)? 2. puis. 3. enfin. 4. prête. 5. en retard.
6. tard. 7. comment? 8. agréable. 9. une glace. 10. portent.
11. se portent. 12. à la campagne. 13. en ville. 14. carte.
15. cinéma. 16. dîner (*verb*).

(5) *Translate:* 1. They (*m.*) are going home. 2. They (*f.*) are sitting in the automobile. 3. What are they doing there? 4. They didn't tell it to me. 5. Where are you? 6. What are you doing? 7. What are you saying? 8. Are the buildings of the farm new and beautiful? 9. Show him those old horses which his sons have bought. 10. The walls behind the house are new, but they are not useful. 11. There are many animals in the park. 12. Let's choose a good boarding house near the lake. 13. In what boarding house do they live? 14. Is the landlord at home now? 15. He went into the kitchen. 16. Look at that dog's eyes. 17. We took dinner in a large square dining room. 18. What interesting stories were told? 19. That is a pretty little red bird. 20. Sell it to her. 21. Who is that man standing near the blackboard? 22. How are you, my dear friend (*f.*)? 23. Is your mother buying tickets to (in order to) go to the "movies"? 24. Yes, she sent me some. 25. She gave them to me. 26. I am going there with her. 27. Mary was late because she went to bed late. 28. The little girl got up early. 29. She washed her hands at once. 30. She called her dog. 31. His name is "Blacky." 32. They (*f.*) were born in that city and died there. 33. My aunt is buying peaches. 34. Don't give any to me, please. 35. Give them to her. 36. *Her?* She doesn't like them. 37. Who took a walk with her? 38. They are two of her friends (*m.*). 39. It is they who are going to take dinner with us. 40. Good-bye! Hurry up! Have a good time!

LESSON XIX

80. Partitives. In partitive constructions (§ 42) *de* alone is used:

1. In a general negation (§ 42, 2).

Il n'a pas d'argent.

He hasn't any money.

Nous n'avons pas de nouvelles.

We haven't any news.

2. When an adjective precedes the noun.¹Marie a *de jolies fleurs*.

Mary has (some) pretty flowers.

J'ai *de bon café*.

I have (some) good coffee.

But: J'ai *des pommes rouges*.

I have (some) red apples.

3. Similarly when a noun after an adjective is understood.

De bon café et de mauvais.

Good coffee and bad (coffee).

4. After nouns of quantity.

Une livre *de viande*.

A pound of meat.

Une douzaine *de pommes*.

A dozen apples.

5. After adverbs of quantity such as:

autant [otã] as much, as many*combien* [kõbjẽ] how much (many)*assez* [ase] enough*peu* [pø] little, few*beaucoup* [boku] much, many*plus* [ply] more*tant* [tã] so much, so many*trop* [trø] too much, too many*Beaucoup d'amis*.

Many friends.

Combien d'argent?

How much money?

Assez de pain.

Enough bread.

6. In adjectival phrases.

Une robe *de soie*.

A silk dress.

Une leçon *de français*.

A French lesson.

81. Idioms with *avoir*. Observe the following expressions of frequent use, formed from *avoir* + noun:

avoir besoin [bæzwẽ] *de* to be in
need of, need

avoir sommeil [sømɛ:j] to be
sleepy

avoir chaud [ʃo] to be warm

avoir raison [rezõ] to be (in the)
right

avoir froid [frwa] to be cold

avoir tort [tɔ:r] to be (in the)
wrong

avoir faim [fẽ] to be hungry

avoir soif [swaf] to be thirsty

82. *Tout*. *All, the whole, every* are expressed by *tout*, with the following forms, which precede the article when it is present:

¹ The article is sometimes retained in familiar speech and this usage was sanctioned by a decree of the Minister of Public Instruction in 1901.

J'ai acheté *de* (or *du*) *bon café*.

I bought (some) good coffee.

tout [tu] <i>m. sing.</i> , toute [tut] <i>f. sing.</i>	tous [tu] <i>m. pl.</i> , toutes [tut] <i>f. pl.</i>
Tout homme, toute femme.	Every man, every woman.
Tous les hommes.	All the men.
Toute la maison.	The whole house.
Tous les jours.	Every day.
Tout le monde est ici.	Everybody is here.

VOCABULARY

autre [otr] other	le jour [ʒu:r] day
l'après-midi [apremidi] <i>m.</i> afternoon	la livre [livr] pound
déjà [deʒa] already	mauvais [mɔvɛ] bad
la douzaine [duzen] dozen	le monde [mɔ:d] world, people;
faire [fɛ:r]: — beau (temps) [tā] to be fine weather; —	tout le — , everybody
mauvais (temps) be bad weather; — froid [frwa] 'be cold	noir [nwa:r] black
l'intention [ɛtāsjɔ̃] <i>f.</i> intention;	le pain [pē] bread
avoir l'— de to intend	le pique-nique [piknik] picnic
	la robe [rɔb] dress
	le sandwich [sādwitʃ] sandwich
	si [si] if, whether, so
	la soie [swa] silk

EXERCISES

A. Lucie, Georges et leurs amis vont faire un pique-nique cet après-midi. Ils ont étudié leurs leçons de français et d'histoire, et maintenant ils ont besoin de s'amuser un peu. Il fait beau temps mais un peu trop froid. Ils vont à un petit lac qui est près de la ferme de M. Bernard. S'ils ont trop froid, ils ont l'intention d'entrer chez M. Bernard.

Toutes les jeunes filles sont chez Lucie. Il y a de grands paniers sur la table, et il y en a d'autres sur les chaises. Marie et Louise portent de jolies robes de soie. Elles ne portent pas de chapeaux. Elles disent toujours qu'elles n'en ont pas besoin, qu'elles n'ont pas froid.

Tout le monde parle: — « Combien de livres de viande avez-vous achetées? — Nous n'avons pas besoin de tant de viande pour faire deux ou trois douzaines de sandwiches. — Vous avez tort, ma chère, je vous le répète; les hommes ont

toujours faim. — Pourquoi avez-vous choisi ce café-là? Il y a de bon café et de mauvais. Montrez-le-moi. — Dépêchons-nous! Nous sommes en retard. Georges et les autres sont déjà dans les autos. Enfin, tout est prêt. Partons vite!»

B. *Written:* 1. Everybody is at Lucy's for the picnic. 2. If it is very cold they are not going to stay long in the country. 3. All the girls are in the house. 4. Robert and George are seated in their cars in front of the house. 5. All the men have not yet arrived. 6. Robert and George are wearing black hats. 7. John hasn't any hat. 8. He says that he doesn't need any; that he is always warm.

JOHN. — 9. I hope Lucy is going to come out soon. 10. We are late. 11. There she is finally. 12. It is she who is wearing that pretty red silk dress. 13. And there's that little dog! 14. She always brings him with her.

GEORGE. — 15. I hope she is bringing enough bread and meat to make a good many sandwiches. 16. I am hungry. 17. I bought a dozen bananas and some other fruit (*pl.*).

LUCY. — 18. Good day to everybody! 19. Are you there, George? 20. We have some good coffee and a good many sandwiches. 21. You are going to have a good time, you and Blacky!

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with the proper verbs:* 1. Jean n'— pas froid. 2. Il ne — pas froid. 3. Elles — froid. 4. Il — beau (temps). 5. Ils — raison. 6. Ils — malades. 7. —-vous sommeil? 8. Il — mauvais (temps). 9. L'enfant — mauvais. 10. Nous — fatigués. 11. Nous — soif. 12. Tout le monde — heureux. 13. —-vous raison?

(2) *Fill in the blanks with de, d', du, de la, de l', des or en:* 1. Avez-vous — robes? 2. Avez-vous — jolies robes? 3. Nous

— avons beaucoup. 4. J'ai — soie. 5. J'ai une robe — soie. 6. Elles n'ont pas — bijoux. 7. A-t-il — argent? 8. Il n'— a pas. 9. Il n'a pas — argent. 10. Nous commençons notre leçon — français. 11. Voilà — grands enfants et — petits. 12. Combien — papier avez-vous? 13. J'ai beaucoup — papier. 14. J'ai peu — encre. 15. Y a-t-il — sandwiches dans le panier? 16. Il y — a trop. 17. Il lui envoie — belles roses. 18. Ce sont — roses blanches. 19. Il a aussi acheté une douzaine — tulipes.

D. *Oral*: 1. Everybody is happy to-day. 2. The French lesson is easy. 3. Many verbs are given in this class. 4. They don't give us long lessons every day. 5. It's fine weather, isn't it? 6. No, it's too cold; I am cold. 7. All the girls are wearing pretty silk dresses this evening. 8. Their fathers send them money. 9. My father has little money. 10. I don't need money. 11. I have enough of it. 12. I send him a letter every day. 13. If you have some good coffee, give her some. 14. He showed me some good coffee and some bad. 15. I bought a whole pound of coffee. 16. I am sleepy every evening. 17. You are wrong to say so (it). 18. We are beginning to be hungry. 19. They are buying peaches and some little cakes. 20. It is not she; it is he. 21. I hope to go with him to their house. 22. Everybody has been talking for several minutes.

E. *Rapid reading*:

LE MUSÉE DE L'ARMÉE. LA TOUR EIFFEL

Le musée de l'Armée est divisé en deux sections: la section des armes et armures,¹ et la section historique. Les salles de la première renferment² une belle collection d'armes de toutes les époques depuis³ la Renaissance jusqu'à⁴ la fin⁵ de la Grande Guerre. La seconde section contient des souvenirs militaires.

Au moment où nous sommes sortis du musée de l'Armée, Ernest est venu nous rejoindre.⁶ Il avait été⁷ à la tour Eiffel qui n'est pas très loin⁸ de l'hôtel des Invalides.

Il est monté en ascenseur jusqu'au sommet de cette tour



La Tour Eiffel

de trois cents mètres de haut. C'est la plus haute tour du monde; elle dépasse⁹ même¹⁰ les gratte-ciel¹¹ de New York.

Elle a été construite pour l'Exposition universelle¹² de dix-huit cent quatre-vingt-neuf.¹³ La plate-forme qu'on peut¹⁴ voir tout en haut¹⁵ est assez grande pour contenir huit cents personnes.

On a installé dans cette tour un puissant¹⁶ poste de télégraphie sans fil.¹⁷

¹ armor. ² enclose. ³ from. ⁴ up to. ⁵ end. ⁶ join. ⁷ been. ⁸ far. ⁹ surpasses. ¹⁰ even. ¹¹ sky-scrapers. ¹² world's fair. ¹³ 1889. ¹⁴ can. ¹⁵ at the very top. ¹⁶ powerful. ¹⁷ wireless.

LESSON XX

83. Comparison of Adjectives. 1. To form comparatives, place *plus* = *more*, *moins* = *less*, *aussi* = *as* or *si* = *so* before the adjective and *que* = *than* or *as* after it.

Il est *plus* grand *que* Jean.

He is taller than John.

Il est *moins* grand *que* Jean.

He is less tall than (not so tall) as John.

Il est *aussi* grand *que* Jean.

He is as tall as John.

Il n'est pas *si* grand *que* Jean.

He is not so tall as John.

a. **De** is used instead of **que** before numerals.

Il a parlé plus *de* dix minutes. He talked more than ten minutes.

2. To form superlatives, place the definite article or a possessive adjective before **plus** or **moins**.

Marie est *la plus* jolie de toutes les jeunes filles. Mary is the prettiest of all the girls.

Observe: *La plus* jolie des deux. The prettier of the two.

a. Do not omit the definite article when the superlative follows the noun.

L'homme *le plus* riche de la ville. The richest man in the city.

Mes livres *les plus* utiles. My most useful books.

b. *In* after a superlative is ordinarily translated by **de**.

C'est le meilleur élève *de* la classe. He is the best student in the class.

3. Observe the irregular forms:

bon [bɔ̃]	meilleur [mɛjœʁ]	le meilleur [ləmɛjœʁ]
good	better	the best

Marie est *meilleure* que Louise. Mary is better than Louise.

C'est *la meilleure* élève de la classe. She is the best pupil in the class.

84. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are compared by **plus** and **moins** like adjectives, but **le** in the superlative is invariable.

lentement [lɑ̃təmɑ̃]	plus lentement [ply lɑ̃təmɑ̃]	le plus lentement [lə ply lɑ̃təmɑ̃]
slowly	more slowly	most slowly

Le professeur parle *plus lentement* que Jean. The professor speaks more slowly than John.

Il parle *le plus lentement* possible. He speaks as slowly as possible.

2. Observe the irregular forms:

bien [bjɛ̃]	well	mieux [mjø]	better	le mieux [lə mjø]	(the) best
peu [pø]	little	moins [mwɛ̃]	less	le moins [lə mwɛ̃]	(the) least

Marie parle *mieux* que Louise.

Mary speaks better than Louise.

Louise étudie *le moins* possible.

Louise studies as little as (the least) possible.

85. *Pouvoir*, to be able, can, may (no preposition before following infinitive):

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
pouvoir [puvwa:r] to be able	pouvant [puvã] being able	pu [py] been able
4. PRESENT INDICATIVE		
je peux [ʒəpø] or puis [pɥi]	nous pouvons [nupuvõ]	
tu peux [typø]	vous pouvez [vupuve]	
il peut [ilpø]	ils peuvent [ilpœiv]	

VOCABULARY

camarade [kamarad] <i>m. & f.</i> companion	la nourriture [nurityr] food
désirer [dezi:re] to desire, want, wish	Paris [pari] <i>m.</i> Paris
l'élève [ele:v] <i>m. & f.</i> pupil	possible [pəsibl] possible
lentement [lātəmã] slowly	la poste [pøst] post office
le moment [mòmã] moment	que [kə] than, as
la note [nøt] grade, mark	le timbre (-poste) [tē:br (pøst)] (postage) stamp (<i>pl. timbres-</i> <i>poste</i>)

EXERCISES

A. Voici la lettre que Louise a envoyée à sa cousine qui est à Paris. Cette lettre n'est pas si longue que les autres parce que Louise étudie depuis deux heures, et elle se trouve fatiguée.

Le 10 novembre.

Ma chère cousine,

Je vais vous parler d'abord de deux de mes bonnes camarades d'école. Ma plus chère amie s'appelle Marie Duval. C'est elle que j'aime le mieux. Elle est plus grande que moi, et étudie plus que toutes les autres. Elle n'est pas si jolie

qu'elles mais plus gentille. Elle a toujours de meilleures notes que nous.

Lucie Dupont est plus jeune et plus gaie que Marie. Elle étudie très peu. Elle finit toutes ses leçons le plus vite possible, et puis elle va se promener en auto avec Georges Lambert ou d'autres amis. Son père est l'homme le plus riche de la ville.

Il a fait beau temps aujourd'hui. Je suis allée à la poste cet après-midi pour acheter des timbres. Puis je me suis promenée plus de deux heures. . . . J'ai froid maintenant, et je vais me coucher. En voilà assez pour le moment. J'ai l'intention de finir cette lettre demain, si je peux le faire. . . .

B. *Written*: 1. George is in his automobile near the school. 2. It is a little black car, but it can go as fast as the others. 3. Many of those cars are sold. 4. They are made in one of the largest cities in the world. 5. The others are dearer, but they are not better. 6. Everybody has had one of those cars. 7. George is waiting for Robert, his best friend. 8. It is he that he likes best. 9. Robert is less gay than John Bernard, but he is more pleasant. 10. Finally Robert arrives. 11. He stayed in the classroom longer than the others, but he came as quickly as possible.

ROBERT. — 12. Have you been waiting for me more than ten minutes? 13. I am always a little late. 14. The other pupils finished their French lesson more quickly than I.

GEORGE. — 15. I have been waiting five minutes. 16. Can you take dinner downtown with me? 17. We can dine at our little restaurant. 18. The food is better there than at the boarding house. 19. The meat is always better, and the coffee is less bad.

ROBERT. — 20. I can go with you. 21. Let's go as quickly as possible; I am cold. 2. It's colder to-day than yesterday. 23. I want to go to the post office to buy some stamps.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French:* 1. Où est la cousine de Louise? 2. Cette lettre-ci est-elle aussi longue que les autres? 3. Depuis quand Louise étudie-t-elle? 4. De qui va-t-elle parler d'abord? 5. Comment s'appelle sa plus chère amie? 6. Qui aime-t-elle le mieux? 7. Louise est-elle plus grande que Marie? 8. Est-ce que Lucie étudie plus que toutes les autres? 9. Marie est-elle plus jolie que Lucie? 10. Qui a les meilleures notes? 11. Lucie finit-elle ses leçons le plus lentement possible? 12. Avec qui se promène-t-elle? 13. Est-ce que son père est moins riche que le professeur d'histoire? 14. Quel temps a-t-il fait aujourd'hui? 15. Pourquoi Louise est-elle allée à la poste? 16. Est-ce qu'elle s'est promenée moins de deux heures? 17. A-t-elle chaud maintenant? 18. Quand a-t-elle l'intention de finir sa lettre?

D. *Oral:* 1. I can speak French a little. 2. Can you speak more slowly? 3. You speak more quickly than the professor. 4. Yes, but he speaks better than I. 5. All the pupils (*m.*) can speak better than I. 6. I study as little as (the least) possible. 7. You have too good a time. 8. That lesson is longer than this lesson. 9. It is less difficult. 10. The most difficult lesson is always the most interesting. 11. The weather is bad. 12. How long have you been here? 13. I have been here more than three hours. 14. Mary is the best pupil in the class. 15. Lucy is the younger of the two. 16. She is prettier than Mary. 17. She wears pretty silk dresses. 18. How many stamps did you buy? 19. I bought eight (of them). 20. I have more than ten (of them). 21. I have as many (of them) as Robert.

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Ernest):*

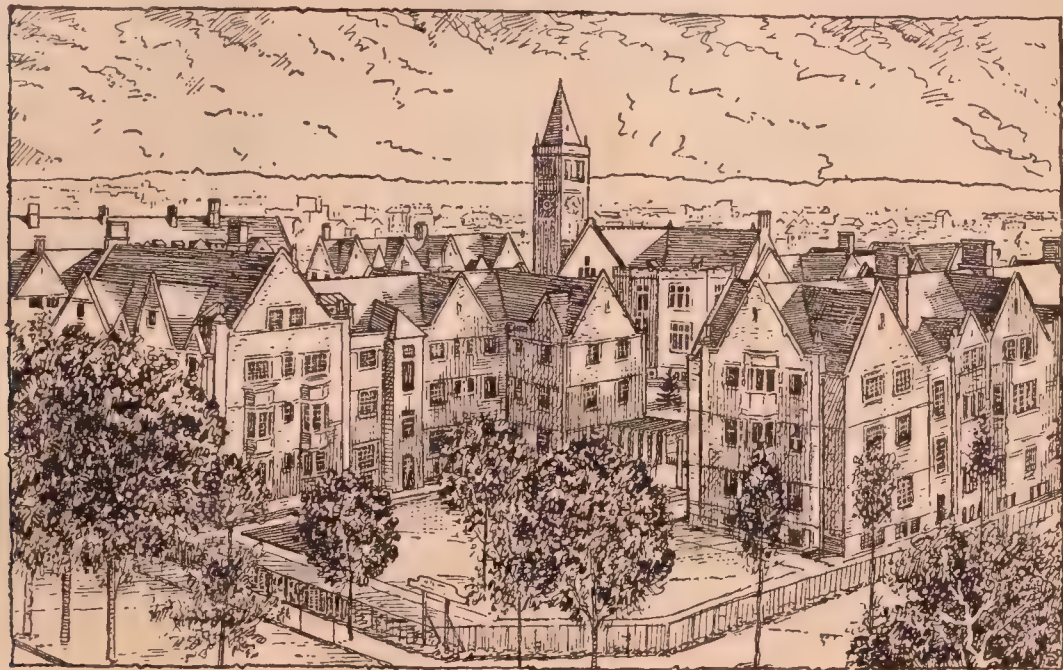
LE QUARTIER LATIN. L'UNIVERSITÉ DE PARIS.

LA CITÉ UNIVERSITAIRE

Hier, j'ai dîné dans un restaurant du Quartier Latin avec un de mes amis, qui est étudiant.¹ Il m'a longuement parlé de ce Quartier.

Le Quartier Latin, ainsi ² nommé ³ parce que les étudiants

parlaient latin entre eux au moyen âge,⁴ est le centre de la vie universitaire de Paris. Il est situé dans une très ancienne partie de la ville, sur la rive gauche⁵ de la Seine, en face de⁶ l'île de la Cité. Le boulevard Saint-Michel, appelé par les étudiants le « boul Mich », traverse le Quartier. Bordé⁷ d'hôtels et de cafés que⁸ fréquentent les étudiants, ce boulevard est très animé.⁹



L'Entrée de la Cité Universitaire

L'Université de Paris, fondée au début du treizième siècle, a son siège¹⁰ dans ce quartier. À la Sorbonne se trouvent les Facultés¹¹ des Lettres et des Sciences.

Mon ami m'a dit que, pour mieux loger les étudiants français et étrangers,¹² on a créé¹³ une Cité universitaire dans la partie sud de la ville. La France et plusieurs autres pays¹⁴ ont déjà construit de grandes maisons pour leurs nationaux.¹⁵ Il y a plus de vingt-cinq¹⁶ mille étudiants à Paris, dont¹⁷ presque¹⁸ un tiers¹⁹ sont étrangers.

¹ student. ² thus. ³ named. ⁴ Middle Ages. ⁵ left bank. ⁶ opposite. ⁷ bordered. ⁸ which (*objective case*). ⁹ animated. ¹⁰ is located. ¹¹ colleges. ¹² foreigners. ¹³ created. ¹⁴ countries. ¹⁵ countrymen. ¹⁶ twenty-five. ¹⁷ of whom. ¹⁸ almost. ¹⁹ a third.

LESSON XXI

86. Imperfect Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre*:

1. <i>I was giving, etc.</i>	2. <i>I was finishing, etc.</i>	3. <i>I was selling, etc.</i>
<i>donn ais</i> [dɔnɛ]	<i>finiss ais</i> [finisɛ]	<i>vend ais</i> [vãdɛ]
<i>donn ais</i> [dɔnɛ]	<i>finiss ais</i> [finisɛ]	<i>vend ais</i> [vãdɛ]
<i>donn ait</i> [dɔnɛ]	<i>finiss ait</i> [finisɛ]	<i>vend ait</i> [vãdɛ]
<i>donn ions</i> [dɔnjɔ̃]	<i>finiss ions</i> [finisjɔ̃]	<i>vend ions</i> [vãdjɔ̃]
<i>donn iez</i> [dɔnje]	<i>finiss iez</i> [finisje]	<i>vend iez</i> [vãdje]
<i>donn aient</i> [dɔnɛ]	<i>finiss aient</i> [finisɛ]	<i>vend aient</i> [vãdɛ]

a. As a rule the imperfect tense may be formed by dropping the *-ant* ending of the present participle and adding the imperfect endings.

b. To form the pluperfect tense, add a past participle to the imperfect indicative of *avoir* or *être*.

J'avais donné (fini, vendu).

I had given (finished, sold).

J'étais allé (venu, entré).

I had gone (come, entered).

87. Imperfect Indicative of *aller, avoir, commencer, dire, être, faire, manger, pouvoir*:

INFINITIVE		PRESENT PARTICIPLE	IMPERFECT
<i>aller</i>	to go	<i>all ant</i>	<i>j'all ais</i>
<i>avoir</i>	to have	<i>ay ant</i>	<i>j'av ais</i>
<i>commencer</i>	to begin	<i>commenç ant</i>	<i>je commenç ais</i>
<i>dire</i>	to say, tell	<i>dis ant</i>	<i>je dis ais</i>
<i>être</i>	to be	<i>ét ant</i>	<i>j'ét ais</i>
<i>faire</i>	to make, do	<i>fais ant</i>	<i>je fais ais</i>
<i>manger</i>	to eat	<i>mange ant</i>	<i>je mange ais</i>
<i>pouvoir</i>	to be able	<i>pouv ant</i>	<i>je pouv ais</i>

88. Use of the Imperfect. 1. It describes a condition as it appeared in the past, or an action that was continuous, habitual or repeated.

Nous parlions souvent de lui.

We often used to speak of him.

Mon oncle était très vieux.

My uncle was very old.

Il allait souvent à la ville.

He would often go to town.

2. It denotes what was happening when something else happened or was happening.

On étudiait quand je suis arrivé. They were studying when I arrived.

Il parlait pendant que nous étudions. He was speaking while we studied (were studying).

VOCABULARY

s'arrêter [arete] to stop, halt
bien [bjẽ] well, indeed, very; —
à vous yours truly; *eh* —!
 well!

la chambre [ʃɑ:br] room (*bedroom*)

la chose [ʃo:z] thing; *quelque* —,
m. something

continuer [kõtinqe] to continue

la panne [pan] engine trouble;
avoir une —, to have engine
 trouble

pendant [pãdã] during, for; —
que while

la question [kestjõ] question;
faire (poser) une —, to ask a
 question

onze [õ:z] eleven

douze [du:z] twelve

treize [trɛ:z] thirteen

quatorze [katorz] fourteen

quinze [kẽ:z] fifteen

seize [sɛ:z] sixteen

dix-sept [disɛt] seventeen

dix-huit [dizɥit] eighteen

dix-neuf [diznoɛf] nineteen

vingt [vẽ] twenty

EXERCISES

A. Louise finit maintenant la lettre qu'elle a commencée hier. Elle avait sommeil, et elle s'est couchée de bonne heure. Il faisait froid dans sa chambre.

.... (Le 11 novembre) Hier soir pendant que je vous racontais l'histoire de Lucie Dupont mon frère est entré chez moi. Il m'a posé des questions sur sa leçon d'histoire. Je ne pouvais pas finir ma lettre... Je continue maintenant. Lucie m'a dit que son père n'avait pas toujours été si riche qu'aujourd'hui. Quand elle était très jeune il avait peu d'argent, et elle ne pouvait pas aller tous les jours à l'école. Elle demeurait dans la plus petite maison de la ville. Derrière cette maison, il y avait un petit jardin où elle se promenait. Elle était très petite quand sa mère est morte.

C'était une très jolie petite fille, et tout le monde l'aimait; mais elle n'était pas heureuse. Toutes ses petites amies étaient plus riches qu'elle.

Aujourd'hui que son père est l'homme le plus riche de la ville, elle porte de belles robes de soie, elle se promène en auto, et elle travaille très peu. . . . Voilà son histoire! Elle a raison de s'amuser un peu, n'est-ce pas?

Bien à vous,

LOUISE.

B. *Written:* 1. Robert has been waiting for George for twenty minutes. 2. Finally he arrives in his little black car.

ROBERT. — 3. Well, George, where have you been? 4. I have been waiting for you a long time. 5. What were you doing?

GEORGE. — 6. I stopped because I had engine trouble. 7. The car was making a good deal of noise, too. 8. It is going well now. 9. It is the best car in the world. . . . 10. Where were you this morning when I came to your house?

ROBERT. — 11. I was at John's. 12. One of his cousins (*m.*) who used to live in the country was at his home. 13. He was telling us some stories. 14. We asked him many questions. 15. His father died when he was young. 16. He was smaller than his brothers, but he worked as much as they. 17. He didn't have a very good time. 18. He used to get up early. 19. The weather was cold, and he was always cold. . . . 20. He was beginning to tell us other stories when I left. 21. I had enough (of it). 22. He ate apples while he was talking.

Supplementary Drill

⚡ C. *Fill in the blanks using the verbs in parenthesis. Employ the imperfect whenever possible:* 1. (être, avoir) Quand nous — jeunes, nous n'— pas beaucoup d'argent. 2. (demeurer) Nous

— dans la plus petite maison de la ville. 3. (avoir) Il n'y — pas de jardin chez nous. 4. (promener) Nous nous — tous les jours dans le parc. 5. (être, tomber) Un jour nous — dans ce parc; mon plus jeune frère — d'un arbre. 6. (être) Il — malade. 7. (manger) Il — très peu. 8. (pouvoir) Ses meilleurs amis ne — pas venir chez lui. 9. (faire) Ils — trop de bruit. 10. (venir) Un jour sa tante — chez lui. 11. (raconter) Elle lui — une jolie histoire. 12. (venir) Elle — souvent. 13. (commencer, apporter) Quand il — à se trouver mieux, ses petits amis lui — des gâteaux. 14. (se porter) Il — bien depuis longtemps. 15. (faire) Que —-vous quand votre père est arrivé? 16. (dire) Que —-vous? 17. (apporter) Vous —-t-il — quelque chose? 18. (faire) Les enfants me — beaucoup de questions quand j'étais chez moi.

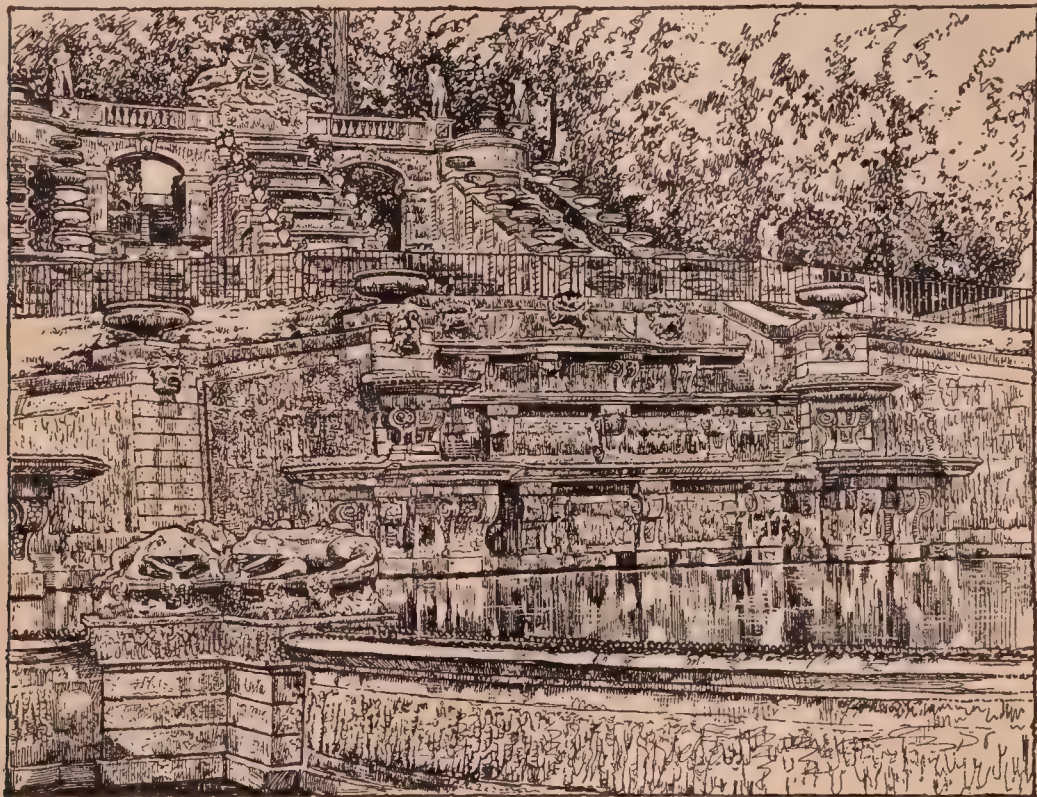
D. *Oral*: 1. My uncle says that I was handsome when I was young. 2. Where did you live? 3. I lived in the best house in the city. 4. There were beautiful flowers in our garden. 5. That garden was as large as the park. 6. I had a better time those days than to-day. 7. What did you do? 8. I used to eat apples and pears in the garden. 9. I lay down under the trees when it was warm. 10. When I was cold, I went into the house. . . . 11. One day when my father was downtown, I fell from a tree. 12. They lifted me up and carried me into the house. 13. My aunt came to our house every day. 14. I wasn't ill long. 15. When I was better she gave me candy every day. 16. Was your aunt as young as your mother? 17. My mother died when I was born. 18. My aunt has been living with us for a long time. 19. How many are (*faire*) eight books and eleven books? 20. Eight books and eleven books are (*make*) nineteen books. 21. Five and twelve make seventeen. 22. Twelve pens and six pens make eighteen pens. 23. Do you wish to ask any questions?

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Ernest)*:

LA SEINE ET SAINT-CLOUD

Alice et moi, nous sommes allés hier à Versailles, en passant par Saint-Cloud. Nous nous sommes levés de

bonne heure pour prendre un des nombreux bateaux-mouches ¹ qui circulent sur la Seine. Nous nous sommes embarqués près du Pont-Neuf,² qui est le plus ancien pont de Paris. Il fut bâti ³ au seizième siècle, sous Henri Quatre.



La Cascade à Saint-Cloud

Sur ce pont, comme sur le pont de Londres, il y avait autrefois ⁴ de petites boutiques.⁵

Les quais de la Seine sont d'un aspect très intéressant, avec les étalages ⁶ des bouquinistes ⁷ sur les parapets, et, ça et là, ces fameux pêcheurs ⁸ dont ⁹ la patience est devenue ¹⁰ proverbiale.

En arrivant à Saint-Cloud, nous avons fait une promenade dans le parc qui, avec ses terrasses et ses cascades, mérite une visite. Quant au ¹¹ château, il a été détruit ¹² en mil huit cent soixante-dix.¹³ Des hauteurs,¹⁴ qui bordent la Seine, on a une vue magnifique sur le Bois de Boulogne et Paris.

Dans le parc de Saint-Cloud, il y a un vaste terrain de

sports.¹⁵ De l'autre côté¹⁶ de la Seine, on en trouve plusieurs autres.

¹ small passenger boats. ² New Bridge. ³ was built. ⁴ formerly.
⁵ shops. ⁶ show cases. ⁷ dealers in old books. ⁸ fishermen. ⁹ whose.
¹⁰ has become. ¹¹ as for. ¹² was destroyed. ¹³ 1870. ¹⁴ from the heights.
¹⁵ athletic field. ¹⁶ on the other side.

LESSON XXII

89. Future Indicative of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être*:

1. <i>I shall give, etc.</i>	2. <i>I shall finish, etc.</i>	3. <i>I shall sell, etc.</i>
donner <i>ai</i> [dɔn(ə)re]	finir <i>ai</i> [finire]	vendr <i>ai</i> [vɑ̃dre]
donner <i>as</i> [dɔn(ə)ra]	finir <i>as</i> [finira]	vendr <i>as</i> [vɑ̃dra]
donner <i>a</i> [dɔn(ə)ra]	finir <i>a</i> [finira]	vendr <i>a</i> [vɑ̃dra]
donner <i>ons</i> [dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	finir <i>ons</i> [finirɔ̃]	vendr <i>ons</i> [vɑ̃drɔ̃]
donner <i>ez</i> [dɔn(ə)re]	finir <i>ez</i> [finire]	vendr <i>ez</i> [vɑ̃dre]
donner <i>ont</i> [dɔn(ə)rɔ̃]	finir <i>ont</i> [finirɔ̃]	vendr <i>ont</i> [vɑ̃drɔ̃]

a. The general rule for the formation of the future tense is to add the endings of the present indicative of **avoir** to the infinitive form.

4. <i>I shall have, etc.</i>	5. <i>I shall be, etc.</i>
aur <i>ai</i> [ɔre]	ser <i>ai</i> [s(ə)re]
aur <i>as</i> [ɔra]	ser <i>as</i> [s(ə)ra]
aur <i>a</i> [ɔra]	ser <i>a</i> [s(ə)ra]
aur <i>ons</i> [ɔrɔ̃]	ser <i>ons</i> [s(ə)rɔ̃]
aur <i>ez</i> [ɔre]	ser <i>ez</i> [s(ə)re]
aur <i>ont</i> [ɔrɔ̃]	ser <i>ont</i> [s(ə)rɔ̃]

90. Future Indicative of the Irregular Verbs *aller, faire, dire, pouvoir*:

1. <i>I shall go, etc.</i>	2. <i>I shall do, etc.</i>
ir <i>ai</i> [ire]	fer <i>ai</i> [f(ə)re]
ir <i>as</i> [ira]	fer <i>as</i> [f(ə)ra]
ir <i>a</i> [ira]	fer <i>a</i> [f(ə)ra]
ir <i>ons</i> [irɔ̃]	fer <i>ons</i> [f(ə)rɔ̃]
ir <i>ez</i> [ire]	fer <i>ez</i> [f(ə)re]
ir <i>ont</i> [irɔ̃]	fer <i>ont</i> [f(ə)rɔ̃]
3. <i>I shall say, etc.</i>	4. <i>I shall be able, etc.</i>
dir <i>ai</i> [dire]	pourr <i>ai</i> [pure]
dir <i>as</i> [dira]	pourr <i>as</i> [pura]
dir <i>a</i> [dira]	pourr <i>a</i> [pura]
dir <i>ons</i> [dirɔ̃]	pourr <i>ons</i> [purɔ̃]
dir <i>ez</i> [dire]	pourr <i>ez</i> [pure]
dir <i>ont</i> [dirɔ̃]	pourr <i>ont</i> [purɔ̃]

a. Observe the orthographic changes in the future of the following verbs (see also § 75):

	INFINITIVE		FUTURE
	mener to lead	je mènerai	[mən(ə)re]
	appeler to call	j'appellerai	[apɛl(ə)re]
	jeter to throw	je jetterai	[ʒɛt(ə)re]
But:	espérer to hope	j'espérerai	[ɛspɛr(ə)re]
	répéter to repeat	je répéterai	[repet(ə)re]

91. Use of the Future.¹ The future is used in general as in English, but observe its use in a subordinate sentence when futurity is implied as after **quand**, **lorsque**, *when*, **aussitôt que**, **dès que**, *as soon as*.

Je lui parlerai quand il *arrivera*. I shall speak to him when he arrives.

VOCABULARY

bleu [blø] blue (<i>pl.</i> bleu(e)s)	habiter [abite] to live in
le cadeau [kado] present (<i>pl.</i> cadeaux)	lorsque [lɔrskə] when (<i>not used interrogatively</i>)
le cigare [sigar] cigar	prendre [prɑ:dr] to take, get (<i>p.p.</i> pris)
la cigarette [sigaret] cigarette	le tramway [tramwe] street car, car; en —, by street car
le déjeuner [deʒœne] lunch	voir [vwar] to see (<i>p.p.</i> vu)
déjeuner [deʒœne] to take lunch, lunch	au (le) matin (soir) [matɛ (swar)] in the morning (evening); (dans) l'après-midi [apremidi] in the afternoon
demain [dəmɛ] to-morrow	
ensemble [ɑ̃sɑ:bl] together	
ensuite [ɑ̃sqit] afterwards, then	
fumer [fyme] to smoke	

EXERCISES

A. Le père de Louise Duval demeurait autrefois dans la ville où se trouve l'école. Depuis cinq ans il habite une autre ville. Il arrivera demain matin pour voir sa fille. Mme Duval ne peut pas venir parce qu'elle est malade.

¹ After **si** meaning *if* (*not whether*) the present is used instead of the future. (§ 108, 3.)

Si vous y *allez*, je n'irai pas.

If you go there, I shall not go.

Aussitôt que M. Duval arrivera, il ira chez Louise, et ils déjeuneront ensemble. Ensuite ils se promèneront un peu pendant que M. Duval fumera son cigare. Il n'aime pas les cigarettes. Puis ils iront en ville où M. Duval choisira de beaux cadeaux pour Louise. . . . Louise est maintenant chez Marie.

MARIE. — Qu'est-ce que vous ferez demain quand votre père sera ici? Est-ce que vous lui montrerez l'école et ses beaux bâtiments?

LOUISE. — Non, je ne pourrai pas le faire. Nous irons tout de suite en ville. Nous prendrons d'abord des glaces, et ensuite je lui montrerai une jolie robe de soie bleue que je désire depuis longtemps. J'espère qu'il me l'achètera. Puis nous ferons un bon dîner. Le soir nous irons au théâtre. . . . Il s'amusera bien, mon bon père.

B. *Written*: 1. Robert went to Louise's house, but he was not able to see her because she was walking with her father. 2. They were walking while Mr. Duval smoked a cigar. 3. Finally Robert went to George's. 4. George was in front of the house. 5. He was looking at his automobile when Robert arrived.

ROBERT. — 6. Do you want to go downtown with me, George? 7. I shall wait for you if you are not ready. 8. When you are ready, you will tell me (it), won't you?

GEORGE. — 9. As soon as I have smoked this cigarette we shall leave. 10. We shall go in my car. 11. We shall be able to go more quickly than in the street car. 12. We shall take a ride also in the park.

ROBERT. — 13. Thank you very much, but I prefer the street car. 14. We shall take one of those cars which stop near here. 15. When we are in town, I shall buy a hat. 16. Then I shall choose a present for Louise. 17. What will you do?

GEORGE. — 18. I shall go to see one of my friends. 19. Then we shall go to the “movies” together. 20. There will be a good many of our companions in the theater. 21. We shall have a good time there.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Give the following sentences in the (a) imperfect, (b) past indefinite, (c) future:* 1. Elle va chez elle. 2. Il fait beau. 3. Je me promène. 4. Le professeur commence la leçon. 5. Avez-vous soif? 6. Je suis fatigué. 7. Lucie appelle le chien. 8. Noiraud mange de la viande. 9. Est-ce qu'ils peuvent venir? 10. Elles me le disent. 11. Nous étudions la leçon.

(2) *Fill in the blanks with the future tense of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (appeler) Votre père — Robert de bonne heure. 2. (se lever) Il ira en ville aussitôt qu'il —. 3. (avoir) Il aura froid. 4. (faire) Que fera-t-il? 5. (mener) Il mènera les chevaux à la ville. 6. (vendre) Il les vendra. 7. (dire) Que —-t-on? 8. (faire) Que ferez-vous demain? 9. (pouvoir) Je pourrai étudier. 10. (être) J'étudierai lorsque je serai à l'école. 11. (acheter) Quel livre achèterez-vous? 12. (dire) Je vous le dirai demain. 13. (se promener) Nous promènerons dans le parc.

D. *Oral:* 1. What were you doing when I came in? 2. I was beginning a letter. 3. How long have you been working? 4. I have been studying for two hours. 5. What shall you do to-morrow? 6. Shall you be able to come to my house in the morning? 7. I can't do it. 8. I hope that my father will be here. 9. I shall get up early. 10. I shall be ready when he arrives. 11. When we are downtown we shall buy some cigars and cigarettes. 12. My father smoked a great deal formerly. 13. He began when he was young. 14. He always buys the best cigars. 15. We shall take lunch together. 16. There will be many people (**monde**) in the café. 17. I went there yesterday. 18. What will my friends say? 19. They will ask me many questions. 20. They can see my father to-morrow. 21. Will they go to the theater if I go? 22. I hope that they will be there when you arrive. 23. They went to the “movies” often when they were young.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LE SPORT EN FRANCE

Depuis la Grande Guerre, les Français s'intéressent plus que jamais¹ aux sports athlétiques. Il est vrai² que les universités ne les organisent pas comme aux États-Unis, mais il y a beaucoup de sociétés de sports en France.



Une Partie de Football

Les matches de football sont fréquents en hiver.³ Tout le monde reconnaît⁴ l'excellence des Français au tennis. Ils ont plusieurs fois⁵ gagné le championnat⁶ du monde, en simples et en doubles. Les Français portent également⁷ intérêt⁸ aux autres sports.

Un Américain de mes amis,⁹ qui est à Paris depuis trois ans, m'a dit qu'on peut pratiquer¹⁰ les sports en hiver aussi bien qu'¹¹en été.¹² Les terrains de tennis couverts¹³ sont nombreux, et il y a un grand nombre d'excellentes piscines,¹⁴ dont les prix d'entrée sont très modiques.¹⁵ Il y a peu¹⁶ de jours où il fait assez froid¹⁷ pour patiner¹⁸ en plein¹⁹ air, mais d'octobre à la fin d'avril, on peut toujours aller au Palais de Glace,²⁰ où l'on patine aux sons²¹ d'un orchestre.

Après avoir visité le terrain d'athlétisme à Saint-Cloud, nous avons pris un taxi pour aller admirer le magnifique

palais de Versailles, construit au dix-septième siècle par Louis Quatorze, le « Roi Soleil », ²² qui le fit entourer ²³ d'un immense parc. Versailles est situé à dix-huit kilomètres au sud-ouest de Paris.

¹ ever. ² true. ³ winter. ⁴ recognizes. ⁵ several times. ⁶ championship. ⁷ equally. ⁸ an interest. ⁹ one of my American friends. ¹⁰ practice. ¹¹ as well as. ¹² summer. ¹³ covered tennis courts. ¹⁴ swimming pools. ¹⁵ moderate. ¹⁶ few. ¹⁷ cold enough. ¹⁸ skate. ¹⁹ open. ²⁰ ice. ²¹ sounds. ²² "Sun King." ²³ caused it to be surrounded.

LESSON XXIII

92. Impersonal Verbs. Impersonal verbs are conjugated in the third person singular only, with the subject *il*, *it*, used indefinitely. Among such are verbs indicating natural phenomena and time, as in English.

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait mauvais (temps) et du vent.	It is bad weather and windy.
Il pleut, il pleuvra.	It is raining, it will rain.
Il neige, il neigeait.	It is snowing, it was snowing.
Quelle heure est-il?	What time is it?
Il est dix heures (du matin, du soir).	It is ten o'clock (in the morning, in the evening).

a. Observe the use of the impersonal *il faut* (infinitive *falloir*, *to be necessary*, *must*) + infinitive.

Il lui faut partir.	He must (it is necessary for him to) go.
Il me faudra travailler.	I must (it will be necessary for me to) work.
Il ne faut pas parler ici.	We (one) must not talk here.

NOTE. — The negative, *il ne faut pas*, etc., means *must not*; it does not mean *it is not necessary* (*il n'est pas nécessaire*).

93. *Pleuvoir*, *to rain*:

1. INFINITIVE	2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE	3. PAST PARTICIPLE
pleuvoir [ploevwa:r] <i>to rain</i>	pleuvant [plœvã] <i>raining</i>	plu [ply] <i>rained</i>

- | | |
|---|---|
| 4. PRES. IND. il pleut [ilplø] | 6. IMPERF. il pleuvait [ilplœvɛ] |
| 5. PAST INDEF. il a plu [ilaply] | 7. FUT. il pleuvra [ilplœvra] |

94. Falloir, to be necessary, "must" (no preposition before following infinitive):

- | | | |
|---|---|--|
| 1. INFINITIVE
falloir [falwa:r]
<i>to be necessary</i> | 2. PRESENT PARTICIPLE
<i>(lacking)</i> | 3. PAST PARTICIPLE
fallu [faly]
<i>been necessary</i> |
| 4. PRES. IND. il faut [ilfo] | 6. IMPERF. il fallait [ilfaɛ] | |
| 5. PAST INDEF. il a fallu [ilafaly] | 7. FUT. il faudra [ilfodra] | |

VOCABULARY

- | | |
|--|--|
| l'an [ã] <i>m. year (unit of time)</i> | passer [pase] <i>to pass, spend</i> |
| l'année [ane] <i>f. year (implies duration of time)</i> | prochain [prɔʃɛ̃] <i>next; l'année —e next year</i> |
| le chemin [ʃəmɛ̃] <i>road; — de fer railroad</i> | le train [trɛ̃] <i>train</i> |
| dernier [dɛrnje], dernière [dɛrnje:r] <i>last; la semaine dernière last week</i> | les vacances [vakãs] <i>f. pl. vacation</i> |
| l'étudiant [etydjã] <i>m. student</i> | le lundi [lœdi] <i>Monday</i> |
| l'étudiante [etydjã:t] <i>f. student</i> | le mardi [mardi] <i>Tuesday</i> |
| la gare [ga:r] <i>station (railroad)</i> | le mercredi [mɛrkɾedi] <i>Wednesday</i> |
| neiger [nɛ:ʒe] <i>to snow</i> | le jeudi [ʒœdi] <i>Thursday</i> |
| le Noël [nœl] <i>Christmas; jour de —, Christmas day</i> | le vendredi [vũ:drɛdi] <i>Friday</i> |
| | le samedi [samdi] <i>Saturday</i> |
| | le dimanche [dimã:ʃ] <i>Sunday</i> |

EXERCISES

A. C'est aujourd'hui lundi. Jeudi prochain c'est le jour de Noël.

Tous les étudiants qui ne demeurent pas dans la ville partiront mardi pour passer les vacances chez eux. Il leur faudra se lever de très bonne heure, à cinq ou à six heures. Il y en a beaucoup qui iront chez eux en automobile. Ils espèrent qu'il fera beau lorsqu'ils partiront. S'il neige, il leur faudra aller en chemin de fer. L'année dernière il faisait mauvais quand ils sont partis. Ils ne pouvaient pas aller en auto. Il leur a fallu prendre le train.

Il pleut maintenant, mais Louise est heureuse parce qu'elle va voir sa mère. Il lui faut aller en ville pour acheter des cadeaux. On a toujours un arbre de Noël chez elle. Elle achètera des bonbons pour ses sœurs qui sont plus jeunes qu'elle. Elle a envoyé une boîte de cigares à son père l'année dernière, mais il n'a pas pu les fumer.

Elle prendra le train à sept heures du matin. Il y aura beaucoup de monde à la gare demain.

B. Written:

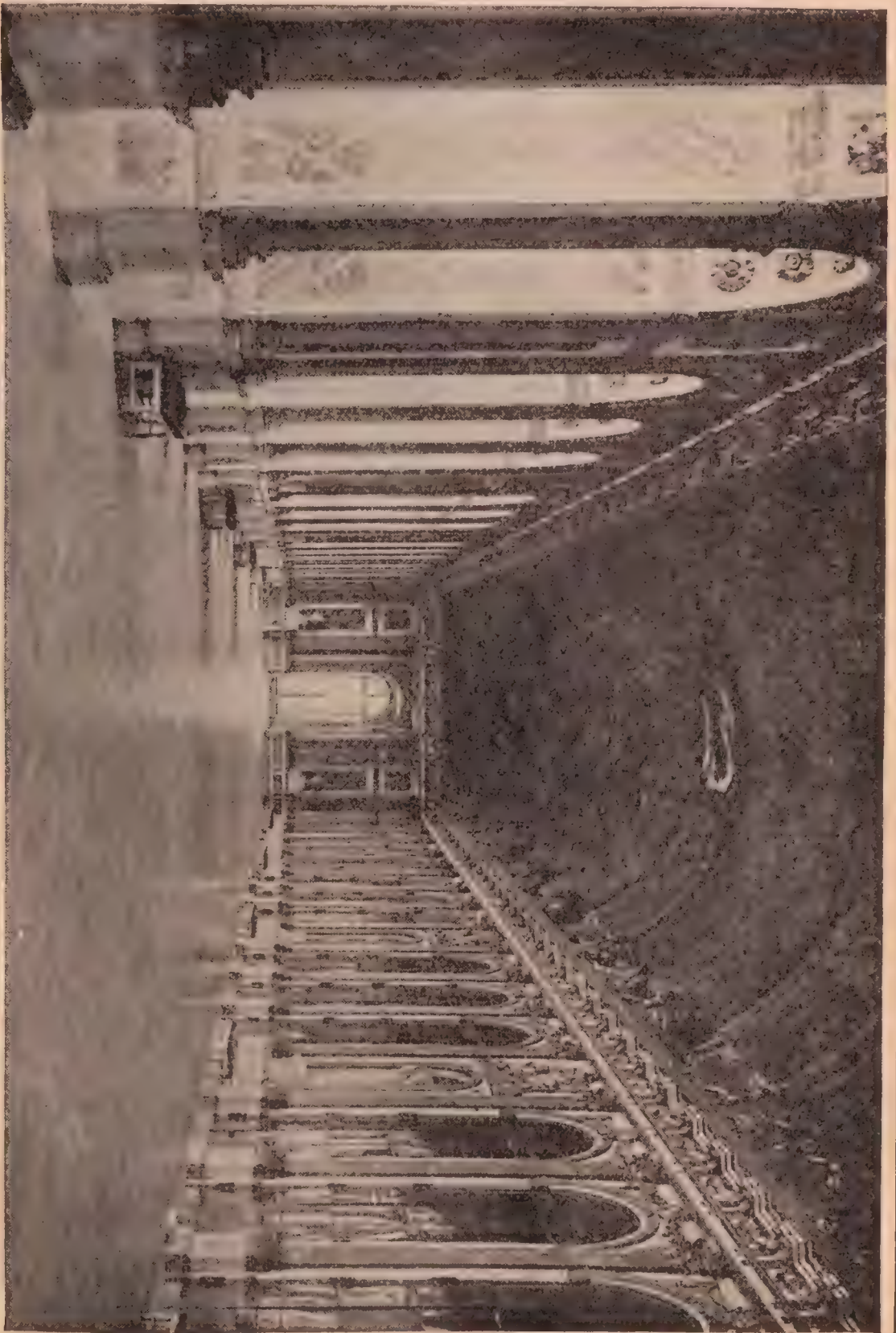
JOHN. — 1. Good morning, George, you will go home to spend the vacation, won't you? 2. At what time will you get up to-morrow morning? 3. If you intend to take the train at seven o'clock, you must get up at five o'clock. 4. Everybody will be at the station. 5. They will not be able to go by auto this year because it has been bad weather for two days. 6. It was snowing yesterday evening when I went downtown. 7. I saw in the morning paper that it will rain or snow to-morrow.

GEORGE. — 8. I shall not go by railroad even if it snows. 9. I shall go by auto. 10. Last year I left at four o'clock in the morning. 11. I arrived home at ten o'clock in the evening. 12. I had engine trouble. 13. This year the good little car will go better. 14. I shall not stop so often.

JOHN. — 15. I hope you will arrive home Christmas day. 16. Good-bye; I must go to the station to get my ticket. 17. One must not be late. 18. There will be many students downtown to-morrow.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with the proper form of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (pleuvoir) Il ——— mardi dernier. 2. (faire) Je vais me promener aussitôt qu'il ~~fera~~ beau. 3. (pleuvoir) Il ——— vendredi lorsque je suis parti. 4. (neiger) Il ——— souvent quand je demeurais à Paris. 5. (faire) Il n'est pas sorti dimanche parce



LA GALERIE DES GLACES, VERSAILLES

qu'il — froid. 6. (falloir) Il — partir demain à huit heures du matin. 7. (falloir) Il — partir hier à neuf heures du soir. 8. (pleuvoir) Il ne faut pas aller chez vous s'il —. 9. (falloir) Il leur — rester chez elles pendant qu'il pleuvait. 10. (faire) J'irai chez moi quand il — beau. 11. (falloir) Il — vous lever maintenant. 12. (pleuvoir) Il ne — pas demain.

(2) *Form complete sentences using the following expressions:*

1. neigera. 2. fallu. 3. pleuvait. 4. faudra. 5. pleut. 6. plu. 7. se lèveront. 8. dimanche dernier. 9. fera beau. 10. la semaine prochaine. 11. les vacances.

D. *Oral:* 1. I shall go home next week to spend the vacation. 2. They say that it will rain or snow to-morrow. 3. It was raining Saturday when I went to the station. 4. One must buy the tickets at once. 5. One must not go walking when it is raining. 6. We must go to bed at nine o'clock this evening. 7. Last year it rained on Christmas day. 8. We went home by railroad. 9. We used to go to my uncle's when we were young. 10. He always had a Christmas tree. 11. We shall not be able to go to his house this year. 12. My aunt died last week. 13. We took the train Friday at eleven o'clock in the morning. 14. You must not get up too late. 15. At what time do you leave? 16. What time is it now? 17. You must not ask too many questions.

E. *Rapid reading:*

VERSAILLES. LA FÊTE NATIONALE

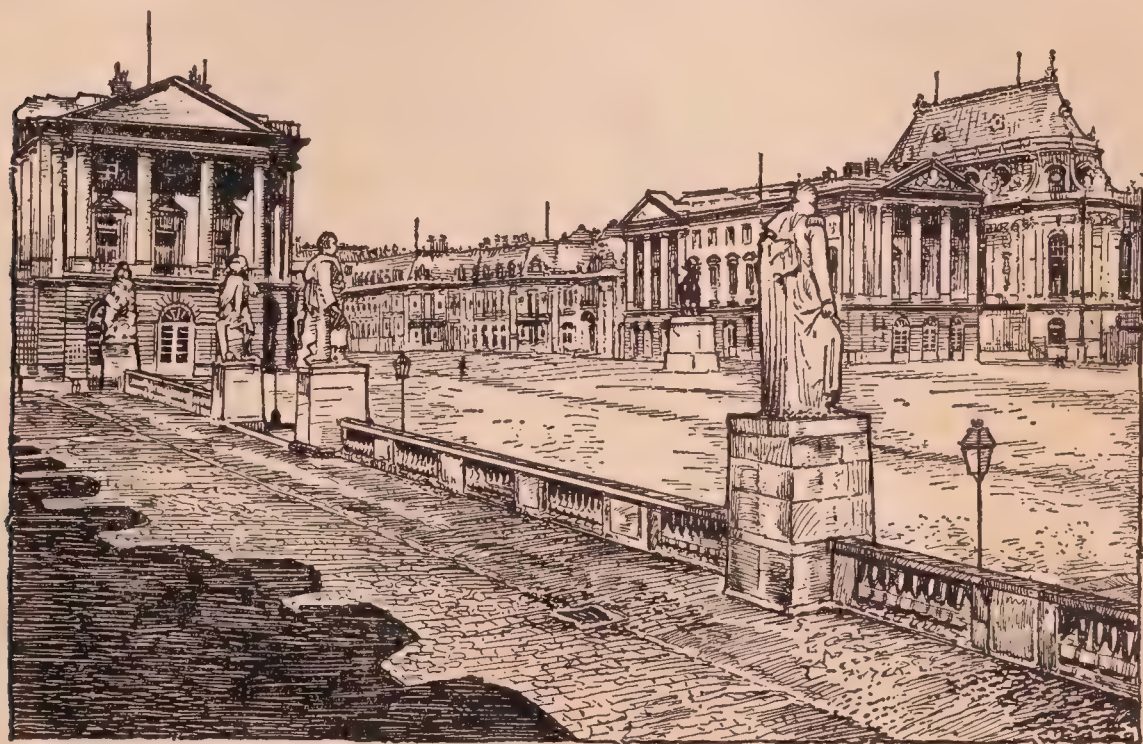
Le palais de Versailles est immense; la façade qui donne sur¹ les jardins mesure cinq cent quatre-vingts² mètres. On m'a dit que, sous Louis Quatorze, ce palais a logé dix mille personnes. C'est à présent un musée national, très riche en sculptures et en peintures historiques.

On signa dans ce château, en dix-sept cent quatre-vingt-trois,³ le traité qui a reconnu⁴ l'indépendance des États-Unis. Et, le vingt-huit juin, dix-neuf cent dix-neuf,⁵ dans la fameuse Galerie des Glaces,⁶ fut conclu le traité de paix qui termina la Grande Guerre.

Les jardins de Versailles sont merveilleux avec leurs belles

pelouses,⁷ leurs nombreuses fontaines, et leurs longues avenues bordées de grands arbres. Quand les Grandes Eaux⁸ jouent,⁹ le parc ressemble à un paysage¹⁰ de féerie.¹¹

Après avoir visité le Grand Trianon, château construit pour Louis Quatorze, et le Petit Trianon, avec son joli



Le Palais de Versailles

hameau¹² créé pour Marie-Antoinette, nous sommes revenus à Paris en tramway.

Demain, c'est le quatorze juillet, jour de la fête nationale en France. C'est l'anniversaire de la prise¹³ de la Bastille, cette forteresse célèbre dont les Parisiens s'emparèrent¹⁴ le quatorze juillet, dix-sept cent quatre-vingt neuf.¹⁵ Une grande revue militaire aura lieu¹⁶ à Longchamp, on dansera dans les rues de Paris, et il y aura des feux d'artifice.¹⁷

Nous sommes tristes¹⁸ ce soir. Il nous faudra quitter Paris après-demain¹⁹ pour retourner²⁰ chez nous. Mais nous espérons revenir²¹ ici l'année prochaine.

¹ opens upon. ² 580. ³ 1783. ⁴ recognized. ⁵ 1919. ⁶ mirrors.
⁷ lawns. ⁸ Great Fountains. ⁹ play. ¹⁰ landscape. ¹¹ fairyland. ¹² hamlet.
¹³ taking. ¹⁴ seized. ¹⁵ 1789. ¹⁶ will take place. ¹⁷ fireworks. ¹⁸ sad.
¹⁹ day after to-morrow. ²⁰ go back. ²¹ come back.

LESSON XXIV

(This lesson is complete in itself and may be transferred to an earlier or later position in the grammar. For vocabulary, see the General Vocabulary at the back of the book.)

95. Past Definite of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être*:

1. <i>I gave, etc.</i>	2. <i>I finished, etc.</i>	3. <i>I sold, etc.</i>
donn <i>ai</i> [dɔne]	fin <i>is</i> [fini]	vend <i>is</i> [vādi]
donn <i>as</i> [dɔna]	fin <i>is</i> [fini]	vend <i>is</i> [vādi]
donn <i>a</i> [dɔna]	fin <i>it</i> [fini]	vend <i>it</i> [vādi]
donn <i>âmes</i> [dɔnam]	fin <i>îmes</i> [finim]	vend <i>îmes</i> [vādim]
donn <i>âtes</i> [dɔnat]	fin <i>îtes</i> [finit]	vend <i>îtes</i> [vādit]
donn <i>èrent</i> [dɔnɛ:r]	fin <i>irent</i> [fini:r]	vend <i>irent</i> [vādi:r]
4. <i>I had, etc.</i>	5. <i>I was, etc.</i>	
eus [y] eûmes [ym]	fus [fy] fûmes [fym]	
eus [y] eûtes [yt]	fus [fy] fûtes [fyt]	
eut [y] eurent [y:r]	fut [fy] furent [fy:r]	

96. Past Definite of *aller, dire, faire, pouvoir, venir, falloir, pleuvoir*:

1. <i>I went, etc.</i>	2. <i>I said, etc.</i>	3. <i>I did, etc.</i>
allai [ale]	dis [di]	fis [fi]
allas [ala]	dis [di]	fis [fi]
alla [ala]	dit [di]	fit [fi]
allâmes [alam]	dîmes [dim]	fîmes [fim]
allâtes [alat]	dîtes [dit]	fîtes [fit]
allèrent [alɛ:r]	dirent [di:r]	fîrent [fi:r]
4. <i>I was able, etc.</i>	5. <i>I came, etc.</i>	
pus [py] pûmes [pym]	vins [vɛ̃]	vînmes [vɛ̃:m]
pus [py] pûtes [pyt]	vins [vɛ̃]	vîntes [vɛ̃:t]
put [py] purent [py:r]	vint [vɛ̃]	vinrent [vɛ̃:r]
6. <i>It was necessary, il fallut</i> [faly]	7. <i>It rained, il plut</i> [ply]	

97. Use of the Past Definite. The past definite is used in the literary narrative style to denote what happened (completed past action) or what happened next (successive events). It never denotes, like the imperfect (§ 88), what was happening or used to happen or continued to happen.

Quand Louis Quatorze devint roi, il *était* trop jeune pour gouverner. Ce fut sa mère qui gouverna.

Dieu accepta les présents d'Abel, qui *était* plus pieux que son frère; mais il détourna les yeux de ceux de Caïn, parce que son cœur n'*était* pas pur. . . . Un jour Caïn et Abel *étaient* seuls dans un champ, et Caïn se jeta sur Abel, et le tua.

When Louis XIV became king, he *was* too young to rule. It was his mother who ruled.

God accepted the gifts of Abel, who *was* more righteous than his brother; but he turned away his eyes from those of Cain, because his heart *was* not pure. . . . One day Cain and Abel *were* alone in a field, and Cain fell upon Abel and slew him.

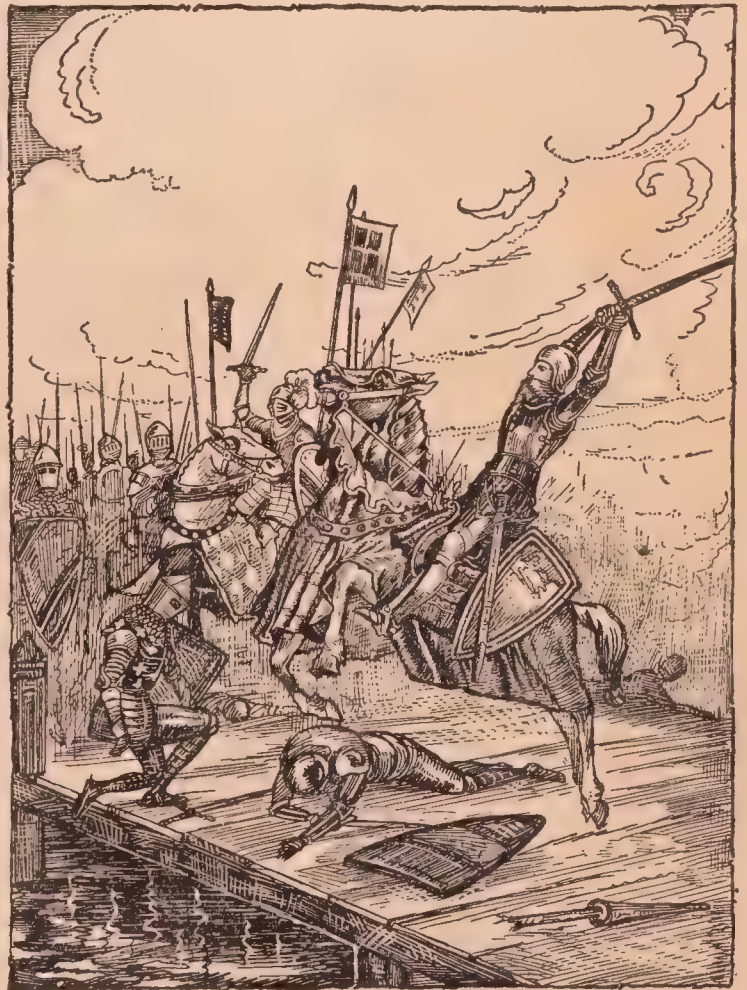
EXERCISES

A. *Histoire du chevalier Bayard.* Les rois qui vinrent après Louis Onze allèrent faire la guerre en Italie. Ils voulaient y conquérir des provinces.

Pendant ces guerres s'illustra le chevalier Bayard.

Un jour, l'armée française se trouvait au bord d'une rivière, et l'armée ennemie de l'autre côté. Entre les deux, il y avait un pont.

Une troupe d'ennemis voulut s'emparer de ce pont. Mais Bayard les aperçut. Vite il sauta sur son cheval. Il traversa le pont au galop, et il arriva au bout comme les ennemis y arrivaient aussi.



Le Chevalier Bayard défend le Pont

Il se trouva seul contre eux; mais il n'eut pas peur. Il frappa de sa grande épée, à droite, à gauche. Mais les ennemis étaient bien nombreux; le brave chevalier était en grand danger d'être tué.

Heureusement, une troupe de Français accourut. Les ennemis s'enfuirent. Ils ne pouvaient ¹ croire qu'un homme les avait arrêtés à lui tout seul. Ils racontèrent que c'était le diable lui-même qui les avait empêchés de passer.

Les Français furent très fiers du courage de Bayard. Ils l'appelèrent le *Chevalier sans peur et sans reproche*.

— LAVISSE, *Histoire de France* (Cours Élémentaire)

B. *Written* (Use the past definite as much as possible):

JOHN. — 1. The professor has given us to-day a hard lesson, George. 2. Look at it. 3. What a lesson! Let's study it together. 4. I am going to ask you some questions: . . . 5. — Did Louis Eleventh go to Italy? 6. — No, he didn't go there. 7. — Who went there? 8. — The other kings who came after him. 9. — Were the two armies on the bridge? 10. — What a question! No, they were not on the bridge. 11. — What did Bayard do in order to cross the bridge? 12. — He jumped upon his horse and crossed it at a gallop. 13. — Were his enemies afraid? 14. — No, they were too numerous. 15. — Did Bayard stop them? 16. — Yes, they said he was the devil himself. 17. — What did they do? 18. — They fled quickly. 19. — Was the king proud of Bayard's courage? 20. — Yes, he was very proud of it.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French*: 1. De qui étudions-nous l'histoire aujourd'hui? 2. Que firent les rois qui vinrent après Louis Onze?

¹ **Ne** may be used without **pas** or **point** with certain verbs, especially **oser**, to dare, **cesser**, to cease, **pouvoir**, to be able, **savoir**, to know.

Je ne peux vous le dire.

I cannot tell it to you.

3. Qu'est-ce qu'ils voulaient y faire? 4. Qui s'illustra pendant ces guerres? 5. Où se trouvait l'armée française un jour? 6. Et l'autre armée? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait entre les deux armées? 8. Que voulut faire la troupe d'ennemis? 9. Qui les aperçut? 10. Que fit-il d'abord? 11. Que fit-il ensuite? 12. Quand arrivait-il au bout du pont? 13. Est-ce que ses amis étaient avec lui? 14. Eut-il peur? 15. Que fit-il de son épée? 16. Y avait-il très peu d'ennemis? 17. Qui accourut? 18. Que firent les ennemis? 19. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ne pouvaient croire? 20. Qu'est-ce qu'ils racontèrent? 21. Qui furent très fiers? 22. Comment appelèrent-ils Bayard?

D. *Oral (Use the past definite as much as possible):* 1. One day a man came to our house. 2. He arrived at eight o'clock in the evening. 3. I was studying when he came. 4. He wanted (*désirer*) to see my father. 5. What did he do? 6. My father could not tell us (it to us). 7. The man went downtown. 8. We stayed at home. 9. Several friends came to our house. 10. My father and mother were not there. 11. Their friends entered the house. 12. What did they do? 13. They talked with us, and they told us stories. 14. Finally they were sleepy. 15. They went home. 16. I was tired. 17. I went to bed at eleven o'clock. 18. I was happy when my father came to the door of my room.

LESSON XXV

98. The Infinitive. Some of the commoner uses of the infinitive are:

1. Without any preposition preceding it, after such verbs as:

aimer mieux to prefer, like better
aller to go
désirer to wish, want
devoir *je dois* to owe, ought
espérer to hope
faire to make, do, cause
falloir to be necessary, must

laisser to allow, let
pouvoir to be able, can
préférer to prefer
savoir to know (how)
venir to come
vouloir to wish, want, be willing

J'aime mieux (préfère) rester.	I prefer to remain.
Je vais étudier.	I am going to study.
Voulez (désirez)-vous y aller?	Do you want to go there?
Il lui faut travailler.	He must work.
Il est venu me voir.	He came to see me.

2. Preceded by **de**, after many verbs such as:

cesser	to cease, stop	oublier	to forget
demander	to ask	permettre	to permit, let
se dépêcher	to hurry	prier	to beg, ask
dire	to tell (<i>order</i>)	regretter	to regret, be sorry
essayer	to try	tâcher	to try

Il cesse <i>de</i> fumer.	He stops smoking.
Elle m'a dit <i>de</i> venir.	She told me to come.
J'ai essayé <i>de</i> le faire.	I tried to do it.
J'ai oublié <i>de</i> le faire.	I forgot to do it.

3. Preceded by **de** as (a) logical subject of certain impersonal verbs, and (b) complement of most adjectives and nouns:

Il est difficile <i>d'apprendre</i> cette leçon.	It is difficult to learn that lesson.
Je suis charmé <i>de</i> vous voir.	I am delighted to see you.
J'ai l'intention <i>d'aller</i> à Paris.	I intend to go to Paris.

4. Preceded by **à** after many verbs such as:

aider	to aid, help	continuer	to continue
aimer ¹	to love, like	enseigner	to teach
s'amuser	to have a good time	inviter	to invite
apprendre	to learn	réussir	to succeed
commencer	to begin		

J'aime (<i>à</i>) ¹ étudier.	I like to study.
J'apprends <i>à</i> parler français.	I am learning to speak French.
Il commence <i>à</i> parler.	He is beginning to talk.
Il m'a invité <i>à</i> venir.	He invited me to come.

5. Preceded by **à** as the complement of some adjectives and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose. When used

¹ The preposition **à** may be omitted (colloquially).

thus, the infinitive can ordinarily be translated passively as well as actively. Usually the thought in the English sentence stops with the infinitive.¹

C'est facile à faire.

It is easy to do (to be done).

J'ai une automobile à vendre.

I have an automobile to sell (to be sold).

Cette leçon est difficile à apprendre.

This lesson is difficult to learn (to be learned).

6. A verb governed by a preposition is regularly in the infinitive and is usually translated into English by means of the present participle. **En** is followed by the present participle and is usually translated into English by *while*, *in*, *by*, *upon*, *on*, etc.

Jean travaille sans parler.

John works without talking.

Georges travaille en parlant.

George works while talking.

99. Present Participle of *donner*, *finir*, *vendre*, *avoir*, *être*:

1. *giving*

donn *ant* [dɔnɑ̃]

2. *finishing*

finiss *ant* [finisɑ̃]

3. *selling*

vend *ant* [vɑ̃dɑ̃]

4. *having*

ay *ant* [ɛjɑ̃]

5. *being*

ét *ant* [etɑ̃]

100. Agreement of Present Participle. Used as an adjective, the present participle agrees like an adjective; otherwise it is invariable.

Une scène charmante.

A charming scene.

Elles sont sorties en parlant.

They went out talking.

¹ Note the difference between the following two sentences:

Il est facile *de* faire cela.

It is easy to do that.

C'est facile *à* faire.

It is easy to do.

after être
with object - il + de
without " - ce + à

VOCABULARY

anglais [ãgle] English	ouvrir [uvri:r] to open (<i>p.p.</i> ouvert)
charmant [ʃarmã] charming	présenter [prezãte] to introduce, present
charmé [ʃarme] delighted, much pleased	quelque [kêlkə] <i>adj.</i> some; a few; — chose <i>m.</i> something
la connaissance [kõnesã:s] acquaintance	revoir [røvwa:r] to see again
consulter [kõsylte] to consult	sans [sã] without
la fois [fwa] time; deux —, twice	la scène [sɛ:n] scene, stage
le franc [frã] franc (<i>about 4 cents</i>)	le temps [tã] weather, time
la France [frã:s] France; en —, in (to) France	

EXERCISES

A. Tous les élèves se trouvent dans la salle de classe. En attendant le professeur ils s'amuse^{nt} à raconter des histoires. Enfin M. Rambaud entre avec Georges Lambert. Sans ouvrir son livre il commence à parler aux élèves, — « Je regrette de vous avoir fait attendre, mais Georges m'a invité à venir à l'école dans son auto, et nous avons eu une panne.

Je suis très heureux de vous revoir après les vacances, mes amis.

Maintenant, il faut cesser de parler anglais; il faut commencer à parler français. Ce n'est pas facile à faire, mais il faudra essayer. En parlant on apprend à parler. Les verbes ne sont pas difficiles à apprendre, mais il est nécessaire de les étudier beaucoup. La grammaire est intéressante si vous voulez travailler.

Je vous prie de venir me consulter si vous trouvez quelque chose qui est trop difficile. »

B. *Written:* 1. The professor was ill to-day and was not able to remain in the classroom. 2. He left without saying "good-bye" to the pupils. 3. He told them to continue to speak French. 4. It is difficult to do, but they are going to

try. 5. They prefer (like better) to speak English. 6. They have so many things to tell. 7. When the professor left, George got up. 8. He began to talk French.

GEORGE. — 9. Miss Duval, permit me to introduce to you Mr. Bernard. 10. Now Louise, you must say something quickly.

LOUISE. — 11. I am delighted to make your acquaintance, Mr. Bernard. 12. I hope to see you in France. 13. Do you intend to go there?

JOHN. — 14. Yes (Miss), Mr. Lambert has invited me to go there with him. 15. He cannot speak French. 16. It is easy to do so (it), but he doesn't want to study.

GEORGE. — 17. That is all for to-day, my children. 18. Go take a walk. 19. Speak French while walking. 20. It is not necessary to study to-morrow's lesson.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Fill in the blanks with the prepositions à or de when required:* 1. S'il pleut je vais — rester chez moi. 2. J'essayerai — travailler. 3. S'il cesse — pleuvoir je désire — sortir. 4. Jean m'a invité — dîner avec lui. 5. Il s'amuse — se promener en auto. 6. J'espère — vous voir demain. 7. Laissez-moi — sortir. 8. Permettez-moi — sortir. 9. Dépêchez-vous — acheter les billets. 10. J'ai oublié — apporter de l'argent. 11. Pouvez-vous — me donner dix-huit francs? 12. Ils me disent — entrer. 13. Ils me font — sortir. 14. Je vous prie — venir chez moi. 15. Je suis charmé — vous voir. 16. Est-il difficile — parler français? 17. Non, monsieur, ce n'est pas difficile — faire. 18. Avez-vous l'intention — aller au cinéma? 19. Il est temps — se coucher. 20. Georges a une auto — vendre. 21. Il est facile — vendre une bonne auto.

D. *Oral:* 1. Permit me to introduce to you Mr. Benoît. 2. I am pleased to make your acquaintance, sir. 3. I am sorry to make you wait. 4. It is not necessary to wait for me. 5. You must not wait for me. 6. George talks while eating. 7. Robert ate without

speaking. 8. One must talk French while walking. 9. We shall begin to talk French next Monday. 10. When you are in France, it will be necessary (*two ways*) to talk French. 11. The professor has been making us talk French for two days. 12. It was necessary to talk slowly. 13. I wasn't able to go downtown Sunday because it was raining. 14. It will be difficult to open that window. 15. That window will be difficult to open. 16. Do you like to work? 17. I prefer (*two ways*) to have a good time. 18. Shall you be able to come to see me this evening? 19. I shall have something to show you to-morrow.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LETTRE D'ERNEST À JEAN BERNARD

Mon cher Jean,

Paris, le 15 juillet, 19—.

Coup de théâtre! ¹ Je vous avais annoncé notre départ. Mais nos parents, satisfaits de nos efforts pendant toute l'année scolaire, nous récompensent par un voyage à travers ² les principales régions françaises. La France est maintenant administrativement partagée ³ en quatre-vingt-neuf ⁴ départements. ⁵ Mais on emploie beaucoup la division, plus simple et plus nette, ⁶ en grandes régions qui présentent une certaine unité. Leurs noms sont parfois ⁷ ceux ⁸ d'anciennes provinces.

Pour comble ⁹ de joie, mon cher ami Édouard Ravenel et sa sœur Marguerite viennent en France cet été. Ils arrivent juste à temps ¹⁰ pour nous accompagner. Nous allons les attendre au Havre, l'un des plus grands ports de France.

Nos amis sont sur le *Paris*. Ils ont choisi une ligne qui est renommée pour la vitesse et l'élégance de ses bateaux, pour ses vins et sa bonne cuisine. Les victimes du mal de mer ¹¹ apprécient particulièrement une nourriture soignée, ¹² et nos passagers veulent être prêts pour toutes les éventualités d'un première traversée.

Plusieurs bateaux de cette compagnie, qui assurent le service entre l'Amérique et la France, portent le nom de



grands généraux français, venus à notre aide dans la Guerre de l'indépendance: La Fayette, Rochambeau, De Grasse. Je ne vous parlerai pas de La Fayette, le fidèle ami de Washington, qui est aussi ¹³ connu de vous que de moi. Mais laissez-moi vous rappeler ¹⁴ que Rochambeau et De Grasse aidèrent Washington à faire capituler ¹⁵ le général Cornwallis à Yorktown.



Un Paquebot Transatlantique

Vous savez, mon cher Jean, je viens d'avoir ¹⁶ un prix d'histoire et de géographie au lycée, et il m'est difficile de ne pas infliger à mes amis mon érudition toute neuve.¹⁷ Tenez-vous ¹⁸ heureux que je vous épargne ¹⁹ le voyage de Franklin à Paris et ses efforts, couronnés de succès, pour nous gagner l'appui ²⁰ de la France.

Je n'aurai guère ²¹ le temps de vous écrire; mais je vous tiendrai au courant ²² de nos excursions en vous envoyant des extraits de mon journal.

Bien à vous,
ERNEST MELVIN.

¹ unexpected turn of events. ² across. ³ divided. ⁴ eighty-nine.
⁵ political divisions. ⁶ clearer. ⁷ at times. ⁸ those. ⁹ height. ¹⁰ in time.
¹¹ seasickness. ¹² carefully prepared. ¹³ as well. ¹⁴ recall. ¹⁵ caused to
surrender. ¹⁶ have just had. ¹⁷ brand new. ¹⁸ consider yourself. ¹⁹ spare.
²⁰ support. ²¹ scarcely. ²² keep you informed.

LESSON XXVI

101. Present Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être*:1. *I (may) give, etc.*¹donn *e* [dɔ̃n]donn *es* [dɔ̃n]donn *e* [dɔ̃n]donn *ions* [dɔ̃njɔ̃]donn *iez* [dɔ̃nje]donn *ent* [dɔ̃n]2. *I (may) finish, etc.*finiss *e* [finis]finiss *es* [finis]finiss *e* [finis]finiss *ions* [finisjɔ̃]finiss *iez* [finisje]finiss *ent* [finis]3. *I (may) sell, etc.*vend *e* [vɑ̃:d]vend *es* [vɑ̃:d]vend *e* [vɑ̃:d]vend *ions* [vɑ̃djɔ̃]vend *iez* [vɑ̃dje]vend *ent* [vɑ̃:d]4. *I (may) have, etc.*

aie [ɛ] ayons [ɛjɔ̃]

aies [ɛ] ayez [ɛje]

ait [ɛ] aient [ɛ]

5. *I (may) be, etc.*

sois [swa] soyons [swajɔ̃]

sois [swa] soyez [swaje]

soit [swa] soient [swa]

a. The perfect subjunctive is formed by adding a past participle to the present subjunctive of *avoir* or *être*.

Que j'*aie* donné, etc.

That I may have given, etc.

Que je *sois* venu, etc.

That I may have come, etc.

102. Use of the Subjunctive. Some of the commoner uses of the subjunctive are:

1. In a subordinate noun clause introduced by *que, that*, after expressions of *willing* or *desiring*.

Je désire que vous restiez.

I desire you to remain (= that you may *or* should remain).

Voulez-vous que je vende la maison?

Do you want me to sell the house?

NOTE. — The indicative is used after *espérer, to hope*.

2. Similarly, after expressions of *joy* or *sorrow*.

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.

I am glad he is here.

Je regrette que vous soyez malade.

I am sorry you are ill.

¹ The paradigm meanings *I may give, etc.*, are only approximate, as will be seen from the examples.

3. So, also, after expressions of *necessity*, like *il faut*, *il est nécessaire*.

Il faut que vous restiez ici.

You must remain here.

Il est nécessaire que vous restiez ici.

It is necessary for you to remain here.

4. *Que* is never omitted, as *that* often is in English.

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.

I am glad (that) he is here.

103. Tense Sequence. Present or future in the principal clause is regularly followed by the present or perfect subjunctive. (The other tenses usually take the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.)

PRES. <i>Il faut</i>	} <i>que vous parliez.</i>	{ You must speak. You will have to speak.
FUT. <i>Il faudra</i>		

a. The subjunctive simple tenses express an incompleted state or action, and the compound tenses a completed state or action with reference to the time of the governing verb.

Je regrette qu'il parle.

I am sorry that he is talking.

Je regrette qu'il ait parlé.

I am sorry that he has talked.

Je suis content qu'il soit ici.

I am glad he is here.

Je suis content qu'il ait été ici.

I am glad that he has been here.

104. The Infinitive instead of Subjunctive Construction. When a choice is possible between the infinitive construction and the subjunctive, the infinitive is usually preferable. This statement applies especially when the subject of the principal and subordinate clauses is the same.

<i>Il vous faut rester ici.</i>	} You must remain here.
<i>Il faut que vous restiez ici.</i>	

Je désire rester ici.

I want to stay here.

But: *Je désire que vous restiez ici.* I want you to stay here.

VOCABULARY

accompagner [akõpane] to accompany, go with

aider [æde] (à) to help

alors [alõ:r] then, therefore

ceci [səsi] this (*indefinite*)

cela [səla] that (*indefinite*)

chercher [ʃerʃe] to look for

content [kõtā] glad, satisfied

écrire [ekri:r] to write (*p.p. écrit*)

employer [ãplwaje] to use

fâché [fa:ʃe] sorry, angry

gronder [grõde] to scold, grumble

le mars [mars] March

le mot [mo] word

simplement [sẽpləmā] simply

le subjonctif [sybʒõktif] subjunctive

téléphoner [telefõne] to telephone

EXERCISES

Le 16 mars.

A. Cher Robert,

Voulez-vous que je vous envoie une petite lettre très intéressante? Le professeur désire que nous envoyions des lettres en français à nos amis. Il faut que nous employions le subjonctif autant que possible dans ces lettres. Il m'a dit, « Je désire que vous essayiez de le faire demain. Ce n'est pas difficile. Il faut simplement que vous ayez un peu de patience. » Alors je me dépêche de vous écrire.

Je regrette que Paul ne soit pas ici avec son dictionnaire pour m'aider. . . . Il désire que je l'accompagne au théâtre ce soir. Il m'a téléphoné, « Soyez chez vous ce soir à huit heures. Je désire que vous dîniez en ville avec moi. »

Je serai très heureux de le faire, mais il faudra qu'il attende un peu. Le professeur me grondera si je ne réussis pas à écrire cette lettre. . . . Voilà Georges à la porte. Il faut que je m'arrête. J'espère vous revoir bientôt.

Bien à vous,

JEAN.

B. *Written:*

March 17

1. My dear John,

I am sorry that you are ill. 2. Paul came to bring me your interesting letter, and he told me you were not able to

go to the class. 3. You mustn't dine so often downtown. 4. The professor asked me also to write a letter. 5. It isn't necessary for it to be long, but I must use subjunctives. 6. I am very glad that Paul is here now. 7. He can look for words in the dictionary. 8. We must finish this letter quickly. 9. He wants me to accompany him to the "movies." 10. I hope that you will be better to-morrow. 11. Do you want us to send you something to eat or some cigarettes? 12. Well, I must stop. 13. I am very glad that finally I have succeeded in finishing this letter. 14. Are you sorry that it is not longer?

Yours truly,
ROBERT.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Fill in the blanks using the proper form of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (avoir) Je suis fâché que vous — froid. 2. (commencer) Nous sommes contents qu'il — à faire beau temps. 3. (être) Êtes-vous content que je — ici? 4. (être) Êtes-vous content que j'— — ici hier? 5. (être) Je suis charmé que vous — venu. 6. (attendre) Je regrette que Robert ne nous — pas. 7. (finir) Il faut qu'il — ses leçons. 8. (avoir) Je suis heureux que vous — l'intention de rester. 9. (envoyer) Il faudra que nous — des cadeaux à nos amies. 10. (vendre) Je désire qu'on nous — des roses. 11. (choisir) Il sera nécessaire que nous les — nous-mêmes. 12. (parler) Achetez-les sans —. 13. (attendre) En — nous pourrons parler.

D. *Translate giving both infinitive and subjunctive constructions when possible:* 1. George invited us to come. 2. Lucy forgot to come. 3. John wasn't able to come. 4. I am glad that Louise is here. 5. Do you want her to buy a present? 6. She must choose a pretty dress. 7. I am sorry George bought a car. 8. But he must not sell it. 9. It isn't necessary for him to sell it. 10. I am glad your friend is here. 11. I am pleased to make his acquaintance. 12. I am pleased that the children made his acquaintance. 13. We want you to accompany us, sir. 14. Be here at eleven

o'clock. 15. Do you want me to wait for you? 16. You must telephone us early.

E. *Rapid reading (Journal d'Ernest):*

LA NORMANDIE

Rouen, le 19 juillet.

Nos amis sont avec nous, frais et dispos ¹ pour le voyage. Notre tour de France commence par la Normandie, que nous avons déjà traversée pour venir au Havre.



Une Ancienne Coiffe
(Normandie)

Depuis longtemps je désirais connaître mieux cette fertile région, qui porte le nom des « Hommes du Nord ». ² C'est là que Rollon ³ et ses rudes vikings s'établirent au dixième siècle. Et c'est un duc de Normandie, Guillaume le Conquérant, qui se rendit ⁴ maître de l'Angleterre en remportant ⁵ la victoire d'Hastings.

Les rois et les seigneurs normands parlèrent longtemps la langue française à la

cour d'Angleterre, et c'est pourquoi tant de mots de la langue anglaise viennent du français.

Tout cela laisse mon ami Édouard assez froid. ⁶ Ce qui le passionne bien plus, ⁷ c'est que la Normandie est un riche

pays d'élevage,⁸ dont il apprécie le lait, le beurre et les œufs. Il veut voir les belles vaches grasses⁹ paître¹⁰ l'herbe haute sous les pommiers. Et depuis qu'il a goûté¹¹ le fameux cidre normand, il déclare que ce qu'on appelle cidre aux États-Unis a une réputation usurpée.

Nous avons remonté la Seine dans un petit bateau, qui fait la navette¹² entre Le Havre et Rouen. Cette ville-ci¹³ nous intéresse beaucoup. Écortant¹⁴ la visite des églises et du Palais de Justice, Édouard s'est spécialisé dans la recherche des meilleurs restaurants. Alice et Marguerite souhaitaient¹⁵ voir la maison natale de Corneille, dont elles ont lu *Le Cid*.¹⁶ Moi, je me suis dirigé vers la Place du Vieux Marché,¹⁷ où Jeanne d'Arc, l'héroïne de la Guerre de Cent Ans, qui sauva la France de la domination anglaise, fut brûlée vive.¹⁸

Nous partons pour Deauville, plage¹⁹ très fréquentée, où les jeunes filles veulent aller admirer les suprêmes élégances.²⁰ Puis nous nous dirigerons vers le Mont-Saint-Michel, la curieuse église fortifiée, bâtie sur un îlot de granit, à la limite²¹ de la Normandie et de la Bretagne.

¹ ready. ² Northmen. ³ Rollo. ⁴ rendered himself. ⁵ gaining.
⁶ indifferent. ⁷ interests him much more strongly. ⁸ stock raising. ⁹ fat.
¹⁰ to pasture. ¹¹ tasted. ¹² goes to and fro. ¹³ the latter city. ¹⁴ cutting short.
¹⁵ wished. ¹⁶ *tragedy by Corneille*. ¹⁷ market place. ¹⁸ alive.
¹⁹ seashore resort. ²⁰ very latest styles. ²¹ border.

LESSON XXVII

105. Use of the Subjunctive (*continued*). The subjunctive is used in adverbial clauses after certain conjunctions such as:

afin que	[afɛ̃kə]	} in order that, so that
pour que	[purkə]	
avant que	[avɑ̃kə]	before (that)
bien que	[bjɛ̃kə]	} although
quoique	[kwakə]	

a. *Avant que* may take a redundant *ne* before the verb in the subordinate clause.

Nous partirons avant qu'il (ne) pleuve. We shall leave before it rains.

106. Present Subjunctive of *aller, dire, faire, falloir, pleuvoir, pouvoir*:

1. *I (may) go, etc.*

✓ aill *e* [ɑ:j] all *ions* [aljõ]
 aill *es* [ɑ:j] all *iez* [alje]
 aill *e* [ɑ:j] aill *ent* [ɑ:j]

2. *I (may) say, etc.*

dis *e* [diz] dis *ions* [dizjõ]
 dis *es* [diz] dis *iez* [dizje]
 dis *e* [diz] dis *ent* [diz]

3. *I (may) do, etc.*

✓ fass *e* [fas] fass *ions* [fasjõ]
 fass *es* [fas] fass *iez* [fasje]
 fass *e* [fas] fass *ent* [fas]

4. *I (may) be able, etc.*

puiss *e* [pɥis] puiss *ions* [pɥisjõ]
 puiss *es* [pɥis] puiss *iez* [pɥisje]
 puiss *e* [pɥis] puiss *ent* [pɥis]

5. (that) it (may) be necessary
 (qu')il faill *e* [fa:j]

6. it (may) rain
 il pleuv *e* [plœv]

VOCABULARY

afin [afɛ̃]; — de (+ *infin.*) in order to

s'en aller [sanale] to leave, go away (*no definite destination*)

avant [avɑ̃] before (*time*); — de (+ *infin.*) before

la corbeille [kɔrbɛ:j] basket; — à papier wastebasket

cependant [səpɑ̃dɑ̃] however

effacer [efase] to erase

éviter [evite] to avoid

l'*infinitif* [ɛ̃finitif] *m.* infinitive

recevoir [rəsəvwɑ:r] to receive (*p. p. reçu*)

répondre [repõ:dr] (*à*) to answer, reply

EXERCISES

Le 19 mars.

A. Ma chère Marie,

Pourquoi est-ce que tout le monde s'amuse ces jours-ci à écrire des lettres en français? Faut-il que je le fasse parce que les autres le font? C'est stupide! Et pourquoi est-il nécessaire que nous employions le subjonctif? Quoique le professeur nous dise de le faire, il continue, lui-même, à employer l'*infinitif* le plus souvent possible.

Georges est chez moi depuis vingt minutes. Il désire que j'aille me promener en auto avec lui. Je ne peux le faire avant que cette lettre soit finie. Je suis charmée qu'il m'ait invitée à l'accompagner, mais je suis fâchée qu'il soit venu de si bonne heure. Je vais lui donner quelque chose à manger afin qu'il ne puisse pas trop parler.

Eh bien, il faut que je cesse d'écrire. Georges désire que nous nous en allions avant qu'il (ne) pleuve.

Le professeur dit qu'il faut que je lui montre cette lettre. J'espère qu'il la jettera dans la corbeille à papier.

Votre bien dévouée,
LUCIE.

B. *Written:*

March 20

1. My dear Lucy,

I have received the letter you wrote me in French. 2. George brought it to me before going to school. 3. I am glad that you wrote me although you use a good many subjunctives. 4. You mustn't do it. 5. Use the infinitive as often as possible. 6. Although lessons on the subjunctive are found (**se trouvent**) in the grammars, one doesn't use it much in talking. 7. I hope that soon the professor will stop (cease) giving them to us. . . . 8. I am going to answer (to) your letter at once, although I am very tired. 9. My mother wants me to go downtown with her in order to help her choose a dress. 10. I regret that you cannot come with us. 11. We must go (there) before it rains. 12. I am glad that you are going to show your letter to the professor. 13. He will be delighted to see it. 14. You must, however, erase that word "stupid" before you give it to him.

Yours truly,
MARY.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Fill in the blanks using the proper forms of the verbs in parenthesis and supplying any necessary prepositions:* 1. (aller) Je désire — en ville. 2. (aller) Je désire qu'il aille en ville. 3. (faire) Que voulez-vous que je fasse? 4. (vendre) Je désire le voir avant qu'il (ne) se vende sa ferme. 5. (dire) Que voulez-vous que je vous dise? 6. (pouvoir) Soyez chez moi ce soir pour que je puisse vous le dire. 7. (être, continuer) Bien que je sois riche je continue travailler. 8. (aider) Il est venu de bonne heure afin de m'—. 9. (aider) Je suis venu afin que vous m'— le faire. 10. (s'en aller) Il faut qu'ils —. 11. (pleuvoir, cesser) Quoiqu'il ne — pas, Georges continue travailler. 12. (faire) Je suis fâché qu'il soit si froid. 13. (pouvoir) Je suis content que vous — éviter cet homme hier. 14. (pouvoir) Je regrette qu'elle ne — pas répondre à ma lettre. 15. (regretter, commencer) Je — vous dire qu'il — pleuvoir.

D. *Translate giving both subjunctive and infinitive construction when possible:* 1. One must use the infinitive as much as possible. 2. Although the subjunctive is difficult, it is necessary to learn it. 3. Although it is raining, we shall go to the country. 4. What do you want them to do? 5. They must go away in order that I can study. 6. What do you want me to tell you? 7. I shall leave before you arrive. 8. I am sorry you didn't buy a wastebasket. 9. She must answer (to) his letter. 10. Repeat the words before you forget them. 11. Do you want that man to sell you some cigars? 12. I prefer to go away before you dine. 13. I hope to see you before you go away. 14. Begin to work. 15. Let me stay here. 16. May (pouvoir) I smoke? 17. I am glad to go home during the vacation. 18. I hope to go home before my father sells his auto.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA BRETAGNE

Brest, le 27 juillet.

Après la plantureuse ¹ Normandie, la Bretagne, la « terre de granit recouverte de chênes », ² le pays des Celtes qu'on



JEUNES MARIÉS DE LA BRETAGNE

jeunes mariés de la Bretagne

a longtemps appelé la petite Bretagne ³ pour la distinguer de la grande (Îles britanniques).

Quelques lignes de César me viennent aux lèvres ⁴: « Toute la Gaule est divisée en trois parties, dont l'une est occupée par les Celtes. . . . » Je ne me rappelle plus la suite.⁵ Je l'ai demandée à Édouard qui m'a ri au nez.⁶ Il me trouve incorrigible avec mes préoccupations historiques.

Cette contrée pauvre, sauf ⁷ sur les côtes, qui sont fertiles, patrie de nombreux marins qui vont pêcher ⁸ la sardine et la morue,⁹ a un charme puissant.¹⁰ Nulle ¹¹ région de la France n'a conservé, paraît-il,¹² une individualité plus distincte. Les Bretons restent attachés à leur langue, leurs usages, leurs traditions, leurs tristes et poétiques légendes, leurs costumes. Presque chaque village a sa coiffe ¹³ particulière.

Alice a photographié hier un couple de paysans, dans leurs beaux habits brodés des jours de fête.

Marguerite, qui est un peu romanesque, s'attend ¹⁴ presque à rencontrer des fées.

Nous avons visité Saint-Malo, aux ¹⁵ rues montantes et tortueuses.¹⁶ C'est la ville natale de Chateaubriand. Ma sœur nous a entraînés ¹⁷ en mer ¹⁸ jusqu'à l'îlot du Grand Bé, où le célèbre écrivain, père du romantisme, repose solitaire « bercé ¹⁹ par le bruit du vent et des flots ».

Édouard préfère Brest, port militaire, tout animé par le mouvement de ses arsenaux et de ses gros navires.²⁰ Brest est le chef-lieu ²¹ du département du Finistère, « la fin de la terre ». Toute la côte occidentale bretonne est furieusement battue par l'Océan.

¹ very fertile. ² *Words of Brizeux, a Breton poet* (1806-1858). ³ Brittany. ⁴ lips. ⁵ continuation. ⁶ laughed in my face. ⁷ except.
⁸ fish for. ⁹ codfish. ¹⁰ powerful. ¹¹ no. ¹² it appears. ¹³ headdress.
¹⁴ expects. ¹⁵ with the. ¹⁶ winding. ¹⁷ carried off. ¹⁸ by sea. ¹⁹ lulled.
²⁰ ships. ²¹ capital.

LESSON XXVIII

107. Conditional of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, être*:1. *I should give, etc.* 2. *I should finish, etc.* 3. *I should sell, etc.*

<i>donner ais</i>	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ais</i>	[finirɛ]	<i>vendr ais</i>	[vɑdrɛ]
<i>donner ais</i>	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ais</i>	[finirɛ]	<i>vendr ais</i>	[vɑdrɛ]
<i>donner ait</i>	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir ait</i>	[finirɛ]	<i>vendr ait</i>	[vɑdrɛ]
<i>donner ions</i>	[dɔnɛrjɔ̃]	<i>finir ions</i>	[finirjɔ̃]	<i>vendr ions</i>	[vɑdriɔ̃]
<i>donner iez</i>	[dɔnɛrje]	<i>finir iez</i>	[finirje]	<i>vendr iez</i>	[vɑdrie]
<i>donner aient</i>	[dɔn(ə)rɛ]	<i>finir aient</i>	[finirɛ]	<i>vendr aient</i>	[vɑdrɛ]

4. *I should have, etc.*5. *I should be, etc.*

<i>aur ais</i>	[ɔrɛ]	<i>aur ions</i>	[ɔrjɔ̃]	<i>ser ais</i>	[s(ə)rɛ]	<i>ser ions</i>	[sɛrjɔ̃]
<i>aur ais</i>	[ɔrɛ]	<i>aur iez</i>	[ɔrje]	<i>ser ais</i>	[s(ə)rɛ]	<i>ser iez</i>	[sɛrje]
<i>aur ait</i>	[ɔrɛ]	<i>aur aient</i>	[ɔrɛ]	<i>ser ait</i>	[s(ə)rɛ]	<i>ser aient</i>	[s(ə)rɛ]

NOTE. — In all verbs the stem of the conditional is the same as that of the future; the ending is similar to that of the imperfect indicative.

108. Use of the Conditional. 1. The conditional is used to express what would happen (*result*) in case something else were to happen (*condition*).

S'il avait le temps (condition), il finirait sa leçon (result). If he had time (had he time, etc.), he would finish his lesson.

J'irais (result) s'il faisait beau (condition). I should go if it were good weather.

2. A *result* clause in the conditional (English *should* or *would*) regularly has the *if* clause in the imperfect indicative, whatever the corresponding English form.

Si j'étudiais bien (condition), le professeur serait content (result). If I studied (or if I were to s., or were I to s., or should I s.) well, the professor would be glad.

Je voudrais le faire (result) si je pouvais (condition). I should like to do it if I could (if I were able).

3. A *result* clause in the future requires the *if* clause in the present indicative, whatever the corresponding English form.

- S'il est ici demain** (*condition*), **je lui donnerai l'argent** (*result*). If he is (*or be, or will be, or should be*) here to-morrow, I shall give him the money.
- J'irai** (*result*) **s'il fait beau** (*condition*). I shall go if it is good weather.

109. Future and Conditional of *faire* (irregular):

1. *I shall do, etc.*

2. *I should do, etc.*

fer ai [f(ə)re]	fer ons [f(ə)rɔ̃]	fer ais [f(ə)rɛ]	fer ions [fərjɔ̃]
fer as [f(ə)ra]	fer ez [f(ə)re]	fer ais [f(ə)rɛ]	fer iez [fərje]
fer a [f(ə)ra]	fer ont [f(ə)rɔ̃]	fer ait [f(ə)rɛ]	fer aient [f(ə)rɛ]

110. Conditional of *aller, dire, pouvoir, falloir, pleuvoir*:

1. *I should go, etc.*

2. *I should say, etc.*

3. *I should be able, etc.*

ir ais [irɛ]	dir ais [dirɛ]	pourr ais [purɛ]
ir ais [irɛ]	dir ais [dirɛ]	pourr ais [purɛ]
ir ait [irɛ]	dir ait [dirɛ]	pourr ait [purɛ]
ir ions [irjɔ̃]	dir ions [dirjɔ̃]	pourr ions [purjɔ̃]
ir iez [irje]	dir iez [dirje]	pourr iez [purje]
ir aient [irɛ]	dir aient [dirɛ]	pourr aient [purɛ]

4. *it would be necessary*
il faudr ait [fodrɛ]

5. *it would rain*
il pleuvr ait [ploevrɛ]

VOCABULARY

causer [koze] to chat	pardon ! [pardɔ̃] pardon me ! L
le concert [kɔ̃sɛ:r] concert	beg your pardon !
déranger [derāʒe] to disturb, trouble	la part [pair]: à —, aside
dites ! [dit] say ! — donc ! say !	seul [soel] alone, single
donc [dɔ̃(:k)] then, therefore	tranquille [trākil] peaceful, comfortable
étonné [etɔ̃ne] astonished	vouloir [vulwa:r] to want, wish
la fin [fɛ̃] end	(<i>p. p. voulu</i>); — bien be willing; je voudrais (<i>bien</i>) aller
le parapluie [paraplɥi] umbrella	I want (should like) to go
pardonne [pardɔ̃ne] to pardon	

EXERCISES

A. Lucie et Marie voudraient aller au concert ce soir. Il est nécessaire qu'elles finissent leurs leçons avant de partir.

Lucie n'a pas l'intention de travailler beaucoup. Elle aime trop à causer en classe avec ses amies. Le professeur lui a dit hier, — « Pardonnez-moi de vous déranger, mademoiselle, mais si vous vouliez bien cesser de parler pendant quelques minutes tout le monde serait plus tranquille. »

MARIE. — Dites donc, Lucie, je suis très contente que vous travailliez si bien ce soir. Si le professeur pouvait vous voir maintenant, il serait étonné.

LUCIE. — Que voulez-vous que je fasse? Si je ne travaillais pas, vous n'iriez pas au concert avec moi. Il me faudrait y aller seule. J'aimerais mieux, cependant, apprendre le français quand je serai en France. J'espère y aller à la fin de cette année. Si j'y vais je m'amuserai bien! . . . Qu'est-ce que vous feriez, Marie, si vous étiez à Paris?

MARIE. — J'achèterais d'abord de jolies robes. Ensuite j'étudierais le français. Je regrette que je ne puisse pas y aller avec vous.

B. *Written*: 1. Robert and George are at John's. 2. John wants his friends to finish their lessons. 3. They will do it quickly so that they can go to the movies. 4. If they haven't finished at eight o'clock, they cannot go there this evening. 5. George would stop (cease) working at once if he were alone. 6. Everybody is tired.

GEORGE. — 7. Why must that window be closed? 8. If you don't want me to leave, you must open (*infinitive*) it. 9. I shouldn't be sleepy if it weren't warm in this room. 10. If it were not raining, I should go and (to) work in the garden. 11. Will you open the window, John?

ROBERT. — 12. Don't trouble yourself, John. 13. If that window were open I should be cold, and I should go away.

JOHN, *aside*. — 14. If the window is open, Robert will go away. 15. If it is closed, George will not stay. 16. I am going to open it first. 17. Afterwards I shall close it. 18. Then I can work without being disturbed.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Give the proper forms of the verbs in parenthesis using in each sentence (a) the present-future sequence, (b) the imperfect-conditional:* 1. Si Lucie et Marie (aller) au théâtre ce soir, que (faire) -elles d'abord? 2. Si j'y (aller), je (finir) d'abord mes leçons. 3. S'il (pleuvoir), je n'(aller) pas chez moi. 4. S'il (faire) chaud, il (pleuvoir). 5. Elle vous le (dire) si elle (pouvoir) le faire. 6. Si j'en (avoir) besoin, j'(acheter) une auto. 7. Si vous (pouvoir) venir, j'en (être) charmé. 8. Il (falloir) acheter un parapluie s'il (pleuvoir) demain. 9. S'il (falloir) le faire, je (pouvoir) vous téléphoner ce soir. 10. J'(aimer) beaucoup l'école s'il ne (falloir) pas étudier tout le temps.

(2) *Fill in the blanks with the proper forms of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (faire) Que voulez-vous qu'ils —? 2. (pouvoir) Ils regrettent qu'elle ne — pas entrer. 3. (aller) Il faudra que vous y — avec moi. 4. (vendre) Dites-le-lui afin qu'il — sa maison. 5. (partir) Donnez-le-moi avant que nous (ne) —. 6. (dire) Nous ne voulons pas que vous le —. 7. (être) Nous le ferons quoique nous — malades. 8. (avoir) Je suis très content que vous l'— fait.

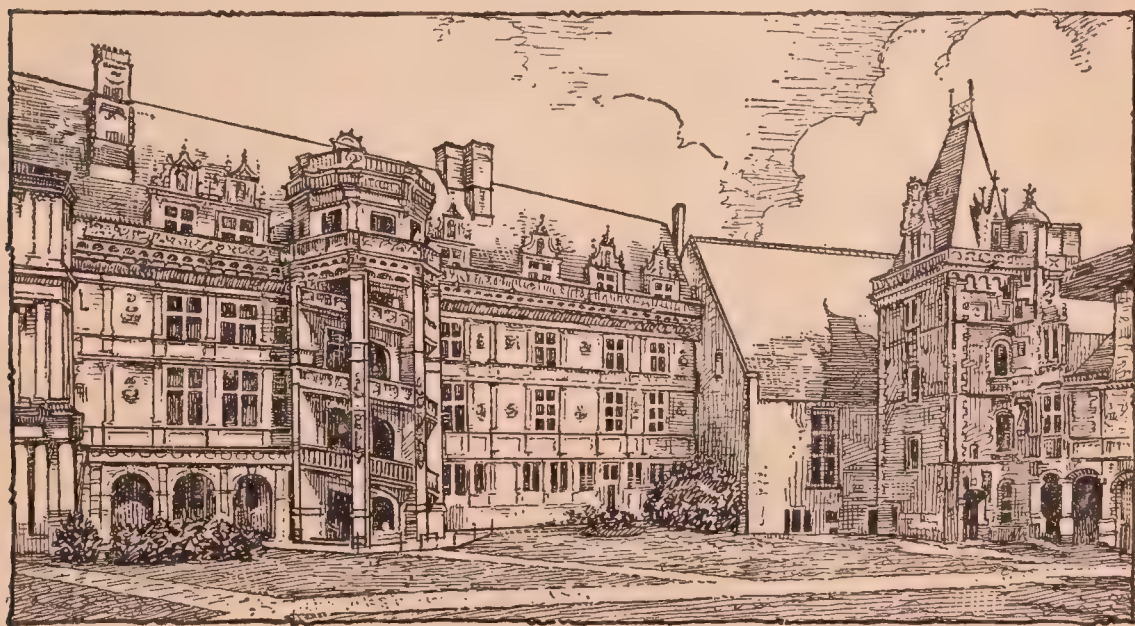
D. *Oral:* 1. Say, John, I have something to tell you. 2. I am sorry to tell it to you. 3. Come and (to) see me to-morrow although you are tired. 4. We should have telephoned if we had been here. 5. I am delighted that you can come. 6. We should prefer to stay here if your father could stay with us. 7. If it were bad weather, it would be necessary to go by (en) street car. 8. If it isn't too cold, we shall go by automobile. 9. It will be fine weather to-morrow if it doesn't rain. 10. It would rain if it were not too cold. 11. What would they say if I should smoke a cigarette? 12. I should not smoke if I were not hungry. 13. Don't get up, sir. 14. We should like to go often to the movies if we had a great deal of money. 15. You must sell your car. 16. Do it now.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA TOURAINE

Tours, le 2 août.

Nos parents, fatigués de quelques semaines de voyage, se sont confortablement installés à Tours, l'hospitalière patrie du grand romancier Balzac. Ils jouissent¹ en paix de l'aimable climat de la Touraine, ce « jardin de la France ». On comprend ici la joyeuse humeur de Rabelais, un autre enfant célèbre de la région.



Le Château de Blois

Pour nous, les quatre intrépides, nous venons de faire² en « moutons Cook »,³ l'excursion classique des « Châteaux de la Loire ».

Entre Tours et Blois, la fertile et verdoyante⁴ vallée du grand fleuve s'égaie⁵ de châteaux. Certains datent du moyen âge, mais ont été transformés, surtout au seizième siècle. D'autres sont de pures créations de la Renaissance.

Chenonceaux, bâti sur le Cher, affluent⁶ de la Loire, m'a séduit⁷ entre tous par sa pittoresque architecture, ses tours, ses toits⁸ garnis de fenêtres, sa grande galerie jetée sur un pont à cinq arches. Il fut acheté par le roi François I^{er},

le grand protecteur des arts, et donné par son fils Henri II à la célèbre Diane de Poitiers. Même le positif⁹ Édouard admire cet édifice élégant.

C'est aux ruines de Loches qu'Édouard et Alice ont éprouvé¹⁰ leur plus forte émotion. Elle leur a été donnée par la visite des prisons où le cruel roi Louis XI enfermait ses ennemis. Édouard ne se console pas de n'avoir pas vu l'une de ces cages de fer suspendues, où le roi gardait ses victimes pour prévenir¹¹ toute tentative¹² d'évasion.

À Blois, mon ami a goûté¹³ une compensation. Le guide, qui fait visiter¹⁴ le château, montre l'armoire¹⁵ secrète où Catherine de Médicis enfermait ses poisons et il détaille¹⁶ l'assassinat du Duc de Guise. Il répète même, d'une voix de stentor, la phrase du roi Henri III: « Qu'il est grand!¹⁷ plus grand encore mort que vivant ».

¹ enjoy ² have just made. ³ as Cook tourists. ⁴ verdant. ⁵ is enlivened.
⁶ tributary. ⁷ charmed. ⁸ roofs. ⁹ matter-of-fact. ¹⁰ experienced. ¹¹ prevent.
¹² attempt. ¹³ enjoyed. ¹⁴ shows to visitors. ¹⁵ cupboard. ¹⁶ relates in detail. ¹⁷ How great he is!

LESSON XXIX

111. Formation of Tenses. The Principal Parts. The various tenses of all regular verbs and of many irregular verbs can be formed from five forms of the verb called Principal Parts. These forms are the (1) *Infinitive*, (2) *Present Participle*, (3) *Past Participle*, (4) *Present Indicative*, (5) *Past Definite*. The tenses are formed from them as follows:

A. RULES

- | | | |
|----------------------------|---|---|
| 1. <i>Infinitive</i> gives | { | <p>a. <i>Futur</i>e (add -ai, -as, etc., to infinitive. Drop e if present).</p> <p>b. <i>Conditional</i> (add -ais, -ais, etc., to infinitive)</p> |
|----------------------------|---|---|

2. *Present Participle* gives

a. *Present Indicative Plural*
(change **-ant** to **-ons**
and **-ez**)

b. *Imperfect Indicative*

c. *Present Subjunctive*
3. *Past Participle* gives all *Compound Tenses* (use auxiliary **avoir, être**).
4. *Present Indicative* gives *Imperative* (omit subject pronouns).
5. *Past Definite* gives *Imperfect Subjunctive* (drop last letter of 1st pers. sing. and add **-sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent**).

B. SYNOPSIS

1. INFIN.	2. PRES. PART.	3. PAST PART.	4. PRES. IND.	5. PAST DEF.
donner finir vendre	donn ant finiss ant vend ant	donné fini vendu	tu donnes tu finis tu vends	je donn ai je fin is je vend is
FUT. donner ai finir ai vendr ai	PRES. IND. PL. donn ons finiss ons vend ons	COMP. TENSES avoir { donné être { fini vendu	IMPVE. donne ¹ finis vends	IMPF. SUBJ. donn asse fin isse vend isse
COND. donner ais finir ais vendr ais	IMPF. IND. donn ais finiss ais vend ais	<div>¹ a. For 2nd pers. sing. impve. of 1st conj., drop the -s of the 2nd sing. pres. ind. Tu donnes — donne.</div> <div>b. For 1st and 2nd pers. pl. impve., omit pronouns of pres. ind. Nous donnons — donnons; vous donnez — donnez.</div>		
	PRES. SUBJ. donn e finiss e vend e			



LE CHÂTEAU DE CHENONCEAUX

C. REMARKS

1. The future endings are the same as the present endings of **avoir**. The conditional endings are the same as the imperfect endings.

2. The stem of the imperfect indicative differs from that of the present participle in two verbs only: **avoir** and **savoir** (**avais** — **ayant** and **savais** — **sachant**).

3. The first person of the subjunctive may be obtained not only from the present participle but also in most cases by dropping the final **-nt** of the third person plural of the indicative as: **ils viennent** — **que je vienne**; **ils reçoivent** — **que je reçoive**.

4. The imperative plural differs from the present indicative in four verbs only: **avoir**, **être**, **savoir**, **vouloir** (**avez** — **ayez**, **êtes** — **soyez**, **savez** — **sachez**, **voulez** — **veuillez**).

5. The second person plural of the present indicative always ends in **-ez** except in **êtes**, **dites**, **faites**; the third person plural always ends in **-ent** except in **ont**, **font**, **sont**, **vont**.

6. The three singular forms and the third plural of the present subjunctive have the same endings as the present indicative endings of the first conjugation. The first and second plurals have those of the imperfect.

EXAMPLES: **je donne** — **que je donne** (**finisse**, **vende**), etc.; **nous donnions** — **que nous donnions** (**finissions**, **vendions**), etc.

EXCEPTIONS: **avoir**, **être**; **j'ai** — **que j'aie**, **je suis** — **que je sois**, etc.; **nous étions** — **que nous soyons**, **nous avions** — **que nous ayons**, etc.

7. The circumflex accent on the third person singular of the imperfect subjunctive differentiates it from the past definite as: **il eut** — **qu'il eût**; **il fut** — **qu'il fût**; **il finit** — **qu'il finît**, etc.

112. Principal Parts of *aller, avoir, dire, être, faire, falloir, pleuvoir, pouvoir*:

1. aller	allant	allé	vais	allai
2. avoir	ayant	eu	ai	eus
3. dire	disant	dit	dis	dis
4. être	étant	été	suis	fus
5. faire	faisant	fait	fais	fis
6. falloir	———	fallu	(il) faut	(il) fallut
7. pleuvoir	pleuvant	plu	(il) pleut	(il) plut
8. pouvoir	pouvant	pu	peux (puis)	pus

EXERCISES

A. Translate the examples below ¹ and (a) name their tenses, (b) state how they may be formed: 1. Je donnerais. 2. Nous envoyons. 3. J'ai donné. 4. Nous finirions. 5. Choisis. 6. Qu'ils donnassent. 7. Il avait fini (*pluperfect indicative*). 8. Vous finissez. 9. Vendez. 10. Elle attendrait. 11. Je choisissais. 12. Nous aurons vendu (*future perfect*). 13. Al-
lons. 14. Je vendrai. 15. Que je finisse. 16. Vous direz. 17. Ils choisissent. 18. Ils eurent trouvé (*past anterior*). 19. Vous alliez. 20. Faites. 21. Trouve. 22. Qu'elle vendît. 23. Il finira. 24. Vous auriez donné (*conditional perfect*). 25. Vends. 26. Que nous trouvions. 27. Elles disent. 28. Choisissez. 29. Avoir vendu (*perfect infinitive*). 30. Qu'il finît. 31. Dites. 32. Que nous allions. 33. Ils seront allés (*future perfect*). 34. Que je dise. 35. Vous vendrez. 36. Qu'elle vende. 37. Qu'il eût. 38. Qu'il fût. 39. Qu'ils pussent. 40. Ils arriveraient.

B. Fill in the blanks using the form of the verb indicated:

(1) *Present Indicative*. 1. (envoyer) Nous — des lettres. 2. (finir) Vous — le livre. 3. (pouvoir) Ils — fumer. 4. (être) Nous — ici. 5. (recevoir) Ils — de l'argent. 6. (faire) Vous — des cadeaux. 7. (attendre) Ils — leurs amis. 8. (acheter) Elle — une glace.

¹ For the purpose of this exercise, translate the present subjunctive by *that I may . . .*, and the imperfect subjunctive by *that I might . . .*

(2) *Imperfect*. 1. (choisir) Je — une robe. 2. (aller) Où —-vous? 3. (attendre) Il — son oncle. 4. (regarder) Nous — ce bâtiment. 5. (avoir) Elle — une salade.

(3) *Past Indefinite*. 1. (écrire) Elle — une lettre. 2. (appeler) Ils — le chien. 3. (vendre) Nous — notre ferme. 4. (partir) Elle — hier. 5. (se lever) Je me — de bonne heure. 6. (tomber) Elles — dans la rue.

(4) *Future and Conditional*. 1. (choisir) Nous — des fruits. 2. (attendre) Ils — leurs enfants. 3. (pleuvoir) Il — demain. 4. (accompagner) Je vous — cet après-midi. 5. (vouloir) Je — y aller. 6. (aller) Vous — tout de suite. 7. (faire) Nous — des cadeaux. 8. (falloir) Il — téléphoner.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Fill in also the following blanks:*

(5) *Present Subjunctive*. 1. (finir) Il désire que je — la lettre. 2. (répéter) Il faut que vous — ces mots. 3. (aimer) Je regrette qu'ils ne m'— pas. 4. (pouvoir) Je suis content que vous — venir. 5. (attendre) Je désire qu'elles nous —. 6. (faire) Que voulez-vous que je —? 7. (être) Il est nécessaire qu'elles — ici.

(6) *Imperfect Subjunctive*. 1. (arriver) Elles étaient contentes qu'il —. 2. (donner) Je désirais qu'il me — de l'argent. 3. (vendre) Il était nécessaire qu'il — son cheval. 4. (avoir) Je regrettais qu'elle n'— pas son parapluie. 5. (finir) Il fallait qu'il — la lettre tout de suite. 6. (être) J'étais très content qu'elle ne — pas là.

(7) a. *Imperative (2nd pers. sing.)*. 1. (finir) — ta leçon. 2. (attendre) — ta mère. 3. (cesser) — de parler. 4. (dire) — les mots.

b. *Imperative (1st and 2nd pers. pl.)*. 1. (aller) — au cinéma. 2. (attendre) —-les. 3. (être) — ici de bonne heure. 4. (choisir) — des cadeaux. 5. (avoir) — de la patience. 6. (finir) — vite la lettre.

D. *Oral*: 1. We finish the book. 2. I was telephoning. 3. Let's choose a book. 4. I must sell (*pres. subj.*) the farm. 5. If I looked

for the book I should find it. 6. They will be here to-morrow. 7. He finished (*past def.*) the book. 8. He will sell it. 9. They can (*pres. ind.*) go. 10. They can (*fut.*) go. 11. We were going to Paris. 12. She must choose (*pres. subj.*) a notebook. 13. He had bought a banana. 14. What are you doing? 15. If we were at home, we should work. 16. He spoke (*past def.*). 17. He wishes us to like (*pres. subj.*) Paris. 18. He sold (*past def.*) the house. 19. Let's be here early. 20. We shall choose an apple. 21. Go to Paris. 22. They were arriving at Paris. 23. They will arrive soon at Paris. 24. He must have (*pres. subj.*) patience. 25. Let's finish the lesson. 26. I shall find the word. 27. I shall have found the word. 28. I shall have been found. 29. I shall have gone.

E. *Rapid Reading:*

L'AUVERGNE (LE MASSIF CENTRAL) ¹

Clermont-Ferrand, le 9 août.

Nous voici en Auvergne, la région des volcans éteints,² des montagnes de moyenne ³ altitude, aux cimes ⁴ molles ⁵ et souvent verdoyantes.

Mon père, homme de décision rapide, a résolu de faire un séjour ⁶ au Mont-Dore pour y soigner ⁷ son asthme. Nos jeunes filles en sont enchantées. Mais pour elles, la plus belle qualité des eaux thermales ⁸ réside dans les beaux casinos où l'on peut danser et voir le monde ⁹ élégant. Édouard trouve chez les confiseurs ¹⁰ des fruits et des marrons glacés,¹¹ spécialités de la région, qu'il déclare inimitables.

La châtaigne ¹² est, après l'élevage,¹³ la grande ressource de l'Auvergne. À Paris, j'ai souvent remarqué les « chands ¹⁴ de marrons ». Ce sont de braves ¹⁵ Auvergnats, qui, pendant la saison d'hiver, viennent faire rôtir, sur les trottoirs parisiens, leurs gros marrons, délices des passants.¹⁶ L'Auvergne est pauvre et nourrit mal ses fils, travailleurs frustes ¹⁷ et économes. Volontiers, ils émigrent, au moins pour quelques

mois chaque année, et vont chercher dans les grands centres un supplément de ressources.

Laissant famille et amis à leurs plaisirs divers, je suis venu seul visiter Clermont-Ferrand, belle ville, bâtie au pied du Puy-de-Dôme,¹⁸ et patrie de Pascal. Mais pour moi, l'Auvergne est surtout le pays de Vercingétorix, l'héroïque



Le Creusot

chef gaulois qui résista longtemps à César. J'ai fait l'excursion du plateau de Gergovie, où le vaillant roi des Arvernes¹⁹ infligea une sérieuse défaite au général romain (52 av. J.-C.).²⁰

Édouard m'a rejoint, et tous deux nous sommes allés, aux confins du Massif Central, voir Le Creusot. C'est l'une des plus grandes usines²¹ métallurgiques du monde, les « Bethlehem Steel Works » de la France. Elle offre un spectacle inoubliable.²²

¹ Central Group (of mountains). ² extinct. ³ medium. ⁴ summits.
⁵ gently undulating (m. mou). ⁶ stay. ⁷ to treat. ⁸ hot springs. ⁹ society.
¹⁰ confectioners. ¹¹ candied chestnuts. ¹² chestnut. ¹³ stock-raising. ¹⁴ **mar-**
chands = merchants. ¹⁵ worthy. ¹⁶ passers-by. ¹⁷ rough. ¹⁸ a mountain.
¹⁹ Gauls of Auvergne. ²⁰ **avant Jésus-Christ** = B.C. ²¹ factories. ²² un-
 forgettable.

REVIEW LESSON No. 4 (XIX-XXIX)

(1) *Give the following sentences in the (a) imperfect, (b) past indefinite, (c) past definite, (d) future:* 1. Ils vont chez eux. 2. Nous avons froid. 3. Il s'appelle Jean. 4. Il fait mauvais temps. 5. Elle se lève. 6. Il commence à parler. 7. Il faut téléphoner. 8. Il pleut beaucoup. 9. Il mange des pommes. 10. Elles sont belles. 11. Il ne peut pas venir.

(2) *Fill in the blanks using the proper forms of the verbs in parenthesis:* 1. (demeurer) Lorsque j'étais jeune, je — à la campagne. 2. (faire, pleuvoir) Il — froid, et il — souvent. 3. (falloir, se promener) Il me — porter un parapluie quand je —. 4. (pouvoir) Je ne — pas me promener tous les jours. . . . 5. (se porter) Je suis heureux que vous — mieux. 6. (avoir) J'achèterai quelque chose aussitôt que j'— de l'argent. 7. (dire) Que voulez-vous que je —? 8. (s'arrêter) Il marche sans —. 9. (neiger, partir) Il — lorsque je — samedi dernier. 10. (faire) Il faudra qu'ils le —. 11. (marcher) Il fume en —. 12. (aller) S'il était malade, j'— le voir. 13. (s'en aller) Elle est tombée en —. 14. (aller) Je vous accompagnerai si vous irez au théâtre. 15. (aller) Je regrette qu'il — en ville ce soir.

(3) *Fill in the blanks with prepositions when required:* 1. Ils ont mangé beaucoup — sandwichs. 2. Permettez-moi — regarder cette lettre. 3. Il a acheté — belles pommes. 4. Laissez-moi — entrer. 5. Il m'a invité deux fois — l'accompagner. 6. Il y avait — grands enfants et — petits. 7. Ils ont beaucoup — faire. 8. J'espère — vous revoir mercredi. 9. Combien — sœurs avez-vous? 10. Dites-leur — ouvrir la porte. 11. J'ai plusieurs lettres — écrire. 12. Il emploie trop — subjonctifs. 13. Nous commençons — rire. 14. J'ai besoin — un chapeau — soie. 15. Il est temps — faire quelque chose. 16. Nous avons continué — travailler. 17. Il m'a prié — venir. 18. Il aime — manger. 19. Il cesse — fumer. 20. Il m'aide — étudier.

(4) *Translate the words in italics:* 1. *Everybody* sera là. 2. Elle est *nicer than* Marie. 3. *Depuis quand* have you been here? 4. Il faut que j'y *go*. 5. Il est dix heures *in the* matin. 6. *All men*

aiment à manger. 7. Il est *as young as* vous. 8. Il arrivera *before* nous (ne) partions. 9. Louise est *the prettiest* de toutes. 10. Il demeure ici *the whole year*. 11. Il se promène sans *smoking*. 12. Je le fais *in order that* vous soyez heureux. 13. Quel *weather* fait-il? 14. Je le ferai *next week*. 15. Elles sont *better* que vous. 16. Il fume en *walking*. 17. Elles *have been waiting for me* depuis dix minutes. 18. *Although* ce soit difficile à faire, je le ferai. 19. Vous n'êtes pas *so agreeable as* vos frères.

(5) *Translate*: 1. We shall not have any vacation this year. 2. I have many things to show you. 3. He said it while eating. 4. The professor gives us easy lessons. 5. The car stopped often. 6. How much money can I give you? 7. Bring me as many francs as possible. 8. They were eating when we came in. 9. If they are hungry, they will eat a dozen apples. 10. It is difficult to learn to speak French. 11. I forgot to come to see you. 12. What do you want us to do? 13. She is smaller than you. 14. You speak better than she. 15. You must study (*pres. subj.*) your lessons. 16. How long have you been working? 17. (*Count to twenty; give the number alone, then followed by the word livre(s).*) 18. He was beginning to walk. 19. They used to make a great deal of noise. 20. You will speak French as soon as you are in France. 21. Although I haven't much money, I shall go often to France. 22. Mary is the best of all the pupils. 23. I should like to go to Paris if I had money. 24. When do you wish to leave? 25. Did it rain Christmas day? 26. I am sorry to tell you that. 27. He smoked while walking. 28. Permit me to introduce to you Miss Duval. 29. I am glad it is not raining. 30. I came in order that she may go with me. 31. I hope to arrive before you go. 32. He smokes good cigars and bad ones. 33. I want to buy a silk dress. 34. It rains every day. 35. You are less tired than I. 36. He showed me the whole house. 37. It will not be necessary for you to go there. 38. You must not go there.

LESSON XXX

113. Use of the Definite Article. 1. Names of continents, countries and provinces regularly take the definite article.

La France est un beau pays.
Nous partons pour le Canada.
Il demeure aux États-Unis.

France is a beautiful country.
 We are leaving for Canada.
 He lives in the United States.

2. The article is commonly omitted after the preposition *en* = *in, to*; it is also omitted after *de* meaning *from*, or *de* in adjectival phrases.

Mon père est en Angleterre.
Nous allons en France.
Il vient d'Italie.
Le roi d'Angleterre.
Une robe de soie.

My father is in England.
 We are going to France.
 He comes from Italy.
 The king of England.
 A silk dress.

3. Place *where, where to*, is usually denoted by *en* before names of continents, European countries, and feminine countries outside of Europe; other countries usually take the preposition *à* + the definite article.

Il est en (va en) Europe.
Il est au (va au) Canada.

He is in (goes to) Europe.
 He is in (goes to) Canada.

4. Cities, towns, etc., usually take *à*, without any article.

Il est à (va à) Paris.
But: À la Nouvelle-Orléans.

He is in or at (goes to) Paris.
 At New Orleans.

114. *Partir, to depart, leave:*

partir	partant	parti	pars	partis
partirai	partais	être parti	pars	partis
partirais	parte			partisse

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pars
 pars
 part
 partons
 partez
 partent

IMPERATIVE

pars

 partons
 partez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

parte
 partes
 parte
 partions
 partiez
 partent

115. *Venir, to come* (no preposition before following infinitive when used with ordinary meaning):

venir	venant	venu	viens	vins
viendrai	venais	être venu	viens	vinsse
viendrais	vienné			

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

viens

vienné

viens

viens

viennes

vient

vienné

venons

venons

venions

venez

venez

veniez

viennent

viennent

VOCABULARY

américain [amerikē] American; l' Américain the American	malheureux [malœrø], malheureuse [malœrø:z] unhappy
anglais [āgle] English; l' Anglais the Englishman	le mois [mwa] month
l'Angleterre [āglætær] <i>f.</i> England	Montréal [mōreal] <i>m.</i> Montreal
✓ autrefois [otrəfwa] formerly	New York [nœjork] <i>f.</i> New York
le Canada [kanada] Canada	la Nouvelle-Orléans [nuvelørleā] New Orleans
comprendre [kōprā:dr] to understand (<i>p. p. compris</i>)	l'opéra [œpera] <i>m.</i> opera
enchanté [āšāte] delighted	le pays [pei] country (<i>political division</i>)
l'Espagne [espan] <i>f.</i> Spain	la reine [rēm] queen
les États-Unis [etazyni] <i>m. pl.</i> the United States	revenir [rəvnir] to return, come back (<i>conjugated like venir</i>)
l'Europe [œrøp] <i>f.</i> Europe	le roi [rwa] king
le film [film] film, picture	sitôt [sito] so soon
l'hôtel [øtel] <i>m.</i> hotel	le titre [titr] title
l'Italie [itali] <i>f.</i> Italy	visiter [vizite] to visit
Londres [lō:dr] <i>m.</i> London	voyager [vwajaze] to travel

EXERCISES

A. L'oncle et la tante de Jean Bernard voyagent en Europe depuis quelques mois. M. Bernard a envoyé une lettre de France à son neveu.

Il dit qu'ils sont partis pour l'Angleterre au mois de novembre. Ils sont allés d'abord au Canada pour prendre

un bateau à Montréal. Ils demeuraient autrefois au Canada, mais depuis cinq ans ils demeurent aux États-Unis. Ils ont visité l'Angleterre, l'Espagne, l'Italie et la France. Ils ont vu le roi et la reine d'Angleterre. Ils sont maintenant à Paris.

Mme Bernard est enchantée d'être enfin en France. Elle a étudié le français, et elle peut parler un peu. M. Bernard n'est pas si content. Il ne comprend pas un seul mot de français. Il voudrait aller tout de suite en Angleterre pour pouvoir parler anglais. Il préfère Londres. Il est malheureux aussi parce que Mme Bernard désire qu'il aille à l'Opéra avec elle. Il aimerait mieux aller au cinéma pour voir des films américains.

Mme Bernard a écrit à la fin de la lettre, « Je voudrais revenir en France l'année prochaine. M. Bernard dit qu'il ne reviendra pas. . . . Nous reviendrons. »

B. *Written:* 1. John's uncle has sent him a letter from France. 2. Mr. and Mrs. Bernard have been traveling for several months in England, Italy, Spain, and France. 3. Before leaving for Europe, they traveled in Canada. 4. They used to live formerly in that country. 5. Their boat left Montreal in the month of November. 6. Finally they have arrived at Paris. 7. Mr. Bernard is very glad that Mrs. Bernard is with him because she can speak French a little. 8. If people say something to him in French, he cannot understand a single word. 9. At the theaters he cannot even read the titles of the films. 10. He says that Spain, Italy, and France are interesting countries. 11. He prefers, however, England, Canada, and the United States where English is spoken in the hotels. 12. He doesn't like to go to the Opera. 13. He is always sleepy (there). 14. He saw the king of Spain in London. 15. The queen of Spain is English. 16. Mrs. Bernard says that she is sorry they cannot remain longer in Europe. 17. Their boat leaves for New

York next week. 18. They will come to see me before going home.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French:* 1. Où M. Bernard, voyage-t-il? 2. De quel pays a-t-il envoyé une lettre? 3. Pour quel pays est-il parti? 4. Où est-il allé d'abord? 5. Pourquoi y est-il allé? 6. Où demeurerait-il autrefois? 7. Où demeure-t-il maintenant? 8. Quels pays a-t-il visités? 9. Qui a-t-il vu en Angleterre? 10. Où est-il maintenant? 11. Pourquoi Mme Bernard est-elle enchantée? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a étudié? 13. Pourquoi M. Bernard, n'est-il pas content? 14. Dans quel pays voudrait-il aller? 15. Quelle ville préfère-t-il? 16. Où Mme Bernard désire-t-elle qu'il aille le soir? 17. Où aimerait-t-il mieux aller? 18. Pourquoi? 19. Que dit Mme Bernard à la fin de la lettre? 20. Seront-ils en France l'année prochaine? 21. Que faut-il faire avant qu'on parte pour la France?

D. *Oral:* 1. What countries would you visit if you could go to Europe? 2. Would you like to visit Spain, Italy or France? 3. I am sorry that I can't go this year. 4. I haven't any money. 5. Where do you want me to go? 6. What do you want me to do? 7. Stop talking about (of) it. 8. I have a friend who has been living in Canada for ten years. 9. He comes to see me often. 10. He is leaving soon for England. 11. He will come to the United States in order to take a boat at New York. 12. He wants also to visit New Orleans. 13. There are many French (people) in New Orleans. 14. I am sorry that my friends are not coming to see me before leaving. 15. They are going to travel in France and Italy. 16. They will go from Italy to Spain. 17. When you come to the United States, come to see me. 18. Why are your friends not coming with him? 19. I am leaving now. 20. Do you want me to go with you?

E. *Rapid reading:*

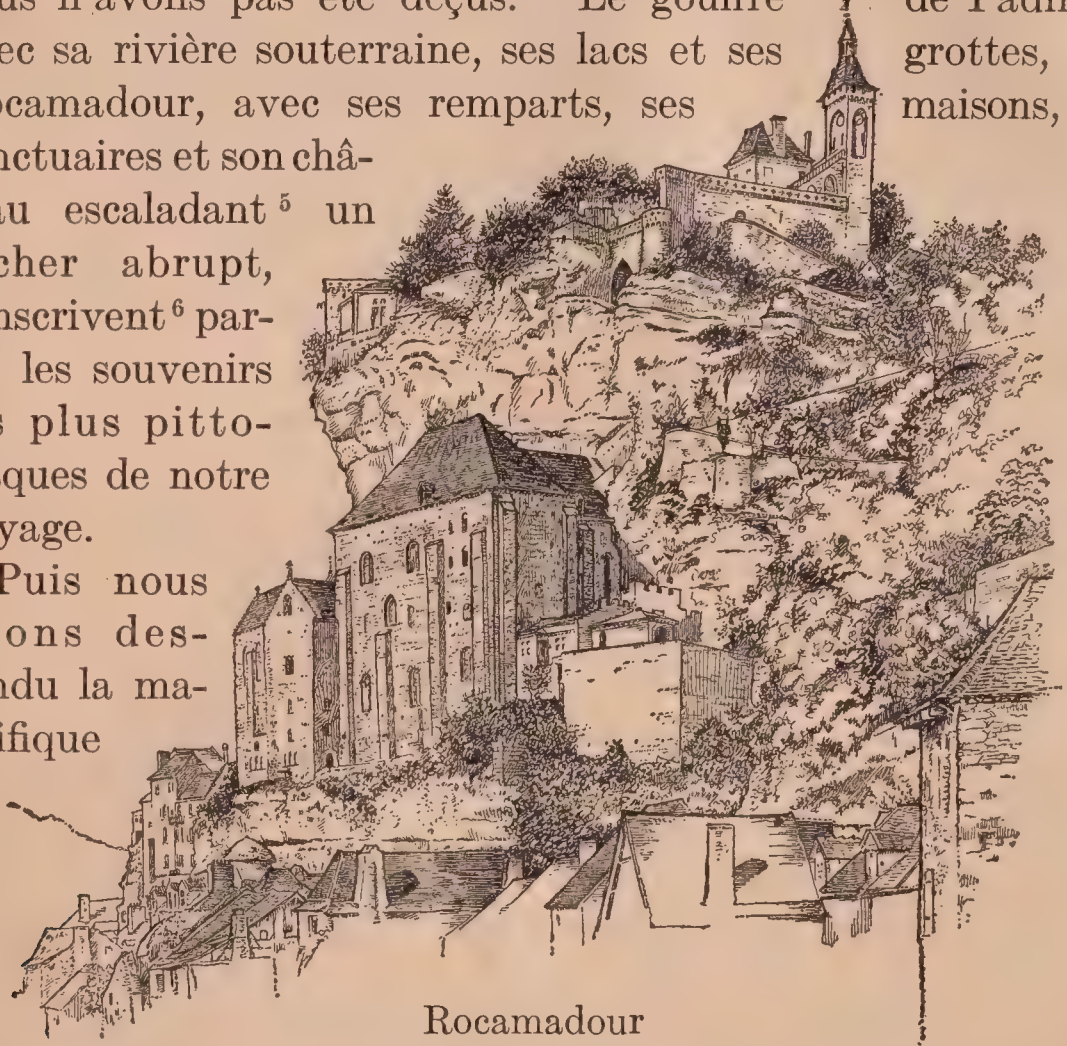
LE BASSIN¹ D'AQUITAINE

Bordeaux, le 14 août.

Mon ami, nos sœurs et moi, nous avons quitté le Massif Central par le sud-ouest et nous avons abordé² la Guyenne

par les Causses.³ Ces hauts plateaux forment la transition entre la région montagneuse et pauvre du centre et la fertile Aquitaine. Nous désirions voir Padirac et Rocamadour, et nous n'avons pas été déçus.⁴ Le gouffre de Padirac, avec sa rivière souterraine, ses lacs et ses grottes, et Rocamadour, avec ses remparts, ses sanctuaires et son château escaladant⁵ un rocher abrupt, s'inscrivent⁶ parmi les souvenirs les plus pittoresques de notre voyage.

Puis nous avons descendu la magnifique



Rocamadour

vallée de la Dordogne.⁷ Nous avons traversé Bergerac, qui n'est pas, comme Rostand voudrait nous le laisser croire, la patrie de Cyrano; mais les vers du poète n'en chantaient pas moins à mes oreilles:

« Nous sommes les cadets de Gascogne. »

Édouard est dans le ravissement.⁸ Il a trouvé le coin⁹ de France où il voudrait s'établir: le climat souriant,¹⁰ le sol productif, les rivières poissonneuses,¹¹ les volailles¹² et les truffes,¹³ tout concourt¹⁴ à faire des vallées de la Garonne et de son principal affluent, la Dordogne, une région privi-

légée. On comprend pourquoi, dès ¹⁵ l'époque préhistorique, les hommes se sont établis sur ces coteaux ¹⁶ ensoleillés.¹⁷

Le blé ¹⁸ et le maïs,¹⁹ les primeurs ²⁰ de fruits et de légumes, sont avec la vigne, les grandes ressources de la « Joyeuse Aquitaine ». Nous les avons admirés, les célèbres vignobles ²¹ du Bordelais,²² déroulant à perte de vue ²³ leur feuillage déjà pourpre et leurs lourdes grappes ²⁴ mûrissantes.²⁵

Bientôt, nous quitterons le grand port de Bordeaux. À travers ²⁶ l'immense forêt de pins des Landes,²⁷ nous nous dirigerons vers les Pyrénées.

¹ basin (*geographical*). ² approached. ³ name of limestone plateaus. ⁴ disappointed. ⁵ scaling. ⁶ are inscribed. ⁷ name of river. ⁸ ecstasy. ⁹ corner. ¹⁰ smiling. ¹¹ full of fish. ¹² fowls. ¹³ truffles (mushrooms). ¹⁴ concurs. ¹⁵ from. ¹⁶ hills. ¹⁷ sunny. ¹⁸ wheat. ¹⁹ corn. ²⁰ earliest. ²¹ vineyards. ²² region of Bordeaux. ²³ as far as the eye can see. ²⁴ bunches (of grapes). ²⁵ ripening. ²⁶ across. ²⁷ French "département," with much sandy, marshy land.

LESSON XXXI

116. Possessive Pronouns:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
le mien	[mjẽ] <i>m.</i>	les miens	[mjẽ] <i>m.</i>
la mienne	[mjɛn] <i>f.</i>	les miennes	[mjɛn] <i>f.</i>
le tien	[tjẽ] <i>m.</i>	les tiens	[tjẽ] <i>m.</i>
la tienne	[tjɛn] <i>f.</i>	les tiennes	[tjɛn] <i>f.</i>
le sien	[sjẽ] <i>m.</i>	les siens	[sjẽ] <i>m.</i>
la sienne	[sjɛn] <i>f.</i>	les siennes	[sjɛn] <i>f.</i>
le nôtre	[no:tr] <i>m.</i>	les nôtres	[no:tr] ours
la nôtre	[no:tr] <i>f.</i>		
le vôtre	[vo:tr] <i>m.</i>	les vôtres	[vo:tr] yours
la vôtre	[vo:tr] <i>f.</i>		
le leur	[lœ:r] <i>m.</i>	les leurs	[lœ:r] theirs
la leur	[lœ:r] <i>f.</i>		

117. Agreement of Possessive Pronouns. Possessive pronouns agree in gender and number with the object possessed, and not, as in English, with the possessor.

Voici son pardessus et le mien.
Voilà ma montre et la sienne.
Voici mes gants et les vôtres.

Here is his overcoat and mine.
Here is my watch and his (*or hers*).
Here are my gloves and yours.

118. Use of Possessive Pronouns. 1. After *être*, mere ownership is regularly expressed by *à* + a disjunctive personal pronoun, while the use of a possessive pronoun implies distinction of ownership.

À qui est cette montre?

Whose watch is that?

Elle est à moi.

It is mine.

*Cette montre est la mienne;
où est la vôtre?*

This watch is *mine*; where is
yours?

Voilà la mienne.

There is mine (*not yours*).

2. *De* and *à* + *le mien*, etc., contract as usual (§§ 41, 53).

Je parle de son ami et du mien.

I speak of his friend and of mine.

3. Since *le sien*, *la sienne*, etc., mean *his*, *hers*, *its*, *one's*, the context determines which sense is intended.

Il a ses cadeaux; elle a les siens. He has his presents; she has hers.

4. Observe the idioms:

Un de mes amis.

A friend of mine.

Un Français de mes amis.

A Frenchman, a friend of mine.

119. *Savoir*, to know, know how (no preposition before following infinitive):

savoir

sachant

su

sais

sus

saurai

savais

avoir su

sache

susse

saurais

sache

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sais

sache

sais

sache

saches

sait

sache

savons

sachons

sachions

savez

sachez

sachiez

savent

sachent

120. Vouloir, to wish, want (no preposition before following infinitive):

vouloir	voulant	voulu	veux	voulus
voudrai✓	voulais	avoir voulu	veux	voulusse
voudrais✓	veuille			

PRESENT INDICATIVE

veux
veux
veut
voulons
voulez
veulent

IMPERATIVE

veux

voulons
voulez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

veuille
veuilles
veuille
voulions
vouliez
veuillent

a. Veuillez, please, have the kindness to, is also used as an imperative.

VOCABULARY

ah! [ɑ] ah! oh!	le manteau [mãto] coat (cloak)
à qui? [aki] whose?	(<i>pl. manteaux</i>)
entendre [ãtã:dr] to hear; bien entendu! of course!	la montre [mõ:tr] watch; — -bracelet wrist watch (<i>pl. montres-bracelet</i>)
le gant [gã] glove	la paire [pe:r] pair
habiller [abi:je] to dress; s'—, dress oneself	le pardessus [pardesy] overcoat
l'heure [œ:r] <i>f.</i> hour; quelle — est-il? what time is it?	le pied [pie] foot; à—, on foot
le lit [li] bed	le taxi(mètre) [taksi(metr)] taxi veuillez [vœ:je] + <i>inf.</i> please

EXERCISES

A. Georges et Jean ont invité Louise et Lucie à dîner avec eux en ville. Les deux jeunes filles se trouvent chez Lucie. Lucie n'est pas encore prête à partir.

LUCIE. — À qui sont ces gants-là sur la chaise, Louise? Ils sont à vous, n'est-ce pas? Ah, non! ce sont les miens. Veuillez me les donner. Les vôtres sont là-bas sur la table. Ils sont plus beaux que les miens.

LOUISE. — Je le sais bien. Une de mes amies, qui a été en France, m'en a acheté une douzaine de paires à Paris. Les gants français sont meilleurs que les nôtres. . . . Quelle heure est-il? Il faut nous dépêcher; nous sommes en retard. Cherchez votre manteau. Voilà un beau manteau sur le lit. Est-il à vous?

LUCIE. — Non, il est à ma tante. Le sien est beaucoup plus joli que le mien. Je voudrais bien le prendre, mais elle ne veut pas que je le porte.

LOUISE. — Je suis fâchée qu'il pleuve. Il vous faut prendre un parapluie. Je n'ai pas ^{besoin} du mien. Jean aura le sien, bien entendu. Et puis il a un grand pardessus.

B. *Written*: 1. John is talking to George who is dressing.

JOHN. — 2. It is time to leave, George; please hurry up. 3. What time is it? 4. Look at your watch. 5. Mine isn't going well to-day. 6. Whose is that little wrist watch on the table? 7. It is yours, isn't it?

GEORGE. — 8. No, it is Louise's. 9. I have been wearing hers for several days, and she is wearing mine.

JOHN. — 10. Hers is prettier than yours. . . . 11. We are going to take a taxi, aren't we? 12. Your car stops too often, and my father needs his. 13. He has gone to the hotel to see an Englishman, a friend of his.

GEORGE. — 14. We are going to take a taxi, of course. 15. I wanted to go on foot, but it has begun to rain. 16. I hope that it will stop (cease) raining before we leave.

JOHN. — 17. I hope so (it), too; my umbrella is at school. 18. I am not wearing any overcoat. 19. However, Louise will have her umbrella. 20. We shall not need mine.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Replace the words in italics by the proper possessive pronouns*: 1. J'ai oublié *mon* parapluie. 2. Georges ne sait pas *sa* leçon. 3. Elles sauront *leurs* leçons. 4. Sachez *votre* leçon. 5. Ils

veulent avoir *nos pardessus*. 6. Qui voudrait acheter *ma montre-bracelet*? 7. Veuillez me dire où se trouve *leur maison*. 8. Jean a *sa grammaire*. 9. Il a voulu *notre montre*. 10. Voulez-vous voir *mes robes*?

(2) Give the following sentences in the (a) imperfect indicative, (b) past indefinite, (c) future, (d) present subjunctive with *il faut*:
 1. Je vais chez moi. 2. Elles savent la leçon. 3. Il me le dit. 4. Il veut le faire. 5. Ils le font. 6. Nous sommes chez nous. 7. Elle vient à l'école. 8. Je pars tout de suite.

D. Oral: 1. I know my lesson. 2. I am sorry John doesn't know his. 3. We shall know ours to-morrow. 4. All the pupils knew theirs yesterday. 5. A friend of mine sent me several pairs of gloves from France. 6. Theirs are better than ours. 7. Would you like to see mine? 8. Whose is this coat? 9. It is your aunt's, isn't it? 10. Hers is larger than mine. 11. Louise and Lucy do not want to show me theirs. 12. They must do it. 13. I leave to-morrow. 14. I am sorry they are not coming to-day. 15. I know that they will come next week. 16. If he came, I should leave. 17. I must go now. 18. I am sorry you were ill yesterday. 19. My mother dressed the children. 20. She dressed herself.

E. Rapid reading:

LES PYRÉNÉES

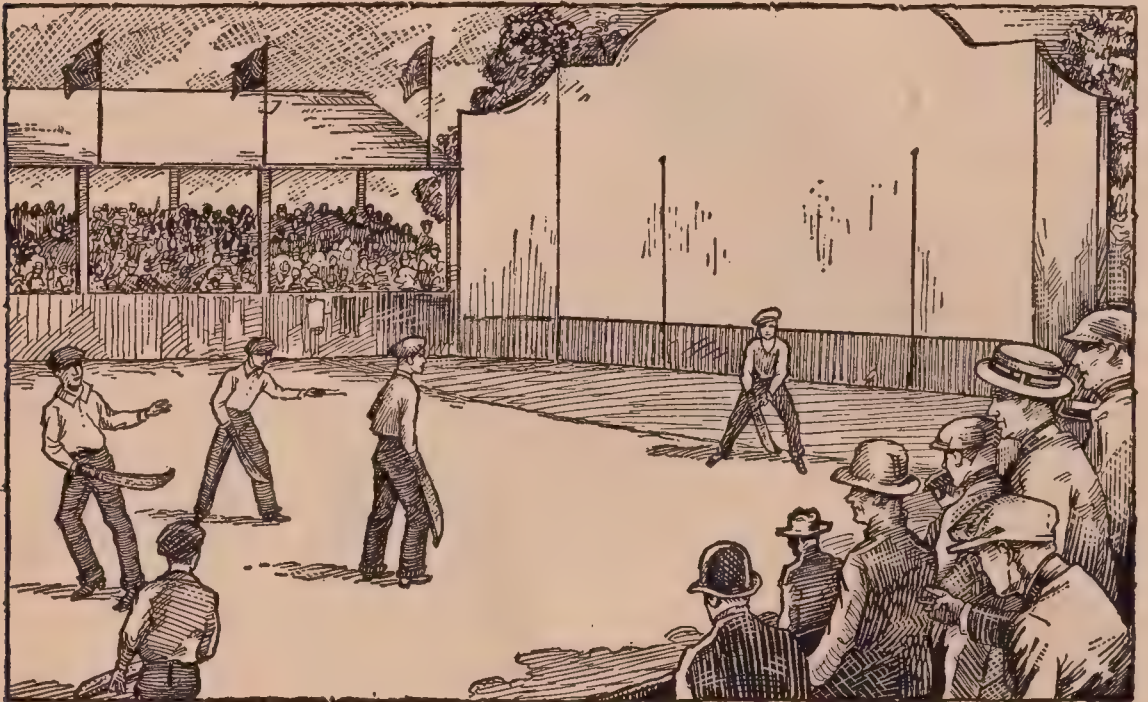
Pau, le 19 août.

À Biarritz, la plage à la mode ¹ de l'aristocratie européenne, nous avons pris contact ² avec la côte ³ des Pyrénées. Nous avons admiré le beau spectacle des montagnes semblant plonger dans la mer.

Puis, nous avons poussé ⁴ jusqu'à la frontière espagnole. Sur la côte rocheuse, toute découpée ⁵ d'anses ⁶ et de promontoires, les plages coquettes se succèdent.

Le pays basque ⁷ a, comme la Bretagne, gardé sa personnalité, sa langue et ses coutumes. Alice et Marguerite aiment à voir danser le fandango, la danse nationale qui

s'accompagne de claquements de doigts.⁸ Édouard et moi, nous préférons le jeu de pelote,⁹ qui a rendu les Basques célèbres dans le monde entier. Ce sport ressemble un peu à notre « hand-ball » mais se pratique sur de beaucoup plus grandes dimensions. Le terrain mesure ordinairement soixante-cinq mètres de long sur trente-cinq mètres de large.¹⁰ La petite balle de caoutchouc,¹¹ recouverte de peau ¹² est lancée de la main droite munie ¹³ d'un gant d'osier.¹⁴

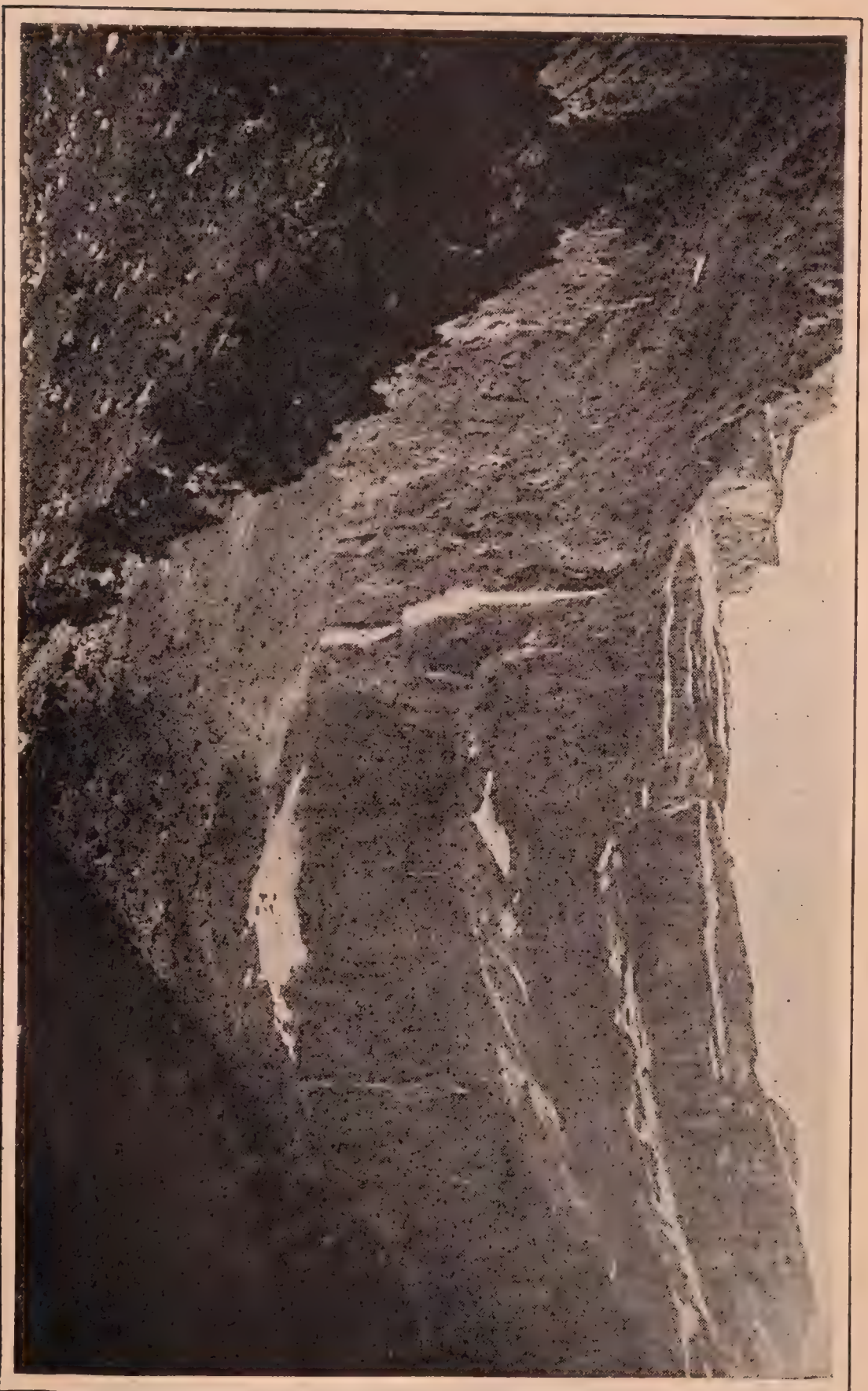


Une Partie de Pelote

Elle va frapper un grand mur et rebondit. L'endroit où l'on joue s'appelle le « fronton ».

Nous sommes maintenant à Pau, ville natale du populaire roi Henri IV, et belle station d'hiver,¹⁵ qui domine un magnifique paysage de montagnes.

Demain, nous partons en autocar pour le cirque ¹⁶ de Gavarnie, qu'on dit une merveille. C'est un amphithéâtre de rochers, de glaciers, d'où ¹⁷ s'échappent ¹⁸ des cascades. L'une d'elles a plus de quatre cent vingt mètres, plus de huit fois la hauteur de la chute ¹⁹ du Niagara. Puis nous ferons « la route des sommets » des Pyrénées centrales. Avant



LE CIRQUE DE GAVARNIE, HAUTES PYRÉNÉES

même de connaître le cirque de Gavarnie, je comprends la vieille romance ²⁰ toulousaine ²¹:

« Montagnes Pyrénées, vous êtes mes amours,²²
Montagnes fortunées, vous me plairez ²³ toujours. »

¹ fashionable seaside resort. ² come in touch with. ³ coast. ⁴ pushed forward. ⁵ cut up. ⁶ bays. ⁷ country on the west slope of the Pyrénées. ⁸ snapping of fingers. ⁹ the game of pelota. ¹⁰ wide. ¹¹ rubber. ¹² skin. ¹³ covered. ¹⁴ wicker. ¹⁵ winter resort. ¹⁶ basin (of mountains). ¹⁷ from where, whence. ¹⁸ escape. ¹⁹ falls. ²⁰ ballad. ²¹ of Toulouse. ²² my beloved. ²³ will please.

LESSON XXXII

121. Demonstrative Pronouns:

ce [sə] this, these, that, those, he, she, it, they

ceci [səsi] this

cela [səla] that

celui [səlyi] *m.* } this, that (one),
celle [səl] *f.* } the one, he, she

celui-ci [səlyisi] *m.* } this (one),
celle-ci [səlsi] *f.* } the latter

celui-là [səlyila] *m.* } that (one),
celle-là [səlla] *f.* } the former

ceux [sø] *m.* } these, those, the
celles [səl] *f.* } ones, they

ceux-ci [søsi] *m.* } these,
celles-ci [səlsi] *f.* } the latter

ceux-là [søla] *m.* } those,
celles-là [səlla] *f.* } the former

NOTE. — For the use of **ce** as distinguished from the personal pronoun **il** (elle, etc.), see § 78.

122. Use of Demonstrative Pronouns. 1. **Ceci**, *this*, and **cela**, *that*, are used to denote something pointed out or indicated, but not named. **Cela** is often contracted into **ça** in familiar language.

Cela est joli mais je préfère **ceci**.

Pouvez-vous faire **cela**?

J'aime **ça**.

That is pretty but I prefer this.

Can you do that?

I like that.

2. **Celui**, *that (one)*, *the one*, *he*, is used of persons or things, and is regularly followed by a relative clause or a **de**-phrase.

qui ou que }

<i>Celui que j'attendais</i> est arrivé.	He whom I was waiting for has arrived.
<i>Ceux qui cherchent</i> trouvent.	Those who seek find.
<i>Mes fleurs et celles de Marie.</i>	My flowers and Mary's (those of Mary).
<i>Celles que vous aimez.</i>	The ones (flowers) you like.

a. Note that *ceci*, *cela*, *celui-ci*, *celui-là* are never followed by a relative clause or a phrase with *de*.

3. *Celui-ci*, *this*, *this one*, *he* and *celui-là*, *that*, *that one*, are used of persons or things already mentioned, to contrast the nearer and the more remote.

<i>Voici les deux manteaux; gardez celui-ci et donnez-moi celui-là.</i>	Here are the two coats; keep this (one) and give me that (one).
---	---

a. The latter is *celui-ci*, and the former is *celui-là*, the order of ideas being inverted as compared with English.

<i>Il a deux fils, Albert et Charles; celui-ci est grand, celui-là est petit.</i>	He has two sons, Albert and Charles; the former is small, the latter is large.
---	--

123. *Envoyer*, to send (no preposition before following infinitive):

envoyer	envoyant	envoyé	envoie	envoyai
enverrai <i>3.</i>	envoyais	avoir envoyé	envoie	envoyasse
enverrais	envoie			
PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		
envoie		envoie		
envoies	envoie	envoies		
envoie		envoie		
envoyons	envoyons	envoyions		
envoyez	envoyez	envoyiez		
envoient		envoient		

124. *Voir*, to see (no preposition before following infinitive):

voir	voyant	vu	vois	vis
verrai	voyais	avoir vu	vois	visse
verrais	voie			

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

vois

vois

voit

voyons

voyez

voient

vois

voyons

voyez

voie

voies

voie

voyions

voyiez

voient

VOCABULARY

Alice [alis] Alice

l'anniversaire [anivɛrsɛʁ] *m.*

birthday

le chèque [ʃɛk] check

commode [kɔmɔd] convenient

la confiture [kɔ̃fityʁ] jam

le couteau [kuto] (table) knife

(pl. couteaux)

la cuiller [kujɛʁ] spoon

elle-même [ɛlmɛːm] herself, it-
self

la fourchette [fɔʁʃɛt] fork

milieu [miljø] middle; au —,
in the middle

le pot [po] jar

le poulet [pulɛ] chicken

rôtir [rotir] to roast

le verre [vɛʁ] glass

égal [egal] equal, same; cela m'est —, it's all the
same to me, I don't care

EXERCISES

A. C'est l'anniversaire de Jean Bernard. Sa mère et ses sœurs lui ont envoyé des cadeaux. Son père lui enverra le sien plus tard. Ce sera un chèque. Il fait cela tous les ans.

Jean a deux sœurs, Marguerite et Alice; celle-ci est plus jeune que celle-là. Marguerite envoie deux grands gâteaux; Alice, deux pots d'une bonne confiture qu'elle a faite elle-même. Mais le meilleur cadeau, c'est ¹ celui de Madame Bernard, un beau poulet rôti.

Jean a invité Georges et Robert à venir chez lui. Il les a vus en revenant de l'école. Ensuite il est entré dans la cuisine de la pension où il a pu trouver des assiettes, des verres et des fourchettes. Il n'y avait pas de cuillers, mais il a trouvé de vieux couteaux. Cela lui était égal, car, dit-il, pour celui qui désire manger de la confiture, ceux-ci sont

¹ Note the recapitulatory use of *ce*, not to be translated.

aussi commodes que celles-là. Puis il a porté tout cela à sa chambre. C'était facile à faire parce que la propriétaire était en ville.

Le voilà maintenant prêt à recevoir ses amis. Ceux-ci sont déjà à la porte. On les voit entrer.

B. *Written*: 1. George and Robert, upon entering John's room, see the presents. 2. His mother's is in the middle of the table near those of his sisters. 3. John shows them to them.

JOHN. — 4. All that comes from home. 5. My mother sends the chicken; the other things come from Alice and Margaret. 6. The former made the jam and the latter, the cakes. 7. My father will send a present later. 8. His will be a check. 9. There are some plates on the table. 10. This one is larger than that one. 11. It is for you, George. 12. I am sorry that I can't find any spoons. 13. That's all the same to you, isn't it?

GEORGE. — 14. Of course! 15. We can eat the jam with a fork or a knife. 16. That is easy to do. (17. *They finish the chicken.* 18. *Robert begins to talk while eating.*)

ROBERT. — 19. These cakes are very good. 20. This one is even better than that one. 21. I should like to make the acquaintance of the one who made them. 22. They are better than my mother's.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Fill in the blanks with demonstrative pronouns*: 1. — est le mien; celui-là est le vôtre. 2. —-ci est le sien; — est le nôtre. 3. Je ne savais pas —. 4. — qu'ils enverront seront plus beaux. 5. Celle-ci est la mienne; — de votre mère est sur la table. 6. Celui-ci est meilleur que ceux (pl.) qu'ils m'envoient. 7. Je ne veux pas cela, donnez-moi celui. 8. — que vous avez vu n'est pas le sien. 9. Qu'est-ce que c'est que celui? 10. — est moi. 11. — lui est égal. 12. Voilà les miens; voici — du

propriétaire. 13. — que j'ai vues en Italie n'étaient pas belles. 14. Il y a deux assiettes sur la table; — est à Jean, — est à Robert.

D. *Oral*: 1. I shall go to Montreal and to Paris. 2. They are two interesting cities. 3. The former is in Canada; the latter is in France. 4. I have a brother and sister who live in Montreal. 5. Next week we shall send them some presents. 6. You will see those which we are sending. 7. They are wrist watches. 8. Here is John's; there is Mary's. 9. Show me the one you like better. 10. That is easy to do. 11. This one is prettier than that. 12. Don't say that. 13. That one is less pretty than mine. 14. Say, Robert, have you my umbrella and John's? 15. I need mine (*avoir besoin de*). 16. He will need his. 17. I haven't seen them. 18. I told you that yesterday.



La Cité de Carcassonne

E. *Rapid reading*:

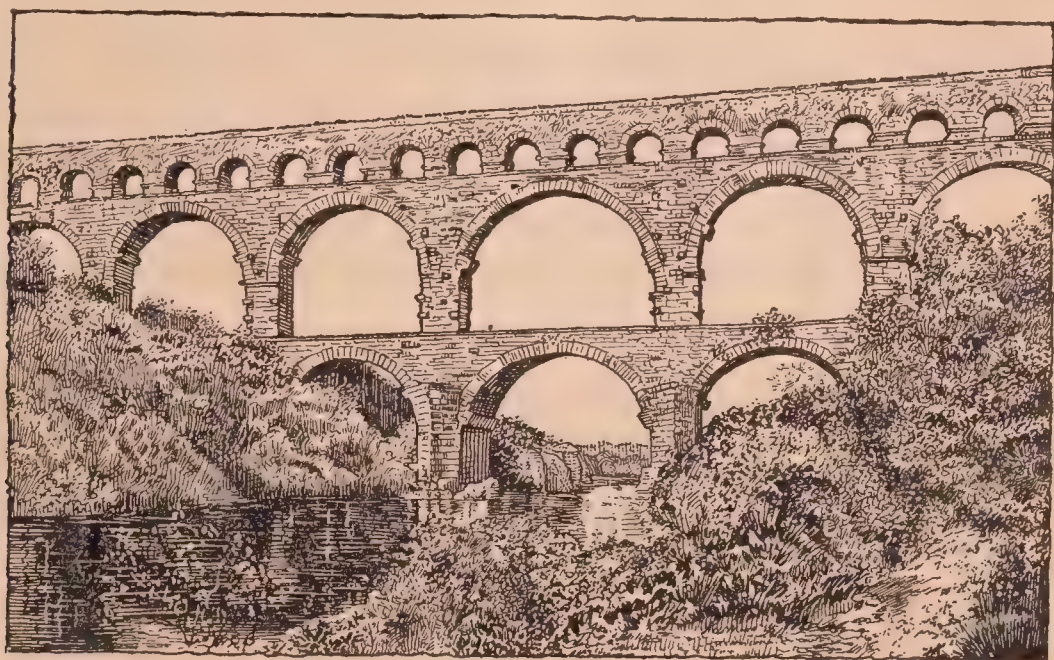
LE LANGUEDOC

Nîmes, le 27 août.

Notre tournée¹ du Languedoc a commencé par Toulouse, l'ancienne capitale de la province, vieille ville universitaire,

bâtie sur un coude ² de la Garonne. Marguerite, qui est vraiment une auditrice attentive, m'a laissé lui raconter comment Toulouse était, au moyen âge, un centre de culture brillant. Mais au début du treizième siècle, la cruelle croisade des Albigeois ³ mit fin ⁴ à l'aimable production poétique des troubadours.

Le nom même de la province « langue ⁵ d'oc » (« oc » voulait dire « oui ») rappelle l'une des deux grandes divisions de la langue romane.⁶



Le Pont du Gard

De Toulouse, nous avons gagné Carcassonne. Nul besoin ⁷ ici d'évoquer le moyen âge pour mes compagnons: il surgissait devant nous, dans une ville tout entière, avec ses rues, ses maisons, ses boutiques et sa double muraille flanquée de cinquante tours.

On a construit un théâtre en plein air ⁸ dans l'enceinte ⁹ fortifiée. Les effets de lune ¹⁰ et ceux des projecteurs y sont féériques. Nous y avons vu jouer *Hamlet*. Le spectacle est saisissant,¹¹ dans un tel décor.¹² Le spectre, sortant d'une tour, avance lentement sur le chemin de ronde,¹³ au sommet du rempart. Il parle à Hamlet, qui se trouve au-dessous de

lui sur la scène ¹⁴; puis il disparaît dans une autre tour crénelée. ¹⁵

Édouard a trouvé la représentation aussi impressionnante qu'une bonne scène de cinéma.

À travers « l'océan de vignobles » du pierreux ¹⁶ Languedoc, nous avons atteint ¹⁷ Nîmes, si riche en monuments romains, dont le grand amphithéâtre, « les Arènes », est le plus célèbre. On donne aux Arènes de belles pièces, des séances de cinéma. Mais tout cela s'efface pour nous devant les courses de taureaux. ¹⁸ Alice et Marguerite les jugent aussi émouvantes ¹⁹ qu'une partie de football. Et elles pensent que les Arènes, garnies de spectateurs jusqu'au faite, ²⁰ valent bien ²¹ nos stades.

Nous allons cette après-midi voir le Pont du Gard, le grandiose aqueduc romain. Puis nous nous dirigerons vers Avignon.

¹ tour. ² bend. ³ Albigensians (*a religious sect*). ⁴ ended. ⁵ language. ⁶ *the northern division was called la langue d'oïl*. ⁷ no need. ⁸ open air. ⁹ inclosure. ¹⁰ moonlight effects. ¹¹ startling, "gripping." ¹² stage setting. ¹³ sentinel's beat. ¹⁴ stage. ¹⁵ battlemented. ¹⁶ stony. ¹⁷ reached. ¹⁸ bullfights. ¹⁹ thrilling. ²⁰ summit. ²¹ are indeed the equal.

LESSON XXXIII

125. Relative Pronouns:

qui [ki] who, which, that, whom (*after a preposition*)

que [kə] whom, which, that

dont [dɔ̃] whose, of whom, of which

où [u] in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel [ləkɛl] <i>m. s.</i> , lesquels [ləkɛl] <i>m. pl.</i>	} who, whom, which, that
laquelle [lakɛl] <i>f. s.</i> , lesquelles [ləkɛl] <i>f. pl.</i>	
quoi [kwa] what, which	

126. Agreement of Relative Pronouns. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent.

Moi *qui étais* (vous *qui étiez*) là.
Les lettres *que* j'ai apportées.

I who was (you who were) there.
The letters which I have brought.

127. Use of Relative Pronouns. 1. The relative of most common use is **qui**, as subject, and **que**, as direct object, of a verb (§ 55).

La personne *qui* me voit.
La personne *que* je vois.
Le tableau *que* j'ai vu.

The person who sees me.
The person whom I see.
The picture which (that) I saw.

2. **Qui**, *whom* (of persons only), is also used after a preposition.

L'oncle *chez qui* je demeurais.

The uncle with whom I lived.

3. **Dont** is commonly used to express *of whom*, *of which*, *whose*.

Les amis *dont* nous parlions.

The friends of whom we were speaking.

La maison *dont* je vois les fenêtres.

The house whose windows I see
(of which I see the windows).

4. **Où**, *where*, as in English, frequently replaces a relative pronoun preceded by a preposition meaning *to*, *at*, *in*.

La ville *où* (or *dans laquelle*) je demeure.

The city in which (where) I live.

5. **Lequel** is sometimes used instead of **qui** (*que*, etc.) to avoid ambiguity and must be used of things after a preposition.

La sœur de Jean, *laquelle* est chez nous à présent.

John's sister, who (*i.e.*, the sister) is at our house now.

L'auto *dans laquelle* je suis venu.

The car in which I came.

6. **Quoi** stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise.

Voilà *de quoi* je parlais.

That is what I was speaking of.

7. The absolute *what, which, that which*, as subject is **ce qui** and, as object or predicate, **ce que**; *of what, that of which* is **ce dont**.

Je vois *ce qui* vous amuse.

I see what amuses you.

Je vois *ce que* vous faites.

I see what you are doing.

Vous savez *ce que* je suis.

You know what I am.

Ce dont j'ai besoin.

What I need (that of which I have need).

8. *He who, the one who (which), etc.*, is expressed by **celui qui**, etc.

J'aime *ceux qui* m'aiment.

I love those who love me.

Ma montre est plus jolie que *celle que* vous avez achetée.

My watch is prettier than the one which you bought.

128. *Écrire, to write* (de before following infinitive):

écrire

écrivant

écrit

écris

écrivis

écrirai

écrivais

avoir écrit

écris

écrivisse

écrirais

écrive

PRESENT INDICATIVE

écris

écris

écrit

écrivons

écrivez

écrivent

IMPERATIVE

écris

écrivons

écrivez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

écrive

écrivés

écrive

écrivions

écriviez

écrivent

129. *Lire, to read*:

lire

lisant

lu

lis

lus

lirai

lisais

avoir lu

lis

lusse

lirais

lise

PRESENT INDICATIVE

lis

lis

lit

lisons

lisez

lisent

IMPERATIVE

lis

lisons

lisez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

lise

lises

lise

lisions

lisiez

lisent

VOCABULARY

Charles [ʃarl] Charles	la partie [parti] part, game
clair [kle:r] clear	penser [pāse] to think; — de ✓ (to have an opinion of); — à (to turn one's thoughts towards)
le cœur [kœ:r] heart	la personne [persɔn] person
comme [kɔm] like, as, how	la phrase [fra:z] sentence
le doute [dut] doubt; sans —, doubtless	premier [prəmje], première [prəmje:r] first
excepté [ɛksɛpte] except	la vérité [verite] truth
Henri [ãri] Henry	le voyage [vwaja:ʒ] trip, voyage
loin [lwɛ̃] far	
mai [mɛ] m. May	
le nom [nɔ̃] name	

EXERCISES

A. Robert Dufour écrit une lettre au frère de Louise Duval lequel était à l'école l'année dernière. Il parle dans cette lettre de plusieurs élèves dont nous savons déjà les noms. Voici ce qu'il dit:

Le 3 mai.

Cher Charles,

On dit souvent « Loin des yeux, loin du cœur ». Ceux qui disent cela ne disent pas la vérité. Je pense souvent à celui avec qui j'ai fait tant de belles promenades, l'année dernière. C'était bien agréable, n'est-ce pas, de se promener dans ce beau parc dont je peux voir d'ici les grands arbres?

De qui voulez-vous avoir des nouvelles? Tous vos amis sont à l'école, excepté Henri Millard dont la mère est morte le mois dernier. Vous avez lu cela sans doute dans les journaux que Louise vous a envoyés. Georges Lambert fait des promenades en auto comme toujours, et ceux d'entre nous qui n'ont pas beaucoup à faire l'accompagnent. Je sais à quoi vous pensez. C'est à cette vieille auto dans laquelle nous sommes allés si souvent à la campagne. Eh bien, Georges va essayer de la vendre. Celui qui l'achètera ne sera pas très content, n'est-ce pas?

Mme Thomas, chez qui je demeure, m'appelle. Le dîner est prêt. Il faut que je m'en aille. Je finirai ma lettre ce soir. . . .

B. *Written*: 1. When the landlady called Robert he was writing the letter, the first part of which we read. 2. We know what he was speaking about (of) in this letter. 3. He spoke first of Henry Millard's mother who died last month. 4. Afterwards he gave us news of George Lambert, one of our friends whom everybody likes so much. 5. Now he continues the letter which he had begun. . . . 6. I shall speak to you next, Charles, of him who always knows his lesson, of the pupil to whom the professor gives the hardest sentences. 7. That, of course, is John Bernard. 8. John works a great deal; George works little. 9. However, the other pupils like the latter better than the former. 10. What do you think of that? . . . 11. There is another person here of whom you are doubtless thinking. 12. It's the one with whom you used to go walking. 13. Well, Lucy is well and still (*toujours*) goes walking. 14. Do you want me to tell you the name of the one with whom she walks? 15. It's our friend George. 16. That's all I can write now. 17. We hope that you will come to see us soon.

Yours truly,

Robert

Supplementary Drill

C. *Translate the words in italics*: 1. Je ne sais pas *of what* vous parlez. 2. Je sais *of what* vous pensez. 3. *What* il a écrit c'est la vérité. 4. Savez-vous *what* reste à faire? 5. Voici le parc *in which* nous nous promenions. 6. Voilà les arbres *under which* nous nous promenions. 7. Où est le livre *whose (of which)* nous avons lu la première partie? 8. Je sais *what* il lit. 9. Voici le chèque *of which* mon père a parlé. 10. L'ami *to whom* vous écrivez viendra demain. 11. Où est la chaise *upon which* j'ai laissé mon pardessus? 12. *Those who* ont écrit cela ne disent pas la vérité. 13. Je vous

lirai ma lettre et *that* de ma mère. 14. *Mine* est plus longue que *hers*. 15. J'écrivais aux sœurs de ces élèves *who* (sœurs) viendront dimanche. 16. Qui sont les jeunes filles *to whom* vous avez écrit? 17. *This* est plus petit que *that*. 18. (corbeilles) *These* sont plus petites que *those*.

D. *Oral*: 1. The aunt of John Durand, who (the aunt) lives in Canada will come to-morrow. 2. It's the one who went to Spain. 3. He read the letter which she wrote. 4. We must read the story of which the professor was speaking. 5. I don't know of what he was speaking. 6. I don't know what you have read. 7. Who was reading that? 8. I don't know what remains to be read (*à lire*). 9. Think of that story. 10. What do you think of that story? 11. What isn't clear isn't French. 12. I saw Mary's coat in the restaurant in which we were dining. 13. Hers is prettier than her mother's. 14. Mine is dearer than hers. 15. Here is the coat I need (*avoir besoin de*). 16. Do you need that?

E. *Rapid reading*:

LA PROVENCE ET LA RIVIERA ¹

Marseille, le 30 août.

Tous les quatre, nous désirions voir Avignon et son pont rendu ² fameux, par la ronde ³ populaire:

« Sur le pont d'Avignon,
On y danse, on y danse,
Sur le pont d'Avignon,
On y danse tout en rond. » ⁴

Au quatorzième siècle, Avignon fut la résidence des papes. Le château pontifical est encore debout, avec ses hautes murailles, austères et majestueuses.

Au sud d'Avignon, commence la Provence. Par Tarascon, la patrie de l'immortel Tartarin,⁵ nous avons descendu la vallée du Rhône, fleuve impétueux et rapide, pour arriver à Marseille. C'est le premier port de France, tête de ligne des communications avec la Corse, avec les colonies fran-

çaises de l'Afrique du Nord (Algérie, Tunisie, Maroc) et avec l'Extrême-Orient.

La Corse, si voisine ⁶ et dit-on si pittoresque, patrie de Napoléon I^{er}, nous tentait vivement. Mais il faut savoir se borner,⁷ et pour cette semaine, nous en tenir à ⁸ la visite de la Provence et de la Riviera.



Pont d'Avignon et le Château des Papes

Ce nom de Provence (latin *provincia*) rappelle la plus ancienne occupation romaine en Gaule. Quant à ⁹ Marseille, elle fut fondée par des Grecs, et le type hellénique se remarque encore dans la population marseillaise.

Le paysage provençal, très lumineux, avec ses oliviers pâles et son sol ¹⁰ pierreux et blanc, ressemble, paraît-il, à la Grèce. L'olive a fait naître ¹¹ les industries de l'huile et du savon.

Nice, le 2 septembre.

Nous voici sur la montagneuse et splendide Côte d'Azur,¹² qui est comme la Californie de la France. Dans les anses ¹³ rocheuses, s'échelonnent ¹⁴ les luxueuses stations d'hiver. Quel dommage que nous ne puissions voir ici la Fête des Fleurs ou le Carnaval si célèbres. Mais ce sont plaisirs interdits ¹⁵ aux touristes des mois d'été. Il nous reste, heureusement, les montagnes de porphyre ¹⁶ rouge, les sombres pins parasols, le ciel et la mer d'un bleu de saphir.

Les champs de fleurs ont étonné Alice et Marguerite. Dès l'hiver dernier, Alice savait bien que les gerbes ¹⁷ qu'elle achetait à Paris venaient de la Côte d'Azur; mais elle ne s'attendait ¹⁸ pas à une production aussi intensive et surtout en plein air. Les cultures florales alimentent, non seulement le commerce des fleuristes, mais encore les usines de parfums.

¹ name commonly given to the Mediterranean coast with the seaside resorts, from Nice to Spezia in Italy. ² rendered. ³ roundelay. ⁴ in a circle. ⁵ hero of Daudet's novel, "Tartarin de Tarascon." ⁶ near. ⁷ limit ourselves. ⁸ to restrict ourselves to. ⁹ as for. ¹⁰ soil. ¹¹ given birth to. ¹² northern Mediterranean coast. ¹³ bays. ¹⁴ rise up at intervals. ¹⁵ forbidden. ¹⁶ porphyry (marble). ¹⁷ bunches. ¹⁸ expect.

LESSON XXXIV

130. Interrogative Pronouns:

qui? [ki] who? whom? ¹

que? [kə] what? ¹

quoi? [kwa] what?

lequel? [ləkɛl] m. s., lesquels? [ləkɛl] m. pl. } which? which one(s)?
laquelle? [lakɛl] f. s., lesquelles? [ləkɛl] f. pl. } what one(s)?

131. Use of Interrogative Pronouns. 1. Qui? who?
whom? is used of persons.

Qui vient? Qui sont-elles?

Who is coming? Who are they?

Dites-moi qui vient.

Tell me who is coming.

Qui a-t-il vu?

Whom has he seen?

De qui parlez-vous?

Of whom are you speaking?

2. Whose? denoting ownership simply is expressed by *à qui?* denoting relationship by *de qui?* but never *dont*.

À qui est ce livre?

Whose book is this?

De qui êtes-vous (le) fils?

Whose son are you?

¹ *Who*, *whom*, and *what* are also found as in the long forms illustrated below:

Qui est-ce qui vous a vu?

Who saw you?

Qui est-ce que vous avez vu?

Whom did you see?

Qu'est-ce que vous avez vu?

What did you see?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

What is that?

Je ne sais pas ce que c'est.

I don't know what it is.

3. **Que?**¹ *what?* stands always as the object or the predicate of a verb.

Que vous a-t-il dit?

What did he tell you?

Qu'est-ce?

What is it?

4. *What?* as subject is usually **qu'est-ce qui?** and *what* (*that which*) in indirect questions is usually **ce qui** (**ce que**, etc.).

Qu'est-ce qui vous a dérangé?

What has disturbed you?

Je ne sais pas *ce qui* m'a dérangé.

I do not know what disturbed me.

Dites-moi *ce que* vous désirez.

Tell me what you desire.

5. **Quoi?** *what?* is used regularly after a preposition, or when standing alone.

De quoi parlez-vous?

Of what are you speaking?

Je cherche quelque chose. —

I am looking for something. —

Quoi?

What?

6. **Lequel?** (**laquelle?** etc.) *which?* *which* or *what one?* agrees in gender with the noun to which it refers. Both parts of **lequel** (**le** and **quel**) are inflected, and the usual contractions with **de** and **à** (§§ 41, 53) take place.

Laquelle de ses sœurs est là?

Which (one) of his sisters is there?

Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?

To which of the men does he speak?

Auxquelles des questions a-t-il répondu?

Which (ones) of the questions did he answer (reply to)?

132. *Boire, to drink:*

boire

buvant

bu

bois

bus

boirai

buvais

avoir bu

bois

busse

boirais

boive

¹ Note the use of **quel** as a predicate adjective before **être** with the meaning of *which, what*. (For the interrogative adjective **quel?** *which? what?* see § 60.)

Quel est ce bâtiment?

What is that building?

Quelle est votre maison?

Which is your house?

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
bois		boive
bois	bois	boives
boit		boive
buvons	buvons	buvions
buvez	buvez	buviez
boivent		boivent

133. Croire, to believe:

croire	croyant	cru	crois	crus
croirai	croyais	avoir cru	crois	crusse
croirais	croie			

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
crois		croie
crois	crois	croies
croit		croie
croyons	croyons	croyions
croyez	croyez	croyiez
croient		croient

VOCABULARY

l'appareil [apare:j] <i>m.</i> apparatus	le laboratoire [laboratwar] lab- oratory; — de physique phys- ics laboratory
athlétique [atletik] athletic	
le campus [kăpys] campus	la physique [fizik] physics
le champion [ʃăpjɔ̃] champion	le poste [pɔst] set; — de T. S. F. radio set, wireless
la chimie [ʃimi] chemistry	le sport [spɔ:r] sport
contenir [kōtnir] to contain (conjugated like venir)	la téléphonie [telefoni] telephony
croire [krwar]: je (le) crois bien! I believe it indeed! I should say so!	la T. S. F. [teesef] (téléphonie sans fil) wireless (telephony)
entre [ă:tr] between, among	le tennis [tenis] tennis
le fil [fil] wire	le terrain [terē] field, (tennis) court
garder [garde] to keep, take care of	le thé [te] tea
^{over} jouer [ʒwe] to play; — à (games); — de (instruments); <i>e.g.</i> — au tennis play tennis; — du piano play the piano	l'université [yniversite] <i>f.</i> uni- versity
	vouloir [vulwar]: — dire to mean

EXERCISES

A. Jean est allé voir son ami, Henri Girard, qui est à une université non loin de chez lui. Lorsqu'il est revenu il est allé voir Georges. Voici ce qu'il a raconté:

Qu'est-ce que vous avez fait hier, Jean? — J'ai visité une grande université. — Avec qui étiez-vous? — Avec Henri Girard. — Quels bâtiments avez-vous vus? — Ceux qui contiennent les laboratoires de chimie et de physique. — Lequel est le plus intéressant, celui-ci ou celui-là? — J'aime mieux celui-ci. Dans ce laboratoire j'ai vu un poste de T. S. F. et d'autres appareils de physique. — Un poste de T. S. F.? Qu'est-ce que c'est que ça? Qu'est-ce que cela veut dire? — Quoi? Quelle question stupide! Vous ne savez pas ce que c'est? C'est un poste de téléphonie sans fil. — Je n'avais pas compris de quoi vous parliez. À qui est ce poste? — Il est à l'université, bien entendu. . . . Ensuite j'ai vu le terrain de sports athlétiques. — À quoi jouait-on? — On jouait au tennis. . . . — Dites donc, Jean, savez-vous que les Français jouent très bien au tennis? — Je le crois bien! Ils ont été plusieurs fois les champions du monde.

B. *Written*: 1. John is talking with Mary and Robert.

MARY. — 2. Whose was that fine car, John, in which you were riding yesterday? 3. With whom were you talking? 4. Tell me what you did. 5. What were you talking about?

JOHN. — 6. You ask too many questions. 7. Which one must I answer? . . . 8. The man with whom I was talking was Henry Girard. 9. The car is his. 10. I visited the campus of his university.

ROBERT. — 11. Which one of the buildings do you like best?

JOHN. — 12. The finest is the laboratory of physics. 13. Henry showed me a T. S. F. set there.

MARY. — 14. What? What's that? 15. What does that mean?

JOHN. — 16. That? That's a wireless set. 17. They call it a T. S. F. 18. It's shorter.

MARY. — 19. What a name! 20. I am glad, however, to know what that means.

ROBERT. — 21. What do you think of the chemistry laboratory? 22. Which of the two laboratories is more interesting?

JOHN. — 23. I like the physics one better.

ROBERT. — 24. What did you do after that?

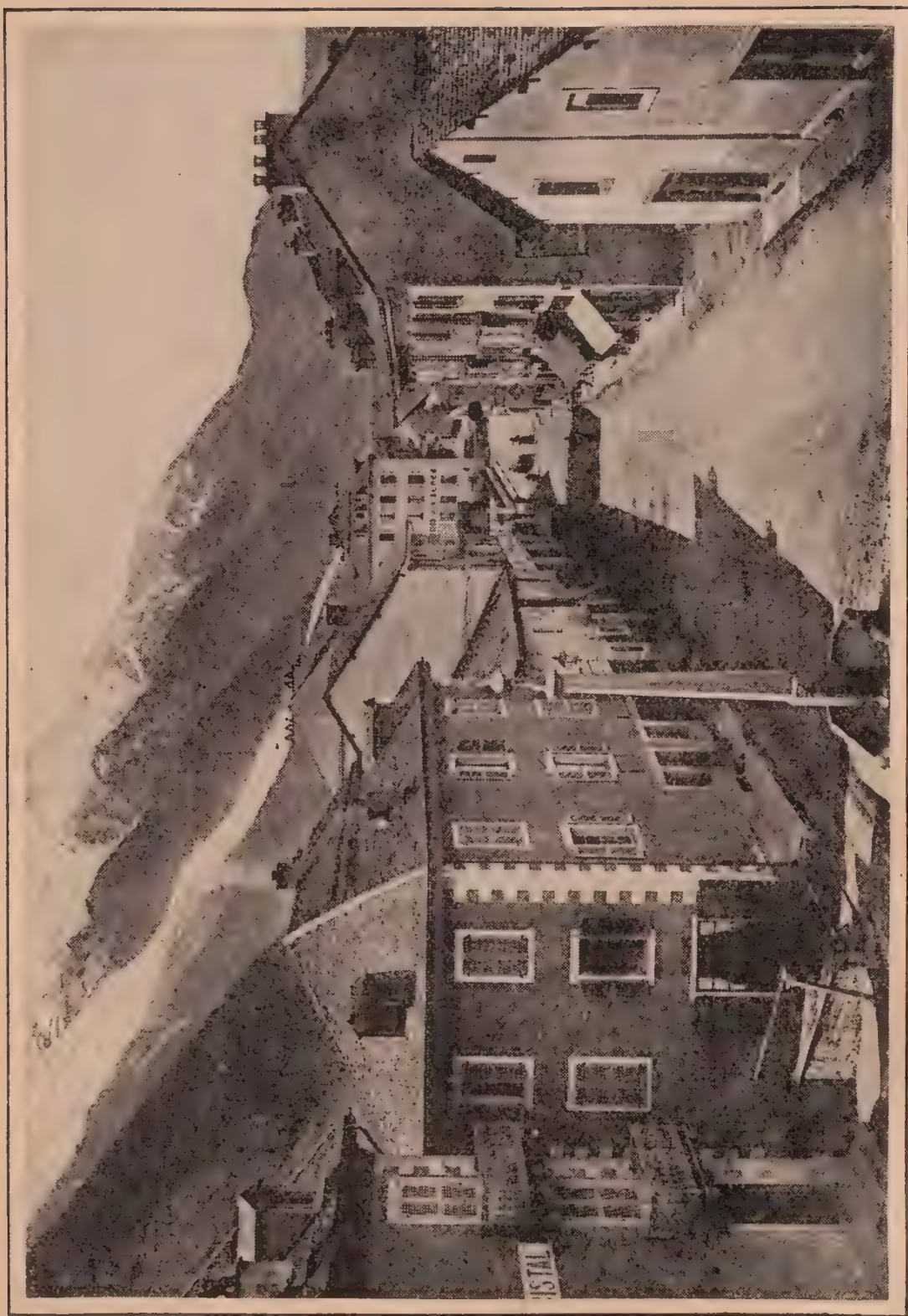
JOHN. — 25. I played tennis. 26. The courts were very good.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Make sentences which will illustrate the following interrogative forms:* 1. Qui? 2. À qui? 3. Quel? 4. Quelle? 5. Que? 6. Qu'est-ce que? 7. Qu'est-ce qui? 8. Qu'est-ce que c'est que? 9. Lesquels? 10. Lesquelles? 11. Est-ce que?

(2) *Give the questions which would call for the following answers:* 1. Jean est allé voir l'Université. 2. Avec Henri Girard. 3. Il a vu ceux qui contiennent les laboratoires de chimie et de physique. 4. Il aime mieux celui-là. 5. Il a vu un poste de T. S. F. 6. Georges ne savait pas ce que c'était. 7. Cela veut dire « Téléphonie Sans Fil ». 8. Ce poste est à l'Université. 9. On jouait au tennis. 10. Oui, les Français jouent très bien au tennis. 11. Ils ont été champions du monde. 12. Oui, je sais ce que c'est que le tennis.

D. *Oral:* 1. Who told the truth? 2. (*long form*) What did people (*on*) believe? 3. What do they believe now? 4. I don't know what they believe. 5. The girls brought the coffee and tea; which did you drink? 6. What are you drinking now? 7. Do they drink much coffee? 8. I should say so! 9. Whose is that glass? 10. It is mine. 11. What's that? 12. What? 13. What is he talking about (*of*)? 14. What is that book he is talking about (*of*)? 15. I don't know what it is. 16. What is a T. S. F. (*f.*)? 17. Which of those two (*m.*) is the better? 18. What questions! 19. Which ones do you want me to answer (*to reply to*)? 20. What do you want? 21. Tell me what you want. 22. What is to-morrow's lesson?



CHAMONIX ET LE MONT BLANC

E. *Rapid reading:*

LES ALPES

Chamonix, le 10 septembre.

Nous avons fait en autocar la route des Alpes, les plus hautes montagnes d'Europe. Le parcours ¹ est impressionnant ² à souhait, ³ même pour de jeunes Américains blasés tels que ⁴ nous. Sommets aigus, ⁵ gorges profondes et resserrées, ⁶ chemin étroit ⁷ constamment en lacets, ⁸ dangereux virages ⁹ à l'extrême bord de précipices abrupts et vertigineux, ¹⁰ rien ne manque ¹¹ pour vous donner un frisson ¹² de peur et d'admiration.

Séjour à Grenoble, belle ville d'université et d'industrie, bien abritée ¹³ dans un cirque grandiose de montagnes. C'est l'ancienne capitale du Dauphiné. Le fils aîné ¹⁴ du roi de France porta le nom de Dauphin, ¹⁵ à partir du ¹⁶ quatorzième siècle, quand le dernier seigneur de la province eut cédé son domaine au roi.

Dans la vallée de l'Isère, l'affluent du Rhône sur lequel est située Grenoble, les nombreuses usines ¹⁷ hydro-électriques augmentent chaque jour la prospérité de la région.

Avant de quitter Grenoble, Marguerite et Alice ont voulu faire une provision de gants, spécialité de la région.

Après le Dauphiné, la Savoie, le pays des glaciers et des lacs, dont nous rêvions ¹⁸ depuis longtemps. Sans nous attarder à Chambéry, l'ancienne capitale de la province, nous nous sommes dirigés sur Chamonix, petite bourgade ¹⁹ située au pied du Mont Blanc, le géant de l'Europe, haut de quatre mille huit cent sept mètres.

Il n'est pas question de faire toute l'ascension du Mont Blanc, expédition fatigante même pour des alpinistes expérimentés.²⁰ Mais nous avons admiré « la Mer de glace » ²¹ et nous nous promettons d'y retourner encore. Quant au sommet, de tout temps couvert de neige, nous le contem-

plons de loin,²² dans ses colorations différentes, selon les heures de la journée.

Édouard a rencontré ici deux camarades de collège qui vont visiter le Jura. Ils iront à Besançon, l'ancienne capitale de la Franche-Comté, où ils veulent acheter des montres.

¹ trip. ² exciting. ³ to one's heart's content. ⁴ such as. ⁵ sharp. ⁶ constricted, narrow. ⁷ narrow. ⁸ winding. ⁹ turns. ¹⁰ dizzy. ¹¹ is lacking. ¹² thrill. ¹³ sheltered. ¹⁴ oldest. ¹⁵ Crown Prince. ¹⁶ beginning with. ¹⁷ plant. ¹⁸ dreamed. ¹⁹ village. ²⁰ experienced. ²¹ "Sea of ice." ²² from afar.

LESSON XXXV

134. Indefinite Adjectives and Pronouns. Some of the indefinites are used as adjectives only, others as pronouns only, while some have both uses. The most common forms are:

1. Adjectives (*only*)

chaque [ʃak] each, every

quelque(s) [kɛlkə] some, a few

Il vient *chaque* jour.

He comes each day.

Attendez *quelques* minutes.

Wait a few minutes.

2. Pronouns (*only*)

chacun(e) [ʃakœ] [ʃakyn] each one

quelqu'un(une) [kɛlkœ] [kɛlkyn] some one, any one

quelques-uns(-unes) [kɛlkəzœ] [kɛlkəzyn] some, a few, any

quelque chose [kɛlkəʃo:z] *m.* something, anything

on [ɔ̃] one, some one, we, you, they, people (§ 62)

personne [pɛʁsɔ̃] *m.* (*alone or with ne*) nobody, no one, not anybody

rien [ʁjɛ̃] (*alone or with ne*) nothing, not anything

a. Quelqu'un, quelque chose, personne, and rien require *de* before a following adjective.

Chacun dit cela.

Each one says that.

(Robes) Elle en achète *quelques-unes*.

She buys some (of them).

Elle achète *quelque chose* (*de joli*).

She buys something (pretty).

Elle <i>n'achète rien</i> (<i>de joli</i>).	She is buying nothing (pretty).
Il <i>ne voit personne</i> .	He sees nobody.
<i>Personne ne le voit</i> .	Nobody sees him.
Que voyez-vous? — <i>Rien</i> .	What do you see? — Nothing.
Qui voyez-vous? — <i>Personne</i> .	Whom do you see? — Nobody.

3. Adjectives or pronouns

aucun(e) [okœ] [okyn] some, any; (*alone or with ne*) no, not one, none
autre [otr] other
tel(le) [tɛl] such (a), like, such a one
tout [tu] each, every, all, whole (§ 82)

<i>Aucun homme ne dit cela</i> , — <i>aucun</i> .	No man says that, — not one.
Les <i>autres</i> sont là, — <i>tous</i> [tus].	The others are there, — all (of them).
Qui raconte une <i>telle</i> histoire?	Who is telling such a story?

135. Summary of Common Negative Forms

ne . . . pas [pa] not
ne . . . point [pwɛ̃] (*emphatic negative*) not at all
ne . . . plus [ply] no more, no longer
ne . . . jamais [ʒamɛ] never
ne . . . rien [rjɛ̃] nothing
ne . . . personne [persɔ̃] nobody, no one
ne . . . que [kə] only
ne . . . aucun [okœ] not any, none
ne . . . ni . . . ni [ni ni] neither . . . nor

a. In compound tenses *ne* precedes the auxiliary, and the second negative word (*pas, rien, etc.*) comes between the auxiliary and the past participle, with the exception of *personne, que, and ni . . . ni*, which regularly follow the past participle.

Il <i>n'a pas écrit</i> .	He did not write.
Il <i>n'a rien écrit</i> .	He wrote nothing.
Il <i>n'a jamais écrit</i> .	He never wrote.
Il <i>n'a écrit à personne</i> .	He wrote nobody.
Il <i>n'a écrit qu'une lettre</i> .	He wrote only one letter.
Il <i>n'a écrit ni à elle ni à moi</i> .	He wrote neither to her nor to me.

136. *Connaître, to know, be acquainted with:*

connaître	connaissant	connu	connais	connus
connaîtrai	connaissais	avoir connu	connais	connusse
connaîtrais	connaisse			

PRESENT INDICATIVE

connais
connais
connaît
connaissons
connaissez
connaissent

IMPERATIVE

connais

connaissons
connaissez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

connaisse
connaises
connaisse
connaissons
connaissez
connaissent

a. Savoir means to take mental possession of while connaître means merely to be acquainted with.

Je *sais* la leçon.

I know the lesson.

Je *connais* ce monsieur.

I know that gentleman.

VOCABULARY

absolument [apsɔlymɑ̃] abso- lutely	même [mɛːm] (<i>before noun or as a pron.</i>) same; (<i>after noun or pron.</i>) self, very, even; (<i>adv.</i>) even
autre [otr]: un —, another (<i>dif- ferent one</i>)	paraître [parɛːtr] to appear, seem (<i>conj. like connaître</i>)
deux [dø]: tous, toutes (les) —, both	paresseux [parɛsø], paresseuse [parɛsøːz] lazy
encore [ɑ̃kɔːr]: — un another (<i>additional one</i>)	pas [pa]: — du tout not at all
l'exception [ɛksɛpsjɔ̃] <i>f.</i> excep- tion	le printemps [prɛ̃tɑ̃] spring; au —, in the spring
le goût [gu] taste	quant à [kɑ̃ta] as for
irrégulier [iregylje], irrégulière [iregyljeːr] irregular	un [œ̃]: l'—(e) et l'autre both
la liste [list] list	

EXERCISES

A. Le professeur d'histoire, M. Lasalle, et M. Rambaud, le professeur de français, se promènent en causant dans la cour de l'école. Tous les deux paraissent fatigués. Chacun pense à ses élèves. Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est content des siens.

M. LASALLE. — Que pensez-vous de vos élèves, M. Rambaud, ces jours-ci? Les miens sont paresseux, absolument tous, sans aucune exception. Aucun n'étudie, ni à l'école, ni à la maison. Avez-vous jamais vu de tels élèves?

M. RAMBAUD. — Jamais! On n'étudie plus depuis quelques jours. Les uns font des promenades en auto; les autres, à pied. Je n'ai plus qu'un bon élève dans ma classe, Jean Bernard. Et, cependant, il n'y a rien de plus intéressant que le français.

M. LASALLE. — Rien, excepté l'histoire. Le français est utile, bien entendu. Quelques-unes des meilleures histoires sont écrites en français. Cependant, quant à moi, je n'ai jamais rien étudié de moins intéressant que les verbes irréguliers français.

M. RAMBAUD. — Je peux vous dire quelque chose de moins intéressant; c'est la liste des rois d'Angleterre et de France. Chacun à son goût!... Mais voulez-vous que je vous dise pourquoi personne ne travaille ces jours-ci, pas même vous et moi? C'est le printemps.

B. *Written*: 1. Robert and George are studying the irregular verbs. 2. The latter has written nothing in his notebook; the former has written only a few sentences. 3. Neither knows his lesson. 4. Both close their books.

GEORGE. — 5. I have never been so tired. 6. Everybody is lazy to-day, Robert. 7. When I went to the school this afternoon I couldn't find anybody. 8. None of my friends were there, — none! 9. Tell me something to do, something interesting.

ROBERT. — 10. There is nothing to do, — absolutely nothing! 11. Nobody wants to play tennis. 12. I went to the homes of some of my friends, but they didn't want to do anything. 13. I found only John Bernard, and he was going to work all day (f.) in the laboratory. 14. I never saw such a man, — never!

GEORGE. — 15. There are some who like to work, and there are others who do not like it at all. 16. Each one to his taste! 17. As for me, it is spring, and I work no more.

Supplementary Drill

C. (1) *Change the following sentences so that they will have, as nearly as possible, the opposite meaning:* 1. J'ai connu quelqu'un à Londres. 2. Avez-vous acheté quelque chose en France? 3. Elles ont tout oublié. 4. J'ai toujours été malade. 5. Il dit tout. 6. Ils écrivent toujours. 7. Personne n'est venu. 8. Je vous attendrai encore quelques minutes. 9. Ils ne connaissent personne. 10. Il ne boit jamais de café.

(2) *Put the words in parenthesis in their proper position in the sentences:* 1. (ne, rien) Il a cru. 2. (rien) Absolument. 3. (ne, personne) Avez-vous connu? 4. (ne, que) J'ai connu deux personnes. 5. (ne . . . ni . . . ni) Il a voulu lire écrire. 6. (de) J'ai bu quelque chose bon. 7. (personne, ne) Me connaît. 8. (ne, rien, de) J'ai vu joli. 9. (aucun, ne) Homme me connaissait. 10. (toute) Il verra la maison. 11. (un, tel) Je n'ai jamais vu homme. 12. (ne, que) Il m'a écrit quelques mots.

D. *Oral:* 1. There's the man, himself. 2. Is it the same man we saw yesterday? 3. Will he come each day? 4. I don't know. 5. I do not even know him. 6. I do not know him at all. 7. Henry knows no one here. 8. I have never known such a man. 9. I am glad that some of my friends (*f.*) are here. 10. There are two (of them). 11. Both (*f.*) are tired. 12. Nobody got up late. 13. I do not believe that story. 14. Nobody will believe such a thing. 15. Even your brother did not believe it. 16. It is said that you never tell the truth, — never! 17. Your friends no longer believe you. 18. Do you wish something? 19. Nothing, thanks. 20. Nothing has arrived.

E. *Rapid reading:*LYON ET LA BOURGOGNE¹

Dijon, le 14 septembre.

À Lyon, nous avons retrouvé nos parents. Mon père est très satisfait de sa cure et des excursions que ma mère et lui ont faites dans les Cévennes.² Naturellement, nous sommes quatre à répondre que ces petits voyages ne comptent pas auprès des ³ nôtres.

Lyon, rival de Marseille pour la population, bâti au confluent ⁴ de la Saône et du Rhône, était au temps des Romains le « cœur de la Gaule ». Sa situation favorable dans une grande région de passage,⁵ en a fait de tout temps un important centre de commerce. C'est, de plus, la première ville du monde pour l'industrie de la soie, malgré ⁶ la concurrence de notre Paterson.⁷ La vallée du Rhône convient ⁸ fort bien au mûrier ⁹ dont les feuilles servent à l'élevage des vers à soie.¹⁰

En apprenant tout cela, Alice et Marguerite ont jugé à propos d'acheter quelques mètres de crêpe de Chine. C'est ce qu'elles appellent « faire de la géographie économique appliquée ».

Nous sommes maintenant à Dijon, l'ancienne capitale de la fertile Bourgogne. La ville et ses musées sont riches en sculptures du quinzième siècle. Les puissants ducs, rivaux des rois de France, menaient alors ¹¹ la fastueuse ¹² existence de souverains.

Comme les Tourangeaux,¹³ les Bourguignons ¹⁴ ont une réputation de joyeux vivants.¹⁵ Mais pourraient-ils être moroses, ces enfants d'un pays de céréales abondantes, de grasses volailles et de vins fins? Nous aussi, nous savons apprécier depuis longtemps les poulets de la Bresse, très recherchés ¹⁶ à Paris. Et nous avons été voir les fameuses « côtes » ¹⁷ dont les vins rivalisent avec ceux du Bordelais.

J'ai fait avec Marguerite l'excursion d'Alésia. C'est là

que Vercingétorix se rendit à son ennemi Jules César, après avoir héroïquement soutenu un siège cruel. Une statue impressionnante du chef gaulois domine le paysage.



Vercingétorix jette ses Armes devant César

Mes parents rentrent à Paris et les jeunes filles les accompagnent. Marguerite meurt du désir de séjourner un peu dans la grande ville et Alice ne veut pas la quitter. Édouard et moi, nous partons pour l'Alsace, où nous retrouverons peut-être les deux camarades de mon ami.

¹ Burgundy. ² mountains in central France. ³ in comparison with. ⁴ junction. ⁵ traffic. ⁶ in spite of. ⁷ city in New Jersey. ⁸ suits. ⁹ mulberry tree. ¹⁰ silkworms. ¹¹ at that time. ¹² luxurious. ¹³ inhabitants of Touraine. ¹⁴ Burgundians. ¹⁵ people who live well, "good livers." ¹⁶ in demand. ¹⁷ hillsides.

LESSON XXXVI

137. Cardinal Numerals

TABLE

1. un, une	[œ̃][yn]	22. vingt-deux	[vêtdø]
2. deux	[dø]	30. trente	[trã:t]
3. trois	[trwa]	31. trente et un	[trã:teœ̃]
4. quatre	[katr]	40. quarante	[karã:t]
5. cinq	[sê:k]	50. cinquante	[sêkã:t]
6. six	[sis]	60. soixante	[swasũ:t]
7. sept	[set]	70. soixante-dix	[swasũ:tdis]
8. huit	[qit]	71. soixante et onze	[swasũ:teõ:z]
9. neuf	[nœf]	80. quatre-vingts	[katrœvẽ]
10. dix	[dis]	81. quatre-vingt-un	[katrœvẽœ̃]
11. onze	[õ:z]	90. quatre-vingt-dix	[katrœvẽdis]
12. douze	[du:z]	91. quatre-vingt-onze	[katrœvẽõ:z]
13. treize	[trẽ:z]	100. cent	[sũ]
14. quatorze	[katœrz]	101. cent un	[sũœ̃]
15. quinze	[kẽ:z]	200. deux cents	[døså]
16. seize	[sẽ:z]	201. deux cent un	[døsåœ̃]
17. dix-sept	[disset]	1000. mille	[mil]
18. dix-huit	[dizqit]	1001. mille un	[milœ̃]
19. dix-neuf	[diznœf]	2000. deux mille	[dømil]
20. vingt	[vẽ]	1,000,000. un million	[œ̃miljõ]
21. vingt et un	[vêteœ̃]	1 billion. un milliard	[œ̃milja:r]

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION

a. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before the initial consonant or the **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, but not elsewhere: **cinq livres** [sêli:vʀ], but **le cinq mai** [sê:ikmɛ].

b. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit**, **onze**: **le huit** [ləqit]; **les huit livres** [ləqili:vʀ]; **le onze** [ləõ:z]; **les onze francs** [ləõ:zfrã].

c. The **t** is sounded in **vingt** in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, becomes **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un**, **deux cent un**, etc.

1. **Et** is used regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, never in 81, 91, 101: **vingt et un**, **quatre-vingt-un**, **cent un**.

2. The word **un**, *a* or *one*, is not used before the numeral adjectives **cent** or **mille**, but must be used with the nouns **million** and **milliard**, which also require **de**, *of*, after them.

Cent (mille) francs.

One hundred (one thousand) francs.

Un million de francs.

One million francs.

3. **Quatre-vingt(s)** and multiples of **cent** take **-s** when directly followed by the noun they multiply. **Mille** does not take **-s**.

Quatre-vingts francs.

Eighty francs.

Quatre cents francs.

Four hundred francs.

But: **Quatre cent dix** francs.

Four hundred and ten francs.

Quatre mille francs.

Four thousand francs.

138. *Mettre*, to place, put:

mettre

mettant

mis

mets

mis

mettrai

mettais

avoir mis

mets

misse

mettrais

mette

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

mets

mette

mets

mets

mettes

met

mette

mettons

mettons

mettions

mettez

mettez

mettiez

mettent

mettent

139. *Prendre*, to take, get:

prendre

prenant

pris

prends

pris

prendrai

prenais

avoir pris

prends

prisse

prendrais

prenne

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

prends

prenne

prends

prends

prennes

prend

prenne

prenons

prenons

prenions

prenez

prenez

preniez

prennent

prennent

VOCABULARY

l'appartement [apartəmā] <i>m.</i> apartment	le kilo(gramme) [kilɔ(gram)] kil- ogram (<i>about 2½ pounds</i>)
le beurre [bœʁ] butter	le kilomètre [kilɔmɛtr] kilometer (<i>about ¾ of a mile</i>)
le centime [sātim] 1/100 of a franc	le lait [le] milk
compter [kōte] to count, <u>count</u> on	le litre [litr] liter (<i>about 1 quart</i>)
coûter [kute] to cost	le mètre [mɛtr] meter (<i>about</i> <i>39.37 inches</i>)
le crêpe [krɛ:p] crêpe	meublé [mœble] furnished
demi [dəmi] half	moindre [mwē:dr] <i>adj.</i> less
la dépense [depā:s] expense	par [par] per, by, through, a
le dessert [desɛ:r] dessert	payer [peje] to pay, <u>pay for</u> <i>m</i>
environ [āvirō] about	la pension [pūsɟō] board
exact [egzakt] exact	le potage [pota:ʒ] soup
la fourrure [fury:r] fur	le prix [pri] price
Jacques [zak] James	la vie [vi] life, living
jusqu'à [zyska] up to, until	

EXERCISES

Paris, le 11 mai 19—.

A. Mon cher Georges,

Vous m'avez prié de vous dire si la vie est chère à Paris. Eh bien, ma pension est de 45 francs par jour, ce qui fait environ 1350 francs par mois. En cherchant bien, on peut trouver des pensions à 35 francs par jour ou 1050 francs par mois. Bien entendu, si on a l'intention de rester longtemps le prix est moindre. Un de mes amis ne paie sa chambre, dans un petit hôtel, que 18 francs 75 centimes par jour. Il dîne dans un petit restaurant à 6 francs 25. Si on prend un appartement meublé, il faut payer de 1800 à 3000 francs par mois.

Le pain coûte 1 franc la livre (ou demi-kilo), le beurre 13 francs 70 la livre, le café 14 francs 95 la livre, et le lait 1 franc 75 le litre. Ma mère a payé le crêpe de soie 45 francs le mètre. J'ai acheté un parapluie 110 francs et une bonne paire de gants 35 francs 50. Les taxis ne sont pas chers, 1 franc 25 le kilomètre.

Je vois dans le journal qu'on peut trouver des manteaux de fourrure entre 950 francs et 7000 ou 8000 francs, et même plus. Voici quelque chose d'intéressant; c'est le prix d'une automobile américaine, qui coûte en France 25600 francs. Aux États-Unis, cette automobile ne coûte que 18750 francs.

J'ai oublié de vous dire que le prix de mon billet de New York à Londres a été 2682 francs. Si vous voulez venir passer une année en France, il faudra compter au moins ~~sur~~ 30000 ou 40000 francs de dépenses.

Bien à vous,
JACQUES.

B. *Written*: 1. George is talking with John about (of) the letter which James wrote him. 2. The prices which George gives are not exact. 3. He has forgotten them. 4. Here is what he says: 5. James is paying for his board 38 francs a (per) day, or about 1140 francs a month. 6. When he was in a small hotel, he paid for his room 17 francs 80 centimes a day. 7. He dined à la carte in a little restaurant. 8. The soup cost 1 franc 25; the meat, 3 francs 75; a vegetable, 1 franc 50, and a dessert, 2 francs. 9. Furnished apartments cost from 1,650 francs to 3,250 francs per month. 10. One pays for bread 1 franc 10 the pound or half kilogram; butter, 12 francs 80 the pound; coffee, 13 francs 70 the pound, and milk 1 franc 70 the liter. 11. James bought an umbrella at 120 francs and a good overcoat at 275 francs. 12. Automobiles are dear. 13. Some, however, cost only from 25,500 francs up to 35,800 francs. 14. James paid for his ticket from New York to Paris about 2,825 francs. 15. In order to spend a year in Europe, one must count on at least 30,000 francs for (of) expenses. *Comptes*

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French*: 1. Qu'est-ce que Georges a voulu savoir? 2. Combien coûte par jour la pension de Jacques? 3. Cela fait

combien par mois? 4. Combien peut-on payer dans d'autres pensions? 5. Quand le prix est-il moindre? 6. Combien son ami paie-t-il sa chambre? 7. Et son dîner? 8. Combien faut-il payer si on prend un appartement meublé? 9. Combien coûtent le pain, le beurre, le café et le lait? 10. Combien sa mère a-t-elle payé le crêpe de soie? 11. Quel était le prix du parapluie que Jacques a acheté? 12. Et de la paire de gants? 13. Les taxis sont-ils chers? 14. Et les manteaux de fourrure? 15. Combien coûte l'automobile américaine? 16. Quel est le prix du billet de New York à Londres? 17. Sur quelles dépenses faut-il compter pour passer une année en France?

D. *Oral*: 1. Six, six books, six men. 2. Eight, the eight books, the eight men. 3. Ten, ten books, ten friends. 4. Thirty-one books, thirty-one pens. 5. Sixty-five, seventy, seventy-one, seventy-nine. 6. Eighty, eighty-one, eighty-eight, ninety-one. 7. One hundred, one hundred one, one hundred eleven. 8. One hundred francs, one hundred one francs, two hundred francs. 9. One thousand francs, one thousand one francs, four thousand francs. 10. Two million five hundred seventy-nine thousand six hundred ninety-eight. 11. (*Multiply on model*, 2 fois 1 font 2): $2 \times 1 = 2$; $2 \times 2 = 4$; $3 \times 1 = 3$, etc. 12. Each book costs 300 francs. 13. He has only 301 francs. 14. The 11 pupils went to the board. 15. Where do you want me to put these 10 chairs? 16. The newspaper costs only 25 centimes. 17. He bought a banana at 1 franc 25 centimes. 18. I paid 1,100 francs for a radio set. 19. He has taken only 500 francs with him. 20. We are taking only 100 francs. 21. They are taking 80 francs. 22. They put the 8 boxes on the table. 23. Nobody paid 3,000,000 francs.

E. *Rapid reading*:

L'ALSACE

Strasbourg, le 19 septembre.

À Mulhouse, nous avons fait connaissance ¹ avec l'Alsace, la douce terre fertile et bien abritée, située entre les Vosges ² et le Rhin.³ Je me rappelle les vers que j'ai appris au lycée:

« C'est un pays de plaine et de montagne,
 Une terre où les blonds épis,⁴
 En été couvrent la campagne,
 Où l'étranger voit tout surpris
 Les grands houblons,⁵ en longues lignes,
 Pousser ⁶ joyeux, au pied des vignes
 Qui couvrent les vieux coteaux ⁷ gris. »

(Erckmann-Chatrian)⁸

Céréales, houblons, vignes et arbres fruitiers sont, en effet, les principales ressources agricoles de l'Alsace. Ce gourmet ⁹

d'Édouard estime en connaisseur¹⁰ la bonne cuisine du pays.

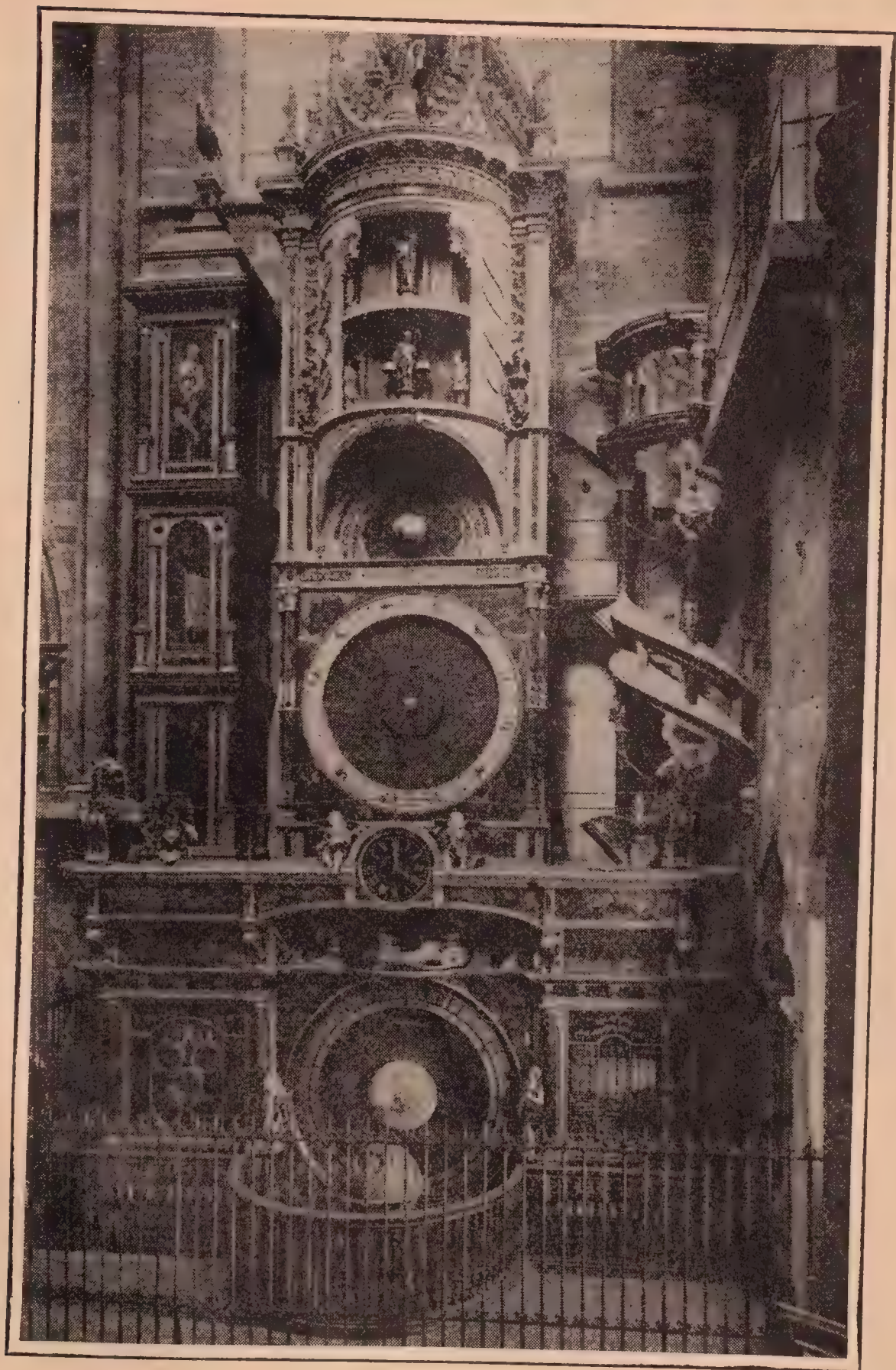
Nous avons vu quelques-uns de ces villages alsaciens, aimés des cigognes,¹¹ qui font leurs nids ¹² sur les cheminées ou les églises.

Maintenant, nous sommes à Strasbourg, la pittoresque capitale de l'Alsace. Je parcours ¹³ les rues, à la recherche des vieilles maisons, dont la ville abonde. J'aime leurs amusantes façades de bois sculpté, et leurs longs toits ajourés ¹⁴ de



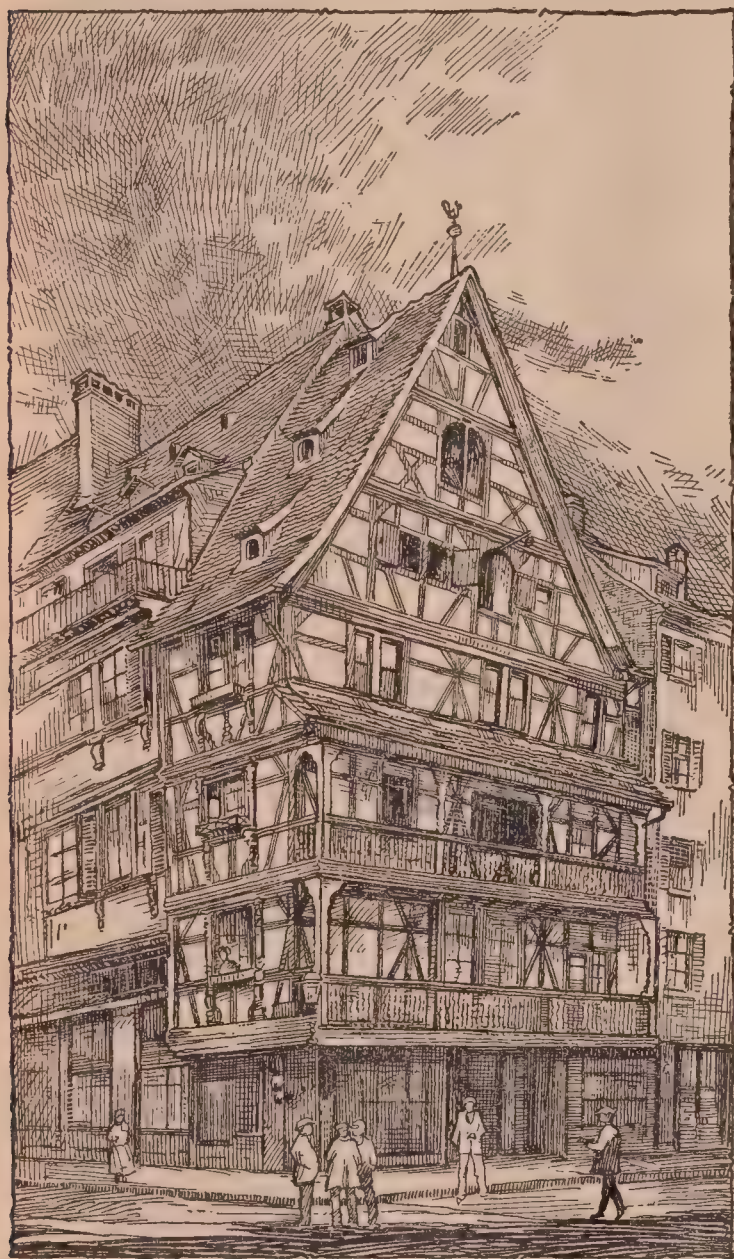
Un Nid de Cigognes, Strasbourg
 plusieurs étages ¹⁵ de lucarnes.¹⁶

La cathédrale, avec sa tour unique,¹⁷ est aussi très curieuse.



L'HORLOGE ASTRONOMIQUE DE STRASBOURG

Une vieille légende raconte que le diable lui-même a collaboré à son plan.



Édouard est retourné plusieurs fois à la cathédrale pour y admirer la grande horloge¹⁸ à personnages.¹⁹ Quand l'heure sonne, un ou plusieurs apôtres apparaissent. À midi, on les voit tous les douze.

C'est à Strasbourg que Rouget de Lisle composa en 1792 le chant national français, appelé « la Marseillaise », parce qu'il fut d'abord chanté par des soldats marseillais allant à Paris au secours²⁰ du gouvernement révolutionnaire.

Une Vieille Maison, Strasbourg

¹ made the acquaintance. ² mountains. ³ Rhine river. ⁴ ears (of wheat). ⁵ hop vines. ⁶ grow up. ⁷ hills. ⁸ see Vocabulary. ⁹ epicure. ¹⁰ as a connoisseur. ¹¹ storks. ¹² nests. ¹³ go through. ¹⁴ pierced. ¹⁵ rows. ¹⁶ dormer windows. ¹⁷ single. ¹⁸ clock. ¹⁹ characters, persons. ²⁰ help.

LESSON XXXVII

140. Ordinal Numerals. Ordinal numbers are formed, from *second* upwards, by adding *-ième* to the corresponding

cardinal, final *-e*, when present, being dropped; *cinq* adds *u*, and *neuf* changes *f* to *v* before *-ième*.

1st	{	premier	[prəmje]	6th	sixième	[sizjem]
		première	[prəmje:r]	7th	septième	[setjem]
2nd	{	second	[səgō]	8th	huitième	[ɥitjem]
		seconde	[səgō:d]	9th	neuvième	[nœvjem]
		deuxième	[døzjem]	10th	dixième	[dizjem]
3rd		troisième	[trwəzjem]	11th	onzième	[ōzjem]
4th		quatrième	[katriem]	21st	vingt et unième	[vêteynjem]
5th		cinquième	[sêkjem]	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vêtdøzjem]

a. *Deuxième* is ordinarily used instead of *second* in a series of more than two and in compounds.

141. Dates, Titles, etc. 1. The form *mil* is used in dates of the Christian era, from 1001 to 1099; from 1100 onward, dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English.

(En) l'an *mil* six.

En *mil* neuf cent neuf.

En dix-neuf cent neuf.

(In) the year 1006.

In nineteen hundred and nine.

In 1909.

2. Days of the month and numerical titles of rulers are indicated by cardinals, except *first* = **premier**.

Le premier mai.

Charles Premier.

Paris, le deux mai.

Louis Quatorze (XIV).

The first of May.

Charles the First.

Paris, (on) the 2nd of May.

Louis Fourteenth (XIV).

3. Months¹:

janvier [ʒǃvje] January

février [fevrie] February

mars [mars] March

avril [avril] April

mai [me] May

juin [ʒɥẽ] June

juillet [ʒɥije] July

août [u] August

septembre [septā:br] September

octobre [ɔktobr] October

novembre [nɔvā:br] November

décembre [desā:br] December

NOTE. — English *of* and *on* are not translated in dates.

¹ The names of the months are masculine.

Ils sont arrivés le quatre juillet.

They arrived (*on*) the fourth of July.

Ils sont partis lundi dernier.

They left (*on*) last Monday.

4. Seasons:

été [ete] *m.* summer

hiver [ive:r] *m.* winter

automne [otɔn] *m.* autumn

printemps [prêtã] *m.* spring

a. In summer, in autumn, in winter are en été, en automne, en hiver, but in spring is au printemps.

5. Idioms of date and age:

Quel jour du mois est-ce
(sommes-nous) aujourd'hui?

What day of the month is it to-day?

C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.

To-day is the fifteenth.

Ce sera demain le huit.

To-morrow will be the eighth.

D'aujourd'hui en huit.

A week from to-day (*future*).

Il y a quinze jours.

A fortnight ago.

Quel âge avez-vous?

How old are you?

J'ai vingt ans.

I am twenty (years old).

Une petite fille âgée de six ans.

A little girl six years old (*or of age*).

À l'âge de vingt-cinq ans.

At the age of twenty-five (years).

142. Naître, to be born:

naître

naissant

né

nais

naquis

naîtrai

naissais

être né

nais

naquisse

naîtrais

naisse

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

nais

naisse

nais

nais

naisses

naît

naisse

naissons

naissons

naissions

naissiez

naissiez

naissiez

naissent

naissent

143. Mourir, to die:

mourir

mourant

mort

meurs

mourus

mourrai

mourais

être mort

meurs

mourusse

mourrais

meure

PRESENT INDICATIVE

meurs
meurs
meurt
mourons
mourez
meurent

IMPERATIVE

meurs
mourons
mourez

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

meure
meures
meure
mourions
mouriez
meurent

VOCABULARY

l'âge [ɑ:ʒ] <i>m.</i> age	<i>time</i>) ago; — deux ans two
âgé [ɑ:ʒe] old, aged	years ago
l'auteur [otœr] <i>m.</i> author	la mort [mɔ:r] death
la Bastille [basti:j] Bastille	la naissance [nesɑ:s] birth
la date [dat] date	la prise [pri:z] capture, taking
l'empire [ɑpi:r] <i>m.</i> empire	régner [reɲe] to reign, rule
l'examen [egzamɑ̃] <i>m.</i> examina- tion	la république [repyblik] republic
la femme [fam] woman, wife	suivant [sqivɑ̃] following
il y a [ilja] (+ <i>expression of</i>	voyons! [vwajɔ̃] let's see! come now!

EXERCISES

A. ROBERT. — Mardi prochain, c'est l'anniversaire du professeur Rambaud, Georges. Il aura trente-sept ans. La classe va lui faire un cadeau. On peut acheter une jolie montre pour six cent vingt-cinq francs. Vous donnerez vingt-cinq francs, n'est-ce pas?

GEORGES. — Oui, je serai très content de le faire. Il est si gentil. . . . Mais, dites donc, Robert, il nous a donné une liste de dates à apprendre avant l'examen; pouvez-vous me les donner?

Robert lui donne la liste suivante:

1789, Prise de la Bastille (le 14 juillet)	1824, Charles X
1792, Première République	1830, Louis-Philippe
1804, Premier Empire (Na- poléon 1 ^{er})	1848, Deuxième République
1814, Louis XVIII	1852, Second Empire (Na- poléon III)
	1870, Troisième République

ROBERT. — Ensuite, il nous a donné les dates de la naissance et de la mort de quelques auteurs français:

(1) Corneille est né le 6 juin 1606; il est mort le 30 septembre 1684, âgé de 78 ans.

(2) Molière est né à Paris au mois de janvier 1622; il est mort le 17 février 1673.

(3) Mme de Sévigné est née en 1626; elle est morte en 1696.

(4) Voltaire est né le 21 novembre 1694; il est mort le 30 mai 1778 à l'âge de 84 ans.

(5) Victor Hugo est né en 1802; il est mort en 1885.

GEORGES. — Quelle liste! Et vous voulez, après tout cela, que nous donnions une montre au professeur?

B. *Written*: 1. Robert and George continue studying the dates. 2. It is the third time that they repeat the first list which the professor gave them. 3. They finish it and begin a second list. 4. Robert is going to read the first part of the list, and George, the second: . . .

ROBERT. — 5. Louis XIV was born September 5, 1638. 6. When he began to reign, May 14, 1643, he was only five years old. 7. He died September 1, 1715. 8. Napoleon I was born August 15, 1769; he died May 5, 1821, at the age of fifty-two. 9. Jean Jacques Rousseau was born June 28, 1712; he died July 2, 1778, the same year as Voltaire. 10. He was sixty-six years old.

GEORGE. — 11. Balzac was born May 20, 1799; he died August 17, 1850. 12. He was only fifty-one. 13. They say, Robert, that he used to drink too much coffee. 14. Let's see, now . . . there's a woman in that list, — oh, yes, George Sand. 15. She was born in 1804 at Paris and died in 1876 at Nohant, seventy-one years old. 16. I have forgotten Châteaubriand's dates. 17. I can never study in the spring or summer. 18. I hope they will give that present to the professor before the examination.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Answer in French:* 1. Combien de jours y a-t-il dans une année? 2. Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui? 3. Quel jour était-ce hier? 4. Et quel jour est-ce que ce sera demain? 5. Quelle phrase lisez-vous maintenant? 6. Quelle sera la phrase suivante? 7. Quelle est la date de l'anniversaire de Washington? 8. Ma mère a 40 ans; quand est-elle née? 9. Quelle est la date aujourd'hui? 10. Quelle sera la date d'aujourd'hui en huit? 11. D'aujourd'hui en quinze? 12. Combien font 7 fois 52? 13. Quel âge avait Victor Hugo lorsqu'il est mort? 14. Quelle est la date de la prise de la Bastille? 15. Quand Corneille est-il né? 16. Quand Molière est-il mort? 17. Combien de temps Napoléon 1^{er} a-t-il régné? 18. Combien de jours ont les mois de janvier, février, mars, etc.?

D. *Oral:* 1. What day of the month is it to-day? 2. It's April fifteenth. 3. It's the third time I told you (it). 4. It's fine weather here in spring and autumn, but it is warm in summer. 5. To-day is Robert's birthday. 6. How old is he? 7. He is nineteen years old. 8. His sister will be seventeen years old in a week. 9. His father is very ill. 10. People believe that he will die soon. 11. Robert's mother died two years ago. 12. Look at page 5; read the ninth sentence. 13. Washington was born February 22, 1732; he died December 14, 1799. 14. Madame de Staël was born in Paris, April 22, 1766; she died July 14, 1817. 15. Victor Hugo was born (*past def.*) in 1802; he died in 1885.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA LORRAINE

Nancy, le 22 septembre.

En arrivant ici, nous avons trouvé, poste restante,¹ des lettres de notre famille. Ces demoiselles se réjouissent d'être à Paris, et elles se sont commandé de fort² jolies robes. Tant mieux pour elles. Édouard et moi, nous nous accommodons fort bien³ de voyager en garçons.⁴ On va beaucoup plus vite et on dépense moins d'argent.

Nous venons de traverser ⁵ une partie de la Lorraine, dont le nom est si souvent uni, ⁶ depuis la guerre de 1870, à celui de l'Alsace. Mais il ne faudrait pas croire à une grande ressemblance entre les deux provinces. Elles diffèrent beaucoup, au contraire, par le sol, le climat, les ressources. La



La Vision de Jeanne d'Arc
(Lenepveu)

Lorraine est surtout industrielle. Elle possède l'un des plus grands gisements ⁷ de fer du monde (Briey) et les industries métallurgiques s'y sont largement développées.

Nancy est une magnifique ville d'université, d'industrie et de commerce. Elle a été très embellie au dix-huitième siècle. Le dernier souverain de la Lorraine, beau-père ⁸ du roi de France, voulut faire de sa capitale un petit Versailles.

Les verreries d'art ⁹ sont une des gloires et des richesses de

Nancy. Je n'ai pu résister au plaisir d'acheter quelques petits vases pour ma mère, ma sœur et Marguerite.

Édouard, plus pratique que moi, a choisi des macarons, autre spécialité de la ville.

« Vous vous embarrassez, m'a-t-il dit, d'un présent coûteux, ¹⁰ que vous pouvez briser ¹¹ en route. J'ai moins de

risque avec mes macarons et je cours la chance que ces dames les partagent ¹² avec moi. »

Peut-être irons-nous voir Domremy, à la limite de la Lorraine et de la Champagne. C'est le village natal de Jeanne d'Arc.

¹ general delivery. ² very. ³ are very well satisfied. ⁴ as men alone (*bachelors*). ⁵ have just crossed. ⁶ united. ⁷ deposits. ⁸ father-in-law. ⁹ artistic glasswares. ¹⁰ costly. ¹¹ break. ¹² share.

LESSON XXXVIII

144. Fractions. 1. The numerator is expressed by a cardinal, the denominator by an ordinal, as in English.

un cinquième [œsɛ̃kjɛm] one fifth
trois dixièmes [trwadizjɛm] three tenths

2. Special forms are:

un demi [dəmi]	} one half
une (la) moitié [mwatje]	
un tiers [tjɛ:r]	one third
un quart [ka:r]	one fourth

a. Demi (as adjective) comes before the noun, is joined to it by a hyphen, and is invariable. Elsewhere it agrees with the noun in gender.

Une demi-heure.	Half an hour.
Une heure et demie.	An hour and a half.

b. Moitié (as noun) is used where *the half of* is, or may be used in English.

La moitié de l'année. (The) half (of) the year.

145. Time of Day. The hours and fractions of hours are indicated as follows:

À quelle heure?	At what time (o'clock)?
Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est deux heures.	It is two o'clock.

Trois heures et demie.	Half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures (et) dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Quatre heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to four.
Trois heures cinquante-cinq.	Three fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (<i>noon</i>).
Il est minuit.	It is twelve o'clock (<i>night</i>).
À sept heures du matin.	At seven o'clock in the morning (7 : 00 A.M.).
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	About three o'clock.
À quatorze heures vingt (14 h. 20).	At two twenty in the afternoon (2 : 20 P.M.).

NOTE. — The twenty-four hour clock employed by the railroads is being adopted by other organizations such as the theaters, etc. The count begins at midnight: À 12 h. (heures) 30 = À midi et demi; À 20 h. 30 = À huit heures et demie du soir.

146. *Devoir, to owe, ought* (no preposition before following infinitive):

devoir	devant	<u>dû</u>	dois	dus
devrai	devais	avoir dû	dois	duisse
devrais	doive			

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
dois		doive
dois	dois	doives
doit		doive
devons	devons	devions
devez	devez	deviez
doivent		doivent

147. *Recevoir, to receive*:

recevoir	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
recevrai	recevais	avoir reçu	reçois	reçusse
recevrais	reçoive			

PRESENT INDICATIVE

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

reçois

reçois

reçoit

recevons

recevez

reçoivent

reçois

recevons

recevez

reçoive

reçoives

reçoive

recevions

receviez

reçoivent

VOCABULARY

avancer [avãse] to advance;
— **de dix minutes** be ten minutes fast (*watch*)

la ligne [lin] line

la malle [mal] trunk; **faire sa—**,
to pack his trunk

précis [presi] precise; **neuf heures**
—es exactly 9:00 o'clock

retarder [rɛtarde] to delay; — **de dix minutes** be ten minutes slow (*watch*)

subir [sybir] to undergo, take (*an examination*)

venir [vɛnir]: — **de** (+ *infin.*)
to have just (+ *verb*)

devoir [dɛvwa:r] to owe, ought, be, must (supposition)

Il me *doit* deux francs.

Il *devrait* me payer.

Il *aurait dû* me payer.

Il *doit* venir ce soir.

Il *devait* venir hier.

Il *doit* être malade.

Il *a dû* être malade.

He owes me two francs.

He ought to (should) pay me.

He ought to (should) have paid me.

He is to come this evening.

He was to come yesterday.

He must be ill.

He must have been ill.

EXERCISES

A. Georges vient de recevoir une lettre de son père. Il est nécessaire que celui-ci aille en Europe pour affaires. Georges doit l'accompagner. Il subira ses examens en automne, au mois d'octobre. Son père et lui doivent prendre le bateau à New York samedi prochain, le 11 juin, à dix heures et demie du matin.

Georges va prendre le train de huit heures cinquante-cinq, ce matin, pour aller chez lui. Il s'est levé à sept heures un quart. Il est en retard. Il aurait dû se lever à six heures

moins le quart. Jean est chez lui depuis une demi-heure afin de l'aider à faire ses malles.

JEAN. — Il faut vous dépêcher, Georges; il est huit heures dix. Nous devrions partir dans un quart d'heure. Quelle heure est-il à votre montre? La mienne retarde de dix minutes au moins.

GEORGES. — Ma montre avance un peu, mais il n'est que huit heures vingt. Si je ne peux pas prendre ce train-là, il y en a encore un autre vers midi et demi. Je n'ai rien à faire chez moi. Mon père a acheté les billets il y a quinze jours.

JEAN. — Quel bateau allez-vous prendre à New York? Vous savez que les bateaux de la ligne française partent tous les huit jours.

GEORGES. — Je crois que nous partirons par cette ligne-là parce que mon père m'a écrit que, si nous payions les billets en argent français, ils nous coûteraient environ 6125 francs chacun. Il a dû acheter des billets de première classe.

JEAN. — Je ne pourrais jamais payer un tel prix. Si je vais en France l'été prochain je prendrai un billet de troisième classe. . . . Voilà le taxi devant la porte. Il est neuf heures moins vingt-cinq précises. Nous devrions partir tout de suite.

B. *Written*: 1. Everybody is at the station in order to say "good-bye" to George. 2. The train should have arrived at eight forty-five in the morning, but it arrived only at five minutes after nine. 3. It will leave at a quarter after nine. 4. Robert has just arrived. 5. He went to bed last evening at a quarter to twelve, and he got up this morning at half-past eight.

ROBERT. — 6. I am glad that you haven't left yet, George. 7. My watch is a quarter of an hour slow. 8. Here are the ten dollars which I have owed you for so long a time.

9. I should have paid you a week ago. 10. You will need them when you are in France. 11. They say that living is dearer than in 1926, when my father was there. 12. It was the third time that he had visited Europe.

JOHN. — 13. I hope you haven't forgotten anything, George. 14. What time is it by (à) your watch? 15. The train is going to leave at ten minutes after nine, isn't it? 16. Trains wait for nobody. 17. You must hurry.

LUCY. — 18. You must be glad to make such a trip, George. 19. Think of us when you are in Paris. 20. Have a good time! Good-bye! (21. *And the train leaves at precisely twenty-five minutes after nine, half an hour late.*)

Supplementary Drill

C. *Translate into French the following expressions of time giving them in as many ways as possible:* (1) 7:00 A.M. (2) 8:45 A.M. (3) 9:30 A.M. (4) 10:40 A.M. (5) 11:15 A.M. (6) 11:45 A.M. (7) 12:00 (*noon*). (8) 1:00 P.M. (9) 4:28 P.M. (10) 8:00 P.M. (11) 11:45 P.M. (12) 12:00 (*night*).

(2) *Fill in the blanks with expressions of time, varying them as much as possible:* 1. Paul s'est levé ce matin à ——. 2. Il est en retard; il aurait dû se lever à ——. 3. Il a pris son café à ——. 4. Il va vite à l'école où il arrive à ——. 5. Il étudie sa leçon pendant ——. 6. Il entre dans la classe à ——. 7. À —— il va chez lui. 8. Il déjeune à ——. 9. Il reste chez lui ——. 10. Il part à ——. 11. Il se promène pendant ——. 12. À —— il joue au tennis. 13. Il dîne à ——. 14. Il dit « au revoir » à un ami qui part par le train de ——. 15. Il va au théâtre à ——. 16. Après le théâtre il entre dans un café où il reste ——. 17. Il va chez lui à ——. 18. Il se couche à ——.

D. *Oral:* 1. Here's the second letter which I have received to-day. 2. I shall receive a letter on Friday. 3. You ought to write to your mother on Sunday. 4. Our friends should have come yesterday at a quarter of ten. 5. At what time will they come? 6. They will come to-morrow at 10:10 A.M. 7. We lunch at

half-past twelve. 8. It is only 11:25. 9. We are going to dine at 6:15. 10. The train will leave at 8:30 P.M. (*R. R. time*). 11. I was to stay downtown half an hour. 12. I stayed there an hour and a half. 13. John took half of the money which was on the table. 14. Two-thirds of that money was mine. 15. He owes me 250 francs. 16. How old is John's father? 17. He must be very old. 18. He was born December 8, 1865.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA CHAMPAGNE

Reims, le 29 septembre.

C'est à bicyclette que nous faisons la Champagne. Nous sommes plus libres¹ pour le choix de nos itinéraires, et le pays, souvent plat,² — « champagne » vient du latin *campania*, « contrée de plaines » — se prête³ à nos courses.⁴ Nous n'aurions sans doute pas pu voyager ainsi avec les jeunes filles. Encore un avantage des excursions « entre hommes ».

Nous avons traversé la Champagne humide, très boisée,⁵ et la Champagne sèche. Celle-ci est le royaume de la craie,⁶ royaume nu⁷ et stérile, quand les engrais⁸ ne l'ont pas transformé et rendu productif. Nous voici au pied de la falaise⁹ qui sépare la Champagne de l'Île de France.¹⁰ C'est la zone riche, très propice à la culture de la vigne.

La ville de Reims est des plus intéressantes au point de vue historique. Vieille cité gauloise, elle fut chère aux Romains qui l'embellirent de monuments. Un arc de triomphe, la porte de Mars, est encore debout.

Mais c'est surtout la cathédrale qui nous intéresse. Même Édouard, qui déclare « ne pas aimer beaucoup les pierres », accorde son attention à ce sanctuaire national des Français.

Clovis se fit baptiser¹¹ au cinquième siècle dans l'église primitive. Après lui, presque tous les rois de France furent sacrés¹² à Reims. La « bonne Lorraine »,¹³ dont nous avons vu la maison natale à Domremy, tint à honneur¹⁴ d'y



LE SACRE DE CHARLES VII À REIMS
(Tableau de Lenepveu)

amener celui qu'elle appelait le « gentil ¹⁵ Dauphin » (Charles VII). La cathédrale, qui date du treizième siècle, est l'un des chefs d'œuvre de l'art gothique.

Nous allons bientôt quitter Reims. Hier, Édouard a fait emplette ¹⁶ de six bouteilles de champagne . . . en chocolat.¹⁷

Nous nous dirigerons vers Château-Thierry, la ville natale du grand fabuliste La Fontaine (1621–1695). Nous comptons y visiter le musée américain, sous la conduite d'une jeune compatriote qu'Édouard connaît déjà et qu'il dit fort aimable. Puis, nous irons voir le Bois de Belleau, où la brigade de marine américaine se couvrit de gloire en 1918.

¹ freer. ² flat. ³ lends itself. ⁴ trips. ⁵ wooded. ⁶ chalk. ⁷ bare. ⁸ fertilizers. ⁹ cliff. ¹⁰ the « département » which contains Paris. ¹¹ had himself baptized. ¹² crowned. ¹³ Joan of Arc. ¹⁴ considered it a point of honor. ¹⁵ gentle (usually nice). ¹⁶ purchased. ¹⁷ made of chocolate.

LESSON XXXIX

148. Imperfect Subjunctive of *donner, finir, vendre, avoir, and être* ¹:

1. (That) I gave, might give, etc.	2. (That) I finished, might finish, etc.	3. (That) I sold, might sell, etc.
<i>donn asse</i> [dɔnas]	<i>fin isse</i> [finis]	<i>vend isse</i> [vādis]
<i>donn asses</i> [dɔnas]	<i>fin isses</i> [finis]	<i>vend isses</i> [vādis]
<i>donn ât</i> [dɔna]	<i>fin ît</i> [fini]	<i>vend ît</i> — [vādi]
<i>donn assions</i> [dɔnasjɔ̃]	<i>fin issions</i> [finisjɔ̃]	<i>vend issions</i> [vādisjɔ̃]
<i>donn assiez</i> [dɔnasje]	<i>fin issiez</i> [finisje]	<i>vend issiez</i> [vādisje]
<i>donn assent</i> [dɔnas]	<i>fin issent</i> [finis]	<i>vend issent</i> [vādis]

4. (That) I had, might have, etc.			5. (That) I was, were, might be, etc.				
eusse	[ys]	eussions	[ysjõ]	fusse	[fys]	fussions	[fysjõ]
eusses	[ys]	eussiez	[ysje]	fusses	[fys]	fussiez	[fysje]
eût	[y]	eussent	[ys]	fût	[fy]	fussent	[fys]

¹ For use of the Subjunctive, see Lessons XXVI–XXVII; for formation, see § 111, 5.

149. Tense Sequence. Any other tense than the present or future (§ 103) in the governing clause regularly requires the imperfect subjunctive in the governed clause; so also for compound subjunctive tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb.¹

IMPF. Je désirais	} qu'il restât.	I was desiring him to remain.
P. DEF. Je désirai		I desired him to remain.
P. INDEF. J'ai désiré		I have desired him to remain.
CONDL. Je désirerais		I should desire him to remain.
PLUPF. J'avais désiré		I had desired him to remain.

Je regrettais qu'il *eût* parlé. I was sorry that he had spoken.

Je regrettais qu'il *fût* venu. I was sorry that he had come.

NOTE. — The imperfect subjunctive is of very limited use in the language of every day, being rarely employed except in the literary or elevated style.

150. Imperfect Subjunctive of Some Irregular Verbs (Reference List):

INF.	IMPF. SUBJ.	INF.	IMPF. SUBJ.
1. aller	allasse	14. naître	naquisse
2. boire	busse	15. ouvrir	ouvrisse
3. connaître	connusse	16. partir	partisse
4. croire	crusse	17. pleuvoir	(il) plût
5. devoir	duisse	18. pouvoir	pusse
6. dire	disse	19. prendre	pris
7. écrire	écrivisse	20. recevoir	reçusse
8. envoyer	envoyasse	21. rire	(risse)
9. faire	fisse	22. savoir	susse
10. falloir	(il) fallût	23. venir	vinsse
11. lire	lusse	24. voir	visse
12. mettre	misse	25. vouloir	voulusse
13. mourir	mourusse		

151. *Ouvrir, to open:*

ouvrir	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	ouvris
ouvrirai	ouvrAIS	avoir ouvert	ouvre	ouvrisse
ouvrirais	ouvre			

¹ For use of simple and compound tenses, see § 103, a.

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
ouvre		ouvre
ouvres	ouvre	ouvres
ouvre		ouvre
ouvrons	ouvrons	ouvrons
ouvrez	ouvrez	ouvriez
ouvrent		ouvrent

152. *Rire, to laugh:*

rire	riant	ri	ris	ris
rirai	riais	avoir ri	ris	risse
rirais	rie			

PRESENT INDICATIVE	IMPERATIVE	PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
ris		rie
ris	ris	ries
rit		rie
rions	rions	riions
riez	riez	riiez
rient		rient

VOCABULARY

ancien [ãsjẽ], ancienne [ãsjen] old, former	Guillaume [gijo:m] William
autrement [otrãmã] otherwise, in a different manner	l'idée [ide] <i>f.</i> idea
devenir [dəvni:r] to become (conjugated like venir)	l'imparfait [ẽparfẽ] <i>m.</i> imperfect
l'éducation [edykasjõ] <i>f.</i> educa- tion	la langue [lã:g] tongue, language
élever [elve] to bring up, raise	malheureusement [malœrø:z- mã] unfortunately
l'étude [etyd] <i>f.</i> study	moderne [mødern] modern
le football [futbal] football	natal [natal] native
Frédéric [frederik] Frederick	perdre [pædr] to lose
le grand-père [grãpẽ:r] grand- father	quitter [kite] to leave, quit
	le sort [sɔ:r] fate
	le sujet [syʒẽ] subject
	l'usine [yzin] <i>f.</i> factory

EXERCISES

A. Le professeur a voulu que Jean écrivît une petite histoire en employant autant que possible l'imparfait du sub-

jonctif. Jean a pris comme sujet la vie de son grand-père, Frédéric Bernard.

Frédéric naquit en 1862. Sa mère mourut en 1871 et son père en 1889. Frédéric était heureux avant la mort de son père. Celui-ci voulait que son fils fût élevé autrement que lui-même, qu'il eût une bonne éducation, qu'il allât à l'Université et qu'il apprît plusieurs langues modernes.

Malheureusement, un peu avant sa mort, son père perdit tout son argent. Il fallut que Frédéric quittât sa ville natale et qu'il allât demeurer chez son oncle et sa tante. Celle-ci désirait qu'il fît ses études à l'Université, mais celui-là voulait qu'il entrât dans son usine. Quoique Frédéric eût mieux aimé s'en aller, il lui fallut rester chez son oncle. Celui-ci était fâché (*angry*) même à l'idée que Frédéric pût désirer faire autre chose. Il ne voulait pas que ses anciens amis vinssent le voir; et, afin que son neveu fût content de son sort, il lui donnait beaucoup d'argent.

Quoique Frédéric devînt très riche, il regretta toujours de n'avoir pu finir ses études.

B. Translate, using the past definite and the imperfect subjunctive when possible: 1. Frederick Bernard was happy when he was young although he had lost his mother at the age of nine years. 2. His father wanted him to receive a good education. 3. Unfortunately, his father died when Frederick was only seventeen years old, and before he could finish his studies. 4. It was necessary for him to work in a factory. 5. When, later in life, he became rich, he desired that his son, William, should receive the best education possible. 6. Before the little boy was six years old, he sent him to school. 7. He gave him many beautiful books in order that he should learn to read quickly. 8. He was angry that William did not want to study, that he preferred to play tennis and football. 9. Before he was eighteen years old, William went to the University. 10. Although he made

many friends there he was never satisfied. 11. He liked business, and he regretted always that he could not work in his father's factory.

Supplementary Drill

C. *Change the verb of the principal clause to the past definite with the resultant change in the subordinate clause:* 1. Elle désire qu'il vienne avec nous. 2. Frédéric est content chez lui bien qu'il n'y voie personne. 3. Il part avant qu'ils puissent venir. 4. Marie ne veut pas qu'on lise les lettres. 5. Son oncle désire qu'ils vendent la maison. 6. Marie regrette qu'on vende la maison. 7. Le professeur est fâché (*angry*) qu'il n'y ait que cinq élèves dans la classe. 8. Quoiqu'elle aime son père, elle part. 9. L'un veut qu'elle reste, l'autre veut qu'elle parte. 10. Elle envoie la boîte à Robert afin qu'il l'ouvre tout de suite. 11. Elle est contente qu'il reçoive la boîte. 12. Elle est contente qu'il ait reçu la boîte. 13. Elle regrette qu'il ne vienne pas. 14. Elle regrette qu'il ne soit pas venu. 15. Avant qu'il puisse partir on l'arrête. 16. Il est nécessaire qu'ils meurent. 17. Il ne veut pas qu'on rie de son fils. 18. Il faut qu'il écrive une lettre.

D. *Translate, using the past definite when possible:* 1. Lucy is pleased that George is finishing the book. 2. She is pleased that he has finished it. 3. She was pleased that he was finishing it. 4. She was pleased that he had finished it. 5. I am sorry that he goes to her house. 6. I am sorry that he went to her house. 7. I was sorry that he was going to her house. 8. I was sorry that he had gone to her house. 9. Ernest wants his father to sell his farm. 10. He wanted his father to sell it. 11. It isn't necessary for him to come. 12. It wasn't necessary for him to come. 13. I left before he arrived.

E. *Rapid reading:*

LA RÉGION DU NORD

Lille, le 6 octobre.

Nous nous sommes accordé ¹ à Paris quelques jours d'un repos bien gagné. Alice et Marguerite ont saisi l'occasion pour exhiber ² leurs toilettes.

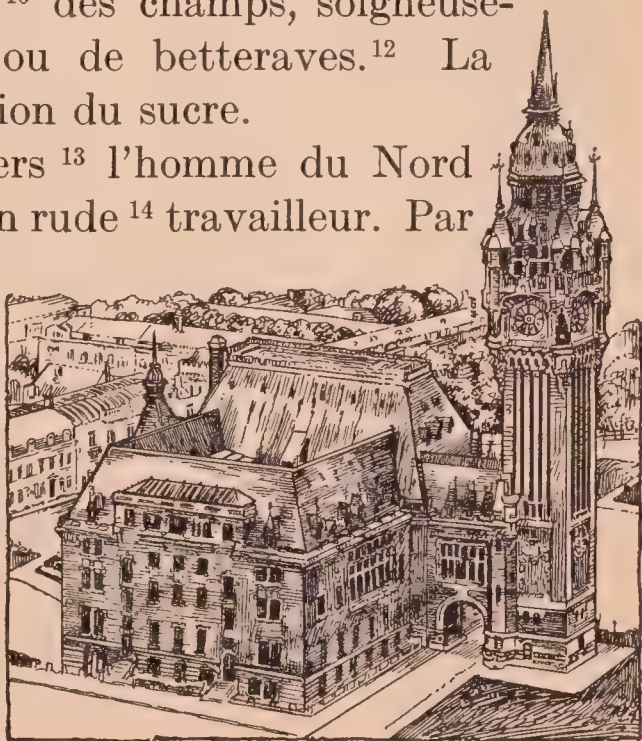
Mais nous ne pouvions négliger dans notre tour de France, déjà incomplet, la région du Nord, l'une des plus riches et des plus actives. Édouard et moi, nous avons donc refait nos valises.

Le train nous a emportés³ à vive allure⁴ à travers un pays plat, fertile ou rendu tel,⁵ dont on obtient le maximum de rendement.⁶ Pas un centimètre⁷ de terrain n'est laissé en friche.⁸ Partout, nous apercevions des prés d'élevage⁹ avec leur nombreux bétail,¹⁰ des champs, soigneusement tenus,¹¹ de céréales ou de betteraves.¹² La betterave sert à la fabrication du sucre.

Édouard admire volontiers¹³ l'homme du Nord qui, ouvrier ou paysan, est un rude¹⁴ travailleur. Par contre, le ciel gris, souvent pluvieux, ne plaît guère à mon ami.

« Et voilà la France ensoleillée »¹⁵ s'est-il écrié¹⁶ pendant une bonne averse.¹⁷

Je lui ai rappelé que dans le sud de la France, nous avons souvent joui d'un ciel bleu.



L'Hôtel de Ville, Calais

D'ailleurs, ai-je ajouté, c'est à tort¹⁸ que nos soldats ont rendu populaire l'expression « la France ensoleillée ». Jamais les Français n'ont ainsi baptisé leur pays. Eux, ils parlent de la « douce »¹⁹ ou de la « belle »²⁰ France.

Nous avons pris contact avec le bassin houiller²¹ du Pas-de-Calais, « le pays noir », comme on l'appelle. Nous sommes même descendus dans une mine.

Puis, nous nous sommes tournés vers Cambrai, ville détruite pendant la guerre et reconstruite en partie par des architectes américains, sur des plans américains. Dans certains quartiers, il nous a semblé retrouver un coin de chez nous.

À Cambrai, nous avons acheté d'excellents bonbons, qu'on nomme des « bêtises ».²²

« Avec de telles bêtises, dit Édouard, en riant, on est certain d'être partout bien accueilli. »²³

Depuis avant-hier,²⁴ nous visitons Lille, la métropole de toute la région, l'une des plus peuplées du monde. Lille concentre beaucoup d'industries, en premier lieu celles de la toile²⁵ et du coton.

Nous sommes tentés de pousser jusqu'à Calais, où nous embarquerions pour aller passer à Londres une fin de semaine. C'est de Calais à Douvres que la distance est la plus courte entre la France et l'Angleterre. Et l'on parle sérieusement de percer un tunnel sous le détroit²⁶ du Pas-de-Calais, qui mesure trente kilomètres environ.

Post-scriptum:

Voici le dernier feuillet de mon journal que vous recevrez. Je vous entends d'ici pousser²⁷ un « ouf »²⁸ de soulagement.²⁹ Si, par hasard, vous désiriez plus de détails, adressez-vous à Alice, vous en aurez plus que vous ne voudrez. Nous partons dans quatre jours pour l'Amérique. À bientôt.³⁰

Cordialement,
ERNEST.

¹ allowed. ² to display. ³ carried us along. ⁴ rapid rate. ⁵ made so. ⁶ produce. ⁷ centimeter = *about* $\frac{2}{5}$ of an inch. ⁸ waste land. ⁹ pastures. ¹⁰ cattle. ¹¹ kept. ¹² beets. ¹³ freely. ¹⁴ hard. ¹⁵ sunny. ¹⁶ cried. ¹⁷ shower. ¹⁸ wrongly. ¹⁹ "sweet." ²⁰ "fair." ²¹ coal fields. ²² "foolishness." ²³ heartily welcomed. ²⁴ day before yesterday. ²⁵ linen. ²⁶ strait. ²⁷ utter. ²⁸ "whew!" ²⁹ relief. ³⁰ "I'll see you soon."

REVIEW LESSON No. 5 (XXX-XXXIX)

(1) *Fill in the blanks using the words in parenthesis:* 1. (Canada) — est un grand pays. 2. (in the United States) Nous demeurons — depuis onze ans. 3. (to France) Ils vont —. 4. (from Italy) Elle est venue —. 5. (silk dresses) Il vend —. 6. (whose?

his) — est ce pardessus? Il est —. 7. (his) J'ai besoin de mon argent et —. 8. (this one, mine; that one, his) Voici deux cuillers; — est —; — est —. 9. (these, ours; those, theirs) À qui sont ces gâteaux? — sont —; — sont —. 10. (that) Que veut dire —? 11. (those) Nos fleurs et — de sa mère. 12. (the latter, the former) Il a deux sœurs, Marguerite et Suzanne; — est plus jolie que —. 13. (who) Je connais l'homme — l'a vue. 14. (whom) Je connais l'homme — Jean a vu. 15. (to whom) Nous connaissons la jeune fille — il a écrit. 16. (with whom) — est-elle venue? 17. (of which) J'ai vu l'université — vous parlez. 18. (whose) Ils connaissent l'homme — vous avez vu l'oncle. 19. (who, *aunt*) La tante de mon ami — est malade. 20. (of whom? of what?) — et — parlez-vous? 21. (what?) — est son nom? 22. (who) Je ne sais pas — a fait cela. 23. (what) Je ne sais pas — a fait cela. 24. (what) Je ne sais pas — vous dites. 25. (which one?) Voici deux parapluies; — est le meilleur? 26. (to which ones?) — de vos frères écrivez-vous? 27. (what? *long form*) — vous avez vu? 28. (who? *long form*) — vous avez vu? 29. (something) J'ai entendu — intéressant. 30. (nothing) Il — a — pris. 31. (no one) Il — a parlé à —. 32. (only) Il — a vu — quelques phrases. 33. (some) Prenez — de ces pommes. 34. (in) Je reste ici — hiver et — printemps. 35. (ought) Il — étudier beaucoup. 36. (ought to have) Il — étudier hier. 37. (must) Il — être fatigué maintenant. 38. (must have) Il — être fatigué hier.

(2) *Read or write out in French:* (1) 8, les 8 hommes, les 8 femmes, le 8 juin. (2) 200 francs, 201 francs, 81 francs, 285 francs. (3) 100 francs, 200 francs, 1000 francs, 1,000,000 francs. (4) 5,199,765. (5) Il paie l'automobile 31,180 francs. (6) Louis XIV est né le 5 septembre 1638; il est mort le 1^{er} septembre 1715. (7) Jean a lu *half* de la leçon. (8) Il a étudié une *half* heure. (9) Il a étudié 1 heure et *a half*. (10) Time: (A.M.) 8 : 30, 8 : 45, 9 : 15, 9 : 25, 9 : 40; (P.M.) 2 : 30, 3 : 25, 10 : 35.

(3) *Make sentences with the following expressions:* 1. veuillez. 2. être égal. 3. penser de. 4. penser à. 5. bien entendu! 6. tous les deux. 7. un autre. 8. encore un. 9. depuis. 10. d'aujourd-

d'hui en huit. 11. il y a quinze jours. 12. vouloir dire. 13. jouer à. 14. voyons.

(4) *Translate:* 1. Have you visited Spain? 2. They have been in France for eight months. 3. The king of Spain will come to England. 4. I leave to-day for Europe. 5. Whose are these gloves? They are hers. 6. I need your watch and his. 7. Here are two glasses; this one is his; that one is mine. 8. Whose are these boxes? These are yours; those are theirs. 9. (*long form*) What is this? 10. Your plates and my aunt's. 11. She has two brothers, James and William; the latter is larger than the former. 12. I used to know the man whom you saw. 13. I know the man who saw you. 14. To whose home did he go? 15. I read the letter of which he was speaking. 16. They know the pupil whose father you saw. 17. I saw the father of the girl, who (*father*) is sick. 18. You see what I wrote. 19. Of what are you talking? 20. What is the price of this? 21. Everyone knows what did that. 22. They know who did this. 23. They know what you did. 24. Here are two lists; which is the longer? 25. To which ones of your sisters are you writing? 26. (*long form*) Whom did you send? 27. (*long form*) What did you send? 28. (*long form*) Who sent you? 29. She is receiving something pretty. 30. He never came. 31. No one came. 32. I ate only a few bananas. 33. Have you read some of these books? 34. I cannot study in spring and summer. 35. You ought to study more. 36. You ought to have studied more this morning. 37. You must be tired now. 38. You must have been tired yesterday. 39. He paid 3125 francs for his ticket. 40. He was born December 11, 1891; he died February 18, 1928. 41. He was only 37 years old. 42. Please give me one half of that apple. 43. He bought half a pound of butter. 44. I bought a pound and a half. 45. (A.M.) 9:45, 10:15, 10:30, 10:50, noon; (P.M.) 1:48, 3:10, 4:30, 11:45, midnight

LESSON XL

A. Table of Principal Parts

INFIN. PRES. PART. PAST PART. PRES. IND. PAST DEF.

Regular Verbs

1. donner (153)	donnant	donné	donne	donnai
2. finir (153)	finissant	fini	finis	finis
3. vendre (153, 210)	vendant	vendu	vends	vendis

Irregular Verbs

4. aller (160)	allant	allé	vais	allai
5. avoir (154)	ayant	eu	ai	eus
6. boire (181)	buvant	bu	bois	bus
7. connaître (188)	connaissant	connu	connais	connus
8. croire (191)	croyant	cru	crois	crus
9. devoir (214)	devant	dû	dois	dus
10. dire (193)	disant	dit	dis	dis
11. écrire (194)	écrivant	écrit	écris	écrivis
12. envoyer (161)	envoyant	envoyé	envoie	envoyai
13. être (154)	étant	été	suis	fus
14. faire (195)	faisant	fait	fais	fis
15. falloir (218)	—	fallu	(il) faut	(il) fallut
16. lire (197)	lisant	lu	lis	lus
17. mettre (198)	mettant	mis	mets	mis
18. mourir (174)	mourant	mort	meurs	mourus
19. naître (200)	naissant	né	nais	naquis
20. ouvrir (176)	ouvrant	ouvert	ouvre	ouvris
21. partir (166)	partant	parti	pars	partis
22. pleuvoir (220)	pleuvant	plu	(il) pleut	(il) plut
23. pouvoir (221)	pouvant	pu	peux, puis	pus
24. prendre (202)	prenant	pris	prends	pris
25. recevoir (213)	recevant	reçu	reçois	reçus
26. rire (204)	riant	ri	ris	ris
27. savoir (222)	sachant	su	sais	sus
28. venir (178)	venant	venu	viens	vins
29. voir (224)	voyant	vu	vois	vis
30. vouloir (225)	voulant	voulu	veux	voulus

B. Questions for Practice

(Review completely Lesson XXIX on **Tense Formation** with "Remarks.")

1. (a) The only irregular verbs in the entire first conjugation are in the above list. Which are they?

(b) Which are the irregular **-ir** verbs?

2. *Present Indicative.* (a) Which verbs do not end in **-s** in the first person singular?

(b) The first person plural of which verbs may not be formed from the present participle? Which second person plurals?

3. *Past Participle.* Make columns of those with similar endings.

(a) Which do not end in **-u**?

(b) Most of the **-u** verbs come from infinitives in **-oir**; which do not?

4. *Past Definite.* Make columns of the first person singular of those with similar endings. (a) Most of them end in **-us** or **-is**. Which do not?

(b) Most of the past definite endings resemble closely the past participle. Which do not?

5. *Future.* Make two columns, one regular (*from infinitive*), the other irregular. (a) How do they compare in numbers?

(b) How many **-oir** verbs are regular?

(c) Which **-er** and **-ir** verbs are irregular?

6. *Present Subjunctive.* Make three columns; those which may be formed from: (a) the present participle,

(b) the third person plural present indicative, but not from the present participle,

(c) neither of the above.

C. Sentences for Practice

(1) Give the following sentences in the (a) present indicative, (b) past indefinite, (c) future: 1. Ils allèrent en France. 2. Ils eurent cent francs. 3. Nous bûmes du café. 4. Elle connut le professeur. 5. Je crus ces mots. 6. Ils me durent vingt-cinq francs. 7. Vous dites la vérité. 8. Elle écrivit une lettre. 9. Ils envoy-

èrent un cadeau. 10. Vous fûtes mon ami. 11. Ils firent leurs malles. 12. Il fallut le faire. 13. Elle lut la lettre. 14. Je mis la boîte sur la table. 15. Elles moururent. 16. Il naquit. 17. Il ouvrit le livre. 18. Je partis tout de suite. 19. Il plut beaucoup. 20. Elle put parler français. 21. Ils prirent l'argent. 22. Elles reçurent la lettre. 23. Ils rirent un peu. 24. Il sut la vérité. 25. Elles vinrent à la maison. 26. Ils virent leur cousin. 27. Il voulut vous voir.

(2) *Make complete sentences with the first person singular present subjunctive of the thirty verbs in Table A with the exception of falloir, naître, and pleuvoir.* The following expressions may be used in forming the sentences:

falloir	être fâché	afin que
être nécessaire	être content	pour que
regretter	être heureux	avant que
désirer	être charmé	bien que
vouloir	être enchanté	quoique

READING SELECTIONS

WITH EXERCISES ON REGULAR AND IRREGULAR VERBS

XLI. La Théière du Matelot

(The sections indicated give the forms of the irregular verbs.)

A. Un matelot, à bord d'un vaisseau, ayant ¹ eu la maladresse de laisser tomber par-dessus le bord une théière d'argent, alla ² trouver le capitaine et lui dit ³: « Peut-on ⁴ dire ³ d'une chose, qu'elle est ⁵ perdue, ⁶ lorsqu'on sait ⁷ où elle est? ⁵ — Non, mon ami. — En ce cas, vous n'avez ¹ rien à craindre ⁸ pour votre théière, car je sais ⁷ qu'elle est ⁵ au fond de la mer. »

¹ § 154.

³ § 193.

⁵ § 154.

⁷ § 222.

² § 160.

⁴ § 221.

⁶ § 210.

⁸ § 190.

B. *Complete the following by conjugating the tense in full, repeating also the remainder of the expression along with the verb:* 1. Il alla trouver le capitaine. 2. Il lui dit. 3. Peut-il dire? 4. Il sait où elle est. 5. Elle est perdue. 6. Vous n'avez rien à craindre.

C. *Oral:* 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Où étaient ces personnes? 3. Qu'avait fait le matelot? 4. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'une théière? 5. En quoi était cette théière? 6. À qui était-elle? 7. Où était-elle tombée? 8. Savait-on où elle était? 9. Était-elle alors vraiment perdue? 10. Mais quel était l'argument du matelot?

D. 1. The sailor was so clumsy as to let the teapot fall. 2. If you let a silver teapot fall into the sea, it is lost. 3. Go to the captain. 4. I went to the captain. 5. Tell him that

the teapot is not lost. 6. The captain will say: "My good fellow, did you drop my silver teapot into the sea?" 7. When we are on board a ship we do not let teapots fall into the sea. 8. Where is the teapot? 9. I do not know where it is. 10. No one finds teapots at the bottom of the sea.

XLII. L'Arabe et les Perles

A. Un Arabe, égaré dans le désert, n'avait ¹ pas mangé ² depuis deux jours, et se voyait ³ menacé ⁴ de mourir ⁵ de faim. En passant près d'un de ces puits où les caravanes viennent ⁶ abreuver leurs chameaux, il voit ³ sur le sable un petit sac de cuir. Il le ramasse et le tâte. « Allah soit ⁷ béni ⁸! dit-il ⁹; ce sont, ⁷ je crois, ¹⁰ des dattes ou des noisettes. » Plein de cette douce espérance, il se hâte d'ouvrir ¹¹ le sac; mais, à la vue de ce qu'il contient ¹²: « Hélas! s'écrie-t-il douloureusement, ce ne sont ⁷ que des perles! »

¹ § 154.

⁴ § 156.

⁷ § 154.

⁹ § 193.

¹¹ § 176.

² § 156.

⁵ § 174.

⁸ § 163.

¹⁰ § 191.

¹² § 177.

³ § 224.

⁶ § 178.

B. *Complete the following, as in the preceding exercise:* 1. Il n'avait pas mangé. 2. Il se voyait menacé. 3. Ils viennent. 4. Il voit son sac. 5. Il le tâte. 6. Qu'il soit béni! 7. Je le crois. 8. Il se hâte d'ouvrir le sac. 9. Il s'écria.

Relate the story in the first person singular, thus: « Égaré dans le désert, je n'avais pas », etc.

C. *Oral:* 1. Où demeurent les Arabes? 2. Où est l'Arabie? 3. Où s'était égaré l'Arabe? 4. Est-ce qu'il y a beaucoup de déserts dans ce pays? 5. Dans quel état se trouvait l'Arabe? 6. Par où passait-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il a vu? 8. Qu'est-ce qu'il y avait dans le sac? 9. Était-il content de trouver les perles? 10. Est-ce que les perles ne sont pas des choses précieuses? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'il espérait trouver dans le sac? 12. Pourquoi préférerait-il des noisettes à des perles? 13. Lesquelles préféreriez-vous maintenant?

D. 1. The Arab has lost his way. 2. If we had not eaten for two days, we should be hungry. 3. We saw ourselves threatened with starvation. 4. The caravans will come to water their camels at the well. 5. We shall water our camels. 6. If I saw pearls on the sand, I should pick them up. 7. He felt the dates in the bag. 8. If there had been hazelnuts in the leathern bag, he would have hastened to open it. 9. But the bag did not contain nuts, it contained only pearls. 10. At the sight of that he exclaimed: "I shall die of hunger."

XLIII. Le Paysan et les Épis de Blé

A. Un paysan accompagné de son fils, le petit Auguste, alla ¹ un jour visiter ses champs pour voir ² dans quel état était ³ son blé. Ils arrivèrent à un champ où certains épis se tenaient ⁴ droits tandis que d'autres étaient ³ lourdement inclinés vers la terre. Auguste s'écria: « Quel dommage que ces épis soient ³ si courbés! Combien je préfère ⁵ ceux-là qui sont ³ vigoureux et droits. » Le père prit ⁶ deux des épis, les roula entre ses doigts pour faire ⁷ sortir ⁸ le grain, et répondit ⁹: « Regarde un peu mon enfant; ces épis courbés sont ³ pleins du meilleur blé, car c'est ³ le poids qui fait ⁷ pencher leur tête, tandis que ceux qui la relèvent ¹⁰ si fièrement sont ³ vides et ne valent ¹¹ rien. »

¹ § 160.

⁴ § 177.

⁶ § 202.

⁸ § 166.

¹⁰ § 158.

² § 224.

⁵ § 158.

⁷ § 195.

⁹ § 210.

¹¹ § 223.

³ § 154.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il alla visiter ses champs. 2. Ils arrivèrent à un champ. 3. Ils se tenaient droits. 4. Il s'écria. 5. Quel dommage qu'ils soient si courbés! 6. Je préfère ceux-là. 7. Il en prit deux. 8. Il fait pencher leur tête. 9. Ils ne valent rien.

Give the present indicative in full of: 1. Alla. 2. Se tenaient. 3. Prit. 4. Fait. 5. Valent.

Relate the story, substituting the past indefinite for the past definite, thus: « Un paysan. . . est allé visiter », etc.

C. *Oral*: 1. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 2. Où ce paysan est-il allé? 3. Est-ce qu'il était seul? 4. Qui est allé avec lui? 5. Pourquoi sont-ils allés aux champs? 6. Comment se tenaient certains épis dans les champs qu'ils ont visités? 7. Tous les épis se tenaient-ils droits? 8. Comment les autres se tenaient-ils? 9. Quels épis préférait le petit Auguste? 10. Qu'est-ce qu'il s'est écrié? 11. Lesquels préférez-vous? 12. Pourquoi les préférez-vous? 13. Lesquels des épis étaient courbés? 14. Qu'est-ce qui leur faisait pencher la tête? 15. Pourquoi les autres se tenaient-ils si droits? 16. Lesquels valent le plus? 17. Comment le père a-t-il démontré cela à son fils? 18. Les personnes fières valent-elles ordinairement grand'chose? 19. Préférez-vous les personnes modestes?

D. 1. I am going to see the fields. 2. If you were to go and visit the fields, in what condition would you find the wheat? 3. We reach the field where the wheat is standing upright. 4. Some of the ears of wheat are heavily weighted. 5. Why do you exclaim: "What a pity they are so bent down!" 6. You prefer those that are standing upright, do you? 7. Hold yourself upright. 8. Take two ears of wheat. 9. Rub the grain out. 10. The best wheat is not in the upright ears. 11. The full ears are bent, while the empty ears are upright. 12. Just look, my boy, the upright ears are empty. 13. Full heads are worth a great deal, but empty heads are worth nothing. 14. Do you not observe the same thing amongst men as among the ears of wheat?

Use either the past definite or the past indefinite for the narrative tenses of the following:

E. Little Augustus went one day to the fields. He went with his father who was going to see whether his wheat was

ripe. They arrived at a wheat field. Augustus observed that certain ears of wheat were bent down towards the earth. He observed also that others held themselves upright. He said to his father: "Look at those ears of wheat. What a pity they are so bent down! I prefer those which hold themselves upright." His father wished to teach him a lesson. He took two of the ears of wheat and rolled them between his fingers. The one was empty and was worth nothing. The other was full of good wheat. Then he said: "Look, my boy, this ear which raised its head so proudly was almost empty. On the contrary, this other which was so bent down was full of the best grain. We observe the same thing amongst men. Those who are proud have an (the) empty head. They are worth nothing. On the contrary, those who are modest and humble are generally the best."

XLIV. Le Trésor du Laboureur

A. Un laboureur étant sur le point de mourir,¹ et voulant ² donner à ses enfants une dernière preuve de sa tendresse, les fit ³ venir ⁴ auprès de lui, et leur dit ⁵: « Mes enfants, après moi vous aurez le champ que mon père a possédé,⁶ le champ qui m'a servi ⁷ à élever ⁸ et à nourrir ma famille. Cherchez bien dans ce champ, et vous trouverez un trésor. »

Les enfants, après la mort de leur père, se mirent ⁹ à retourner le champ en tous sens, bêchant, labourant la terre. Ils n'y trouvèrent ni or ni argent; mais la terre bien remuée, bien labourée, produisit ¹⁰ une moisson abondante. Le sage vieillard ne les avait pas trompés; il leur avait enseigné que le travail est un trésor.

¹ § 174.

³ § 195.

⁵ § 193.

⁷ § 166.

⁹ § 198.

² § 225.

⁴ § 178.

⁶ § 158.

⁸ § 158.

¹⁰ § 185.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il les fit venir auprès de lui. 2. Ils se mirent à retourner le champ. 3. Il produisit une moisson. 4. Il ne les avait pas trompés.

Give the future and the past definite in full of: 1. Mourir. 2. Voulant. 3. Fit. 4. Venir. 5. Dit. 6. Servir.

C. *Oral:* 1. De quelles personnes parle l'histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce (que c'est) qu'un laboureur? 3. Ce laboureur-ci était-il un jeune homme? 4. Dans quel état se trouvait-il? 5. Qu'est-ce qu'il allait laisser à ses enfants? 6. Avait-il acheté ce champ? 7. Était-ce un bon champ? 8. Quel conseil le laboureur a-t-il donné à ses enfants? 9. Ont-ils bien cherché? 10. Est-ce qu'ils y ont trouvé de l'or? 11. Leur père les avait-il trompés, alors? 12. Quel trésor ont-ils trouvé? 13. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. The father gave his children a proof of his love. 2. He called his children into his presence. 3. The children will own the field after the father. 4. The children dug up and plowed the field. 5. Stir the land, and it will produce a harvest. 6. If you plow this field, you will find a treasure. 7. It will not be silver or gold, but it will be a good harvest. 8. Your father is not deceiving you, he is teaching you a good lesson.

E. A husbandman, who was at the point of death, wished to teach his children that labor is a treasure. Calling his children into his presence, he told them that they would have the field which his father had owned. It was a good field, and it had fed his father and his father's family. If they would seek in it, they would find a treasure there. After the old man's death, the children dug everywhere in the field, but they found no treasure. There was no gold or silver, but they stirred the land so well that they had an abundant harvest. They had not been deceived. Their father had taught them a good lesson.

XLV. Louis XIV et Jean Bart

A. Louis XIV, traversant avec sa cour la galerie de Versailles, aperçoit ¹ Jean Bart fumant sa pipe dans l'embrasement

d'une fenêtre ouverte²; il le fait³ appeler,⁴ et lui dit⁵ d'un ton affectueux: « Jean Bart, je viens⁶ de vous nommer chef d'escadre. — Vous avez bien fait,³ sire, répondit⁷ le marin en continuant de fumer tranquillement sa pipe. » Cette brusque réponse ayant excité parmi les sots courtisans un grand éclat de rire: « Vous vous trompez, messieurs, leur dit⁵ gravement le roi, cette réponse est celle d'un homme qui sent⁸ ce qu'il vaut,⁹ et qui compte m'en donner bientôt de nouvelles preuves. Sans doute, Jean Bart ne parle pas comme vous; mais qui de vous peut¹⁰ faire³ ce que fait³ Jean Bart? »

¹ § 213.³ § 195.⁵ § 193.⁷ § 210.⁹ § 223.² § 176.⁴ § 158.⁶ § 178.⁸ § 166.¹⁰ § 221.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il aperçoit Jean Bart. 2. Il le fait appeler. 3. Je viens de le nommer. 4. Vous avez bien fait. 5. Vous vous trompez. 6. Il sent ce qu'il vaut. 7. Il ne parle pas comme les autres. 8. Je ne peux faire ce que fait Jean Bart. 9. Il continue de fumer tranquillement. 10. Il leur dit gravement. 11. Comptez-vous donner de nouvelles preuves?

Give the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive of:

1. Aperçoit. 2. Fait. 3. Dit. 4. Viens. 5. Sent. 6. Nomme. 7. Répondit. 8. Vaut. 9. Appelle. 10. Permet. 11. Montre. 12. Continuant.

C. *Oral:* 1. Qui était Louis XIV? 2. Où est Versailles? 3. Qu'est-ce que c'était autrefois? 4. Quel est l'autre personnage de notre histoire? 5. Quelle était sa profession? 6. Était-il, ce jour-là, à bord de son vaisseau? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il faisait qui montrait qu'il n'était pas courtisan? 8. De quelle façon le roi a-t-il montré qu'il n'en était pas mécontent? 9. Quelle sorte de réponse Jean Bart a-t-il faite au roi? 10. Quelle impression a-t-elle faite sur les courtisans? 11. Quelle en était l'opinion du roi? 12. Pourquoi était-il permis à Jean Bart, et non pas aux courtisans, de faire une brusque réponse?

D. 1. The king sends for Jean Bart. 2. I shall call him. 3. We have just called Jean Bart. 4. The king had just appointed him rear admiral. 5. A great outburst of laughter was excited by Jean Bart's blunt answer. 6. The king did not appoint the silly courtiers rear admirals. 7. We are mistaken; it is not a blunt answer. 8. Do not make a mistake. 9. The silly courtiers did not make blunt answers, because they did not feel their own worth. 10. Jean Bart hopes soon to give the king new proofs of his worth. 11. We cannot do what Jean Bart did.

E. Jean Bart was coolly smoking his pipe in the embrasure of a window in the palace (*château*) of Versailles, as the king, accompanied by his courtiers, was passing through the great gallery. The king sent for the brave sailor, and told him that he had just been appointed rear admiral. The sailor's blunt reply: "You have done well, sire," caused a burst of laughter among those who were with the king. But Louis knew that it was the reply of a man who would soon give proofs of his worth. Jean Bart did not talk like a courtier, but he did what courtiers could not do. At that time Jean Bart was already forty-one years old and it was late for him (*pour qu'il*) to change the habits of his youth.

XLVI. La Fourmi et le Brin d'Herbe

A. J'ai vu ¹ une petite fourmi qui allait ² çà et là cherchant fortune. Elle a rencontré sur son chemin un brin d'herbe qu'elle voudrait ³ bien emporter; mais comment faire ⁴? Il est si gros, et elle est si faible. Alors elle est montée sur un caillou, du haut duquel elle regarde la campagne, comme du haut d'une tour. Elle regarde, elle regarde; enfin elle a aperçu ⁵ deux de ses compagnes qui passent par là, et elle court ⁶ à elles. Elle se frotte le nez contre leur nez pour leur dire ⁷: « Venez ⁸ vite avec moi; il y a par là quelque chose de bon! » Les trois fourmis se précipitent vers le brin d'herbe et

le saisissent. Ce que l'une ne pouvait ⁹ faire,⁴ les trois le font ⁴ aisément, et elles emportent en triomphe le brin devenu ¹⁰ léger pour elles.

¹ § 224.

³ § 225.

⁵ § 213.

⁷ § 193.

⁹ § 221.

² § 160.

⁴ § 195.

⁶ § 164.

⁸ § 178.

¹⁰ § 178.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Elle allait çà et là. 2. Elle voudrait bien l'emporter. 3. Elle est montée. 4. Elle court à elles. 5. Elle se frotte le nez. 6. Venez. 7. Elles se précipitent. 8. Elles le saisissent. 9. Elle ne pouvait pas le faire. 10. Elles le font aisément.

Give in full the past definite of: 1. Vu. 2. Rencontré. 3. Regardé. 4. Aperçu. 5. Court. 6. Se précipitent. 7. Font.

Beginning at the second sentence, relate the story in the past definite, thus: « Elle rencontra », etc.

C. *Oral:* 1. De quel insecte parle-t-on ici? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'elle faisait? 3. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a rencontré sur son chemin? 4. Le brin d'herbe était-il gros ou petit? 5. Et la fourmi était-elle forte ou faible? 6. Qu'est-ce que la fourmi aurait voulu faire? 7. Est-ce qu'elle pouvait le faire toute seule? 8. Où est-elle montée? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'elle a regardé du haut du caillou? 10. Pour la fourmi le caillou était comme une tour, n'est-ce pas? 11. Qu'est-ce qu'elle aperçoit enfin? 12. Que faisaient les deux compagnes de la fourmi? 13. Et la fourmi qu'est-ce qu'elle a fait? 14. Est-ce qu'elle leur a parlé? 15. Comment leur a-t-elle parlé? 16. Qu'est-ce qu'elle leur a dit? 17. Quelle est la première chose qu'ont faite les trois fourmis? 18. Et ensuite qu'ont-elles fait? 19. Une fourmi pouvait-elle emporter le brin d'herbe? 20. Les trois fourmis ensemble pouvaient-elles le faire aisément? 21. Pourquoi le brin d'herbe est-il devenu léger?

D. A little ant was going hither and thither one day. She found a blade of grass on the road. "This blade of grass is

very big," thought the ant. "I am too weak to carry it off alone. I know what I shall do. I shall climb upon a pebble. From the top of the pebble I shall look around. The pebble will be for me like a tall tower." She did so. She looked about her a long time. At last she saw two of her companions. They were passing along (*par*) the same road. She called them, and they ran to her. She said to them: "Come here, for I have found something good." She said this by rubbing her nose against theirs. Ants, as you know, cannot speak like men. After that the three ants rushed towards the blade of grass. They seized it quickly. It had been very heavy for one ant. But the three together carried it off easily.

XLVII. M. Laffitte et l'Épingle

A. Lorsque M. Laffitte, le fameux banquier, vint ¹ à Paris, en 1788, à l'âge de 21 ans, toute son ambition se bornait à obtenir ² une petite place dans une maison de banque. Il se présenta chez un riche banquier. « Impossible de vous admettre ³ chez moi, du moins pour le moment, lui dit ⁴ le banquier: mes bureaux sont au complet. » Le jeune homme salue et se retire. En traversant la cour, il aperçoit ⁵ à terre une épingle, et la ramasse. Debout devant la fenêtre de son cabinet le riche banquier avait suivi ⁶ des yeux la retraite du jeune homme. Il lui vit ⁷ ramasser l'épingle et ce trait lui fit ⁸ plaisir. Le soir même le jeune homme reçut ⁵ un billet du banquier, qui lui disait ⁴: « Vous avez une place dans mes bureaux; vous pouvez ⁹ venir ¹ l'occuper dès demain. » Le jeune homme devint ¹ bientôt caissier, puis associé, puis maître, de la première maison de banque de Paris, et enfin homme d'État très influent sous Louis-Philippe.

¹ § 178.

³ § 198.

⁵ § 213.

⁷ § 224.

⁹ § 221.

² § 177.

⁴ § 193.

⁶ § 206.

⁸ § 195.

B. Complete the following, as above: 1. Il vint à Paris.
2. Elle se bornait à cela. 3. Il se présenta chez le banquier.

4. Il se retire. 5. Il aperçoit à terre une épingle. 6. Il l'avait suivi des yeux. 7. Il vit ramasser l'épingle. 8. Il reçut un billet. 9. Il lui disait. 10. Vous pouvez venir. 11. Il devint maître.

Give in full the future and conditional of: 1. Tenir. 2. Admettre. 3. Aperçoit. 4. Suivi. 5. Vit.

C. *Oral:* 1. Quel âge avait M. Laffitte à son arrivée à Paris? 2. Qu'est-ce qu'il cherchait? 3. Réussit-il d'abord à trouver une place? 4. Où se présenta-t-il? 5. Que lui a-t-on dit? 6. En se retirant où va-t-il? 7. Qu'est-ce qu'il trouve? 8. Qui l'a vu? 9. En était-il content? 10. De quelle façon a-t-il montré son contentement? 11. Qu'est devenu le jeune homme par la suite? 12. Quelle est la morale de l'histoire?

D. 1. If your ambition is only to get a humble position, you will get it. 2. Present yourself at the office of the rich banker. 3. He will admit you into his employ. 4. His offices are not full. 5. Do you see that pin on the ground? 6. Pick it up. 7. There is a rich banker standing at his office window. 8. The banker is watching the young man as he retires. 9. If we see him pick up a pin, it (*cela*) will please us. 10. Did you receive a note from the banker? 11. You shall have a position in his banking-house. 12. You will soon become his partner, will you not? 13. Those who pick up pins may become statesmen.

E. When M. Laffitte was twenty-one years of age he came to Paris. He wished to get a humble position with a rich banker. But when he presented himself, the rich banker told him that his offices were full, and that he could not admit him. He withdrew. The rich banker watched him from his office window, and saw him pick up a pin which he noticed on the ground as he was crossing the yard. This action pleased the banker. That very evening he sent a note to the young man, which said that he could have a position in his offices

the very next day. The young man became head of a great banking-house, and at last an influential statesman.

XLVIII. Le Sifflet de Benjamin Franklin

A. Benjamin Franklin raconte l'anecdote suivante ¹: « Quand j'étais un enfant de cinq ou six ans, mes amis, un jour de fête, remplirent ma petite poche de sous. Je partis ² tout de suite pour une boutique où l'on vendait ³ des jouets. Chemin faisant, ⁴ je vis ⁵ dans les mains d'un autre petit garçon un sifflet, dont le son me charma. Je lui donnai en échange tout mon argent. Revenu ⁶ chez moi, fort content de mon achat, sifflant par toute la maison, je fatiguai les oreilles de toute la famille. Mes frères et mes sœurs apprenant ⁷ que j'avais tout donné pour un mauvais instrument, me dirent ⁸ que je l'avais payé ⁹ dix fois plus cher qu'il ne valait. ¹⁰ Alors ils énumérèrent ¹¹ toutes les jolies choses que j'aurais pu ¹² acheter ¹¹ avec mon argent si j'avais été plus prudent. Ils me tournèrent tellement en ridicule que j'en pleurai. Cependant, cet accident fut de quelque utilité pour moi. Lorsque plus tard j'étais tenté d'acheter ¹¹ quelque chose qui ne m'était pas nécessaire, je disais ⁸ en moi-même: *Ne donnons pas trop pour le sifflet*, et j'épargnais mon argent. »

¹ § 206.

⁴ § 195.

⁷ § 202.

¹⁰ § 223.

² § 166.

⁵ § 224.

⁸ § 193.

¹¹ § 158.

³ § 210.

⁶ § 178.

⁹ § 157.

¹² § 221.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Quand j'étais un enfant. 2. Ils remplirent ma poche. 3. Je partis tout de suite. 4. Je vis un sifflet. 5. Je fatiguai tous mes amis. 6. Je remplis mes poches, tu remplis tes poches, etc. 7. Ils me dirent, ils te dirent, etc. 8. Je disais en moi-même, tu disais en toi-même, etc.

C. *Oral:* 1. Qui était Benjamin Franklin? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quel âge avait-il à l'époque de l'anecdote? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'il avait dans sa poche? 5. Qui le lui

avait donné? 6. Pour quel endroit est-il parti ensuite? 7. Y est-il jamais arrivé? 8. Quel était l'obstacle? 9. Qu'est-ce qu'il a fait de son argent? 10. À son retour chez lui, qu'est-ce qu'il a fait? 11. A-t-il charmé ses frères et ses sœurs? 12. Est-ce qu'il avait payé assez cher son sifflet? 13. Est-ce que la famille était contente de son achat? 14. De quelle façon la famille a-t-elle fait voir son mécontentement? 15. Le pauvre Franklin était-il content à la fin? 16. Quelle leçon Franklin a-t-il reçue par cet accident?

D. 1. You have paid twice as much for that apple as it is worth. 2. If you pay ten cents for that pencil, that will be three times as much as it is worth. 3. Never pay more for things than they are worth. 4. We could have bought many pretty things with our money, if we had been prudent. 5. If our friend had been less prudent, he could not have bought so many pretty things. 6. That accident will be of some use to our friends. 7. When we are (*fut.*) tempted to buy something which is not necessary for us, we shall say to ourselves: "We are not going to give too much for the whistle."

E. When Benjamin Franklin was five years old, his brother, on a holiday, filled his pockets with pennies. Starting off at once for a shop where toys were sold, he met on the way another little boy who had a whistle. The sound of the instrument charmed him, and he gave all his money to have it. He was much pleased with his purchase, but he whistled so much all over the house that he tired the whole family. His brothers and sisters asked him where he had bought his whistle and how much he had paid for it. He told them he had given all his money to the little boy. Then they told him he had paid too much for it. They said too that if he had been more prudent, he could have bought ten times as many pretty things, and he cried on account of it. But the affair was of some use to him later on. Whenever he was

tempted to buy things which he did not need, he would always say to himself: "I will not give too much for the whistle."

XLIX. Henri IV et le Paysan

A. Henri IV, dans une chasse, s'étant écarté, suivant ¹ sa coutume, de ses gardes et de sa cour, rencontra un paysan assis ² sous un arbre. « Que fais-tu ³ là? lui dit ⁴ le prince. — J'étais venu ⁵ ici dès le point du jour, pour voir ⁶ passer le roi, répondit ⁷ le paysan; sans ce désir, je serais à labourer mon champ, qui n'est pas fort éloigné. — Si tu veux ⁸ monter sur la croupe de mon cheval, lui répliqua Henri, je te conduirai ⁹ où est le roi, et tu le verras ⁶ à ton aise. »

Le paysan, enchanté, profite de la rencontre, monte à côté du roi, et demande, chemin faisant,³ comment il pourra ¹⁰ reconnaître ¹¹ le roi. « Tu n'auras qu'à regarder celui qui sera couvert ¹² pendant que tous les autres auront la tête nue. »

Enfin le moment arrive où le roi rejoint ¹³ une partie de sa cour et se trouve parmi ses courtisans; tous se découvrent,¹² excepté lui. Alors il demande au paysan: « Eh bien, quel est le roi? — Ma foi, monsieur, lui répondit-il,¹⁴ c'est vous ou moi, car il n'y a que nous deux qui ayons le chapeau sur la tête. »

¹ § 206.	⁴ § 193.	⁷ § 210.	¹⁰ § 221.	¹³ § 190.
² § 215.	⁵ § 178.	⁸ § 225.	¹¹ § 188.	¹⁴ § 210.
³ § 195.	⁶ § 224.	⁹ § 185.	¹² § 176.	

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. J'étais venu. 2. Tu veux voir le roi. 3. Tu le verras à ton aise. 4. Il pourra reconnaître le roi. 5. Il sera couvert. 6. Il rejoint les courtisans. 7. Ils se découvrent. 8. Il n'y a que nous qui ayons.

C. *Oral:* 1. Qui était Henri IV? 2. À quelle époque vivait-il? 3. Quelle était sa coutume quand il était à la chasse? 4. Qui a-t-il rencontré un jour? 5. Qu'est-ce que

c'est qu'un paysan? 6. Que faisait le paysan? 7. Depuis combien de temps y était-il? 8. Pourquoi y était-il venu? 9. S'il n'était pas venu où aurait-il été? 10. Qu'est-ce que le roi a proposé au paysan? 11. Le paysan a-t-il accepté? 12. Qu'est-ce que le paysan a demandé au roi en chemin? 13. Quel était le signe par lequel on reconnaîtrait le roi? 14. Où le roi et le paysan arrivent-ils bientôt? 15. Qu'est-ce que les courtisans ont fait à leur approche? 16. Combien de personnes restaient couvertes? 17. Et combien de rois y avait-il dans la compagnie?

D. 1. We have wandered from the court. 2. If the king had not wandered from the court, he would not have met the peasant. 3. We came here at the very peep of day. 4. I have not seen the king go by. 5. The peasants are busy plowing the field. 6. If you get up beside me, you will see the king. 7. As they went along, the peasant said to the king: "Take me where the king is." 8. Everybody had his hat on, and we could not recognize the king. 9. If the courtiers had taken off their hats, we could have recognized the king.

E. One day Henry IV had wandered from his courtiers. Meeting a peasant who was sitting under a tree, he asked the latter what he was doing there. The peasant replied that he had been there since daybreak, and that he wished to see the king, and that if he had not come, he would be busy plowing his field. The king said to him: "Get up behind me, and I shall take you where you can see the king." The peasant was delighted, and got up beside the king. As they went along, he asked how he should recognize the king, and the king told him to look at the one who should have his hat on, while the others should be bareheaded. When they arrived where the courtiers were, the latter took off their hats. Then the king asked the peasant which was the king. He

replied: "We two have our hats on, the others are bare-headed: it is you or I."

L. Thomas et les Cerises

A. Un paysan traversait la campagne avec son fils Thomas. « Regarde! lui dit-il ¹ en chemin, voilà par terre un fer à cheval perdu, ² ramasse-le! »

« Bah! répondit ² Thomas, il ne vaut ³ pas la peine de se baisser pour si peu de chose! » Le père ne dit ¹ rien, ramassa le fer et le mit ⁴ dans sa poche. Arrivé au village voisin, il le vendit ² pour quelques centimes au maréchal ferrant, et acheta ⁵ des cerises avec cet argent.

Cela fait, ⁶ ils se remirent ⁴ en route. Le soleil était brûlant. Thomas mourait ⁷ de soif, et avait de la peine à poursuivre ⁸ son chemin. Le père, qui marchait le premier, laissa, comme par hasard, tomber une cerise. Thomas la ramassa avec empressement, et la mangea. ⁹ Quelques pas plus loin, une seconde cerise s'échappa des mains du père, et Thomas la saisit avec le même empressement. Le père fit ⁶ de même avec toutes les cerises. Lorsque l'enfant eut porté à la bouche la dernière cerise, le père se retourna et lui dit ¹: « Vois, ¹⁰ mon ami, tu n'as pas voulu ¹¹ te baisser une fois pour ramasser le fer à cheval, et tu as été obligé ¹² de te baisser plus de vingt fois pour ramasser les cerises. »

¹ § 193.

⁴ § 198.

⁷ § 174.

⁹ § 156.

¹¹ § 225.

² § 210.

⁵ § 158.

⁸ § 206.

¹⁰ § 224.

¹² § 156.

³ § 223.

⁶ § 195.

B. *Complete the following, as above:* 1. Il ne dit rien. 2. Il vendit le fer. 3. Il mourait de soif. 4. Il mangea une cerise. 5. Il la saisit. 6. Il fit de même. 7. Ils se remirent en route. 8. Il s'échappa de ses mains. 9. Il se retourna. 10. Tu t'es baissé.

C. *Oral:* 1. De quelles personnes parle-t-on dans cette histoire? 2. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un paysan? 3. Était-il

seul? 4. Qu'est-ce qu'ils ont vu en chemin? 5. Qu'est-ce que c'est qu'un fer à cheval? 6. Qu'est-ce que le père a dit au fils? 7. Qu'est-ce que le fils a répondu? 8. Lequel des deux était le plus prudent? 9. Par quelle action a-t-il montré sa prudence? 10. À qui a-t-on vendu le fer à cheval? 11. Pourquoi l'a-t-on vendu à un maréchal ferrant? 12. Qu'est-ce qu'on a acheté avec l'argent? 13. Quel temps faisait-il? 14. Quel était l'effet de la chaleur sur le petit Thomas? 15. Est-ce que le père n'avait rien pour la soif? 16. Est-ce que les cerises sont bonnes pour la soif? 17. Qu'est-ce que le père a fait des cerises? 18. Et qu'est-ce que son fils en a fait? 19. Combien en a-t-il mangées? 20. Pourquoi aurait-il mieux fait de se baisser pour le fer à cheval?

D. As a peasant and his son were crossing the country, they saw a horseshoe on the ground. The father told his son to pick it up and put it into his pocket. The son replied that it was not worth while to stoop for a horseshoe. Then the father stooped and picked it up. They sold it to the blacksmith of the neighboring village, and bought some cherries, which the father put into his pocket. They pursued their way, the father walking ahead. The sun was hot and Thomas was very thirsty, and, as if by chance, a cherry fell from his father's pocket. The son seizing it, ate it, and also a second one, which slipped from his father's pocket. Soon the last cherry was carried to his mouth, and his father, turning round, told him that if he had been willing to stoop once for the horseshoe, he would not have been obliged to stoop twenty times for the cherries.

PART II

THE VERB

REGULAR VERBS

153. Regular Conjugations. Regular verbs are conveniently divided into three classes or conjugations, according as the present infinitive ends in **-er, -ir, -re**, and are inflected in their simple tenses as follows:

I

II

III

Infinitive Mood

PRESENT

donn **er**, *to give*

PRESENT

fin **ir**, *to finish*

PRESENT

romp **re**, *to break*

Participles

PRESENT

donn **ant**, *giving*

PRESENT

fin **iss ant**, *finishing*

PRESENT

romp **ant**, *breaking*

PAST

donn **é**, *given*

PAST

fin **i**, *finished*

PAST

romp **u**, *broken*

Indicative Mood

PRESENT

*I give, am giving,
etc.*je donn **e**tu donn **es**il donn **e**nous donn **ons**vous donn **ez**ils donn **ent**

PRESENT

*I finish, am finishing,
etc.*je fin **is**tu fin **is**il fin **it**nous fin **iss ons**vous fin **iss ez**ils fin **iss ent**

PRESENT

*I break, am breaking,
etc.*je romp **s**tu romp **s**il romp **t**nous romp **ons**vous romp **ez**ils romp **ent**

IMPERFECT

*I was giving, used
to give, etc.*

je donn ais
tu donn ais
il donn ait
nous donn ions
vous donn iez
ils donn aient

IMPERFECT

*I was finishing, used
to finish, etc.*

je fin iss ais
tu fin iss ais
il fin iss ait
nous fin iss ions
vous fin iss iez
ils fin iss aient

IMPERFECT

*I was breaking, used
to break, etc.*

je romp ais
tu romp ais
il romp ait
nous romp ions
vous romp iez
ils romp aient

PAST DEFINITE

I gave, etc.

je donn ai
tu donn as
il donn a
nous donn âmes
vous donn âtes
ils donn èrent

PAST DEFINITE

I finished, etc.

je fin is
tu fin is
il fin it
nous fin îmes
vous fin îtes
ils fin irent

PAST DEFINITE

I broke, etc.

je romp is
tu romp is
il romp it
nous romp îmes
vous romp îtes
ils romp irent

FUTURE

I shall give, etc.

je donner ai
tu donner as
il donner a
nous donner ons
vous donner ez
ils donner ont

FUTURE

I shall finish, etc.

je finir ai
tu finir as
il finir a
nous finir ons
vous finir ez
ils finir ont

FUTURE

I shall break, etc.

je rompr ai
tu rompr as
il rompr a
nous rompr ons
vous rompr ez
ils rompr ont

CONDITIONAL

I should give, etc.

je donner ais
tu donner ais
il donner ait
nous donner ions
vous donner iez
ils donner aient

CONDITIONAL

I should finish, etc.

je finir ais
tu finir ais
il finir ait
nous finir ions
vous finir iez
ils finir aient

CONDITIONAL

I should break, etc.

je rompr ais
tu rompr ais
il rompr ait
nous rompr ions
vous rompr iez
ils rompr aient

Imperative Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
<i>Give, etc.</i>	<i>Finish, etc.</i>	<i>Break, etc.</i>
donn e*	fin is	romp s
(qu'il donn e)	(qu'il fin iss e)	(qu'il romp e)
donn ons	fin iss ons	romp ons
donn ez	fin iss ez	romp ez
(qu'ils donn ent)	(qu'ils fin iss ent)	(qu'ils romp ent)

* This form becomes **donn es** when followed by **-y** or **-en** (cf. § 370, 3, obs. 3, 4).

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT	PRESENT	PRESENT
<i>(That) I (may) give, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (may) finish, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (may) break, etc.</i>
(que) je donn e	(que) je fin iss e	(que) je romp e
(que) tu donn es	(que) tu fin iss es	(que) tu romp es
(qu') il donn e	(qu') il fin iss e	(qu') il romp e
(que) nous donn ions	(que) nous fin iss ions	(que) nous romp ions
(que) vous donn iez	(que) vous fin iss iez	(que) vous romp iez
(qu') ils donn ent	(qu') ils fin iss ent	(qu') ils romp ent

IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT	IMPERFECT
<i>(That) I (might) give, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (might) finish, etc.</i>	<i>(That) I (might) break, etc.</i>
(que) je donn asse	(que) je fin isse	(que) je romp isse
(que) tu donn asses	(que) tu fin isses	(que) tu romp isses
(qu') il donn ât	(qu') il fin ît	(qu') il romp ît
(que) nous donn assions	(que) nous fin issions	(que) nous romp issions
(que) vous donn assiez	(que) vous fin issiez	(que) vous romp issiez
(qu') ils donn assent	(qu') ils fin issent	(qu') ils romp issent

AUXILIARY VERBS

154. The auxiliary verbs **avoir**, *to have*, and **être**, *to be*, are conjugated in their simple tenses as follows:

Infinitive

PRES. avoir, *to have*

PRES. être, *to be*

Participles

PRES. ayant, *having*PAST. eu, *had*PRES. étant, *being*PAST. été, *been*

Indicative

PRESENT

I have, am having, etc.

j'ai nous avons

tu as vous avez

il a ils ont

IMPERFECT

I had, was having, etc.

j'avais nous avions

tu avais vous aviez

il avait ils avaient

PAST DEFINITE

I had, etc.

j'eus nous eûmes

tu eus vous eûtes

il eut ils eurent

FUTURE

I shall have, etc.

j'aurai nous aurons

tu auras vous aurez

il aura ils auront

CONDITIONAL

I should have, etc.

j'aurais nous aurions

tu aurais vous auriez

il aurait ils auraient

PRESENT

I am, am being, etc.

je suis nous sommes

tu es vous êtes

il est ils sont

IMPERFECT

I was, was being, etc.

j'étais nous étions

tu étais vous étiez

il était ils étaient

PAST DEFINITE

I was, etc.

je fus nous fûmes

tu fus vous fûtes

il fut ils furent

FUTURE

I shall be, etc.

je serai nous serons

tu seras vous serez

il sera ils seront

CONDITIONAL

I should be, etc.

je serais nous serions

tu serais vous seriez

il serait ils seraient

Imperative

PRESENT

Have, etc.

ayons

aie

ayez

(qu'il ait)

(qu'ils aient)

PRESENT

Be, etc.

soyons

sois

soyez

(qu'il soit)

(qu'ils soient)

Subjunctive

PRESENT

(That) I (may) have, etc.

(que) j'aie (que) nous ayons
 (que) tu aies (que) vous ayez
 (qu') il ait (qu') ils aient

IMPERFECT

(That) I (might) have, etc.

(que) j'eusse (que) nous eussions
 (que) tu eusses (que) vous eussiez
 (qu') il eût (qu') ils eussent

PRESENT

(That) I (may) be, etc.

(que) je sois (que) nous soyons
 (que) tu sois (que) vous soyez
 (qu') il soit (qu') ils soient

IMPERFECT

(That) I (might) be, etc.

(que) je fusse (que) nous fussions
 (que) tu fusses (que) vous fussiez
 (qu') il fût (qu') ils fussent

COMPOUND TENSES

155. Formation. Compound tenses are formed from the past participle of the principal verb along with an auxiliary verb (usually **avoir**, sometimes **être**), see §§ 227–229.

*Avoir**Être*

Infinitive

PERFECT

To have given
 avoir donné

PERFECT

To have arrived
 être arrivé(e)(s)

Participle

PERFECT

Having given
 ayant donné

PERFECT

Having arrived
 étant arrivé(e)(s)

Indicative

PAST INDEFINITE

I have given, etc.
 j'ai donné
 tu as donné, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE

I have arrived, etc.
 je suis arrivé(e)
 tu es arrivé(e), etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had given, etc.
 j'avais donné, etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had arrived, etc.
 j'étais arrivé(e), etc.

X PAST ANTERIOR

I had given, etc.
j'eus donné, etc.

PAST ANTERIOR

I had arrived, etc.
je fus arrivé(e), etc.

Y FUTURE ANTERIOR

I shall have given, etc.
j'aurai donné, etc.

FUTURE ANTERIOR

I shall have arrived, etc.
je serai arrivé(e), etc.

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR

I should have given, etc.
j'aurais donné, etc.

CONDITIONAL ANTERIOR

I should have arrived, etc.
je serais arrivé(e), etc.

Subjunctive

PERFECT

(That) *I (may) have given, etc.*
(que) j'aie donné, etc.

PERFECT

(That) *I (may) have arrived, etc.*
(que) je sois arrivé(e), etc.

PLUPERFECT

(That) *I (might) have given, etc.*
(que) j'eusse donné, etc.

PLUPERFECT

(That) *I (might) have arrived, etc.*
(que) je fusse arrivé(e), etc.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES

156. Verbs in *-cer* and *-ger*

1. Verbs in *-cer*, e.g., *avancer* [avāse], *to advance*, require the [s] sound of *c* throughout their conjugation, and hence *c* becomes *ç* before *a* or *o* of an ending (§ 5, 4), but not elsewhere:

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Def.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>
avançant	avance	avançais	avançai	avançasse
	avances	avançais	avanças	avançasses
	avance	avançait	avança	avançât
	avançons	avancions	avançâmes	avançassions
	avancez	avanciez	avançâtes	avançassiez
	avancent	avançaient	avancèrent	avançassent

2. Verbs in *-ger*, e.g., *manger* [māze], *to eat*, require the [ʒ] sound of *g* throughout their conjugation, and hence *g* becomes *ge* before *a* or *o* (§ 19, 2), but not elsewhere:

<i>Pres. Part.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Def.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>
mangeant	mange	mangeais	mangeai	mangeasse
	manges	mangeais	mangeas	mangeasses
	mange	mangeait	mangea	mangeât
	mangeons	mangions	mangeâmes	mangeassions'
	mangez	mangiez	mangeâtes	mangeassiez
	mangent	mangeaient	mangèrent	mangeassent

157.

Verbs in *-yer*

Verbs in *-oyer* and *-uyer* change *y* to *i* whenever it comes before [ə] in conjugation, but not elsewhere; verbs in *-ayer* and *-eyer* may either retain *y* throughout, or change it to *i* before [ə]:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Condl.</i>
nettoie, etc.	nettoie, etc.	nettoierai, etc.	nettoierais, etc.
paye, } etc.	paye, } etc.	payerai, } etc.	payerais, } etc.
paie, }	paie, }	paierai, }	paierais, }

158.

Verbs with Stem-vowel *e* or *é*

Verbs with stem-vowel *e* require the [ɛ] sound of *e* (§ 12, 1) whenever, in conjugation, the next syllable contains [ə], *i.e.*, when the stress falls on the stem-vowel; so also verbs with the stem-vowel *é*, shown orthographically as follows:—

1. By changing *e* or *é* to *è* (§ 12, 1), *e.g.*, **mener**, *to lead*, **céder**, *to yield*:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Condl.</i>
mène	mène	mènerai	mènerais
mènes	mènes	mèneras	mènerais
mène	mène	mènera	mènerait
menons	menions	mènerons	mènerions
menez	meniez	mènerez	mèneriez
mènent	mènent	mèneront	mèneraient

But **céder** with the stem-vowel *é*:

cède, etc. cède, etc. céderai [sɛd(ə)re], etc. céderais [sɛd(ə)rɛ], etc.

Obs.: In *mené-je* ? [mənɛ:ʒ], *e* of the ending is not mute, and hence the stem-vowel *e* is unchanged.

Like **mener**: Verbs with stem-vowel *e* (for exceptions in *-eler* and *-eter*, see below).

Like **céder**: Verbs with stem-vowel *é* + consonant, *e.g.*, **régner**, **reign**, etc.

NOTE. — Verbs like **créer**, *create*, with stem-vowel followed by a vowel, are regular: *Je crée*, etc.

2. Most verbs in **-eler**, **-eter**, however, indicate the [ɛ] sound by doubling *l* or *t*, *e.g.*, **appeler**, *to call*, **jeter**, *to throw*:

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>Condl.</i>
appelle	appelle	appellerai	appellerais
appelles	appelles	appelleras	appellerais
appelle	appelle	appellera	appellerait
appelons	appelions	appellerons	appellerions
appelez	appelez	appellerez	appelleriez
appellent	appellent	appelleront	appelleraient

So also, **jeter**:

jette, etc.	jette, etc.	jetterai, etc.	jetterais, etc.
-------------	-------------	----------------	-----------------

A few verbs in **-eler**, **-eter** take the grave accent precisely like **mener**, *e.g.*, **acheter**, *to buy*:

achète, etc.	achète, etc.	achèterai, etc.	achèterais, etc.
--------------	--------------	-----------------	------------------

Exceptions like **acheter**:

agneler, <i>lamb</i>	épousseter, <i>dust</i>	modeler, <i>model</i>
becqueter, <i>peck</i>	étiqueter, <i>label</i>	peler, <i>peel</i>
bourreler, <i>goad, torture</i>	geler, <i>freeze</i>	rapiéceter, <i>patch</i>
démanteler, <i>dismantle</i>	harceler, <i>harass</i>	trompeter, <i>trumpet</i>
écarteler, <i>quarter</i>	marteler, <i>hammer</i>	

* *Fut.* **épousseterai** according to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*.

Exceptions like **appeler** or **acheter**:

botteler, <i>bale (hay, etc.)</i>	caqueter, <i>cackle</i>	crocheter, <i>pick (a lock)</i>
canneler, <i>groove</i>	ciseler, <i>chisel</i>	

FORMATION OF TENSES

159. Principal Parts. By the following rules, the various tenses of all regular verbs and of most irregular verbs may be known from five forms of the verb, called principal parts or primary tenses: —

1. The *Infinitive* gives the *Future* by adding **-ai**, **-as**, **-a**, **-ons**, **-ez**, **-ont**, and the *Conditional* by adding **-ais**, **-ais**, **-ait**, **-ions**, **-iez**, **-aient**

— dropping the final infinitive -e of the third conjugation for both tenses.

2. The *Present Participle* gives the *Imperfect Indicative* by changing -ant into -ais, -ait, -ions, -iez, -aient, and the *Present Subjunctive* by changing -ant into -e, -es, -e, -ions, -iez, -ent.

3. The *Past Participle* gives the *Compound Tenses*, with the auxiliary *avoir* (§ 227) or *être* (§ 228), and the *Passive*, with the auxiliary *être* (§ 239).

4. The *Present Indicative* gives the *Imperative* by dropping the pronoun subject of the second singular and first and second plural, the -s of the first conjugation second singular being also dropped, except before *y* and *en* (cf. § 370, 3, *obs.* 3, 4).

5. The *Past Definite* gives the *Imperfect Subjunctive* by changing the final letter of the first singular (-i or -s) into -sse, -sses, -t, -ssions, -ssiez, -ssent, and putting a circumflex accent over the last vowel of the third singular.

Obs.: The tenses, except the future and conditional, are not really derived from the principal parts, as is sometimes said in grammars: the method is merely an aid to memory.

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -er

160.

Aller, to go

1. *Infinitive.* aller; *fut.* * irai, iras, ira, etc.; *condl.* irais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* allant; *impf. indic.* allais, etc.; *pres. subj.* aille [a:j], ailles, aille, allions, alliez, aillent.

3. *Past Part.* allé; *past indef.* je suis allé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* vais [ve], vas, va, allons, allez, vont; *impv.* va (vas-y), allons, allez.

5. *Past Def.* allai, allas, alla, allâmes, allâtes, allèrent; *impf. subj.* allasse, allasses, allât, allassions, allassiez, allassent.

* The stem of the future is from the Latin infinitive *ire*.

Like aller:

s'en aller, go away

161.

Envoyer, to send

1. *Infinitive.* envoyer; *fut.* enverrai, etc.; *condl.* enverrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* envoyant; *impf. indic.* envoyais, envoyais, envoyait, envoyions [ävawaijō], envoyiez, envoyaient; *pres. subj.* envoie, envoies, envoie, envoyions [ävawaijō], envoyiez, envoient.

3. *Past Part.* **envoyé**; *past indef.* j'ai envoyé, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **envoie**, envoies, envoie, envoyons, envoyez, envoient; *impv.* envoie, envoyons, envoyez.

5. *Past Def.* **envoyai**, envoyas, envoya, envoyâmes, envoyâtes, envoyèrent; *impf. subj.* envoyasse, envoyasses, envoyât, envoyassions, envoyassiez, envoyassent.

Like **envoyer**:

renvoyer, *send away, dismiss*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN **-ir**

162. **Acquérir, to acquire**

1. *Infinitive.* **acquérir**; *fut.* acquerrai, acquerras, etc.; *condl.* acquerrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **acquérant**; *impf. indic.* acquérais, etc.; *pres. subj.* acquière, acquières, acquière, acquérions, acquériez, acquièrent.

3. *Past Part.* **acquis**; *past indef.* j'ai acquis, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **acquires**, acquiers, acquiert, acquérons, acquérez, acquièrent; *impv.* acquiers, acquérons, acquérez.

5. *Past Def.* **acquis**, acquis, acquit, acquîmes, acquîtes, acquirent; *impf. subj.* acquisse, acquisses, acquît, acquisitions, acquissiez, acquissent.

Like **acquérir**:

conquérir, *conquer*
s'enquérir, *inquire*

* querir or quérir, *seek*
reconquérir, *reconquer*

requérir, *require, claim*

* Has only the infinitive.

163. **Bénir, to bless**

Is regular, but has also an irregular past participle **béni**, used only as adjective:

De l'eau bénite; du pain béni Holy water; consecrated bread

164. **Courir, to run**

1. *Infinitive.* **courir**; *fut.* courrai, courras, etc.; *condl.* courrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **courant**; *impf. indic.* courais, etc.; *pres. subj.* coure, coures, coure, courions, couriez, courent.

3. *Past Part.* **couru**; *past indef.* j'ai couru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **cours**, cours, court, courons, courez, courent; *impv.* cours, courons, courez.

5. *Past Def.* **cours**, courus, courut, courûmes, courûtes, couru-

rent; *impf. subj.* courusse, courusses, courût, courussions, courussiez, courussent.

Like **courir** are its compounds:

accourir, <i>run up, hasten</i>	discourir, <i>discourse</i>	recourir, <i>run again, apply</i>
concourir, <i>coöperate, con-</i>	encourir, <i>incur</i>	secourir, <i>succor, help</i>
<i>cur, compete</i>	parcourir, <i>run over</i>	

NOTE. — **Courre**, *chase* (a hunting term), sometimes replaces **courir** in the infinitive.

165. Cueillir, to gather, pick

1. *Infinitive.* cueillir; *fut.* cueillerai, etc.; *condl.* cueillerais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* cueillant; *impf. indic.* cueillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueilliez, cueillent.
3. *Past Part.* cueilli; *past indef.* j'ai cueilli, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* cueille, cueilles, cueille, cueillions, cueillez, cueillent; *impv.* cueille, cueillons, cueillez.
5. *Past Def.* cueillis, cueillis, cueillit, cueillîmes, cueillîtes, cueillirent; *impf. subj.* cueillisse, cueillisses, cueillît, cueillissions, cueillissiez, cueillissent.

Obs.: The present indicative, future, and conditional are like those of **donner**.

Like **cueillir**:

accueillir, <i>welcome</i>	* assaillir, <i>assail</i>	* tressaillir, <i>start</i>
recueillir, <i>gather, collect</i>	† saillir, <i>jut out</i>	

* Regular in future and conditional: **assaillirai**, etc.

† **Saillir**, *gush out, rush forth*, is regular, like **finir**.

166. Dormir, to sleep

1. *Infinitive.* dormir; *fut.* dormirai, etc.; *condl.* dormirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* dormant; *impf. indic.* dormais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dorme, dormes, dorme, dormions, dormiez, dorment.
3. *Past Part.* dormi; *past indef.* j'ai dormi, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* dors, dors, dort, dormons, dormez, dorment; *impv.* dors, dormons, dormez.
5. *Past Def.* dormis, dormis, dormit, dormîmes, dormîtes, dormirent; *impf. subj.* dormisse, dormisses, dormît, dormissions, dormissiez, dormissent.

Like **dormir**:

endormir, <i>put to sleep</i>	se rendormir, <i>go to sleep</i>	ébouillir, <i>boil away</i>
s'endormir, <i>fall asleep</i>	<i>again</i>	rebouillir, <i>boil again</i>
rendormir, <i>put to sleep</i>	redormir, <i>sleep again</i>	mentir, <i>lie</i>
<i>again</i>	bouillir, <i>boil</i>	démentir, <i>contradict, belie</i>

partir, <i>set out</i>	se repentir, <i>repent</i>	servir, <i>serve</i>
départir, <i>distribute</i>	sentir, <i>feel</i>	se servir, <i>make use</i>
se départir, <i>desist</i>	consentir, <i>consent</i>	desservir, <i>clear the table</i>
repartir, <i>set out again,</i> <i>reply</i>	pressentir, <i>forebode</i>	sortir, <i>go out</i>
	ressentir, <i>resent</i>	ressortir, <i>go out again</i>

NOTE. — Asservir, *enslave*, assortir, *sort, match*, ressortir, *depend (on, à)*, répartir, *distribute*, are like **finir**.

Observe the Present Indicative of the following types, which are represented in the above list:

bouillir: bous, bous, bout, bouillons, bouillez, bouillent

mentir: mens, mens, ment, mentons, mentez, mentent

partir: pars, pars, part, partons, partez, partent

se repentir: repens, repens, repent, repentons, repentez, repentent

sentir: sens, sens, sent, sentons, sentez, sentent

servir: sers, sers, sert, servons, servez, servent

sortir: sors, sors, sort, sortons, sortez, sortent

167. Faillir, to fail

1. *Infinitive*. faillir; *fut.* faudrai, faudras, etc.; *condl.* faudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* faillant; *impf. indic.* faillais, etc.; *pres. subj.* faille, failles, faille, faillions, failliez, faillent.

3. *Past Part.* failli; *past indef.* j'ai failli, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* faux, faux, faut, faillons, faillez, faillent; *impv.*

—, —, —.

5. *Past Def.* faillis, faillis, faillit, faillîmes, faillîtes, faillirent; *impf. subj.* faillisse, faillisses, faillît, faillissions, faillissiez, faillissent.

NOTE. — The irreg. forms of *pres. indic.*, *fut.*, and *condl.* are usually replaced by the regular forms (cf. **finir**).

Like **faillir**:

défaillir, *faint, fail* (*pres. indic.* usually défaus, défaus, défaut)

NOTE. — **Faillir**, *fail in business*, is usually like **finir**.

168. Férir, to strike

Used only in **Sans coup férir**, *Without striking a blow*, and in the *past part.* féru, *wounded* (a veterinary term).

169. Fleurir, to flourish, etc.

Pres. Part. florissant; *impf. indic.* florissais, etc., when used of persons or a collection of persons, or fleurissais, etc., when used of things, otherwise like **finir**.

NOTE. — **Fleurir**, *blossom, bloom* (in a literal sense) is like **finir**.

170. Fuir, to flee, fly

1. *Infinitive*. **fuir**; *fut.* fuirai, etc.; *condl.* fuirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **fuyant**; *impf. indic.* fuyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* fuie, fuies, fuie, fuyions, fuyiez, fuient.
3. *Past Part.* **fui**; *past indef.* j'ai fui, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **fuis**, fuis, fuit, fuyons, fuyez, fuient; *impve.* fuis, fuyons, fuyez.
5. *Past Def.* **fuis**, fuis, fuit, fuîmes, fuîtes, fuirent; *impf. subj.* fuisse, fuisses, fuît, fuissions, fuissiez, fuissent.

Like **fuir**:

s'enfuir, *flee, escape*

171. Gésir, to lie, lie buried

1. *Infinitive*. **gésir**; *fut.* —; *condl.* —.
2. *Pres. Part.* **gisant**; *impf. indic.* gisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, **gît**, gisons, gisez, gisent; *impve.* —, —, —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

NOTE. — Its most frequent use is in epitaphs: **Ci-gît**, *Here lies*, **Ci-gisent**, *Here lie*.

172. Haïr, to hate

1. *Infinitive*. **haïr**; *fut.* haïrai, etc.; *condl.* haïrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **haïssant**; *impf. indic.* haïssais, etc.; *pres. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haïsse, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.
3. *Past Part.* **haï**; *past indef.* j'ai haï, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **hais**, hais, hait, haïssons, haïssez, haïssent; *impve.* hais, haïssons, haïssez.
5. *Past Def.* **haïs**, haïs, haît, haïmes, haïtes, haïrent; *impf. subj.* haïsse, haïsses, haît, haïssions, haïssiez, haïssent.

Obs.: **Haïr** loses its diæresis in the present indicative and imperative singular, and takes no circumflex accent; otherwise like **finir**.

173. Issir, to spring (from, de), etc.

Used only in the *past part.* **issu**; *past indef.* je suis issu, etc.

174. Mourir, to die

1. *Infinitive*. **mourir**; *fut.* mourrai, mourras, etc.; *condl.* mourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **mourant**; *impf. indic.* mourais, etc.; *pres. subj.* meure, meures, meure, mourions, mouriez, meurent.

3. *Past Part.* **mort**; *past indef.* je suis mort, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **meurs**, meurs, meurt, mourons, mourez, meurent; *impv.* meurs, mourons, mourez.

5. *Past Def.* **mourus**, mourus, mourut, mourûmes, mourûtes, moururent; *impf. subj.* mourusse, mourusses, mourût, mourussions, mourussiez, mourussent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **mourir**:

se mourir, *be dying* (used only in infin., pres. indic., impf. indic.)

175.

Ouïr, to hear

Is hardly used beyond the infinitive and past participle: **J'ai ouï dire**, *I have heard said*, etc.

176.

Ouvrir, to open

1. *Infinitive.* **ouvrir**; *fut.* ouvrirai, etc.; *condl.* ouvrirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **ouvrant**; *impf. indic.* ouvrais, etc.; *pres. subj.* ouvre, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvriez, ouvrent.

3. *Past Part.* **ouvert**; *past indef.* j'ai ouvert, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **ouvre**, ouvres, ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez, ouvrent; *impv.* ouvre, ouvrons, ouvrez.

5. *Past Def.* **ouvris**, ouvris, ouvrit, ouvrîmes, ouvrîtes, ouvrirent; *impf. subj.* ouvrisse, ouvrisse, ouvrît, ouvrissions, ouvrissiez, ouvrissent.

Obs.: The present indicative is like that of **donner**.

Like **ouvrir**:

entr'ouvrir, *open slightly*
rouvrir, *open again*
couvrir, *cover*

découvrir, *discover*
recouvrir, *cover again*

offrir, *offer*
souffrir, *suffer*

177.

Tenir, to hold

1. *Infinitive.* **tenir**; *fut.* tiendrai, tiendras, etc.; *condl.* tiendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **tenant**; *impf. indic.* tenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* tienne, tiennes, tienne, tenions, teniez, tiennent.

3. *Past Part.* **tenu**; *past indef.* j'ai tenu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **tiens**, tiens, tient, tenons, tenez, tiennent; *impv.* tiens, tenons, tenez.

5. *Past Def.* **tins**, tins, tint, tînmes [tē:m], tîntes [tē:t], tinrent [tē:r]; *impf. subj.* tinsse, [tē:s], tinsses, tînt, tinssions, tinssiez, tinssent.

Obs.: The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.

Like **tenir** are its compounds:

s'abstenir, *abstain*
appartenir, *belong*
contenir, *contain*

détenir, *detain*
entretenir, *entertain*
maintenir, *maintain*

obtenir, *obtain*
retenir, *retain*
soutenir, *sustain*

178.

Venir, to come

1. *Infinitive.* **venir**; *fut.* viendrai, viendras, etc.; *condl.* viendrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **venant**; *impf. indic.* venais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vienne, viennes, vienne, venions, venez, viennent.

3. *Past Part.* **venu**; *past indef.* je suis venu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **viens**, viens, vient, venons, venez, viennent; *impv.* viens, venons, venez.

5. *Past Def.* **vins**, vins, vint, vînmes [vē:m], vîntes [vē:t], vinrent [vēr]; *impf. subj.* vinsse [vē:s], vinsses, vînt, vinssions, vinssiez, vinssent.

Obs.: 1. The stem-vowel becomes **ie** wherever it bears the stress.
2. **Venir** is precisely like **tenir** in its irregularities, but owing to its difficulty it is given in full.

Like **venir** are its compounds:

avenir, *happen*
advenir, *happen*
convenir, *agree, suit*
contrevenir, *violate*
circonvenir, *circumvent*
devenir, *become*

disconvenir, *be discordant*
intervenir, *intervene*
parvenir, *attain*
prévenir, *prevent, anticipate*
provenir, *proceed (from, de)*
revenir, *come back*

redevenir, *become again*
se souvenir, *recollect*
subvenir, *aid*
survenir, *occur*
se ressouvenir, *recollect*

179.

Vêtir, to clothe

1. *Infinitive.* **vêtir**; *fut.* vêtirai, etc.; *condl.* vêtirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vêtant**; *impf. indic.* vêtais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vête, vêtes, vête, vêtions, vêtiez, vêtent.

3. *Past Part.* **vêtu**; *past indef.* j'ai vêtu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vêts**, vêts, vêt, vêtons, vêtez, vêtent; *impv.* vêts, vêtons, vêtez.

5. *Past Def.* **vêtis**, vêtis, vêtit, vêtîmes, vêtîtes, vêtirent; *impf. subj.* vêtisse, vêtisses, vêtît, vêtissions, vêtissiez, vêtissent.

Like **vêtir**:

dévêtir, *divest*
se dévêtir, *take off clothing*

revêtir, *clothe, invest* se revêtir, *put on clothing*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -re

180. Battre, to beat

Loses one *t* in the present indicative singular: *bats, bats, bat*; otherwise like *rompre*.

Like *battre*:

abattre, fell

débattre, debate

rabattre, beat down

combattre, fight, oppose

se débattre, struggle

181. Boire, to drink

1. *Infinitive. boire; fut. boirai, etc.; cond. boirais, etc.*

2. *Pres. Part. buvant; impf. indic. buvais, etc.; pres. subj. boive, boives, boive, buvions, buviez, boivent.*

3. *Past Part. bu; past indef. j'ai bu, etc.*

4. *Pres. Indic. bois, bois, boit, buvons, buvez, boivent; impv. bois, buvons, buvez.*

5. *Past Def. bus, bus, but, bûmes, bûtes, burent; impf. subj. busse, busses, bût, bussions, bussiez, bussent.*

Like *boire*:

emboire, coat (in painting)

imboire, imbibe, imbue

s'emboire, become dull (used in third person)

reboire, drink again

182. Bruire, to murmur, rustle

1. *Infinitive. bruire; fut. bruirai, etc.; cond. bruirais, etc.*

2. *Pres. Part. bruyant; impf. indic. bruysais, etc.; pres. subj. —.*

3. *Past Part. bruit; past indef. j'ai bruit, etc.*

4. *Pres. Indic. bruis, bruis, bruit, —, —, —; impv. —.*

5. *Past Def. —; impf. subj. —.*

NOTES.— 1. The *pres. part. bruyant, noisy*, is used as adjective only.

2. The forms *bruisant, bruissais, etc., bruisse, etc.*, are also in use.

183. Clore, to close, enclose

1. *Infinitive. clore; fut. clorai, etc.; cond. clorais, etc.*

2. *Pres. Part. —; impf. indic. —; pres. subj. close, closes, close, closions, closiez, closent.*

3. *Past Part. clos; past indef. j'ai clos, etc.*

4. *Pres. Indic. clos, clos, clôt, —, —, —; impv. —.*

5. *Past Def. —; impf. subj. —.*

Like **clore**:déclore, *throw open*† enclore, *enclose** éclore, *hatch, open* (of flowers)†† forclore, *foreclose, debar*

* Has also *pres. pl. éclosons*, etc.; *impf. indic. écloisais*, etc. Its future and conditional are *éclorai*, etc.

† Has also *pres. pl. enclosons*, etc.; *pres. part. enclosant*; *impf. indic. enclosais*, etc.

†† Hardly used beyond the infinitive, past participle, and compound tenses.

184.

Conclure, to conclude

1. *Infinitive. conclure*; *fut. conclurai*, etc.; *condl. conclurais*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. concluant*; *impf. indic. concluais*, etc.; *pres. subj. conclue, conclues, conclue, concluions, concluez, concluent*.

3. *Past Part. conclu*; *past indef. j'ai conclu*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic. conclus, conclus, conclut, concluons, concluez, concluent*; *impv. conclus, concluons, concluez*.

5. *Past Def. conclus, conclus, conclut, conclûmes, conclûtes, conclurent*; *impf. subj. conclusse, conclusses, conclût, conclusions, conclussiez, conclussent*.

Like **conclure**:exclure, *exclude** inclure, *enclose*† reclure, *shut up** *Past Part. inclus*.

† Used only in *infin.*, *past part.*, and *comp. tenses*. *Past part. reclus*.

185.

Conduire, to conduct, etc.

1. *Infinitive. conduire*; *fut. conduirai*, etc.; *condl. conduirais*, etc.

2. *Pres. Part. conduisant*; *impf. indic. conduisais*, etc.; *pres. subj. conduise, conduises, conduise, conduisions, conduisiez, conduisent*.

3. *Past Part. conduit*; *past indef. j'ai conduit*, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic. conduis, conduis, conduit, conduisons, conduisez, conduisent*; *impv. conduis, conduisons, conduisez*.

5. *Past Def. conduisis, conduisis, conduisit, conduisîmes, conduisîtes, conduisirent*; *impf. subj. conduisisse, conduisisses, conduisît, conduisissions, conduisissiez, conduisissent*.

Like **conduire**:se conduire, *conduct oneself*induire, *induce*reproduire, *reproduce*éconduire, *show out, dismiss*introduire, *introduce*séduire, *seduce*reconduire, *lead back*produire, *produce*traduire, *translate*déduire, *deduct*réduire, *reduce*construire, *construct*enduire, *coat* (with plaster)

déconstruire, *take apart*instruire, *instruct*reconstruire, *reconstruct*détruire, *destroy*cuire, *cook*recuire, *cook again** luire, *shine** reluire, *glisten*† nuire, *injure** *Past part.* lui and relui respectively. No past def. or impf. subj.† *Past part.* nui.

186.

Être, to be

See § 154 for the full conjugation.

187.

Confire, to preserve, etc.1. *Infinitive.* confire; *fut.* confirai, etc.; *condl.* confirais, etc.2. *Pres. Part.* confisant; *impf. indic.* confisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* confise, confises, confise, confisions, confisiez, confisent.3. *Past Part.* confit; *past indef.* j'ai confit, etc.4. *Pres. Indic.* confis, confis, confit, confisons, confisez, confisent; *impve.* confis, confisons, confisez.5. *Past Def.* confis, confis, confit, confîmes, confîtes, confirent; *impf. subj.* confisse, confisses, confit, confissions, confissiez, confissent.Like **confire**:déconfire, *disconfit*; circoncire (p.p. -cis), *circumcise*; suffire (p.p. suffi), *suffice*

188.

Connaître, to know, etc.1. *Infinitive.* connaître; *fut.* connaîtrai, etc.; *condl.* connaîtrais, etc.2. *Pres. Part.* connaissant; *impf. indic.* connaissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* connaisse, connaises, connaisse, connaissances, connaissiez, connaissent.3. *Past Part.* connu; j'ai connu, etc.4. *Pres. Indic.* connais, connais, connaît, connaissons, connaissez, connaissent; *impve.* connais, connaissons, connaissez.5. *Past Def.* connus, connus, connut, connûmes, connûtes, connurent; *impf. subj.* connusse, connusses, connût, connussions, connussiez, connussent.*Obs.:* Stem-vowel *i* has circumflex (î) everywhere before *t*.Like **connaître**:méconnaître, *not to know*reconnaître, *recognize*paraître, *appear*apparaître, *appear*comparaître, *appear* (law term)disparaître, *disappear*reparaître, *reappear** paître, *graze*repaître, *feed, feast*se repaître, *feed, feast*

* Lacks the past part., past def., and impf. subj.

NOTE. — **Apparoir** (also used in third singular *il appert, it appears*) and **comparoir** are archaic variants of **apparaître** and **comparaître**.

189. Coudre, to sew

1. *Infinitive*. **coudre**; *fut.* coudrai, etc.; *condl.* coudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **cousant**; *impf. indic.* cousais, etc.; *pres. subj.* couse, couses, couse, cousions, cousiez, cousent.
3. *Past Part.* **cousu**; *past indef.* j'ai cousu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **couds**, couds, coud, cousons, cousez, cousent; *impve.* couds, cousons, cousez.
5. *Past Def.* **cousis**, cousis, cousit, cousîmes, cousîtes, cousirent; *impf. subj.* coussisse, coussisses, coussît, coussissions, coussissiez, coussissent.

Like **coudre**:

découdre, *rip, unsew*

recoudre, *sew again*

190. Craindre, to fear

1. *Infinitive*. **craindre**; *fut.* craindrai, etc.; *condl.* craindrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **craignant**; *impf. indic.* craignais, etc.; *pres. subj.* craigne, craignes, craigne, craignons, craigniez, craignent.
3. *Past Part.* **craint**; *past indef.* j'ai craint, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **crains**, crains, craint, craignons, craignez, craignent; *impve.* crains, craignons, craignez.
5. *Past Def.* **craignis**, craignis, craignit, craignîmes, craignîtes, craignirent; *impf. subj.* craignisse, craignisses, craignît, craignissions, craignissiez, craignissent.

Like **craindre**:

in **-aindre**:

contraindre, *constrain*
plaindre, *pity*
se plaindre, *complain*

enfreindre, *infringe*
épreindre, *squeeze out*
éteindre, *extinguish*
étreindre, *draw tight*
feindre, *feign*
geindre, *groan*
peindre, *paint*
ratteindre, *overtake*
repeindre, *paint again*
restreindre, *restrain*
teindre, *dye*
déteindre, *fade*

reteindre, *dye again*

in **-oindre**:

joindre, *join*
adjoindre, *adjoin*
conjoindre, *conjoin*
déjoindre, *disjoin*
disjoindre, *disjoin*
enjoindre, *enjoin*
rejoindre, *rejoin*
oindre, *anoint*
* poindre, *dawn*

in **-eindre**:

astreindre, *abstract*
atteindre, *attain*
ceindre, *enclose, gird, gird*
on (a sword, etc.)
dépeindre, *depict*
empreindre, *imprint*
enceindre, *gird*

* Hardly used beyond the infinitive and future.

191. Croire, to believe

1. *Infinitive*. **croire**; *fut.* croirai, etc.; *condl.* croirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croyant**; *impf. indic.* croyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croie, croies, croie, croyions, croyiez, croient.

3. *Past Part.* **cru**; *past indef.* j'ai cru, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **crois**, crois, croit, croyons, croyez, croient; *impve.* crois, croyons, croyez.

5. *Past Def.* **crus**, crus, crut, crûmes, crûtes, crurent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Like **croire**:

* accroire, *believe* (an untruth)

† décroire, *disbelieve*

* Found only in **faire accroire**, to *cause to believe* (an untruth).

† Used only in **je ne crois ni ne décrois**, I *neither believe nor disbelieve*.

192.

Croître, to grow

1. *Infinitive.* **croître**; *fut.* croîtrai, etc.; *condl.* croîtrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **croissant**; *impf. indic.* croissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* croisse, croisses, croisse, croissions, croissiez, croissent.

3. *Past Part.* **crû** (f. **crue**); *past indef.* j'ai crû, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **croïs**, croïs, croît, croissons, croissez, croissent; *impve.* croïs, croissons, croissez.

5. *Past Def.* **crûs**, crûs, crût, crûmes, crûtes, crûrent; *impf. subj.* crusse, crusses, crût, crussions, crussiez, crussent.

Obs.: The circumflex accent distinguishes several otherwise similar forms of **croître** and **croire**.

193.

Dire, to say, tell

1. *Infinitive.* **dire**; *fut.* dirai, etc.; *condl.* dirais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **disant**; *impf. indic.* disais, etc.; *pres. subj.* dise, dises, dise, disions, disiez, disent.

3. *Past Part.* **dit**; *past indef.* j'ai dit, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **dis**, dis, dit, disons, dites, disent; *impve.* dis, disons, dites.

5. *Past Def.* **dis**, dis, dit, dîmes, dîtes, dirent; *impf. subj.* disse, disses, dît, dissions, dissiez, dissent.

Like **dire**:

* contredire, *contradict*

* interdire, *interdict*

* prédire, *predict*

* dédire, *retract, deny*

* médire (de), *slander*

redire, *say again*

* The 2nd pl. *pres. indic.* and *impve.* is: Contredisez, dédisez, interdisez, etc.

NOTE. — **Maudire** is like **dire** only in infinitive, past participle (**maudit**), future, and conditional; otherwise like **finir**.

194. Écrire, to write

1. *Infinitive*. écrire; *fut.* écrirai, etc., *condl.* écrirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* écrivant; *impf. indic.* écrivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* écrive, écrives, écrive, écrivions, écriviez, écrivent.
3. *Past Part.* écrit; *past indef.* j'ai écrit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* écris, écris, écrit, écrivons, écrivez, écrivent; *impve.* écris, écrivons, écrivez.
5. *Past Def.* écrivis, écrivis, écrivit, écrivîmes, écrivîtes, écrivirent; *impf. subj.* écrivisse, écrivisses, écrivît, écrivissions, écrivissiez, écrivissent.

Like écrire are all verbs in -(s)crire:

circonscrire, <i>circumscribe</i>	prescrire, <i>prescribe</i>	souscrire, <i>subscribe</i>
décrire, <i>describe</i>	proscrire, <i>proscribe</i>	transcrire, <i>transcribe</i>
inscrire, <i>inscribe</i>	récrire, <i>rewrite</i>	

195. Faire, to do, make

1. *Infinitive*. faire; *fut.* ferai [f(ə)re], etc.; *condl.* ferais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* faisant [fəzā]; *impf. indic.* faisais [fəzε], etc.; *pres. subj.* fasse, fasses, fasse, fassions, fassiez, fassent.
3. *Past Part.* fait; *past indef.* j'ai fait, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fais, fais, fait, faisons [fəzɔ̃], faites, font; *impve.* fais, faisons, faites.
5. *Past Def.* fis, fis, fit, fîmes, fîtes, firent; *impf. subj.* fisse, fisses, fît, fissions, fissiez, fissent.

Like faire:

contrefaire, <i>imitate</i>	méfaire, <i>harm</i>	refaire, <i>do again</i>
défaire, <i>undo</i>	parfaire, <i>complete</i>	satisfaire, <i>satisfy</i>
forfaire, <i>forfeit</i>	redéfaire, <i>undo again</i>	surfaire, <i>overcharge</i>

196. Frire, to fry (intr.)

1. *Infinitive*. frire; *fut.* frirai, etc.; *condl.* frirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* —; *impf. indic.* —; *pres. subj.* —.
3. *Past Part.* frit; *past indef.* j'ai frit, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* fris, fris, frit, —, —, —; *impve.* fris, —, —.
5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

197.

Lire, to read

1. *Infinitive.* lire; *fut.* lirai, etc.; *condl.* lirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* lisant; *impf. indic.* lisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* lise, lises, lise, lisions, lisiez, lisent.
3. *Past Part.* lu; *past indef.* j'ai lu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* lis, lis, lit, lisons, lisez, lisent; *impve.* lis, lisons, lisez.
5. *Past Def.* lus, lus, lut, lûmes, lûtes, lurent; *impf. subj.* lusse, lusses, lût, lussions, lussiez, lussent.

Like lire:

élire, *elect*

réélire, *reëlect*

relire, *read again*

198.

Mettre, to place, put

1. *Infinitive.* mettre; *fut.* mettrai, etc.; *condl.* mettrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* mettant; *impf. indic.* mettais, etc.; *pres. subj.* mette, mettes, mette, mettions, mettiez, mettent.
3. *Past Part.* mis; *past indef.* j'ai mis, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* mets, mets, met, mettons, mettez, mettent; *impve.* mets, mettons, mettez.
5. *Past Def.* mis, mis, mit, mêmes, mîtes, mirent; *impf. subj.* misse, misses, mît, missions, missiez, missent.

Like mettre:

se mettre, *begin*

admettre, *admit*

commettre, *commit*

compromettre, *compromise*

démettre, *dismiss*

émettre, *emit*

s'entremettre, *interpose*

omettre, *omit*

permettre, *permit*

promettre, *promise*

remettre, *put back, hand to*

repromettre, *promise again*

soumettre, *submit*

transmettre, *transmit*

199.

Moudre, to grind

1. *Infinitive.* moudre; *fut.* moudrai, etc.; *condl.* moudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* moulant; *impf. indic.* moulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* moule, moules, moule, moulions, mouliez, moulent.
3. *Past Part.* moulu; *past indef.* j'ai moulu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* mouds, mouds, moud, moulons, moulez, moulent; *impve.* mouds, moulons, moulez.
5. *Past Def.* moulus, moulus, moulut, moulûmes, moulûtes, moulurent; *impf. subj.* moulusse, moulusses, moulût, moulussions, moulussiez, moulussent.

Like moudre:

émoudre, *whet*

remoudre, *grind again*

rémoudre, *sharpen*

200. Naître, to be born, arise, etc.

1. *Infinitive*. **naître**; *fut.* naîtrai, etc.; *condl.* naîtrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **naissant**; *impf. indic.* naissais, etc.; *pres. subj.* naisse, naisses, naisse, naissions, naissiez, naissent.
3. *Past Part.* **né**; *past indef.* je suis né, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **nais**, nais, naît, naissons, naissez, naissent; *impve.* nais, naissons, naissez.
5. *Past Def.* **naquis**, naquis, naquît, naquîmes, naquîtes, naquirent; *impf. subj.* naquisse, naquisses, naquît, naquissions, naquissiez, naquissent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel **i** has the circumflex (**î**) everywhere before **t**.

Like **naître**:

renaître, *revive*

201. Plaire, to please

1. *Infinitive*. **plaire**; *fut.* plairai, etc.; *condl.* plairais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **plaisant**; *impf. indic.* plaisais, etc.; *pres. subj.* plaise, plaies, plaise, plaissions, plaissiez, plaisent.
3. *Past Part.* **plu**; *past indef.* j'ai plu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **plais**, plais, plaît, plaçons, plaisez, plaisent; *impve.* plais, plaçons, plaisez.
5. *Past Def.* **plus**, plus, plut, plûmes, plûtes, plurent; *impf. subj.* plusse, plusses, plût, plussions, plussiez, plussent.

Like **plaire**:

complaire, *humor*

déplaire, *displease*

* taire, *say nothing about*

* Il **taît** has no circumflex.

202. Prendre, to take

1. *Infinitive*. **prendre**; *fut.* prendrai, etc.; *condl.* prendrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **prenant**; *impf. indic.* prenais, etc.; *pres. subj.* prenne, prennent, prenne, prenions, preniez, prennent.
3. *Past Part.* **pris**; *past indef.* j'ai pris, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **prends**, prends, prend, prenons, prenez, prennent; *impve.* prends, prenons, prenez.
5. *Past Def.* **pris**, pris, prit, primes, prîtes, prirent; *impf. subj.* prisse, prisses, prît, prissions, prissiez, prissent.

Like **prendre** are its compounds:

apprendre, *learn*

entreprendre, *undertake*

rapprendre, *learn again*

déprendre, *part*

s'éprendre, *be taken*

repprendre, *take back*

désapprendre, *unlearn*

se méprendre, *be mistaken*

surprendre, *surprise*

comprendre, *understand*

203. Résoudre, to resolve

1. *Infinitive.* résoudre; *fut.* résoudrai, etc.; *condl.* résoudrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* résolvant; *impf. indic.* résolvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* résolve, résolves, résolve, résolvions, résolviez, résolvent.
3. *Past Part.* résolu and *résous; *past indef.* j'ai résolu, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* résous, résous, résout, résolvons, résolvez, résolvent; *impve.* résous, résolvons, résolvez.
5. *Past Def.* résolu, résolu, résolut, résolûmes, résolûtes, résolurent; *impf. subj.* résolusse, résolusses, résolût, résolussions, résolussiez, résolussent.

* Of restricted usage.

Like résoudre:

* absoudre, *absolve*

* dissoudre, *dissolve*

* *Past part.* absous (f. *absoute*), dissous (f. *dissoute*), respectively; lack the past definite and imperfect subjunctive.

204. Rire, to laugh

1. *Infinitive.* rire; *fut.* rirai, etc.; *condl.* rirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* riant; *impf. indic.* riaais, etc.; *pres. subj.* rie, ries, rie, riions, riiez, rient.
3. *Past Part.* ri; *past indef.* j'ai ri, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* ris, ris, rit, rions, riez, rient; *impve.* ris, rions, riez.
5. *Past Def.* ris, ris, rit, rîmes, rîtes, rirent; *impf. subj.* risse, risses, rît, rissions, rissiez, rissent.

Like rire:

se rire, *make sport (of, de)*

sourire, *smile*

205. Sourdre, to rise, spring up, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* sourdre; *fut.* il sourdra; *condl.* il sourdrait.
2. *Pres. Part.* sourdant; *impf. indic.* il sourdait; *pres. subj.* il sourde.
3. *Past Part.* —; *past indef.* —.
4. *Pres. Indic.* —, —, sourd, —, —, sourdent; *impve.* —.
5. *Past Def.* il sourdit; *impf. subj.* il sourdît.

NOTE. — Little used beyond the infin. and third sing. pres. indic.

206. Suivre, to follow

1. *Infinitive.* suivre; *fut.* suivrai, etc.; *condl.* suivrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* suivant; *impf. indic.* suivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* suive, suives, suive, suivions, suiviez, suivent.

3. *Past Part.* **suivi**; *past indef.* j'ai suivi, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **suis**, suis, suit, suivons, suivez, suivent; *impve.* suis, suivons, suivez.

5. *Past Def.* **suivis**, suivis, suivit, suivîmes, suivîtes, suivirent; *impf. subj.* suivisse, suivisses, suivît, suivissions, suivissiez, suivissent.

Like **suivre**:

s'ensuivre (impers.), *it follows*

poursuivre, *pursue*

207.

Tistre, *to weave*

Used only in the *past part.* **tissu**, and compound tenses.

208.

Traire, *to milk*

1. *Infinitive.* **traire**; *fut.* trairai, etc.; *condl.* trairais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **trayant**; *impf. indic.* trayais, etc.; *pres. subj.* traie, traies, traie, trayions, trayiez, traient.

3. *Past Part.* **trait**; *past indef.* j'ai trait, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **trais**, trais, trait, trayons, trayez, traient; *impve.* trais, trayons, trayez.

5. *Past Def.* —; *impf. subj.* —.

Like **traire**:

abstraire, *abstract*

extraire, *extract*

soustraire, *subtract*

attirer, *attract*

retraire, *darn*

* braire, *bray*

distraire, *distract*

retraire, *redeem (legal)*

* Commonly used only in the infin. and the third pers. pres. indic., fut. and cond.

209.

Vaincre, *to conquer*

1. *Infinitive.* **vaincre**; *fut.* vaincrai, etc.; *condl.* vaincrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vainquant**; *impf. indic.* vainquais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vainque, vainques, vainque, vainquions, vainquiez, vainquent.

3. *Past Part.* **vaincu**; *past indef.* j'ai vaincu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaincs** [vẽ], vaincs, vainc, vainquons, vainquez, vainquent; *impve.* vaincs, vainquons, vainquez.

5. *Past Def.* **vainquis**, vainquis, vainquit, vainquîmes, vainquîtes, vainquirent; *impf. subj.* vainquisse, vainquisses, vainquît, vainquissions, vainquissiez, vainquissent.

Obs.: Stem c [k] becomes **qu** [k] before any vowel except **u**.

Like **vaincre**:

convaincre, *convince, convict*

210. Vendre, to sell

Irregular only in third singular present indicative: **Il vend** (t omitted).

Like **vendre**:

All verbs in **-andre, -endre,* -erdre, -ondre, -ordre**

* Except **prendre, reprendre, surprendre**, etc.

211. Vivre, to live

1. *Infinitive*. **vivre**; *fut.* vivrai, etc.; *condl.* vivrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **vivant**; *impf. indic.* vivais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vive, vives, vive, vivions, viviez, vivent.

3. *Past Part.* **vécu**; *past indef.* j'ai vécu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vis**, vis, vit, vivons, vivez, vivent; *impve.* vis, vivons, vivez.

5. *Past Def.* **vécus**, vécus, vécu, vécûmes, vécûtes, vécurent; *impf. subj.* vécusse, vécusses, vécût, vécussions, vécussiez, vécussent.

Like **vivre**:

revivre, *revive*

survivre, *survive*

IRREGULAR VERBS IN -oir

NOTE.—The few verbs in **-oir**, which are all irregular, form in some grammars a separate conjugation, the third, verbs in **-re** being the fourth.

212. Avoir, to have

See § 154 for the full conjugation of this verb.

Like **avoir**:

ravoir, *have again* (used only in the infinitive)

213. Recevoir, to receive

1. *Infinitive*. **recevoir**; *fut.* recevrai, etc.; *condl.* recevrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **recevant**; *impf. indic.* recevais, etc.; *pres. subj.* reçoive, reçoives, reçoive, recevions, receviez, reçoivent.

3. *Past Part.* **reçu**; *past indef.* j'ai reçu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **reçois**, reçois, reçoit, recevons, recevez, reçoivent; *impve.* reçois, recevons, recevez.

5. *Past Def.* **reçus**, reçus, reçut, reçûmes, reçûtes, reçurent; *impf. subj.* reçusse, reçusses, reçût, reçussions, reçussiez, reçussent.

Obs.: 1. Stem-vowel becomes **oi** wherever it bears the stress. 2. Stem **c** [s] is written **ç** [s] before **o** or **u** (§ 5, 4).

Like **recevoir**:

apercevoir, *perceive*
concevoir, *conceive*

décevoir, *deceive*

percevoir, *collect taxes*

214.

Devoir, to owe

1. *Infinitive*. **devoir**; *fut.* devrai, etc.; *condl.* devrais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **devant**; *impf. indic.* devais, etc.; *pres. subj.* doive, doives, doive, devions, deviez, doivent.
3. *Past Part.* **dû** (f. **due**, pl. **du(e)s**); *past indef.* j'ai dû, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **dois**, dois, doit, devons, devez, doivent; *impv.* —.
5. *Past Def.* **dus**, dus, dut, dûmes, dûtes, durent; *impf. subj.* dusse, dusses, dût, dussions, dussiez, dussent.

NOTE. — **Devoir** follows the **recevoir** model, but, as its forms present some difficulty, they have been given in full.

Like **devoir**:

redevoir, *still owe*

215.

Asseoir, to seat

1. *Infinitive*. **asseoir**; *fut.* assiérai, etc., or asseyerai, etc., or assoirai, etc.; *condl.* assiérais, etc., or asseyerais, etc., or assoirais, etc.
2. *Pres. Part.* **asseyant** or **assoyant**; *impf. indic.* asseyais, etc., or assoyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* asseye, asseyes, asseye, asseyions, asseyiez, asseyent, or assoie, assoies, assoie, assoyions, assoyiez, assoient.
3. *Past Part.* **assis**; *past indef.* j'ai assis, etc.
4. *Pres. Indic.* **assieds**, assieds, assied, asseyons, asseyez, asseyent, or **assois**, assois, assoit, assoyons, assoyez, assoient; *impv.* assieds, asseyons, asseyez, or assois, assoyons, assoyez.
5. *Past Def.* **assis**, assis, assit, assîmes, assîtes, assirent; *impf. subj.* assisse, assisses, assît, assissions, assissiez, assissent.

Like **asseoir**:

s'asseoir, *sit down* se rasseoir, *sit down again* * messeoir, *fit badly*
rasseoir, *reseat, calm* * seoir, *be becoming* † surseoir, *suspend, reprieve*

* Used in third person of the following: *Pres. indic.* sied, siént (messied, messiént); *impf. indic.* seyait, seyaient (messeyait, messeyaient); *pres. subj.* siée, siént (messiée, messiént); *fut.* siéra, siéront (messiéra, messiéront); *condl.* siérait, siéraient (messiérerait, messiéraient).

† Like the forms in **oi** (**oy**) of **asseoir**, but *fut.* and *condl.* surseoirai(s).

Verbs ending in -oir

5. *Past Def.* **mus**, mus, mut, mêmes, mûtes, murent; *impf. subj.* musse, musses, mût, mussions, mussiez, mussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** wherever stressed.

Like **mouvoir**:

* **émouvoir**, *arouse*

* **promouvoir**, *promote*

* Past participle has no circumflex accent.

220. **Pleuvoir**, *to rain* (impers.)

1. *Infinitive.* **pleuvoir**; *fut.* il pleuvra; *condl.* il pleuvrait.

2. *Pres. Part.* **pleuvant**; *impf. indic.* il pleuvait; *pres. subj.* il pleuve.

3. *Past Part.* **plu**; *past indef.* il a plu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* il **pleut**; *impv.* —.

5. *Past Def.* il **plut**; *impf. subj.* il plût.

221. **Pouvoir**, *to be able*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **pouvoir**; *fut.* pourrai, etc.; *condl.* pourrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **pouvant**; *impf. indic.* pouvais, etc.; *pres. subj.* puisse, puisses, puisse, puissions, puissiez, puissent.

3. *Past Part.* **pu**; *past indef.* j'ai pu.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **puis** or **peux**, peux, peut, pouvons, pouvez, peuvent; *impv.* —.

5. *Past Def.* **pus**, pus, put, pûmes, pûtes, purent; *impf. subj.* pusse, pussés, pût, pussions, pussiez, pussent.

Obs.: The first sing. pres. indic. in negation is usually **je ne peux pas** or **je ne puis**; in questions, only **puis-je**? otherwise **puis** or **peux**.

222. **Savoir**, *to know*, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **savoir**; *fut.* saurai, etc.; *condl.* saurais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **sachant**; *impf. indic.* savais, etc.; *pres. subj.* sache, saches, sache, sachions, sachiez, sachent.

3. *Past Part.* **su**; *past indef.* j'ai su, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **sais** [se], sais, sait, savons, savez, savent; *impv.* sache, sachons, sachez.

5. *Past Def.* **sus**, sus, sut, sûmes, sûtes, surent; *impf. subj.* susse, susses, sût, sussions, sussiez, sussent.

223. **Valoir**, *to be worth*

1. *Infinitive.* **valoir**; *fut.* vaudrai, etc.; *condl.* vaudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **valant**; *impf. indic.* valais, etc.; *pres. subj.* vaille, vailles, vaille, valions, valiez, vaillent.

Impf. subj. vaille

3. *Past Part.* **valu**; *past indef.* j'ai valu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vaux**, vaux, vaut, valons, valez, valent; *impve.* vaux, valons, valez.

5. *Past Def.* **valus**, valus, valut, valûmes, valûtes, valurent; *impf. subj.* valusse, valusses, valût, valussions, valussiez, valussent.

Like **valoir**:

équivaloir, *be equivalent*

* prévaloir, *prevail*

† chaloir

revaloir, *pay back, return*

like for like

* *Pres. subj.* **prévale**, etc.

† Hardly used beyond, *Il ne me chaut de, I care not for.*

224.

Voir, to see

1. *Infinitive.* **voir**; *fut.* verrai, etc.; *condl.* verrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voyant**; *impf. indic.* voyais, etc.; *pres. subj.* voie, voies, voie, voyions, voyiez, voient.

3. *Past Part.* **vu**; *past indef.* j'ai vu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **vois**, vois, voit, voyons, voyez, voient; *impve.* vois, voyons, voyez.

5. *Past Def.* **vis**, vis, vit, vîmes, vîtes, virent; *impf. subj.* visse, visses, vît, vissions, vissiez, vissent.

Like **voir**:

entrevoir, *catch sight of* * pourvoir, *provide*

† prévoir, *foresee*

revoir, *see again*

* dépourvoir, *strip, leave destitute*

* *Past def.* **-vus**, etc.; *impf. subj.* **-vusse**, etc.; *fut. and condl.* **-voirai(s)**, regular.

† *Fut. and condl.* **-voirai(s)**, etc., regular.

225.

Vouloir, to will, etc.

1. *Infinitive.* **vouloir**; *fut.* voudrai, etc.; *condl.* voudrais, etc.

2. *Pres. Part.* **voulant**; *impf. indic.* voulais, etc.; *pres. subj.* veuille, veuilles, veuille, voulions, vouliez, veussent.

3. *Past Part.* **voulu**; *past indef.* j'ai voulu, etc.

4. *Pres. Indic.* **veux**, veux, veut, voulons, voulez, veulent; *impve.* veux, voulons, voulez.

5. *Past Def.* **voulus**, voulus, voulut, voulûmes, voulûtes, voulurent; *impf. subj.* voulusse, voulusses, voulût, voulussions, voulussiez, voulussent.

Obs.: Stem-vowel becomes **eu** whenever it is stressed.

NOTE. — The regular *impve.* **veux, voulons, voulez** is rare; **veuillez** = *have the kindness to* generally serves as second plural imperative.

226. Reference List of Irregular Verbs

NOTE.— Each verb in the list is referred to the section in which its irregularity is explained. For verbs in **-cer, -ger**, see § 156; for verbs in **-yer**, § 157; for verbs with stem-vowel **e** or **é**, § 158; for verbs in **-andre, -endre, -erdre, -ondre, -ordre**, § 210.

A		C			
abattre.....	§ 180	ceindre.....	§ 190	courir.....	§ 164
absoudre.....	203	chaloir.....	223	courre.....	164
abstenir.....	177	choir.....	216	couvrir.....	176
abstraire.....	208	circoncire.....	187	craindre.....	190
accourir.....	164	circonscrire.....	194	croire.....	191
accroire.....	191	circonvenir.....	178	croître.....	192
accueillir.....	165	clore.....	183	cueillir.....	165
acquérir.....	162	combattre.....	180	cuire.....	185
adjoindre.....	190	commettre.....	198	D	
admettre.....	198	comparaître.....	188	débattre.....	180
advenir.....	178	comparoir.....	188	décevoir.....	213
aller.....	160	complaire.....	201	déchoir.....	216
apercevoir.....	213	comprendre.....	202	déclore.....	183
apparaître.....	188	compromettre...	198	déconfire.....	187
apparoir.....	188	concevoir.....	213	déconstruire....	185
appartenir.....	177	conclure.....	184	découdre.....	189
apprendre.....	202	concourir.....	164	découvrir.....	176
assaillir.....	165	conduire.....	185	décrire.....	194
asseoir.....	215	confire.....	187	décroire.....	191
astreindre.....	190	conjoindre.....	190	dédire.....	193
atteindre.....	190	connaître.....	188	déduire.....	185
attirer.....	208	conquérir.....	162	défaillir.....	167
avenir.....	178	consentir.....	166	défaire.....	195
avoir.....	154	construire.....	185	déjoindre.....	190
B		contenir.....	177	démentir.....	166
battre.....	180	contraindre.....	190	démettre.....	198
bénir.....	163	contredire.....	193	départir.....	166
boire.....	181	contrefaire.....	195	dépeindre.....	190
bouillir.....	166	contrevenir.....	178	déplaire.....	201
braire.....	208	convaincre.....	209	dépourvoir.....	224
bruire.....	182	convenir.....	178	déprendre.....	202
		coudre.....	189	désapprendre...	202

desservir.....	§ 166
déteindre.....	190
détenir.....	177
détruire.....	185
devenir.....	178
dévêtir.....	179
devoir.....	214
dire.....	193
disconvenir.....	178
discourir.....	164
disjoindre.....	190
disparaître.....	188
dissoudre.....	203
distraindre.....	208
dormir.....	166

E

ébouillir.....	166
échoir.....	217
éclore.....	183
éconduire.....	185
écrire.....	194
élire.....	197
emboire.....	181
émettre.....	198
émoudre.....	199
émouvoir.....	219
empreindre.....	190
enceindre.....	190
enclore.....	183
encourir.....	164
endormir.....	166
enduire.....	185
enfreindre.....	190
enfuir.....	170
enjoindre.....	190
enquérir.....	162
ensuivre.....	206
entremettre.....	198
entreprendre.....	202
entretenir.....	177
entrevoir.....	224

entr'ouvrir.....	§ 176
envoyer.....	161
épreindre.....	190
éprendre.....	202
équivaloir.....	223
éteindre.....	190
être.....	154
étreindre.....	190
exclure.....	184
extraire.....	208

F

faillir.....	167
faire.....	195
falloir.....	218
feindre.....	190
férer.....	168
fleurir.....	169
forclore.....	183
forfaire.....	195
frir.....	196
fuir.....	170

G

geindre.....	190
gésir.....	171

H

haïr.....	172
-----------	-----

I

imboire.....	181
inclure.....	184
induire.....	185
inscrire.....	194
instruire.....	185
interdire.....	193
intervenir.....	178
introduire.....	185
issir.....	173

J

joindre.....	190
--------------	-----

L

lire.....	197
luire.....	185

M

maintenir.....	§ 177
maudire.....	193
méconnaître.....	188
médire.....	193
méfaire.....	195
mentir.....	166
méprendre.....	202
messeoir.....	215
mettre.....	198
moudre.....	199
mourir.....	174
mouvoir.....	219

N

naître.....	200
nuire.....	185

O

obtenir.....	177
offrir.....	176
oindre.....	190
omettre.....	198
ouïr.....	175
ouvrir.....	176

P

paître.....	188
paraître.....	188
parcourir.....	164
parfaire.....	195
partir.....	166
parvenir.....	178
peindre.....	190
percevoir.....	213
permettre.....	198
plaindre.....	190
plaire.....	201
pleuvoir.....	220
poindre.....	190
poursuivre.....	206
pouvoir.....	224
pouvoir.....	221
prédire.....	193

prendre.....	§ 202
prescrire.....	194
pressentir.....	166
prévaloir.....	223
prévenir.....	178
prévoir.....	224
produire.....	185
promettre.....	198
promouvoir.....	219
proscrire.....	194
provenir.....	178

Q

querir }	162
quérir }	

R

rabattre.....	180
rapprendre.....	202
rasseoir.....	215
ratteindre.....	190
ravoir.....	212
reboire.....	181
rebouillir.....	166
recevoir.....	213
rechoir.....	216
reclure.....	184
reconduire.....	185
reconnaître.....	188
reconquérir.....	162
reconstruire.....	185
recoudre.....	189
recourir.....	164
recouvrir.....	176
récrire.....	194
recueillir.....	165
recuire.....	185
redéfaire.....	195
redevenir.....	178
redevoir.....	214
redire.....	193
redormir.....	166
réduire.....	185

réécrire.....	§ 197
refaire.....	195
rejoindre.....	190
relire.....	197
reliquaire.....	185
remettre.....	198
remoudre.....	199
remoudre.....	199
renaître.....	200
rendormir.....	166
rentraire.....	208
renvoyer.....	161
repaître.....	188
reparaître.....	188
repartir.....	166
repeindre.....	190
repentir.....	166
reprendre.....	202
reproduire.....	185
repromettre.....	198
requérir.....	162
résoudre.....	203
ressentir.....	166
ressortir.....	166
ressouvenir.....	178
restreindre.....	190
reteindre.....	190
retenir.....	177
retraire.....	208
revaloir.....	223
revenir.....	178
revêtir.....	179
revivre.....	211
revoir.....	224
rire.....	204
rouvrir.....	176

S

saillir.....	165
satisfaire.....	195
savoir.....	222
secourir.....	164

séduire.....	§ 185
sentir.....	166
seoir.....	215
servir.....	166
sortir.....	166
souffrir.....	176
soumettre.....	198
sourdre.....	205
sourire.....	204
souscrire.....	194
soustraire.....	208
soutenir.....	177
souvenir.....	178
subvenir.....	178
suffire.....	187
suivre.....	206
surfaire.....	195
surprendre.....	202
surseoir.....	215
survenir.....	178
survivre.....	211

T

taire.....	201
teindre.....	190
tenir.....	177
tistre.....	207
traduire.....	185
traire.....	208
transcrire.....	194
transmettre.....	198
tressaillir.....	165

V

vaincre.....	209
valoir.....	223
vendre.....	210
venir.....	178
vêtir.....	179
vivre.....	211
voir.....	224
vouloir.....	225

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS

227. Avoir + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all transitive and of most intransitive verbs (cf. § 155).

228. Être + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs (§ 242), and of the following intransitives denoting motion or change of condition (cf. § 155):

aller, <i>go</i>	entrer, <i>enter, go (come) in</i>	rentrer, <i>go in again</i>
arriver, <i>arrive</i>	monter, <i>go up</i>	rester, <i>remain</i>
décéder, <i>die</i>	mourir, <i>die</i>	retourner, <i>go back</i>
descendre, <i>descend</i>	naître, <i>be born</i>	sortir, <i>go out</i>
échoir, <i>fall due</i>	partir, <i>set out</i>	tomber, <i>fall</i>
éclore, <i>hatch out</i>	remonter, <i>go up again</i>	venir, <i>come</i>

So also, the following compounds of **venir**:

devenir, <i>become</i>	parvenir, <i>attain</i>	survenir, <i>supervene</i>
redevenir, <i>become again</i>	provenir, <i>proceed</i>	
intervenir, <i>intervene</i>	revenir, <i>come back</i>	

229. 1. Avoir or être + the past participle forms the compound tenses of a number of intransitive verbs, the general distinction being that **avoir**, when so used, denotes action, while **être** denotes state or condition resulting from action:

Il a passé par Lyon.	He went by way of Lyons.
C'est passé de mode.	It is out of fashion.
Elle a grandi bien vite.	She grew up very fast.
Elle est grandie.	She is grown up.

2. Reference list of verbs with avoir or être:

aborder, <i>land</i>	déchoir, <i>decay</i>	empirer, <i>grow worse</i>
accourir, <i>run to</i>	décroître, <i>decrease</i>	expirer, <i>expire</i>
apparaître, <i>appear</i>	dégénérer, <i>degenerate</i>	grandir, <i>grow up</i>
baissér, <i>fall, decline</i>	demeurer, <i>remain</i>	passer, <i>pass</i>
cesser, <i>cease</i>	disparaître, <i>disappear</i>	réchapper, <i>escape again</i>
changer, <i>change</i>	échapper, <i>escape</i>	repasser, <i>pass again</i>
croître, <i>grow</i>	échouer, <i>be stranded, fail</i>	sonner, <i>strike, toll</i>
déborder, <i>overflow</i>	embellir, <i>grow handsomer</i>	vieillir, <i>grow old</i>

a. Any verb in the list, used transitively, must, of course, take **avoir** (§ 227):

Il m'a passé la plume.

He handed me the pen.

Avez-vous rentré votre blé ?

Have you taken in your wheat?

Ils ont descendu le tableau.

They have taken down the picture.

b. The meaning also determines the auxiliary in a few other cases:

Avoir

convenir, suit, become

disconvenir, not to suit, be discordant

repartir, reply

Nous sommes convenus du prix.

Le prix ne m'a pas convenu.

Être

convenir, agree

disconvenir, deny

repartir, go away again

We are (have) agreed on the price.

The price did not suit me.

USE OF VERB PHRASES

230. Auxiliary Function. Several verbs, when followed by an infinitive, have a sort of auxiliary function, and serve to form verb phrases of various values, modal, temporal, etc.:

1. **Vouloir** = *will, wish to, want to, desire to, etc.*:

Je ne veux pas rester.

I will not remain.

Il voudrait (bien) le savoir.

He would like to know it.

Elle n'a pas voulu m'écouter.

She would not listen to me.

Il aurait voulu le faire.

He would have liked to do so.

Veillez le faire.

Be so good as to do so.

a. Distinguish from 'will' of simple futurity:

Elle vous écoutera.

She will listen to you.

2. **Devoir** = *ought, should, must, be to, have to, be obliged to, intend to, etc.*, varies in force in different tenses:

Present: je dois rester.

I am to (have to, intend to, must) remain.

Imperfect: je devais parler.

I was to (had to, etc.) speak.

Future: je devrai revenir.

I shall have to (be obliged to) come back.

Conditional: je devrais écrire.

I ought to (should) write.

Past Indefinite: j'ai dû m'arrêter.

I have had to (been obliged to) stop, must have stopped.

Past Definite: je dus revenir.

I had to come back.

Conditional Anterior: j'aurais dû savoir.

I ought to have (should have) known.

3. **Pouvoir** = *can, be able to, be permitted to, may, etc.:*

Il ne pouvait pas porter le sac.

He could not carry the sack.

Puis-je aller à la ville?

May I go to town?

Ils auraient pu le faire.

They could (might) have done it.

Je pourrais le faire, si je voulais.

I could do it if I would.

Pouvaient-ils en trouver?

Could they find any?

Pourrais-je vous demander?

Might I ask you?

4. **Savoir** = *know how to, can, etc.:*

Elle sait chanter et danser.

She can sing and dance.

Il ne sait pas lire.

He can't read.

a. Distinguish **savoir** in this sense from **pouvoir**:

Elle est enrouée et ne *peut* pas chanter ce soir.

She is hoarse and cannot sing this evening.

b. The conditional with **ne** has peculiar idiomatic force:

Je *ne saurais* le croire.

I cannot believe it.

5. **Oser** = *dare*:

Je n'ose pas le lui dire.

I dare not tell him so.

NOTE. — The above five verbs are sometimes called 'Modal Auxiliaries.'

6. **Faire** = *make, cause to, cause to be, have, order, order to be, etc.:*

J'ai fait étudier les enfants.

I have made the children study.

Il les fera écouter.

He will make them listen.

Il s'est fait faire un habit.

He had a coat made for himself.

a. A governed substantive follows the infinitive, but a governed conjunctive personal pronoun (not reflexive) goes with **faire**:

Faites venir le domestique.

Have the servant come.

Faites-le venir.

Have him come.

b. If the infinitive with **faire** have a direct object, the personal object of **faire** must be indirect (cf. § 293, 2, a):

Je fis écrire mon fils.

I had my son write.

Je fis écrire un devoir à mon fils.

I made my son write an exercise.

Faites-le-lui écrire.

Make him write it.

Je le leur fis voir.

I showed them it.

c. Possible ambiguity is sometimes avoided by **par**:

Il fit porter le sac par le guide. He had the sack carried by the guide.

d. Note the (seeming) passive force of a transitive infinitive after **faire**:

Je ferai écrire une lettre. I shall have a letter written.

7. **Laisser** = *let*, is in construction somewhat like **faire**:

Laissez écrire les enfants. Let the children write.

Laissez-leur (or -les) écrire un devoir. Let them write an exercise.

8. The present and imperfect of **aller** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate future, as also in English:

Il va l'acheter. He is going to (is about to) buy it.

Nous allions nous arrêter. We were about to stop.

Il allait se noyer. He was on the point of drowning.

9. Similarly the present and imperfect of **venir de** + an infinitive give a kind of immediate past:

Je viens de le voir. I have just seen him.

Il venait de l'entendre. He had just heard it.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

231 General Rule. The verb agrees with its subject in number and person:

Les hommes sont mortels. Men are mortal.

Tout le monde est ici. Everybody is here.

Toi et moi (nous) ne faisons qu'un. You and I are but one.

232. Simple Subject. Special rules for the agreement of a verb with one subject are:

1. A collective subject singular, when not followed by **de**, or when followed by **de** + the singular, has regularly a singular verb:

Le peuple français est brave. The French people are brave.

Le sénat l'a décidé. The senate has (or have) decided it.

La plupart du monde le croit. Most people believe it.

2. A collective subject singular + **de** + a plural takes a plural verb, unless the sense of the collective be dominant:

Une nuée de sauvages l'attaquèrent.	A host of savages attacked him.
Une nuée de traits l'obscurcit.	A cloud of arrows hid him.
Une partie des soldats restent.	A part of the soldiers remain.
Une partie des bourgeois protesta.	A part of the citizens protested.
Cette sorte de poires est chère.	This sort of pears is dear.

a. When so used, adverbs of quantity, *e.g.*, **beaucoup**, **peu**, etc., the nouns **nombre**, **quantité**, without article, and **la plupart**, are regularly plural in sense; so also, **force**:

Beaucoup de gens pensent ainsi.	Many people think so.
Peu de gens le savent.	Few people know it.
Que d'ennemis m'attaquent!	How many enemies attack me!
Nombre d'Athéniens avaient fui.	Many Athenians had fled.
La plupart des soldats périrent.	Most of the soldiers perished.
Force sots le tenteront.	Many a fool will try it.

b. **Beaucoup**, **peu**, **combien**, used absolutely, are singular or plural according to the sense of the **de** clause implied; **la plupart** when so used is generally plural:

Beaucoup (<i>sc. de gens</i>) le croient.	Many (<i>sc. people</i>) believe it.
Peu (<i>sc. de ceci</i>) me suffira.	Little (<i>sc. of this</i>) will suffice me.
La plupart votèrent contre.	The majority voted nay.

c. **Plus d'un** is singular, unless reciprocal or repeated, and **moins de deux** is plural:

Plus d'un témoin a déposé.	More than one witness has sworn.
Moins de deux ne valent rien.	Less than two is no use.
Plus d'un fripon se dupent l'un l'autre.	More rogues than one cheat each other.
Plus d'un officier, plus d'un général furent tués.	More than one officer, more than one general was killed.

3. **Ce** requires a plural verb only when the predicate is a plural noun, a plural pronoun of the third person, or when **ce** refers to a preceding plural:

Sont-ce vos amis? — Ce sont eux.	Is it your friends? It is they.
Ce doivent être les siens.	Those must be his.
Ce sont nos semblables.	They are our fellow-creatures.
Ses désirs, ce sont sa loi.	His desires are his law.

But: **C'est moi; c'est toi; c'est lui; c'est nous; c'est vous.**

a. The third singular is often used for the third plural in this construction, more especially in familiar language or to avoid harsh locutions.

Est-ce les Anglais que je crains?	Is it the English that I fear?
C'est eux qui l'ont fait.	It is they who did it.
C'est des bêtises.	That is stupidity.
Ne fût-ce que quelques lignes.	If it were only a few lines.

b. The verb with *ce* is singular when the predicate is a numeral + a noun of collective force:

C'est dix heures qui sonnent.	It is ten o'clock that is striking.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------------

c. *Si ce n'est* is always singular:

Qui, si ce n'est nos parents?	Who, if it is not our parents?
-------------------------------	--------------------------------

4. *Il* (impers.) always has a singular verb, whatever be the logical subject:

Il est arrivé bien des choses.	There have happened many things.
Il en reste trois livres.	There remain three pounds of it.

a. *Importer* is construed personally or impersonally:

Qu'importe (important) les dépens?	What matters the cost?
------------------------------------	------------------------

233. Composite Subject. A verb common to two or more subjects is regularly plural; when the subjects differ in person, the verb agrees with the first person, if one subject is of the first person, otherwise with the second:

Toi et moi nous ne faisons qu'un.	You and I are but one.
Sa sœur et lui sont là.	His sister and he are there.

a. With subjects of different person, pleonastic *nous, vous* is generally used:

Vous et lui vous l'avez vu.	You and he have seen it.
-----------------------------	--------------------------

b. With *ou* = *or*, *ni . . . ni* = *neither . . . nor*, the verb is singular if the sense is clearly alternative, *i.e.*, the one subject excluding the other, otherwise generally plural; *l'un ou l'autre* is always singular:

Sa vie ou sa mort en dépend.	His life or death depends on it.
Ni lui ni votre frère n'aura ce poste.	Neither he nor your brother will have that post.
Ni l'un ni l'autre ne sont bons.	Neither is good.
L'une ou l'autre viendra.	The one or the other will come.
L'un ou l'autre jour me convient.	Either day suits me.

c. If the subjects (generally without *et*) are synonymous, or nearly so, or form a climax, the verb may be singular:

Sa dignité, sa noblesse frappa tout le monde.	His dignity, his nobility struck everybody.
L'heure, le lieu, le bras se choisit aujourd'hui.	The hour, the place, the arm are chosen to-day.
Une excuse, un mot le désarme.	An excuse, a word disarms him.

d. When the subjects are recapitulated by a word in the singular, *e.g.*, *tout*, *rien*, etc., the verb is singular agreeing with it:

Remords, crainte, périls, <i>rien</i> ne m'a retenue.	Remorse, fear, dangers, nothing de- terred me.
--	---

e. With an intervening clause, *e.g.*, *ainsi que*, *plus que*, etc., the subject is usually only apparently composite:

La vertu, plus que le savoir, élève l'homme.	Virtue, more than knowledge, elevates man.
---	---

f. Even with *et* the sense is occasionally singular, or distributive, or alternative, and a singular verb is required:

Le bien et le mal est en ta main.	Good and ill are in thy hand.
L'été est revenu et le soleil.	Summer has returned and the sun.
Tombe Argos et ses murs.	Let Argos and its walls fall.

234. Relative Subject. The verb agrees with the relative pronoun subject, which is itself of the number and person of the antecedent (see also Relative Pronoun, § 396):

C'est nous qui l'avons fait.	It is we who have done it.
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) Gods who hear me !

POSITION OF SUBJECT

235. General Rule. The subject usually precedes the verb. Exceptions to this rule are noted in the following sections.

236. Interrogative Word Order. Direct interrogation is expressed as follows:

1. A personal pronoun subject (also *ce* or *on*) follows the verb, and is joined to it by a hyphen:

Parlez-vous français?	Do you speak French?
Est-ce lui?	Is it he?

a. The letter **-t-** is inserted after a third singular with final vowel before a pronoun with initial vowel:

Parla-t-elle? **Parle-t-on?** Did she speak? Do they speak?

b. A final **e** of the first singular takes acute accent, but with the sound of [ɛ]:

Donné-je? [dɔnɛːʒ] Do I give?

2. A noun subject precedes the verb, and is repeated after it by a pleonastic pronoun; so also, possessive, demonstrative, and indefinite pronouns:

Cet homme parle-t-il anglais? Does that man speak English?
Cela est-il vrai? Is that true?
Les miens ne sont-ils pas bons? Are mine not good?

3. Questions are also asked by interrogative words (adjectives, pronouns, adverbs):

Quel poète a écrit cela? What poet wrote that?
À quelle heure partira son ami? At what time will his friend go?
Qui est là? Qu'y a-t-il? Who is there? What is the matter?
Lequel des deux est parti? Which of the two has gone?
Combien coûte cela? } How much does that cost?
Combien cela coûte-t-il? }

a. The word order of either of the last two examples is commonly permissible for noun subject under this rule.

b. The word order of the last example is obligatory when the verb has a direct object (not reflexive), or a prepositional complement, or when ambiguity might arise; this arrangement is preferable with **pourquoi?** or when a compound tense is used:

Où le roi tient-il sa cour? Where does the king hold his court?
De quoi le roi parle-t-il? Of what is the king speaking?
Quel prix le roi paya-t-il? What price did the king pay?
Jean qui aime-t-il? Whom does John love?
Pourquoi mon ami part-il? Why does my friend go?
Quand ce roi a-t-il été décapité? When was this king beheaded?

4. By prefixing **est-ce que?** a statement becomes a question without change in its word order:

Est-ce que vous partez? Are you going away?
Quand est-ce que vous partez? When are you going away?

a. The use of *est-ce que?* is permissible with all forms of the verb, but is obligatory with a monosyllabic first singular (except *ai-je? suis-je? dis-je? dois-je? fais-je? puis-je? sais-je? vais-je? vois-je?*), and is preferable to avoid forms like *donné-je?*:

Est-ce que je sers, moi?

Do I serve?

Est-ce que je parle de lui?

Do I speak of him?

5. Interrogation is also expressed by mere inflection of the voice, without change in word order:

Vous partez déjà?

You are going already?

237. Rhetorical Inversions. Owing to rhetorical considerations, the noun subject not uncommonly follows the verb, or the sentence assumes interrogative form, though not interrogative, as follows:

1. In interjected remarks explanatory of direct quotation, as in English:

Fais comme tu voudras, dit-il.

Do as you please, said he.

Que veux-tu? demanda la mère.

What do you wish? asked the mother.

2. In optative clauses when *que* is omitted, and also after the rare omission of *si, if*:

Vive le roi! Périssent le tyran!

(Long) live the king! Perish the tyrant!

Voulait-il de l'argent, son père lui en donnait toujours.

If he wished money, his father always gave him some.

Ne fût-ce que pour cela.

If it were only for that.

3. Very commonly after certain adverbs and adverbial locutions:

Du moins devrait-il attendre.

He should at least wait.

À peine le jour fut-il arrivé.

Hardly had the day arrived.

Such are:

à peine, hardly

* *peut-être, perhaps*

toutefois, however

aussi, hence

encore, besides

en vain, in vain

aussi bien, moreover

toujours, however

rarement, rarely

au moins, at least

tout au plus, at most

probablement, probably

du moins, at least

d'autant plus, the more

etc.

* *Peut-être que* does not cause inversion: *Peut-être qu'il le fera, Perhaps he will do so.*

4. Sometimes in exclamatory sentences:

Avons-nous crié!

Didn't we shout!

5. When a predicate adjective heads the phrase:

Telle fut la fin de Carthage.

Such was the end of Carthage.

Quelque riche que soit cet homme.

However rich that man is.

NOTE. — All the above inversions, except the last given, may take place whatever be the nature of the subject, but the following rules do not usually hold good for a personal pronoun subject.

6. Very commonly in a relative clause, especially when a second relative clause qualifies its subject:

Il fera ce que peut faire un homme qui se respecte.

He will do what a man can who respects himself.

Dites-moi ce qu'a fait votre ami.

Tell me what your friend did.

Dis-moi où est ton ami.

Tell me where your friend is.

NOTE. — The relative is unstressed (proclitic), and naturally stands next the verb which governs it.

7. Commonly after **c'est que**, and in the second member of a comparative sentence:**C'est en vous qu'espèrent tous.**

It is in you that all hope.

J'en ai plus que n'en a mon ami.

I have more of it than my friend has.

8. Commonly when an adverb, other than those mentioned in (3) above, *e.g.*, **ainsi**, **bientôt**, **ici**, **là**, etc., or an adverbial phrase heads the sentence:**Ainsi va le monde.**

So goes the world.

Bientôt viendra le printemps.

Spring will soon come.

À la tête de l'armée fut porté l'étendard sacré.

At the head of the army was carried the sacred standard.

9. Quite exceptionally, when the verb comes first:

Viendra un autre.

(Along) will come another.

NOTE. — No inversion of noun subject usually occurs if the verb has a direct object or a prepositional complement.

238. Indirect Interrogation. It has no special rules of word order apart from those of the clause in which it occurs:

Dis-moi ce qu'il a dit.

Tell me what he said.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

239. Formation. The passive voice of a transitive verb is formed from the auxiliary **être** + the past participle, which agrees with the subject of the verb in gender and number:

PRES. INFIN.	Être loué(e) or loué(e)s, <i>to be praised</i>
PERF. INFIN.	Avoir été loué(e) or loué(e)s, <i>to have been praised</i>
PRES. PART.	Étant loué(e) or loué(e)s, <i>being praised</i>
PERF. PART.	Ayant été loué(e) or loué(e)s, <i>having been praised</i>

PRESENT INDICATIVE	PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE
<i>I am (I am being) praised, etc.</i>	<i>I have been (I was) praised, etc.</i>
je suis } loué(e)	j'ai été } loué(e)
tu es }	tu as été }
il (elle) est }	il (elle) a été }
nous sommes }	nous avons été }
vous êtes }	vous avez été }
ils (elles) sont }	ils (elles) ont été } etc., etc.

Obs.: 1. The past participle **été** is always invariable. 2. The past participle after **vous** agrees with the sense: **Madame, vous serez méprisée de tous**, *Madam, you will be despised by all*.

240. The Agent. The person by whom the action is done is usually denoted by **par**, when a specific intention or definite volition is implied, and by **de** when the action is habitual, usual, or indefinite, a condition rather than a definite action:

Elle fut saisie <i>par</i> le voleur.	She was seized by the thief.
Le général fut suivi de près <i>par</i> l'ennemi.	The general was closely followed by the enemy.
La reine était suivie <i>de</i> ses dames.	The queen was followed by her ladies.
Ils sont aimés <i>de</i> tous.	They are loved by everybody.

241. Remarks. 1. Only transitive verbs regularly have the passive voice, but the intransitive **obéir**, **désobéir**, **pardonner** (§ 296, 2) may also be made passive:

Vous êtes pardonnés tous.	You are all pardoned.
Elle est toujours obéie.	She is always obeyed.

2. The passive is less used than in English, especially if the agent be not specified, or if the corresponding French

verb is intransitive, or if an indirect object be present. Substitutes are:

a. A verb with the indefinite pronoun **on**:

On m'a trompé.	I have been deceived.
On me soupçonne.	I am suspected.
On a répondu à ma question.	My question has been answered.
On lui a rendu l'argent.	The money has been given back to him.

b. A reflexive construction:

Ce livre se publie à Paris.	This book is published in Paris.
La guerre se prolongea.	The war was prolonged.
Voilà ce qui se dit.	This (<i>or that</i>) is what is being said.

3. A transitive infinitive in French sometimes equals a passive in English, after verbs of 'perceiving,' (**voir**, etc.), after **faire**, **laisser**, and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectivally (cf. § 284).

Le ferez-vous vendre?	Will you have it sold?
On entend dire cela.	You hear that said.
Une faute à éviter.	A. mistake to be avoided.

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

242. Compound Tenses. The auxiliary **être** + the past participle forms the compound tenses of all reflexive verbs, as follows:

PRES. INFIN.	Se flatter, <i>to flatter oneself</i>
PERF. INFIN.	S'être flatté(e) <i>or</i> flatté(e)s, <i>to have flattered oneself</i>
PRES. PART.	Se flattant, <i>flattering oneself</i>
PERF. PART.	S'étant flatté(e) <i>or</i> flatté(e)s, <i>having flattered oneself</i>

Indicative

PRESENT	PAST INDEFINITE
<i>I flatter myself, etc.</i>	<i>I (have) flattered myself, etc.</i>
je me flatte	je me suis
tu te flattes	tu t'es
il(elle) se flatte	il (elle) s'est
nous nous flattons	nous nous sommes
vous vous flattez	vous vous êtes
ils (elles) se flattent	ils (elles) se sont
	} flatté(e)
	} flatté(e)s
	} etc., etc.

Imperative

<i>Flatter thyself, etc.</i>	<i>Do not flatter thyself, etc.</i>
flatte-toi	ne te flatte pas
(qu'il se flatte)	(qu'il ne se flatte pas)
flattons-nous	ne nous flattons pas
flattez-vous	ne vous flattez pas
(qu'ils se flattent)	(qu'ils ne se flattent pas)

NOTES. — 1. **Se flatter, se flattant**, etc., are the infinitive and participial forms found in dictionaries, but **se** must be replaced by **me, te**, etc., according to the sense.

2. Except in the use of **être** as auxiliary, reflexive verbs have no peculiarities of conjugation on account of being reflexive.

243. Reflexive or Reciprocal. A reflexive verb often has reciprocal force, especially in the plural. Ambiguity is generally avoided by some modifying expression:

Elles <i>se flattent</i> .	{ They flatter themselves.
	{ They flatter each other.
Elles <i>se flattent l'une l'autre</i> .	They flatter one another.
On <i>se dupe mutuellement</i> .	They cheat each other.

244. Agreement of Past Participle. 1. In compound tenses, the past participle of a reflexive agrees in gender and number with the direct object, as in the case of verbs compounded with **avoir**:

Elle <i>s'est écriée</i> .	She cried out.
Elle <i>s'est dit</i> à elle-même.	She said to herself.
Ils <i>se sont écrit</i> .	They wrote to each other.
Elles <i>se sont acheté</i> des robes.	They bought themselves dresses.

2. Besides the reflexive object, a direct object may precede the verb, and with this object the participle agrees:

Les plumes qu'ils se sont achetées. The pens they bought themselves.

NOTES. — 1. The auxiliary **être** is considered as replacing **avoir**, and the above agreements are explained by the general principle (§ 291).

2. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense: **Vous vous êtes trompée, madame**, *You were mistaken, madam*.

245. Omission of Reflexive Object. 1. It is always omitted with the past participle used as attributive adjective:

Le temps écoulé.	The time past.
-------------------------	-----------------------

2. The infinitives of certain verbs, such as *s'asseoir*, *se souvenir*, *se taire*, regularly omit *se* when preceded by *faire*; but modern French has many exceptions.

Faites asseoir vos amis.

Make your friends sit down.

Je vous en ferai souvenir.

I shall remind you of it.

But also: *Il la fit se souvenir de . . .* He reminded her of . . .

a. A similar omission of *se* sometimes occurs after *laisser*, *entendre*, *voir*, etc.

246. Remarks. The reflexive construction is much commoner in French than in English:

1. It often translates the English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

La bourse s'est retrouvée.

The purse has been recovered.

Cela se raconte partout.

That is being told everywhere.

2. Or it is expressed by an English non-reflexive verb, generally intransitive:

S'arrêter; s'écrier; se porter.

Stop; exclaim; be (of health).

S'asseoir; se hâter; se tromper.

Sit down; hasten; be mistaken.

3. Or the French reflexive + a preposition has the value of an English transitive:

S'approcher de; se douter de.

Approach; suspect.

S'attendre à; se fier à.

Expect; trust.

Se passer de; se souvenir de.

Do without; recollect.

247. S'en Aller. The conjugation of *s'en aller*, *to go away*, presents special difficulty:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

I go away, etc.

je m'en vais

tu t'en vas

il s'en va

nous nous en allons

vous vous en allez

ils s'en vont

PAST INDEFINITE INDICATIVE

I have gone (I went) away, etc.

je m'en suis

tu t'en es

il (elle) s'en est

nous nous en sommes

vous vous en êtes

ils (elles) s'en sont

} allé(e)

} allé(e)s

IMPERATIVE	IMPERATIVE NEGATIVE
<i>Go away, etc.</i>	<i>Do not go away, etc.</i>
va-t'en	ne t'en va pas
(qu'il s'en aille)	(qu'il ne s'en aille pas)
allons-nous-en	ne nous en allons pas
allez-vous-en	ne vous en allez pas
(qu'ils s'en aillent)	(qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas)

Further examples:

Est-ce que je m'en vais?

Vous en allez-vous?

S'en sont-elles allées?

Ils ne s'en sont pas allés.

Ne nous en sommes-nous pas allé(e)s?

IMPERSONAL VERBS

248. Conjugation. An impersonal verb, or a verb used as such, is one conjugated, in the third singular only, with the subject *il* = *it*, *there*, used indefinitely and absolutely, *e.g.*, **tonner**, *to thunder*:

Indicative

PRES. Il tonne, <i>it thunders</i>	PAST INDF. Il a tonné, <i>it has thundered</i>
IMPF. Il tonnait, <i>it thundered</i>	PLUPF. Il avait tonné, <i>it had thundered</i>
PAST DEF. Il tonna, <i>it thundered</i>	PAST ANT. Il eut tonné, <i>it had thundered</i>

etc., etc., like the third singular of **donner**

NOTE. — Apart from being limited to the third singular, their conjugation does not differ from that of ordinary verbs. Some are regular, others irregular.

249. Use of Impersonals. 1. Verbs denoting natural phenomena and time are impersonal, as in English:

Il tonne; il a plu; il pleuvra.	It thunders; it rained; it will rain.
Il a gelé hier; il dégèle.	It froze yesterday; it is thawing.
Il est une heure; il est tard.	It is one o'clock; it is late.

Such verbs are:

pleuvoir, <i>rain</i>	grêler, <i>hail</i>	geler, <i>freeze</i>
neiger, <i>snow</i>	éclairer, <i>lighten</i>	dégeler, <i>thaw</i>

2. **Faire** = *make*, is also much used impersonally to describe weather, temperature, etc.:

Quel temps fait-il?	What kind of weather is it?
Il fait beau (temps) ce matin.	It is fine (weather) this morning.
Il a fait bien froid hier.	It was very cold yesterday.
Il faisait du vent aussi.	It was windy too.
Est-ce qu'il fera obscur ce soir?	Will it be dark this evening?
Il fait des éclairs.	It is lightning.

Obs.: Distinguish these from constructions with a personal subject:
Le temps est beau, *The weather is fine*; **L'eau est froide**, *The water is cold*.

250. Impersonal avoir and être. 1. The verb **avoir**, preceded by **y**, used impersonally = *there is, there are, there was, there were*, etc.:

Il y a. Il y a eu. Y a-t-il?	There is. There has been. Is there?
Il n'y a pas. Il n'y a pas eu.	There is not. There has not been.
Y a-t-il eu? N'y a-t-il pas eu?	Has there been? Has there not been?
Y aura-t-il? Il peut y avoir.	Will there be? There may be.

2. **Il est** is sometimes used for **il y a** in this sense:
Il est des hommes qui le croient. There are men who think so.

3. **Il y a** = *there is, there are*, is distinguished from **voilà** = *there is, there are*. **Voilà** answers the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a specific statement about an object to which attention is directed by pointing or the like, while **il y a** does not answer the question 'where is?' 'where are?' and makes a general statement.

Il y a des plumes sur la table.	There are pens on the table.
Voilà les plumes sur la table.	There are the pens on the table.

4. **Y avoir** also forms idiomatic expressions of time, reckoned backwards, and of distance:

Ils sont arrivés il y a trois jours.	They came three days ago.
Il y avait trois jours que j'étais là.	I had been there three days.
Combien y a-t-il d'ici à la ville?	How far is it to the city?
Il y a dix milles d'ici à la ville.	It is ten miles from here to the city.

251. Falloir = *be necessary*, expresses the various meanings of *must, be obliged to, have to, need*, as follows:

1. *Must* + infinitive = **falloir** + **que** and subjunctive:

Il faut que je parte.

I must go.

Il faudra que vous restiez.

You will have to (be obliged to) stay.

2. Or the subject of *must*, etc., if a personal pronoun, may become indirect object of **falloir** + an infinitive:

Il me faudrait rester.

I should be obliged to remain.

Il leur faut faire cela.

They must do that.

Il lui a fallu parler.

He was forced (obliged) to speak.

3. The infinitive construction without indirect object is used in general or indefinite statement:

Il faut faire son devoir.

One must do one's duty.

Il ne faut pas voler.

We must not steal.

4. **Falloir** + an indirect object and a substantive signifies *lack, need*:

Il faut une ardoise à Jean.

John needs a slate.

Il leur faudra cent francs.

They will need a hundred francs.

5. **S'en falloir** = *lack*:

Il s'en faut de beaucoup que l'un vaille l'autre.

The one is not nearly so good as the other.

252. Other Impersonals. 1. Besides **faire** and **avoir**, already noted, many other verbs take a special meaning as impersonals:

De quoi s'agit-il?

What is the matter?

Il est souvent arrivé que, etc.

It has often happened that, etc.

Il vaudra mieux ne rien dire.

It will be better to say nothing.

Il y va de ses jours.

His life is at stake.

Il se peut que je me trompe.

It may be that I am mistaken.

Obs.: Compare the literal meanings: **agir**, *act*, **arriver**, *arrive*, **valoir**, *be worth*, **aller**, *go*, **pouvoir**, *be able*.

2. Many verbs may stand in the third singular with impersonal **il** representing a logical subject, singular or plural, following the verb:

Il viendra un meilleur temps.

There will come a happier time.

Il en reste trois livres.

There remain three pounds of it.

Il est arrivé des messagers.

Messengers have arrived.

253. Omission of *il*. *Il* is understood in certain phrases, such as:

Reste à savoir.

It remains to be seen.

N'importe.

No matter (it matters not).

Mieux vaut tard que jamais.

Better late than never.

THE INDICATIVE MOOD

254. Use of Indicative. The indicative is the mood of direct or indirect assertion, and of direct or indirect interrogation. It stands both in principal and in subordinate clauses, both affirmative and negative:

Dieu créa le monde.

God created the world.

Moïse dit que Dieu créa le monde.

Moses says that God created the world.

Où allez-vous?

Where are you going?

Dites-moi où vous allez.

Tell me where you are going.

Je le ferais, si je pouvais.

I should do so if I could.

NOTES. — 1. It should be noted especially that the indicative is regularly the mood of indirect discourse and of 'if' clauses.

2. When the verb of a subordinate clause is subjunctive, the mood is determined by the context, and not simply by the fact that the clause is subordinate.

TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

255. Periphrastic Forms. Such forms, so common in English, are not used in French:

Je parle.

I speak (am speaking, do speak).

Il a écrit.

He has written (has been writing).

Il disait.

He was saying (used to say, etc.).

256. Elliptical Forms. Ellipsis of part of a verb form is common in English; in French the form is either fully given or entirely avoided:

J'irai. — Moi, je n'irai pas.

I shall go. — I shall not (go).

Il a promis de venir, mais il n'est pas venu.

He promised to come, but he did not (come).

Il est venu. — Vraiment!

Vous viendrez, n'est-ce pas?

Il était sorti, n'est-ce pas?

He has come. — Has he! (Indeed!)

You will come, will you not?

* He had gone out, had he not?

257. Present Indicative. The present tense is used:

1. To denote what is happening, including the habitual and the universally true:

Je crois qu'il pleut.

I think it is raining.

Il se lève toujours de bon matin.

He always rises early.

L'homme propose et Dieu dispose.

Man proposes and God disposes.

2. To denote what has happened and still continues, after *il y a . . . que, voici (voilà) . . . que, depuis, depuis quand? depuis . . . que*:

Depuis quand attendez-vous?

How long have you been waiting?

Il y a (*or* *voici, voilà*) trois jours
que j'*attends*, *or* j'*attends* de-
puis trois jours.

I have waited (I have been wait-
ing) for three days.

3. Instead of a past tense in animated narrative:

La nuit approche, l'instant arrive,
César se présente, etc.

Night draws on, the moment comes,
Cæsar appears, etc.

a. This use is much commoner than in English, especially side by side with past tenses. It is called the 'Historical Present.'

b. *C'est . . . que* + a past tense = *was . . . that*:

C'est là que je l'ai vu.

It was there that I saw him.

4. Instead of a future in familiar style:

Nous partons demain matin.

We go to-morrow morning.

5. As a virtual future after *si* = *if*:

Je serai content, si vous venez.

I shall be glad if you (will) come.

258. Imperfect Indicative. The action or state denoted by the imperfect is in general viewed as being in progress, *i.e.*, as contemporaneous, customary, continued, etc., and it is employed as follows:

1. To denote what was happening, when something else happened or was happening:

Il était nuit, quand je sortis. It was night when I went out.
 Il parlait, pendant que je chantais. He was talking while I sang.

2. To denote what used to happen:

Il se levait de bon matin. He used to rise early.
 Je parlais souvent de cela. I often spoke (used to speak, would speak) of that.
 Les Romains brûlaient leurs morts. The Romans were accustomed to burn their dead.

3. To denote what continued to happen:

Son père était négociant et demeurait dans cette rue. His father was a merchant and lived in this street.

4. To denote what had happened and still continued, after il y a . . . que, voici (voilà) . . . que, depuis, depuis quand? depuis . . . que (cf. § 257, 2):

Je le *disais* depuis longtemps. I had long been saying so.
 Voilà un an que je le *disais*. I had been saying so for a year.

5. In indirect discourse, after a past tense, instead of the present:

Je croyais qu'il revenait. I thought he was coming back.
 Je demandai où il était. I asked where he was.
 But: Où *est-il*? demandai-je. "Where is he?" I asked.

6. Regularly in an 'if' clause when the 'result' clause is conditional:

S'il *venait*, je serais content. If he came, I should be glad.

7. Occasionally, instead of the conditional anterior in conditional sentences:

Si je ne l'avais pas arrêté, il *tombait* (= serait tombé) du train. Had I not stopped him he would have fallen from the train.

8. Sometimes instead of the past definite (§ 260):

Un moment après, le père Alphée se dressait, marchait à grands pas, voilà, s'écriait-il, etc. A moment afterwards, Father Alphée rose, walked about with great strides, "There," cried he, etc.

259. Past Indefinite. The past indefinite is used:

1. To denote what has happened or has been happening, equivalent to an English tense with 'have,' reference to the present being implied:

J'ai fini mon ouvrage.

I have finished my work.

L'avez-vous vu dernièrement?

Have you seen him lately?

Je l'ai souvent rencontré.

I have often met him.

J'ai chanté toute la matinée.

I have been singing all morning.

2. In familiar style, spoken or written, to denote a past event, without implied reference to the present, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of a narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' For narrative in the literary style, see § 260:

Ils sont arrivés ce soir.

They arrived this evening.

Je l'ai vu il y a dix ans.

I saw him ten years ago.

De quoi est-il mort?

What did he die of?

J'ai quitté Rome le dix. Puis je suis allé voir des amis à Lyon, j'ai passé quelques jours à Paris, et je suis revenu à Londres hier.

I left Rome on the tenth. Then I visited some friends at Lyons, I spent some days in Paris, and I came back to London yesterday.

3. Occasionally instead of a future anterior:

Attendez, j'ai bientôt fini.

Wait, I shall have finished soon.

260. Past Definite. The past definite denotes a past event, or a succession of such past events as mark the progress of the narrative, answering the question 'What happened?' or 'What happened next?' Its use is largely confined to literary or "book" French, and formal public address. It is not much used in conversation or in easy correspondence:

Dieu *créa* le monde.

God created the world.

La guerre *dura* sept ans.

The war lasted seven years.

On *força* le palais, les scélérats *n'osèrent* pas résister longtemps et ne *songèrent* qu'à fuir. Astarbé *voulut* se sauver dans la foule, mais un soldat *la reconnut*; elle *fut prise*.

They broke into the palace, the villains did not dare to resist long, and only thought of fleeing. Astarbé tried to escape in the crowd, but a soldier recognized her; she was captured.

a. Some verbs have a special force in the past definite:

Être: je *fus*.

To be: I became.

Avoir: j'*eus*.

To have: I received.

Savoir: je *sus*.

To know: I found out (learned).

Connaître: je *connus*.

To know: I realized.

In this force *fus* and *sus* are common, the other two less so.

261. Examples of Narrative. 1. The following examples illustrate the principal uses of the past definite, imperfect, past indefinite, and historical present, in the literary narrative style:

Les Turcs, qui cependant **entouraient** cette maison tout embrasée, **voyaient** avec une admiration mêlée d'épouvante que les Suédois n'en **sortaient** point; mais leur étonnement **fut** encore plus grand lorsqu'ils **virent** ouvrir les portes, et le roi et les siens fondre sur eux en désespérés. Charles et ses principaux officiers **étaient** armés d'épées et de pistolets: chacun **tira** deux coups à la fois à l'instant que la porte **s'ouvrit**; et dans le même clin d'œil, jetant leurs pistolets et s'armant de leurs épées, ils **firent** reculer les Turcs plus de cinquante pas; mais le moment d'après cette petite troupe **fut** entourée: le roi, qui **était** en bottes selon sa coutume, **s'embarrassa** dans ses éperons, et **tomba**; vingt et un janissaires se **jettent** aussitôt sur lui: il **jette** en l'air son épée pour s'épargner la douleur de la rendre; les Turcs **l'emmènent** au quartier du bacha. — *Voltaire*.

Stanislas se **déroba** un jour à dix heures du soir de l'armée suédoise qu'il **commandait** en Poméranie, et **partit** avec le baron Sparre, qui **a été** depuis ambassadeur en Angleterre et en France, et avec un autre colonel: il **prend** le nom d'un Français, nommé Haran, alors major au service de Suède, et qui **est mort** depuis commandant de Dantzick.

— *Voltaire*.

2. So nearly identical may be the force of the past definite and the past indefinite, as narrative tenses, that they are often used interchangeably, as in the following extract, taken from a newspaper:

LONDRES, 5 août. — Hier soir, à onze heures et demie, un incendie **a éclaté** dans l'atelier de composition de la *National Press Agency*. Plusieurs pompes à vapeur **arrivèrent** immédiatement sur le lieu du sinistre, et l'incendie **s'étendit** avec une telle rapidité, que toute la maison **a été** complètement détruite. — *Le Matin*.

262. Pluperfect and Past Anterior. 1. Both denote what 'had happened,' like the English pluperfect:

Lorsque je l'avais (eus) fini.

When I had finished it.

2. The pluperfect is of much commoner occurrence than the past anterior, and is used after *si* = *if*, in conditional clauses, or when custom, continuance, etc., is implied (but cf. §§ 258, 275, *b*):

Si je l'avais vu, je l'aurais dit.

Had I seen it, I should have said so.

J'avais toujours fini avant midi.

I always had finished before noon.

3. The past anterior denotes what had happened immediately before another past event. It is rarely used except after conjunctions of time, such as *lorsque*, *quand*, *après que*, *aussitôt que*, *ne . . . pas plus tôt . . . que*, etc.:

Après qu'il eut dîné, il partit.

After he had dined, he set out.

263. Future. The future is used:

1. To denote what will happen:

Ils viendront demain.

They will come to-morrow.

Je les verrai bientôt.

I shall see them soon.

Je ne sais pas s'il viendra.

I know not whether he will come.

a. Distinguish English 'will' of futurity from 'will' of volition, and from 'will' of habitual action:

Il ne restera pas.

He will not stay.

Il ne veut pas rester.

He will not stay.

Ce chasseur reste souvent dans les bois pendant des mois entiers.

That hunter will often remain whole months in the woods.

b. Observe the following commonly occurring forms:

Ne voulez-vous pas rester?

Will you not stay?

Voulez-vous que je reste?

Shall I stay?

Je ne resterai pas.

I shall not stay.

2. Regularly in a subordinate clause of implied futurity:

Payez-le quand il viendra.

Pay him when he comes.

Faites comme vous voudrez.

Do as you please.

Tant que je vivrai.

As long as I live.

3. To denote probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc.:

4. Sometimes with imperative force:

a. This use is common in official style (edicts, etc.).

1. To denote what will have happened:

2. To denote implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2), probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc. (cf. § 263, 3):

265. Conditional. 1. The main use of the conditional is to denote result dependent on condition, *i.e.*, what would happen in case something else were to happen:

a. The condition on which the result would depend is often merely implied, but not formally stated:

b. Distinguish English 'should' of duty, etc., 'would' of volition, and 'would' of past habit, from conditional 'should' and 'would':

2. It corresponds to an English past in a subordinate clause of implied futurity (cf. § 263, 2):

3. In indirect discourse, it denotes what was once future and is now regarded as past, *i.e.*, the original future of the

assertion or question becomes a conditional when in a clause subordinate to a verb in a past tense:

Je croyais qu'il pleuvrait.

I thought it would rain.

A-t-il dit s'il le ferait?

Did he say whether he would do so?

But: Je le ferai, dit-il.

"I shall do so," said he.

4. It is used in statement or request expressed with deference or reserve:

Je le croirais au moins.

I should think so, at least.

Auriez-vous la bonté d'y aller?

Would you have the kindness to go?

Cela ne serait jamais vrai.

That never could (can) be true

Je ne saurais vous le dire.

I cannot tell you.

Je voudrais qu'il fût (soit) ici.

I wish he were here.

5. It sometimes denotes probability, conjecture, or possibility, etc., in exclamations and questions (cf. § 263, 3):

Serait-il vrai qu'il l'ait dit?

Can it be true that he said so?

Serait-il possible?

Can (could) it be possible?

6. It sometimes denotes concession after **quand, quand même**, or with **que**:

Quand (même) il me tuerait, etc.

Even if he should kill me, etc.

Vous me le jureriez que je ne vous croirais pas.

Even if you swore it to me, I should not believe you.

7. It is used to give the substance of hearsay information: **À ce qu'on dit, le roi serait malade.** By what they say, the king is ill.

266. Conditional Anterior. Its uses are precisely parallel with those of the conditional (§ 265); it denotes what would have happened, etc., etc.:

Je serais parti, s'il était venu.

I should have gone had he come.

Selon les journaux, la guerre se serait déclarée hier soir.

According to the newspapers, war was declared last evening.

267. Imperative Mood. It is used in general as in English:

Lisez-le. Ne le lisez pas.

Read it. Do not read it.

Allons-nous-en à présent.

Let us go away now.

Veuillez m'écouter.

Be good enough to hear me.

a. The first plural sometimes serves instead of the lacking first singular:

Soyons digne de ma naissance.	Let me be worthy of my birth.
Pensons un moment.	Let me think a moment.

b. The imperatives *va*, *allons*, *allez*, *voyons*, often have special idiomatic force:

<i>Allons donc! Allons, du courage!</i>	Nonsense! Come, courage!
<i>J'en suis content, allez!</i>	I am glad of it, I can assure you!
<i>Voyons, que pensez-vous?</i>	Come now, what do you think?

c. An imperative perfect is rare:

<i>Ayez fini votre tâche ce soir.</i>	Have your task done to-night.
---------------------------------------	-------------------------------

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

268. General Function. The subjunctive denotes, in general, what is viewed as being desirable or undesirable, uncertain, contingent, or the like, and usually stands in a subordinate clause.

269. Subjunctive in Noun Clause. The subjunctive is used in a clause introduced by *que* and serving as logical subject or as object of a verb:

1. After expressions of desiring (including willing, wishing, preferring) and avoiding:

<i>Je désire (veux) qu'il parte.</i>	I desire (wish) him to go.
<i>Voulez-vous que je reste?</i>	Do you wish me to (shall I) stay?
<i>Je souhaite qu'il ait du succès.</i>	I wish that he may have success.
<i>Il préfère que vous restiez.</i>	He prefers that you should stay.
<i>Évitez qu'il (ne) vous voie.</i>	Avoid his seeing you.

Such are:

<i>aimer, like</i>	<i>éviter, avoid</i>	<i>souhaiter, wish</i>
<i>aimer mieux, prefer</i>	<i>préférer, prefer</i>	<i>il me tarde, I long</i>
<i>avoir envie, be desirous</i>	<i>prendre garde, take</i>	<i>vouloir, will, wish,</i>
<i>désirer, desire, wish</i>	<i>care (lest)</i>	<i>etc.</i>

a. *Prendre garde* requires *ne* in the subjunctive clause; so also, *éviter* generally.

Prends garde que cela ne se fasse. Take care lest that happen.

2. After expressions of commanding (including requesting, exhorting), forbidding, consenting:

Vous ordonnez que je m'en aille.	You order me to go.
Je demande que vous me payiez.	I ask that you should pay me.
Dis-leur qu'ils soient prêts.	Tell them to be ready.
Le médecin défend que je sorte.	The doctor forbids me to go out.
Je consens que cela se fasse.	I consent that that be done.

Such are:

admettre, <i>admit</i>	demander, <i>ask</i>	permettre, <i>permit</i>
agréer, <i>permit</i>	empêcher, <i>hinder</i>	prier, <i>beg, ask</i>
avoir soin, <i>take care</i>	exhorter, <i>exhort</i>	souffrir, <i>suffer</i>
conjurér, <i>implore</i>	exiger, <i>exact</i>	supplier, <i>beg, pray</i>
consentir, <i>consent</i>	laisser, <i>allow</i>	trouver naturel, <i>find natural</i>
convenir, <i>agree</i>	s'opposer, <i>oppose</i>	veiller, <i>take care</i>
défendre, <i>forbid</i>	ordonner, <i>order</i>	etc.

So also, **dire**, *tell*, **écrire**, *write*, **entendre**, *mean*, **prétendre**, *intend*, when denoting command.

a. The future or conditional often stands after **arrêter**, **commander**, **décider**, **décréter**, etc., especially when the subject is a word denoting final authority, such as **cour**, **roi**, etc.:

Le roi décrète qu'il sera pendu.	The king decrees that he shall be hanged.
---	---

b. The subjunctive after **empêcher** usually has **ne**:

Empêchez qu'il ne sorte.	Prevent his going out.
---------------------------------	------------------------

3. After expressions of judgment or opinion involving approval or disapproval:

J'approuve qu'il revienne.	I approve of his coming back.
Il mérite qu'on le craigne.	He deserves to be feared.
Il vaut mieux que vous restiez.	It is better for you to stay.
Je tiens beaucoup à ce qu'il y soit.	I am very anxious that he should be there.

Such are:

approuver, <i>approve</i>	louer, <i>praise</i>	trouver juste, <i>think just</i>
blâmer, <i>blame</i>	mériter, <i>deserve</i>	trouver injuste, <i>think unjust</i>
désapprouver, <i>disapprove</i>	tenir (à ce que), <i>insist</i>	valoir, <i>be worthy</i>
être digne, <i>be worthy</i>	trouver bon, <i>approve</i>	etc.
être indigne, <i>be unworthy</i>	trouver mauvais, <i>dis-</i>	
juger à propos, <i>think fit</i>	<i>approve</i>	

So also, a large number of impersonals of like force:

il convient, <i>it is fitting</i>	+ important, <i>important</i>	il faut, <i>it is necessary,</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ indispensable, <i>indis-</i>	<i>must</i>
+ à propos, <i>proper</i>	<i>pensable</i>	il importe, <i>it is important</i>
+ bien, <i>well</i>	+ juste, <i>just</i>	il peut se faire, <i>it may be</i>
+ bon, <i>good</i>	+ naturel, <i>natural</i>	il suffit, <i>it suffices</i>
+ convenable, <i>fitting</i>	+ nécessaire, <i>necessary</i>	il vaut mieux, <i>it is better</i>
+ essentiel, <i>essential</i>	+ à souhaiter, <i>to be</i>	etc., and their oppo-
+ à désirer, <i>to be desired</i>	<i>wished</i>	sites
+ facile, <i>easy</i>	+ temps, <i>time</i>	

4. After expressions of emotion or sentiment, such as joy, sorrow, anger, shame, wonder, fear:

Êtes-vous content qu'il soit ici?	Are you glad he is here?
Je regrette qu'il soit parti.	I regret that he has gone.
Il est fâché que vous le blâmiez.	He is angry at your blaming him.
Il a honte que vous le sachiez.	He is ashamed that you know it.
Je m'étonne qu'il n'ait pas honte.	I wonder he is not ashamed.
J'ai peur qu'il n'ait trop dit.	I fear he has said too much.

Such are:

admirer, <i>be astonished</i>	+ étonnant, <i>astonishing</i>	+ joyeux, <i>glad</i>
s'affliger, <i>grieve</i>	+ fâcheux, <i>annoying</i>	+ mécontent, <i>displeased</i>
avoir honte, <i>be ashamed</i>	+ heureux, <i>fortunate</i>	+ satisfait, <i>satisfied</i>
avoir crainte, <i>fear</i>	enrager, <i>be enraged</i>	+ surpris, <i>surprised</i>
avoir peur, <i>fear</i>	s'étonner, <i>be astonished</i>	+ triste, <i>sad</i>
craindre, <i>fear</i>	être, <i>be . . .</i>	se fâcher, <i>be sorry, angry</i>
déplorer, <i>deplore</i>	+ affligé, <i>grieved</i>	se plaindre, <i>complain</i>
c'est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ bien aise, <i>very glad</i>	redouter, <i>fear</i>
+ un bonheur, <i>fortunate</i>	+ charmé, <i>delighted</i>	regretter, <i>regret</i>
+ dommage, <i>a pity</i>	+ content, <i>glad</i>	se réjouir, <i>rejoice</i>
+ une honte, <i>a shame</i>	+ désolé, <i>very sorry</i>	se repentir, <i>repent</i>
+ honteux, <i>a shame</i>	+ étonné, <i>astonished</i>	soupirer, <i>sigh</i>
+ pitié, <i>a pity</i>	+ fâché, <i>sorry, angry</i>	trembler, <i>tremble</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ heureux, <i>happy</i>	etc.
+ curieux, <i>strange</i>	+ indigné, <i>indignant</i>	

a. When it is feared something will happen the subjunctive has **ne**; when it is feared something will not happen the subjunctive has **ne . . . pas**; when the expression of fearing is negative, or interrogative, or conditional, **ne** is usually omitted; with double negation **ne . . . pas** stands in both (see also § 419 and Appendix referring to § 419):

Je crains qu'il ne vienne.	I fear he will come.
Je crains qu'il ne vienne pas .	I fear he will not come.
Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne.	I do not fear he will come.
Craignez-vous qu'il vienne?	Do you fear he will come?

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il *ne* vienne? Do you not fear he will come?
 Si je craignais qu'il vînt. If I feared he would come.
 Je ne crains pas qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*. I do not fear he will not come.

b. After expressions of emotion or sentiment (except fear), which admit *de* after them, *de ce que* + indicative may be used:

J'ai honte *de ce qu'il a* échoué. I am ashamed that he failed.

5. After expressions of doubt, denial, despair, ignorance, or very slight probability:

Il doute que je sois loyal. He doubts that (whether) I am honest.
 Je nie que cela soit vrai. I deny that that is true.
 Il est rare que vous ayez tort. You are rarely in the wrong.

Such are:

contester, <i>dispute</i>	+ faux, <i>false</i>	de (à) quoi sert-il? <i>of what use is it?</i>
désespérer, <i>despair</i>	+ impossible, <i>impossible</i>	
disconvenir, <i>deny</i>	+ possible, <i>possible</i>	il ne sert de (à) rien,
dissimuler, <i>not confess</i>	+ rare, <i>rare</i>	<i>it is of no use</i>
se dissimuler, <i>be hidden</i>	il s'en faut, <i>there is want-</i>	il se peut, <i>it may be</i>
douter, <i>doubt</i>	<i>ing</i>	il ne se peut pas, <i>it cannot be</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	ignorer, <i>not know</i>	
+ douteux, <i>doubtful</i>	nier, <i>deny</i>	il semble, <i>it seems, etc.</i>

a. Douter si (= *if, whether*) requires the indicative:

Il doute si je suis loyal. He doubts if (whether) I am honest.

b. Il semble regularly has the subjunctive, since it indicates slight probability as distinguished from *il paraît* = *it appears, is evident*, and *il me semble* = *it appears to me* (personal conviction; but cf. 6, c):

Il semble que vous me *craigniez*. It seems that you fear me.
 Il me semble (il paraît) que vous *craigniez*. It seems to me (it appears) that you fear me.

c. Verbs of doubt and denial used negatively or interrogatively regularly require *ne* in the subjunctive clause:

Je ne nie pas que je *ne* le sois. I do not deny that I am such.

d. Ignorer + negative = *know well*, and hence takes indicative:

Je n'ignore pas qu'il *a* menti. I know well he has lied.

NOTE. — *Peut-être que*, *perhaps*, and *sans doute que*, *doubtless*, require the indicative.

6. Note, however, that after positive and affirmative expressions of perceiving, thinking, knowing, declaring, result-

ing, the *indicative* is used, the subjunctive being used only when negation, interrogation, or condition imply uncertainty or doubt:

Je crois que c'est lui.

I think it is he.

J'espère qu'il réussira.

I hope he will succeed.

But: Je ne crois pas que ce soit lui.

I do not think that it is he.

Espérez-vous qu'il réussisse?

Do you hope he will succeed?

Je ne suis pas sûr qu'il vienne.

I am not sure he will come.

Si je prétendais qu'il eût tort.

If I claimed he was wrong.

Such are:

affirmer, <i>affirm</i>	espérer, <i>hope</i>	prévoir, <i>foresee</i>
s'apercevoir, <i>perceive</i>	être certain, <i>be certain</i>	promettre, <i>promise</i>
apprendre, <i>learn, hear</i>	être persuadé, <i>be persuaded</i>	se rappeler, <i>recollect</i>
assurer, <i>assure</i>	être sûr, <i>be sure</i>	reconnaître, <i>acknowledge</i>
s'attendre, <i>expect</i>	se figurer, <i>imagine</i>	remarquer, <i>remark</i>
avertir, <i>warn</i>	se flatter, <i>flatter oneself</i>	répéter, <i>repeat</i>
avouer, <i>declare</i>	imaginer, <i>imagine</i>	répondre, <i>answer</i>
conclure, <i>conclude</i>	s'imaginer, <i>imagine</i>	savoir, <i>know</i>
connaître, <i>recognize</i>	juger, <i>judge, think</i>	sentir, <i>feel, notice</i>
croire, <i>believe, think</i>	jurer, <i>declare</i>	soutenir, <i>maintain</i>
déclarer, <i>declare</i>	oublier, <i>forget</i>	se souvenir, <i>recollect</i>
deviner, <i>guess</i>	penser, <i>think</i>	supposer, <i>suppose</i>
dire, <i>say, tell</i>	persuader, <i>persuade</i>	trouver, <i>find, think</i>
se douter, <i>suspect</i>	pressentir, <i>forebode</i>	voir, <i>see</i>
écrire, <i>write</i>	prétendre, <i>assert, claim</i>	etc.
entendre dire, <i>hear said</i>	prévenir, <i>forewarn</i>	

So also, a number of impersonals of like force:

il s'ensuit, <i>it follows</i>	+ évident, <i>evident</i>	+ sûr, <i>sure</i>
il est avéré, <i>it is stated</i>	+ démontré, <i>demonstrated</i>	+ vraisemblable, <i>probable</i>
il est, <i>it is . . .</i>	+ incontestable, <i>indisput-</i>	il résulte, <i>it follows</i>
+ certain, <i>certain</i>	able	il me semble, <i>it seems to</i>
+ clair, <i>clear</i>	+ probable, <i>probable</i>	me

a. Negative question usually implies affirmation; hence the indicative:

Ne trouves-tu pas qu'il est beau? Don't you think he is handsome?

b. When what the speaker regards as fact follows the negative or conditional clause, or when a person is questioned as to his knowledge of what is regarded as fact, the indicative stands:

Il ne croit pas que je suis ici.

He does not believe I am here.

S'il savait que tu es ici.

If he knew you were here.

Savez-vous qu'il est arrivé?

Do you know that he has come?

c. **Il ne me semble pas** is followed by the subjunctive, but in negative interrogation by the indicative (cf. also 5 *b*):

Il ne me semble pas qu'il soit fou. It does not seem to me he is mad.
Ne vous semble-t-il pas qu'il est fou? Does it not seem to you he is mad?

d. A preceding dependent clause with this class of verbs always has the subjunctive:

Qu'il ait échoué, je le sais. That he has failed, I know.

NOTE. — For the choice between **que** clause and infinitive see § 283.

270. Subjunctive in Adjectival Clause. The subjunctive is used as follows in clauses introduced by a relative pronoun:

1. When purpose regarding the antecedent, or unattained result is implied:

Montrez-moi un chemin qui conduise à la science.	Show me a way which leads to knowledge.
Je cherche un endroit où je sois en paix.	I seek a place where I may be in peace.

a. The indicative, however, is used to express what is regarded as fact or certain result:

Montrez-moi le chemin qui conduit à la ville.	Show me the road which leads to the town.
J'irai où je serai libre.	I shall go where I shall be free.

2. When the principal clause contains general negation, interrogation implying negative answer, or condition (all of which imply non-existence of the antecedent):

Il n'a pas de raison qui vaille.	He has no reason worth anything.
As-tu un seul ami qui soit fidèle?	Have you one friend who is true?
Si j'ai un ami qui soit fidèle c'est lui.	If I have one friend who is true, it is he.

a. General negation is sometimes merely implied:

Il y a peu de gens qui le sachent. There are few people who know it.

b. When the negation is not general, or when the interrogation does not imply negative answer, the indicative stands:

Ce n'est pas vous que je crains.	It is not you that I fear.
N'est-ce point un songe que je vois !	Is it not a dream that I see !

c. In a negative relative clause **ne**, not **ne . . . pas**, is used when the principal clause is negative or implies negation:

En est-il un seul qui ne tremble? Is there one who does not tremble?

3. When the antecedent is qualified by a superlative, or by **seul**, **unique**, **premier**, **dernier** (all with superlative force):

C'est le meilleur ami que j'aie. He is the best friend that I have.

C'est le seul ami que j'aie. He is the only friend I have.

a. What is stated unreservedly as fact requires the indicative:

C'est la seule chose qu'il a dite. It is the only thing he said.

4. With concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (= 'whoever,' 'whatever,' etc.):

Quoi que vous fassiez. Whatever you do.

Qui qu'on y puisse élire. Whosoever may be elected to it.

Qui que tu sois, parle! Whoever you are, speak!

Quelles que soient vos raisons. Whatever be your reasons.

271. Subjunctive in Adverbial Clause. The subjunctive is used in clauses of adverbial force, as follows:

1. After conjunctions of time before which or up to which (**avant que**, **en attendant que**, **jusqu'à ce que**):

Dis-le-lui, avant qu'il parte. Tell it to him before he goes.

Asseyez-vous, en attendant qu'il revienne. Sit down until he comes back.

Persévérez jusqu'à ce que vous ayez réussi. Persevere till you have succeeded.

a. **Jusqu'à ce que** may have the indicative when referring to completed past event:

Il y resta jusqu'à ce que je revins. He remained till I came back.

2. After conjunctions of purpose or result (**afin que**, **pour que**, **de crainte que**, **de peur que**):

J'écris ceci afin que (pour que) vous sachiez la vérité. I write this in order that you may know the truth.

Je le tins de crainte qu'il ne tombât. I held him for fear he should fall.

a. So also, **de sorte que, en sorte que, de telle sorte que, de façon que, de manière que, tel . . . que, tellement . . . que**, when denoting purpose, but not result:

Agis de sorte que tu réussisses. Act in such a way as to succeed.

But: J'ai agi de sorte que j'ai réussi. I acted so that I succeeded.

3. After conjunctions of condition (**en cas que, au cas que, à moins que . . . ne, pourvu que, supposé que, en supposant que**):

Je viendrai au cas que je sois libre demain, ou à moins que je ne sois retenu. I shall come in case I am free to-morrow, or unless I am detained.

a. After **si = if**, the pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally (§ 275, *b*).

b. The present subjunctive sometimes expresses condition:

Vienne l'ennemi, il s'enfuit. If the enemy comes, he flees.

c. **À (la) condition que** takes indicative, conditional, or subjunctive:

Je lui donne l'argent à (la) condition qu'il partira (or parte). I give him the money on condition that he will go.

NOTE. — **Dans le cas où, au cas où** usually have conditional: **Au cas où cela serait vrai**, *In case that should be true.*

4. After conjunctions of concession (**quoique, bien que, encore que, nonobstant que, soit que . . . soit que or ou que, pour (si) peu que, si tant est que, malgré que**):

Bien qu'il soit malade, il sortira. Although he is ill, he will go out.
Pour peu qu'il fût malade, il se croyait mourant. If he were ever so little ill, he thought himself dying.

a. The present subjunctive with **que** sometimes has concessive force:

Qu'il perde ou gagne, il partira. Though he lose or win, he will go.

b. The use of a subjunctive after adverbial **quelque (tout, si, etc.) + que = however** depends on the same principle:

Quelque grand que vous soyez. However great you may be.
Si brave qu'il se croie. However brave he thinks himself.

c. **Quand (même)** used concessively sometimes takes the pluperfect subjunctive for the conditional anterior (cf. § 265, 6):

Quand (même) il m'eût dit cela. Even if he had told me that.

5. After conjunctions of negative force (**non que, non pas que, loin que, sans que**):

Il partit sans que je le susse. He went away without my knowing it.

6. After **que** replacing any conjunction requiring the subjunctive, and also after **que** replacing **si** = *if*:

Venez que (= *afin que, pour que*) Come, that I may see you.
je vous voie.

Si je viens et que je le voie. If I come, and if I see him.

272. Subjunctive in Principal Clause. The subjunctive is sometimes used in principal clauses, as follows:

1. Either with or without **que** to denote what is desired, etc.:

<i>Ainsi soit-il !</i>	<i>Vive le roi !</i>	So be it ! (Long) live the king !
<i>Plût à Dieu qu'il en fût ainsi !</i>		Would to God it were so !
<i>Qu'il parte tout de suite.</i>		Let him go at once.
<i>(Que) je meure, si je mens !</i>		May I die if I am lying !
<i>Le croie qui voudra !</i>		Let him believe it who will !

a. **Que** followed by the third person present subjunctive regularly serves as an imperative; so also, sometimes, the first singular:

<i>Qu'il parte.</i>	Let him go.
<i>Que je vous entende.</i>	Let me hear you.

NOTE. — This construction, as also those without **que**, may be explained by ellipsis of some expression of desire, command, etc. (§ 269, 1, 2).

2. The present subjunctive first singular of **savoir** is sometimes used to denote modified assertion:

Je ne sache rien de plus beau. I know nothing finer.

3. The pluperfect subjunctive stands exceptionally for conditional anterior in a 'result' clause (cf. § 275, *b*):

<i>S'il eût (or avait) su cela, il ne</i>	<i>If he had known that, he would not</i>
<i>l'eût (or aurait) pas dit.</i>	<i>have said it.</i>

273. Tense Sequence. The tense of the subjunctive is usually determined by the tense of the finite verb in the governing clause, as follows:

1a. A present (including present subjunctive and imperative) or a future, in the governing clause, requires the present subjunctive in the governed clause in order to denote incomplete action:

<i>Je doute</i>	} <i>qu'il vienne.</i>	I doubt that (whether) he will come.
<i>Quoique je doute</i>		Though I doubt that he will come.
<i>Doutez</i>		Doubt that he will come.
<i>Je douterai</i>		I shall doubt that he will come.

1b. But if we wish to denote completed action the perfect subjunctive must be used:

<i>Je doute qu'il soit venu.</i>	I doubt that he has come.
----------------------------------	---------------------------

2a. Any other tense than the above (i.e., an imperfect, past definite, past indefinite, conditional, etc.) requires the imperfect subjunctive in order to denote incomplete action:

<i>Je doutais</i>	} <i>qu'il vînt.</i>	I doubted whether he would come.
<i>Quoique je doutasse</i>		Though I doubted that he would come.
<i>{ Je doutai }</i>		I doubted that he would come.
<i>{ J'ai douté }</i>		
<i>Je douterais</i>		I should doubt that he would come.

2b. But if we wish to denote completed action, the pluperfect subjunctive must be used:

<i>Je doutais</i>	} <i>qu'il fût venu.</i>	I doubted that he had come.
<i>J'aurais douté</i>		I should have doubted that he had come.

3. The following exceptional cases depend mainly on the sense of the context:

a. *J'ai douté qu'il vienne.* I have doubted that he will come.

b. After verbs of saying, believing, etc., a governing present may take a past subjunctive and *vice versa*:

<i>Je ne dis pas qu'il fût à blâmer.</i>	I do not say he was to blame.
<i>Il ne croyait pas qu'il y ait un Dieu.</i>	He did not believe that there is a God.

c. In a relative clause a past indefinite may stand for a pluperfect:
Il portait cet habit la seule fois que je l'aie vu. He was wearing that coat the only time that I saw him.

d. The conditional of modified assertion (§ 265, 4), being virtually a present, is commonly followed by the present subjunctive:

Je désirerais que vous <i>veniez</i> .	I should like you to come.
Il faudrait qu'il s'en <i>aille</i> .	He would have to go.

e. The imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive, with the force of an English conditional, may follow any tense:

Il n'y a pas de rang qu'elle ne <i>pût</i> tenir.	There is no rank she could not hold.
Je doute qu'il <i>jouât</i> (eût joué), s'il avait (avait eu) de l'argent.	I doubt that he would play (would have played) if he had (had had) money.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

274. Typical Form. A conditional sentence consists regularly of two parts: the condition, introduced by **si** = *if*, and the result:

Si j'avais le temps, j'irais à B.	If I had time, I should go to B.
-----------------------------------	----------------------------------

a. The condition may, of course, either precede or follow the result:

Irez-vous à B, s'il pleut?	Will you go to B if it rains?
S'il ne fait pas beau, je n'irai pas.	If it is not fine, I shall not go.

b. The condition is often disguised or implied, or the result understood:

Hésiter serait une faiblesse.	To hesitate would be weakness.
Je n'irais pas (<i>si j'étais de lui</i>).	I should not go (if I were he).
Ah! si j'étais à sa place.	Ah, if I were in his place!

275. Mood and Tense. A 'result' clause in the present indicative, imperative, or future, regularly requires the 'if' clause in the present indicative; a 'result' clause in the conditional regularly requires the 'if' clause in the imperfect indicative:

S'il a le temps, il y va.	If he has time, he goes there.
S'il a le temps, dites-lui de venir.	If he has (have, will have, should have) time, tell him to come.

S'il *a* le temps, il *viendra*.

If he has (have, will have, should have) time, he will come.

S'il *avait* le temps, il *viendrait*.

If he had (had he, were he to have, if he should have, should he have) time, he would come.

Obs.: The condition is regularly expressed by the indicative present or imperfect, whatever be the corresponding English form.

a. The above rules hold good for compound tenses, the auxiliary being considered as the verb:

S'il l'*a* dit, il le *fera*.

If he has said it, he will do it.

S'il *est venu*, faites-le-moi *savoir*.

If he has come, let me know.

S'il *a eu* le temps, il *sera venu*.

If he has had time, he will have come.

Si j'*avais eu* le temps, je *serais parti*.

If I had had time, I should have gone.

S'il *était brave*, il *aurait fait cela*.

If he were brave, he would have done that.

b. Sometimes, in literary style, the pluperfect subjunctive stands in the 'if' clause, or in the 'result' clause, or in both:

S'il eût (*or avait*) su cela, il ne
l'eût (*or aurait*) pas dit.

Had he known that, he would not have said so.

c. Occasionally the imperfect indicative stands in the 'if' clause instead of the pluperfect, and in the 'result' clause instead of the conditional anterior:

Si Stanislas *demeurait* (= *était demeuré*), il *était* (= *aurait été*) perdu.

If Stanislas had remained, he would have been lost.

d. Occasionally the condition is expressed by inversion, without *si*:

N'*était-ce* la crainte de cela.

If it were not for fear of that.

Eût-il été moins riche.

If he had been poorer.

e. A virtual condition (concession) is sometimes expressed by various locutions:

Quiconque le *fera*.

Whoever (if any one) does it.

Quand même il ne l'*aurait pas dit*.

Even though he had not said so.

Il le dirait que je ne le *croirais pas*.

Even if he said it, I should not believe it.

f. The past definite is rare in the 'if' clause. The expression *s'il en fut*, however, is noteworthy:

<i>Riche, s'il en fut (jamais), mais corrompu.</i>	<i>Rich, if any one ever was, but corrupt.</i>
--	--

g. *Si* = *whether* may take the future or conditional:

<i>Dis-moi si tu iras (irais) chez elle.</i>	<i>Tell me whether (if) you will (would) go to her house.</i>
--	---

THE INFINITIVE MOOD

276. Function. The infinitive is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs, and as a noun it serves as subject, object, etc.:

<i>Vous devriez lui parler.</i>	<i>You ought to speak to him.</i>
<i>Voir c'est croire.</i>	<i>Seeing is believing.</i>
<i>Il lit sans comprendre.</i>	<i>He reads without understanding.</i>

277. Use of Infinitive. The chief difficulty in the use of the infinitive is to determine, (1) when it should stand without any preposition, (2) when it should be preceded by *à*, (3) when it should be preceded by *de*.

278. Infinitive without Preposition. The infinitive without any preposition is used:

1. As subject, or in apposition:

<i>Mentir est honteux.</i>	<i>To lie (lying) is base.</i>
<i>Trop parler nuit.</i>	<i>Too much talk does harm.</i>
<i>Vivre c'est souffrir.</i>	<i>To live is to suffer.</i>

2. As predicate after a few verbs (see list below):

<i>Vous semblez hésiter.</i>	<i>You seem to hesitate.</i>
<i>Il est censé l'avoir fait.</i>	<i>He is supposed to have done it.</i>

3. As logical subject after a few impersonals (see list below):

<i>Il vaudrait mieux se taire.</i>	<i>It would be better to keep quiet.</i>
<i>Il fait cher vivre à Paris.</i>	<i>Living is dear in Paris.</i>

4. As object or complement after the so-called modal auxiliaries (§ 230), after most verbs of motion and causation of motion, after verbs of desiring and preferring, after verbs of perceiving, after verbs of thinking and intending, after

verbs of saying and declaring, and after certain verbs of lacking and failing (see list below):

Voulez-vous dîner chez nous?	Will you dine with us?
Faites-lui apprendre sa leçon.	Make him learn his lesson
Envoyez chercher le médecin.	Send for the doctor.
Je désirerais lui parler.	I should like to speak to him.
Je les vois venir.	I see them come (coming).
Quand comptez-vous revenir?	When do you expect to come back?
Il prétend avoir raison.	He claims to be in the right.
J'avais beau crier.	It was in vain that I shouted.

5. Sometimes, in elliptical expressions, as an imperative, as a direct or indirect interrogative, or absolutely:

Voir les affiches.	See the posters.
Que faire? Où me cacher?	What (am I) to do? Where hide?
Je ne sais que faire.	I know not what to do.
Penser qu'il a dit cela!	To think that he said that!

6. Reference list of verbs requiring direct infinitive:

accourir, <i>hasten</i>	envoyer, <i>send</i>	se rappeler, ¹ <i>recollect</i>
affirmer, <i>affirm</i>	espérer, ¹ <i>hope</i>	reconnaître, <i>acknowledge</i>
aimer (condl.), <i>should like</i>	être, <i>be</i>	regarder, <i>look at</i>
aimer autant, <i>like as well</i>	être censé, <i>be supposed</i>	rentrer, <i>go in again</i>
aimer mieux, <i>prefer</i>	faillir, ² <i>be on the point of</i>	retourner, <i>go back</i>
aller, <i>go</i>	faire, <i>make, cause</i>	revenir, <i>come back</i>
apercevoir, <i>perceive</i>	il fait (impers.), <i>it is</i>	savoir, <i>know how to, can</i>
assurer, <i>assure</i>	falloir, <i>be necessary</i>	sembler, <i>seem</i>
avoir beau, <i>be in vain</i>	se figurer, <i>imagine</i>	sentir, <i>hear, feel</i>
avouer, <i>avow</i>	s'imaginer, <i>fancy</i>	souhaiter, ¹ <i>wish</i>
compter, ¹ <i>intend</i>	juger, <i>consider</i>	soutenir, <i>maintain</i>
confesser, <i>confess</i>	jurer, ⁴ <i>swear, attest by oath</i>	supposer, <i>suppose</i>
courir, <i>run</i>	laisser, ^{3 4} <i>let, allow</i>	être supposé, <i>be supposed</i>
croire, <i>think</i>	mener, <i>lead, bring</i>	témoigner, <i>testify</i>
daigner, <i>deign</i>	mettre, <i>set, put at</i>	se trouver, <i>be</i>
déclarer, <i>declare</i>	monter, <i>go up</i>	valoir autant, <i>be as good</i>
déposer, <i>testify</i>	oser, <i>dare</i>	valoir mieux, <i>be better</i>
descendre, ³ <i>come(go)down</i>	ouïr, <i>hear</i>	venir, ^{3 4} <i>come</i>
désirer, ¹ <i>desire, wish</i>	paraître, <i>appear</i>	voir, <i>see</i>
devoir, <i>ought, to be, etc.</i>	penser, ³ <i>intend, be near</i>	voler, <i>fly</i>
dire, ⁴ <i>say</i>	pouvoir, <i>can, may</i>	vouloir, <i>will, wish</i>
écouter, <i>listen to</i>	préférer, <i>prefer</i>	
entendre, <i>hear, intend</i>	prétendre, <i>assert, claim</i>	

¹ Sometimes takes **de**. ² Sometimes takes **à** or **de**. ³ See also list of verbs requiring **à** (§ 279, 6). ⁴ See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6).

a. **Devoir** = *owe, be indebted*, with indirect object takes **de**:

Je lui dois d'être encore en vie. I owe to him that I am still alive.

b. **Faire** takes **de** in **ne faire que de**:

Il ne fait que de sortir. He has just gone out.

c. **Ne pas laisser** = *not to cease, etc.*, takes **de**:

Il ne laisse pas (que) de le dire. He is always saying so (says so for all that).

279. Infinitive with the Preposition à. The infinitive preceded by **à** = *to, in, at, by, etc.*, is used:

1. As direct object of a few transitives (see list below):

J'aime à chanter.	I like to sing.
Continuez à lire.	Continue to read.
Il m'enseigne à chanter.	He teaches me to sing (singing).
J'ai à étudier demain.	I have to study to-morrow.
Il n'y a pas à se plaindre.	There is nothing to complain of.

2. As a complement, after many verbs, to denote the object to which the action tends (answering the question 'to do what?') or the object in, at, on, about which the action takes place (answering the question 'in doing what?' 'at doing what?' etc.):

Il aspire à devenir riche.	He aspires to become rich.
Poussez-les à agir.	Urge them to act.
Je les ai invités à venir.	I have invited them to come.
Aidez-moi à porter cette malle.	Help me to carry this trunk.
Il réussit à me trouver.	He succeeded in finding me.
Je suis à écrire une lettre.	I am (busy) writing a letter.
Il s'amuse à me taquiner.	He amuses himself teasing me.
J'ai gagné à vendre ma maison.	I gained by selling my house.
Il joue à faire le malade.	He plays at being ill.

3. As the complement of certain adjectives (cf. § 280, 2) and nouns denoting fitness, tendency, purpose, etc.:

Ceci est bon à manger.	This is good to eat.
Je suis prêt à vous écouter.	I am <u>ready</u> to hear you.
Quelque chose d'utile à savoir.	Something useful to know.
Cela est facile à faire.	That is easy to do.

La tendance à se croire grand.
Une bonne à tout faire.

The tendency to think oneself great.
A maid of all work.

a. So also, le premier, le dernier, le seul:

Il n'est pas le seul à le dire.

He is not the only one to say so.

4. To form adjectival phrases denoting use, fitness, quality, etc.:

Une salle à manger.

A dining-room.

Une chose à voir.

A thing worth seeing.

Des contes à dormir debout.

Very tiresome stories.

Un spectacle à faire peur.

A terrible sight.

De manière à réussir.

In such a way as to succeed.

Vous êtes à plaindre.

You are to be pitied.

C'est à en mourir.

It is enough to kill one.

5. To form adverbial phrases:

Elle chante à ravir.

She sings charmingly.

Elle pleurait à faire pitié.

She wept pitifully.

À vrai dire, je le plains.

To tell the truth, I pity him.

Elle est laide à faire peur.

She is frightfully ugly.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with à:

s'abaisser, <i>sloop</i>	s'arrêter, <i>stop</i>	condamner (se), <i>condemn</i>
abandonner (s'), <i>give up</i>	aspirer, <i>aspire</i>	condescendre, <i>condescend</i>
aboutir, <i>end (in), tend</i>	assujettir (s'), <i>subject</i>	conduire, <i>lead</i>
s'abuser, <i>be mistaken (in)</i>	astreindre, <i>compel</i>	consacrer (se), <i>devote</i>
s'accorder, ² <i>agree (in)</i>	s'astreindre, <i>bind o. s.</i>	consentir, <i>consent</i>
être d'accord, <i>agree (in)</i>	attacher, <i>attach</i>	consister, <i>consist (in)</i>
accoutumer(s'), ² <i>accustom</i>	s'attacher, <i>be intent (on)</i>	conspirer, <i>conspire</i>
s'acharner, <i>be bent (on)</i>	attendre (s'), <i>expect</i>	consumer (se), <i>consume (in)</i>
admettre, <i>admit</i>	autoriser, <i>authorize</i>	continuer, ¹ <i>continue</i>
s'adonner, <i>addict o. s.</i>	s'avilir, <i>stoop</i>	contraindre, ¹ <i>constrain</i>
aguerrir (s'), <i>inure</i>	avoir, <i>have, must</i>	contribuer, <i>contribute</i>
aider, <i>help</i>	avoir (de la) peine, <i>have</i>	convier, ² <i>invite</i>
aimer, ⁴ <i>like</i>	<i>difficulty (in)</i>	coûter, <i>cost</i>
amener, <i>lead</i>	balancer, <i>hesitate</i>	décider, ³ <i>induce</i>
amuser (s'), <i>amuse (in, by)</i>	se borner, <i>limit o. s.</i>	se décider, <i>resolve</i>
animer (s'), <i>excite</i>	chercher, <i>seek, try</i>	défier, ³ <i>challenge, incite</i>
appeler, <i>call</i>	commencer, ² <i>begin</i>	demander, ¹ <i>ask</i>
appliquer (s'), <i>apply</i>	se complaire, <i>take pleas-</i>	demeurer, <i>remain</i>
apprendre, <i>learn, teach</i>	<i>ure (in)</i>	dépenser, <i>spend (in)</i>
apprêter (s'), <i>get ready</i>	concourir, <i>coöperate (in)</i>	désapprendre, <i>forget</i>

descendre, ⁴ stoop, abase	finir (neg.), ³ have done	porter, induce
destiner, destine	[o.s. forcer, ¹ force	pousser, urge, incite
déterminer, ³ induce	gagner, gain (by)	prendre garde, ³ take care
se déterminer, resolve	habituer, ² accustom	prendre plaisir, delight (in)
dévouer (se), devote	s'habituer, accustom o. s.	se prendre, begin
différer, ² delay	haïr, hate	préparer (se), prepare
disposer (se), dispose	se hasarder, ² venture	prétendre, ⁴ aspire
divertir (se), amuse	hésiter, ² hesitate	prier, ³ invite (formally)
donner, give	inciter, incite	procéder, proceed
dresser, train	incliner, incline	provoquer, incite
s'efforcer, ¹ try	induire, induce	recommencer, ¹ begin again
s'égayer, divert o. s. (by)	instruire, instruct	réduire, reduce
employer (s'), employ (in)	intéresser(s'), interest (in)	se réduire, confine o. s.
s'empresser, ^{1 3} be eager	inviter, invite	refuser, ³ refuse to give
encourager, encourage	jouer, play (at)	se refuser, refuse
engager (s'), ² engage, advise	laisser, ^{3 4} leave	renoncer, renounce
enhardir, ² embolden	se laisser, ³ tire o. s. (in)	répugner, be reluctant
s'enhardir, ² venture	manquer, ³ be remiss (in)	se résigner, resign o. s.
s'ennuyer, ^{2 3} tire o. s. (in)	mettre, put, set	résoudre, ³ induce
enseigner, teach	se mettre, set about	se résoudre, resolve
s'entendre, know well how	montrer, show how	rester, remain
entraîner, allure	obliger, ^{1 3} oblige, force	réussir, succeed (in)
essayer, ¹ try	s'obliger, ² bind o. s.	servir, serve
s'essayer, try o. s. (in)	s'obstiner, persist (in)	songer, think (of)
être, ³ to be occupied (in, at)	occuper (s'), ³ employ (in)	souffrir, ¹ suffer
être à, ³ be one's turn	s'offrir, ² offer	suffire, suffice
s'étudier, apply o. s.	s'opiniâtrer, persist (in)	surprendre, discover
s'évertuer, exert o. s., try	parvenir, succeed (in)	tarder, ¹ be long, delay (in)
exceller, excel (in)	passer, spend (in)	tendre, tend
exciter (s'), excite	pencher, incline	tenir, be anxious
exercer (s'), exercise (in)	penser, ⁴ think (of)	travailler, work
exhorter, exhort	perdre, lose (in, by)	trembler, ³ tremble (at, on)
exposer (s'), expose	persévérer, persevere (in)	trouver, find
se fatiguer, ³ tire o. s. (in, at)	persister, persist (in)	venir, ^{3 4} happen
	se plaire, delight (in)	viser, aim
	se plier, submit	vouer (se), devote

¹ Or **de**. ² Sometimes takes **de**. ³ See also list of verbs requiring **de** (§ 280, 6). ⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

a. Suffire sometimes takes pour:

Cela suffira pour l'amuser. That will suffice to amuse him.

b. The infinitive after être à often has passive force:

Cet ouvrage est à refaire. That work has to be done again.

c. Haïr may take de when negative:

Il ne hait pas à (d') être endetté. He does not dislike being in debt.

280. Infinitive with the Preposition *de*. The infinitive preceded by *de* = *to, of, from, for, at*, etc., is used:

1. As logical subject of an impersonal verb (for rare exceptions see § 278, 3)

Il est facile de faire cela.

It is easy to do that.

Il importe d'arriver à temps.

It is important to arrive in time.

Bien vous sied de vous taire.

It well becomes you to be silent.

a. Similarly as subject in inverted sentences:

C'est une folie (que) d'aller là.

It is madness to go there.

2. As complement of most adjectives and nouns (cf. § 279, 3):

Le désir de partir.

The desire of going.

La nécessité de rester.

The necessity of remaining.

Il n'est pas digne de vivre.

He is not worthy to live.

J'ai envie de pleurer.

I feel like crying.

a. So also, many expressions, like the last example, made from verb + noun, *e.g.*, *avoir besoin* (*honte, peur, raison, soin, tort*, etc.), *faire envie* (*plaisir, semblant*, etc.), *courir risque*, etc., etc.

3. After verbs as object or complement, usually to denote the source or occasion of action (answering 'whence?' 'concerning what?'), or to denote separation or cessation from (answering 'from what?'). See list below:

Je me réjouis de le voir.

I rejoice to see it.

Elle se pique d'être la première.

She prides herself on being first.

Prenez garde de (ne pas) tomber.

Take care not to fall.

Il s'excuse d'y aller.

He excuses himself from going.

Promettez de ne pas le dire.

Promise not to tell it.

4. As historical infinitive (= a past definite):

Et l'ennemi de s'enfuir.

And the enemy fled.

5. After *que* in the second member of a comparison, unless the sentence be very short:

Il vaudra mieux rester que de partir si tard.

It will be better to stay than to go so late.

But: Mieux vaut savoir qu'avoir.

Better wisdom than wealth.

6. Reference list of verbs requiring infinitive with *de*:

s'absenter, <i>absent o. s.</i> (<i>from</i>) [(<i>from</i>)	défendre, <i>forbid</i>	éviter, <i>avoid</i>
s'absoudre, <i>absolve o. s.</i>	cuse <i>o. s.</i>	excuser (s'), <i>excuse (from)</i>
s'abstenir, <i>abstain (from)</i>	défier, ³ <i>defy</i>	exempter, <i>exempt (from)</i>
accorder, <i>grant</i> [customed	se défier, <i>distrust</i>	faire bien, <i>do well</i>
avoir accoutumé, <i>be ac-</i>	dégoûter, <i>disgust (with)</i>	se fatiguer, ³ <i>be tired (of)</i>
accuser (s'), <i>accuse (of)</i>	délibérer, <i>deliberate</i> (<i>about</i>)	feindre, <i>feign</i>
achever, <i>finish</i>	demander, ¹ <i>ask</i>	féliciter (se), <i>congratulate</i>
admirer, <i>wonder (at)</i>	se dépêcher, <i>make haste</i>	finir, ³ <i>finish</i> [(<i>on</i>)
affecter, <i>affect</i>	désaccoutumer (se), <i>dis-</i> <i>accustom (from)</i>	se flatter, <i>flatter o. s.</i>
s'affliger, <i>grieve (at, over)</i>	désespérer, <i>despair (of)</i>	forcer, ¹ <i>force</i>
s'apercevoir, <i>perceive</i>	déshabituer (se), <i>disac-</i> <i>custom (from)</i>	frémir, <i>shudder</i>
s'applaudir, <i>congratulate</i> <i>o. s. (on)</i>	déterminer, ³ <i>resolve</i>	gager, <i>wager</i>
appréhender, <i>fear</i>	détester, <i>detest</i> [(<i>from</i>)	garder (se), <i>forbear</i>
arrêter, <i>prevent (from),</i> <i>determine</i> [(<i>at</i>)	détourner, <i>dissuade</i>	gémir, <i>groan</i>
s'attrister, <i>become sad</i>	dire, ⁴ <i>bid</i>	gêner, <i>incommode</i>
avertir, <i>notify, warn</i>	discontinuer, <i>cease</i>	se glorifier, <i>boast (of)</i>
s'aviser, <i>think (of)</i>	disconvenir, <i>deny</i> [(<i>for</i>)	gronder, <i>scold (for)</i>
blâmer, <i>blame (for)</i>	se disculper, <i>excuse o. s.</i>	hasarder, <i>venture</i>
brûler, <i>long</i>	dispenser, <i>dispense (from)</i>	se hâter, <i>hasten</i>
censurer, <i>censure (for)</i>	dissuader, <i>dissuade (from)</i>	imaginer, <i>imagine</i>
cesser, <i>cease</i> [(<i>over</i>)	douter, <i>hesitate</i>	s'impatienter, <i>be impa-</i> <i>tient</i>
se chagriner, <i>grieve (at,</i> <i>charger, charge</i>	se douter, <i>suspect</i>	imputer, <i>impute</i>
se charger, <i>undertake</i>	écrire, <i>write</i>	s'indigner, <i>be indignant</i>
choisir, <i>choose</i>	s'efforcer, ¹ <i>try</i>	s'ingérer, <i>meddle (with)</i>
commander, <i>command</i>	s'effrayer, <i>be afraid</i>	inspirer, <i>inspire</i>
commencer, ¹ <i>begin</i>	empêcher, <i>prevent</i>	interdire, <i>interdict (from)</i>
conjurér, <i>beseech</i>	s'empêcher, <i>abstain</i> (<i>from</i>)	jouir, <i>enjoy</i>
conseiller, <i>advise</i>	s'empresser, ³ <i>hasten</i>	juger bon, <i>think fit</i>
consoler, <i>console (for)</i>	s'empresser, ¹ <i>be eager</i>	jurer, ⁴ <i>promise (on oath)</i>
se contenter, <i>be satisfied</i>	enjoindre, <i>enjoin</i>	ne pas laisser, ^{3 4} <i>not to</i> <i>cease</i>
continuer, ¹ <i>continue</i>	s'ennuyer, ^{2 3} <i>be tired (of)</i>	se lasser, ³ <i>be weary (of)</i>
contraindre, ¹ <i>constrain</i>	s'enorgueillir, <i>be proud</i>	louer, <i>praise (for)</i>
convaincre, <i>convict (of)</i>	enrager, <i>be enraged (at)</i>	mander, <i>bid</i> [point of
convenir, <i>agree</i>	entreprendre, <i>undertake</i>	manquer, ³ <i>fail, be on</i>
craindre, <i>fear</i>	épargner, <i>spare</i>	méditer, <i>meditate</i>
crier, <i>cry</i>	essayer, ¹ <i>try</i>	se mêler, <i>meddle (with)</i>
décider, ³ <i>decide, resolve</i>	s'étonner, <i>be astonished</i>	menacer, <i>threaten</i>
décourager (se), <i>discour-</i> <i>age (from)</i>	être à, ^{2 3} <i>be duty or office</i> (<i>of</i>)	mériter, <i>deserve</i> [(<i>of</i>)
dédaigner, <i>disdain</i>		se moquer, <i>make sport</i>
		mourir, <i>die, long</i>
		négliger, <i>neglect</i>
		notifier, <i>notify</i>

obliger, ¹ <i>oblige, force</i>	presser, <i>urge</i>	reprocher (se), <i>reproach</i>
obliger, ³ <i>do favour</i>	se presser, <i>hasten</i>	(<i>with</i>)
obtenir, <i>obtain</i>	présumer, <i>presume</i>	résoudre, ³ <i>resolve</i>
s'occuper, ³ <i>be intent (on)</i>	prier, ³ <i>beg, pray</i>	se ressouvenir, <i>remember</i>
offrir, <i>offer</i>	priver (se), <i>deprive (of)</i>	rire (se), <i>laugh</i>
omettre, <i>omit</i>	projeter, <i>intend</i>	risquer, <i>risk</i>
ordonner, <i>order</i>	promettre (se), <i>promise</i>	rougir, <i>blush</i>
oublier, ² <i>forget</i>	proposer, <i>propose</i>	sommer, <i>summon</i>
pardonner, <i>forgive</i>	se proposer, <i>intend</i>	se soucier, <i>care</i>
parier, <i>bet</i>	protester, <i>protest</i>	souffrir, ¹ <i>suffer</i>
parler, <i>speak</i>	punir, <i>punish (for)</i>	soupçonner, <i>suspect</i>
se passer, <i>do without</i>	recommander, <i>recommend</i>	sourire, <i>smile</i>
permettre (se), <i>permit</i>	recommencer, ¹ <i>begin again</i>	se souvenir, <i>recollect</i>
persuader, <i>persuade</i>	refuser, ³ <i>refuse</i>	suggérer, <i>suggest</i>
se piquer, <i>pride o. s. (on)</i>	regretter, <i>regret</i>	supplier, <i>beseech</i>
plaindre, <i>pity</i> [(<i>of</i>)	se réjouir, <i>rejoice</i>	tâcher, ² <i>try</i>
se plaindre, <i>complain</i>	remercier, <i>thank (for)</i>	tenter, ² <i>attempt</i>
prendre garde, ³ <i>take care</i>	se repentir, <i>repent (of)</i>	trembler, ³ <i>tremble, fear</i>
<i>not, beware (of)</i>	reprendre, <i>reprove (for)</i>	trouver bon, <i>think fit</i>
prendre soin, <i>take care</i>	réprimander, <i>reprimand</i>	se vanter, <i>boast (of)</i>
prescrire, <i>prescribe</i>	(<i>for</i>)	venir, ^{3 4} <i>have just</i>

¹ Or à. ² Sometimes à. ³ See also list of verbs requiring à (§ 279, 6).

⁴ See also list of verbs requiring direct infinitive (§ 278, 6).

281. Distinctions. As appears from the list, the same verb sometimes requires *à*, *de*, or the direct infinitive. The following are examples of cases in which the sense varies with the construction:

1. Aimer:

J'aimerais bien le connaître.
J'aime mieux vous dire tout.
Aimez-vous à demeurer ici?

I should like to know him.
I prefer to tell you all.
Do you like to live here?

2. Décider:

Il m'a décidé à entrer.
Nous décidâmes de partir.

He induced me to go in.
We decided to set out.

3. Défier:

On le défia à boire.
Je vous défie de prouver cela.

They challenged him to drink.
I defy you to prove that.

4. Descendre:

Descends chercher ton chapeau.
Il descendit même à voler.

Go down and get your hat.
He even descended to theft.

5. Déterminer:

Je l'ai déterminé à rester.
Il avait déterminé *de* le rebâtir.

I induced him to stay.
He had determined to rebuild it.

6. Dire:

Il dit l'avoir vu.
Je lui ai dit *de* venir.

He says he saw it.
I told him to come.

7. S'empresse:

Il s'empressait à lui plaire.
Il s'empressa *de* répondre.

He was eager to please her.
He hastened to reply.

8. Être:

Je suis à écrire des lettres.
C'est à vous *de* parler.
C'est à vous à parler.

I am (busy) writing letters.
It is your place (*or* turn) to speak.
It is your turn to speak.

9. Se fatiguer:

Il se fatigua à jouer au billard.
Il est fatigué *de* jouer.

He fatigued himself playing billiards.
He is tired playing.

10. Finir:

Il ne finissait pas à me le dire.
J'ai fini *de* travailler.

He was never done telling me so.
I have finished working.

11. Jurer:

Je jure l'avoir vu.
Je jure *de* le faire.

I swear I saw it.
I swear I will do it.

12. Laisser:

Je l'ai laissé dire.
Je vous laisse à penser.
Il ne laissa pas *de* parler.

I let him talk.
I leave you to think.
He did not stop talking.

13. Se lasser:

Il s'est lassé à courir.
Il se lasse *de* courir.

He tired himself out (by) running.
He is tired of running.

14. Manquer:

Ne manquez pas *d'y* être.
Je manquai *de* tomber.
Il ne manque jamais à faire son devoir.

Don't fail to be there.
I was on the point of falling.
He never fails to do his duty.

15. Obliger:

Je l'ai obligé à (*de*) le faire.

I obliged him to do it.

Je suis obligé *de* partir.
 Vous m'obligerez beaucoup *de* le faire.

I am obliged to go.
 You will greatly oblige me by doing it.

16. S'occuper:

Il s'occupe à lire.
 Il s'occupe *de* détruire les abus.

He is busy reading.
 He is intent on destroying abuses.

17. Penser:

Que pensez-vous faire?
 Je pensai tomber.
 Je pense à répliquer à cela.

What do you intend to do?
 I nearly fell.
 I think of replying to that.

18. Prendre garde:

Prenez garde à ne pas le faire.
 Prenez garde *de* (ne pas) tomber.

Take care not to do it.
 Take care not to fall.

19. Prétendre:

Il prétend vous connaître.
 Il prétend à devenir savant.

He asserts that he knows you.
 He aspires to become learned.

20. Prier:

Il m'a prié à dîner.
 Je vous prie *de* m'aider.

He invited me to dine.
 I pray (ask) you to help me.

21. Refuser:

Me refusez-vous à manger?
 Je refuserai *d'y* aller.

Do you refuse to give me food?
 I shall refuse to go.

22. Résoudre:

Il m'a résolu à l'acheter.
 J'ai résolu *de* l'acheter.

He induced me to buy it.
 I have determined to buy it.

23. Trembler:

Il tremble à me voir.
 Il tremble *de* me rencontrer.

He trembles when he sees me.
 He fears to meet me.

24. Venir:

Venez nous voir.
 Si vous veniez à le voir.
 Je viens *de* le voir.

Come to see us.
 If you should happen to see him.
 I have just seen him.

282. Infinitive with other Prepositions. The infinitive stands also after *par*, *pour*, *sans*, *après*, *entre*, and after locutions ending in *de* or *à*, such as *afin de*, *avant de*, *jusqu'à*, etc.:

1. **Par** = *by* usually only after **commencer** and **finir**:

Il finit par m'insulter.

He ended by insulting me (or He finally insulted me).

2. **Pour** usually translates *in order to*, *for the purpose of*; sometimes also *for*, *from*, *because*, *though*, etc., and *to* after **assez**, **trop**, etc.:

Il faut manger pour vivre.

We must eat (in order) to live.

Il est mort pour avoir trop bu.

He died from over-drinking.

Il fut puni pour avoir ri.

He was punished for laughing.

Pour être pauvre, il n'est pas larron.

Though poor, he is no thief.

Il est trop franc pour se taire.

He is too frank to keep quiet.

a. **Pour** after a verb of motion (§ 278, 4) emphasizes the purpose:

J'irai pour le voir.

I shall go to see him.

3. **Sans** = *without*:

Ne partez pas sans manger.

Do not go without eating.

4. **Après** = *after* requires the perfect infinitive:

Après avoir dîné, je partis.

After having dined, I set out.

283. Infinitive for Subordinate Clause. 1. An infinitive construction usually replaces a **que** clause of which the subject is the same with that of the subject or object (direct or indirect) of the principal clause:

Il croit vous avoir vu.

He thinks that he has seen you.

Dites-leur de s'en aller.

Tell them to be gone.

2. Similarly **afin de**, **à moins de**, **après**, **avant de**, **de crainte de**, **de peur de**, **de façon à**, **de manière à**, **pour**, **sans**, etc. + the infinitive stand for **afin que**, etc. + the subjunctive, but only when the subject of both verbs is the same:

Il partit sans me voir.

He went without seeing me.

But: Il partit sans que je le visse.

He went without my seeing him.

284. Infinitive with Passive Force. A transitive infinitive has (seeming) passive force after verbs of perceiving

(voir, etc.), after **faire**, **laisser**, and when **à** + an infinitive is used adjectively (cf. § 241, 3):

J'ai vu bâtir cette maison.	I saw this house being built.
Je me fais faire un habit.	I am having a coat made for myself.
Vous êtes à plaindre.	You are to be pitied.
Une faute à éviter.	A mistake to be avoided.

NOTE. — This construction may be explained by supplying some such ellipsis as the following: **J'ai vu bâtir une maison à or par quelqu'un**, *I have seen somebody building a house*.

285. Infinitive for English -ing. The infinitive must be used to translate many such forms (see § 287, 2, 3, 4).

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

286. Functions. The participial form in **-ant** serves as a verbal adjective, as a present participle (without **en**), and as a gerund (with **en**):

1. As a verbal adjective, it denotes quality or state, and agrees like an adjective:

Elle paraît bien portante.	She seems well.
Les enfants doivent être obéissants.	Children must be obedient.
Les vivants, et les mourants.	The living and the dying.
Des paroles consolantes.	Comforting words.

Obs.: The verbal adjective, attributively, regularly follows the noun, as in the last example.

a. Some verbs have a special form for the verbal adjective:

ADJ.	PART.	ADJ.	PART.
différent, <i>different</i>	différant	négligent, <i>careless</i>	négligeant
convaincant, <i>convincing</i>	convainquant	puissant, <i>powerful</i>	pouvant
fatigant, <i>fatiguing</i>	fatiguant	savant, <i>learned</i>	sachant

2. As a present participle, it is used, in general, like the English present participle, to denote simultaneous action, manner, cause, motive, etc., and is invariable:

Pleurant, elle continua le récit.	Weeping, she continued the story.
Je le trouvai riant comme un fou.	I found him laughing like mad.
Elle ne sortit pas, étant malade.	She did not go out, being ill.

Ayant parlé ainsi, il sortit.

Having thus spoken, he went out.

Il n'entrera pas, moi vivant.

He shall not enter while I live.

NOTES. — 1. It is often difficult to determine whether the form in **-ant** is participle (invariable) or adjective (variable). As a participle, the action (generally transitory) is prominent, but as an adjective, quality or else continued action (state) is denoted. It is nearly always a participle when it has a complement or a construction peculiar to the verb, such as object, negative, adverb following: **Une femme mourante**, *A dying woman*; **Des gens mourant de faim**, *People dying of hunger*; **Les ennemis se retirèrent, brûlant les villes partout**, *The enemy retired, burning the towns everywhere*; **Une femme ne craignant rien**, *A woman fearing nothing*; **Des dames parlant doucement**, *Ladies speaking softly*; **De soi-disant amis**, *So-called friends*.

2. In the last example, **soi-disant**, though adjective in force, remains invariable in view of the literal meaning, *calling themselves*.

3. **Ayant** and **étant** are also always invariable, except in **les ayants-droit** (-cause).

3. As a gerund, it denotes either simultaneous action or 'means by which,' and is invariable; **en** = *while, in, on, when, as, by, etc.*, or is untranslated:

En jouant, j'ai perdu ma montre.

While playing, I lost my watch.

En rentrant, j'ai trouvé la lettre.

On returning, I found the letter.

Vous perdrez, en agissant ainsi.

You will lose if you act thus.

En lisant on apprend à lire.

By reading one learns to read.

a. Both participle and gerund denote simultaneous action, but the use of **en**, strengthened sometimes by **tout**, usually emphasizes the continuity of the action:

(En) disant ceci, il prit la lyre.

(While) saying this, he took the harp.

Tout en pleurant, elle continua.

Still weeping, she went on.

b. The gerund usually refers to the subject:

Je l'ai vu en allant à la poste.

I saw him while going to the post.

But: **L'appétit vient en mangeant.**

One's appetite comes while eating.

c. **En** is sometimes omitted, especially after **aller**:

Généralement parlant.

Generally speaking.

Il s'en va (en) grondant.

Off he goes grumbling.

d. The gerund denotes progressive action in a few expressions formed from **aller**:

Cela alla (en) diminuant.

That kept growing less and less.

287. English Forms in -ing. These are variously translated into French; idiomatic differences are:

1. Periphrastic tense forms are avoided in French:

Il a joué toute la matinée. He has been playing all morning.

2. English gerunds are translated by an **-ant** form only when the preposition **en** may be used; otherwise by an infinitive, a noun, or a clause:

En lisant on apprend à lire.	By reading one learns to read.
But: Il parle de partir.	He speaks of going away.
Il fut pendu pour avoir volé.	He was hanged for having stolen.
Elle partit sans dire adieu.	She went without saying good-bye.
Voir c'est croire.	Seeing is believing.
J'aime la chasse (<i>or</i> à chasser).	I like hunting.
Je suis étonné qu'il soit venu.	I am surprised at his coming.

3. After verbs of perception (**entendre, sentir, voir, etc.**), the relative or infinitive construction is much commoner than the participle:

Je les vois venir (<i>qui viennent or</i> <i>venant</i>).	I see them coming.
Les voilà qui passent!	See them passing!
Il a vu sortir mes frères.	He saw my brothers going out.
Les avez-vous entendus frapper (<i>qui frappaient</i>)?	Did you hear them knocking?
Je la (<i>or</i> lui) vis frapper l'enfant.	I saw her striking the child.

4. Compound nouns with a first component in **-ing** are not literally translated:

Une machine à coudre. A sewing-machine.

5. It is often more elegant to avoid a French form in **-ant**, even when permissible:

Pendant mon voyage. While traveling.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

288. General Use. The past participle is used, (1) without auxiliary, (2) with **être**, (3) with **avoir** (*or être used as avoir*).

289. Without Auxiliary. A past participle without any auxiliary has the force of an adjective (*attributive, predica-*

tive, appositive), and agrees, like an adjective, in gender and number with the word qualified:

Des fêtes données par le roi.	Festivities given by the king.
Les battus; les morts.	The beaten; the dead.
Le passé n'est plus à nous.	The past is no longer ours.
Jean et Marie semblent fatigués.	John and Mary look tired.
Tenez les portes fermées.	Keep the doors closed.
Ils me regardèrent étonnés.	They looked at me astonished.

a. Certain past participles have prepositional force when preceding the substantive, and are invariable, but are variable when following:

Vu les difficultés.	In view of the difficulties.
Excepté eux; eux exceptés.	Except them; they excepted.

Such are: Approuvé, attendu, certifié, collationné, y compris, non compris, entendu, excepté, ouï, payé, passé, supposé, vu, etc.

b. *Ci-inclus* = *enclosed* and *ci-joint* = *herewith*, are invariable when beginning a sentence, or when followed by a noun without article:

Ci-inclus la copie, etc.	Herewith the copy, etc.
Vous recevez ci-joint copie, etc.	You receive herewith a copy, etc.
But: J'envoie ci-jointe une (la) copie, etc.	I send herewith a (the) copy, etc.

290. Past Participle with *être*. A past participle with *être* agrees with the subject; for exceptions see § 244:

Ils sont (ont été) battus.	They are (have been) beaten.
Marie et Louise sont venues.	Mary and Louisa have come.
Ils sont sortis.	They have gone out.
Les dames étant arrivées.	The ladies having come.
Elle parla d'avoir été blessée.	She spoke of having been hurt.

a. Hence the past participle of an impersonal verb with *être* is invariable, agreeing strictly with the grammatical subject *il*:

Il était venu des soldats.	Soldiers had come.
----------------------------	--------------------

291. Past Participle with *avoir*. 1. A past participle with *avoir* agrees with a preceding direct object; otherwise it is invariable:

La pièce <i>que</i> j'ai écrite, l'avez-vous lue?	Have you read the play I wrote?
Quels livres a-t-il apportés?	What books did he bring?

But: J'ai écrit la lettre.
Elles ont lu et écrit.
Je lui ai donné la lettre.

I have written the letter.
They have read and written.
I have given her the letter.

2. Similarly, the past participle of a reflexive verb (conjugated with *être* for *avoir*) always agrees with the reflexive object, unless that object be indirect:

Ils *se* sont réjouis.

They have rejoiced.

Elles *s'étaient* trompées.

They were mistaken.

Elle *s'est* blessée.

She wounded (*or* hurt) herself.

Elle *s'est* laissée tomber.

She has fallen (*fell*).

But: Ils *se* sont écrit.

They wrote to each other.

Elle *s'est* blessé la main.

She wounded her hand.

Ils *se* sont arrogé ce privilège.

They assumed that privilege.

Ils *se* sont plu à Paris.

They enjoyed themselves in Paris.

a. Besides the indirect reflexive object, a direct object may be present, with which the following past participle agrees:

Les robes qu'elle *s'est* achetées. The dresses she bought herself.

292. Remarks. All cases of the agreement of the past participle depend upon the above general principles; special difficulties are:

1. The past participle of an impersonal verb is invariable:

La belle journée qu'il a fait!

What a fine day it was!

La disette qu'il y a eu.

The scarcity that there was.

2. A noun denoting distance, time, price, weight, etc., with such verbs as *marcher*, *courir*, *vivre*, *coûter*, *peser*, *valoir*, etc., is adverbial accusative (not direct object); hence no agreement:

Les dix milles que j'ai marché.

The ten miles I walked.

Les cent francs que cet ouvrage
m'a coûté.

The hundred francs that book cost
me.

a. Such verbs used transitively, or figuratively with transitive force, follow the general rule:

La malle que j'ai pesée.

The trunk which I weighed.

Les dangers qu'il a courus.

The dangers he incurred.

La peur que cela a coûtée.

The fear which that caused.

3. A past participle preceded by an expression of number or quantity, a collective, etc., is variable or invariable according to the sense (cf. § 231-234):

Que de maux il a soufferts !	What ills he endured !
C'est la moitié des meubles qu'on a saisie.	It is the half of the furniture that has been seized.
La moitié des meubles que j'ai vendus.	The half of the furniture which I sold.
Quelle joie, quel bonheur vous lui avez procuré !	What joy, what happiness you have procured him !

a. Partitive **en** is never a direct object; agreement, however, takes place with **combien, plus, moins**, preceding **en**, if the sense be plural:

Combien Dieu en a-t-il exaucés !	How many of them God has heard !
Plus on vous a donné de livres, plus vous en avez lus.	The more books you were given, the more of them you read.

4. When an infinitive (with or without a preposition) follows, the past participle is invariable when the preceding direct object is governed by the infinitive, and variable if governed by the past participle alone:

La lettre que j'ai voulu écrire.	The letter I wished to write.
La lettre que j'ai oublié d'écrire.	The letter I forgot to write.
Il nous a priés d'y aller.	He begged us to go.
On nous a dit de sortir.	They told us to go out.

a. **Entendu, vu, laissé**, agree when the infinitive has active force, but are invariable if it has passive force (§ 284):

La dame que j'ai entendue chanter.	The lady I heard sing(ing).
Les enfants que j'ai vu battre.	The children I saw beaten.

b. After **dû, pu, voulu, osé**, with auxiliary force, a governing infinitive is either expressed or implied; hence no agreement:

J'ai lu tous les livres que j'ai pu (lire).	I read all the books that I could (read).
But: Les livres que j'ai voulus.	The books I wished.

c. **Fait** + infinitive is invariable:

Les médecins qu'il a fait venir.	The doctors he sent for.
---	--------------------------

d. The past participle of **avoir à** is variable or invariable:

Les lettres que j'ai eu (eues) à lire.	The letters I had to read.
---	----------------------------

5. The relative pronoun **que** is sometimes direct object of a verb in a following **que** clause, either fully expressed or implied, and hence the past participle is invariable:

Des choses que j'ai cru qu'il ferait.	Things I thought he would do.
J'ai lu les livres qu'il a voulu (que je lusse).	I read the books which he wished (me to read).

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

293. Transitives. 1. A transitive verb governs a direct object, as in English:

J'ai écrit la lettre (des lettres).	I wrote the letter (letters).
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------

2. A transitive verb can have only one direct object; other substantives related to it must stand as indirect object or as prepositional complement:

Pardonnez-lui ses péchés.	Pardon him his sins.
Je donne le dé à la fille.	I give the girl the thimble.
Je lui donne le dé avec plaisir.	I give her the thimble with pleasure.
Je conseille à mon fils de partir.	I advise my son to go.

a. By an extension of this principle, the verb **faire** = *make, cause to*, etc., + an infinitive, requires an indirect personal object when the infinitive has a direct object:

Je fais lire ce livre à mon fils.	I make (have) my son read this book.
Je lui fais lire ce livre.	I make him read this book.
But: Je fais lire mon fils.	I make my son read.
Je le fais lire.	I make him read.

b. **Laisser, voir, entendre, ouïr**, may have, and frequently do have, the same construction:

Laissez-le (-lui) lire le livre.	Let him read the book.
Je l'(-lui) ai vu jouer ce rôle.	I saw him play that part.
But: Laissez lire l'enfant.	Let the child read.

294. Intransitives. An intransitive verb can have no direct object, but may, of course, have an indirect object or a prepositional complement:

Il parle à ce soldat.	He is speaking to that soldier.
Il lui parle de la guerre.	He speaks to him of the war.

a. A very few intransitives govern a direct object anomalously:

Il a vécu sa vie en héros. He lived his life like a hero.

Il va tout droit son chemin. He goes straight on his way.

NOTE. — Many verbs serve either as transitives or intransitives: **Il est descendu** (intransitive), *He has gone down*; **Il a descendu le tableau** (transitive), *He has taken down the picture*.

295. Predicative Complement. Nouns are used predicatively after certain verbs, as follows:

1. In nominative relation:

Ils sont Anglais. They are Englishmen.

Il est médecin. He is a doctor.

Elle est morte jeune fille. She died a young girl.

Such verbs are:

demeurer, <i>remain</i>	être censé, <i>be supposed</i>	passer, <i>pass</i>
devenir, <i>become</i>	mourir, <i>die</i>	rester, <i>remain</i>
entrer, <i>enter</i>	naître, <i>be born</i>	sembler, <i>seem</i>
être, <i>be</i>	paraître, <i>appear</i>	sortir, <i>go out, etc.</i>

2. In accusative relation:

On le fit roi. They made him king.

Je le crois honnête homme. I think he is an honest man.

Je le connais incapable de mentir. I know he is incapable of falsehood.

Such verbs are:

appeler, <i>call</i>	estimer, <i>esteem</i>	se montrer, <i>show oneself</i>
couronner, <i>crown</i>	faire, <i>make</i>	nommer, <i>name</i>
croire, <i>believe</i>	se faire, <i>become</i>	proclamer, <i>proclaim</i>
déclarer, <i>declare</i>	instituer, <i>institute</i>	savoir, <i>know, etc.</i>

296. Prepositional Complement. The use of **de** and **à** presents special difficulty; other prepositions have, in general, their usual literal force:

1. Some verbs with **de** have the force of an English transitive:

Il jouit d'une parfaite santé. He enjoys perfect health.

Elle s'est trompée de porte. She took the wrong door.

On se sert d'encre pour écrire. Ink is used for writing.

Such verbs are:

abuser de, <i>misuse</i>	s'approcher de, <i>approach</i>	avoir peur de, <i>fear</i>
s'apercevoir de, <i>perceive</i>	avoir besoin de, <i>need</i>	avoir pitié de, <i>pity</i>

convenir de, *admit*
 se défier de, *mistrust*
 se démettre de, *resign*
 disconvenir de, *deny*
 douter de, *doubt*
 se douter de, *suspect*

gémir de, *bemoan*
 jouir de, *enjoy*
 manquer de, *lack*
 médire de, *slander*
 se méfier de, *mistrust*
 partir de, *leave*

se passer de, *do without*
 se servir de, *use*
 se souvenir de, *recollect*
 se tromper de, *mistake*
 user de, *employ, use*
 etc.

2. Similarly, some verbs with *à* have the force of an English transitive:

Il obéit à son père.

He obeys his father.

Elle ressemble à sa mère.

She resembles her mother.

Such verbs are:

aller à, *fit, suit*
 arriver à, *reach*
 attenter à, *attempt (the life)*
 compatir à, *pity*
 convenir à, *suit*
 déplaire à, *displease*
 désobéir à, *disobey*
 se fier à, *trust*
 importer à, *concern*

nuire à, *harm*
 obéir à, *obey*
 obvier à, *obviate*
 ordonner à, *order*
 pardonner à, *pardon*
 parvenir à, *attain*
 permettre à, *permit*
 persuader à, *persuade*
 plaire à, *please*

promettre à, *promise*
 remédier à, *remedy*
 renoncer à, *renounce*
 répondre à, *answer*
 résister à, *resist*
 ressembler à, *resemble*
 succéder à, *succeed*
 survivre à, *survive*
 etc.

3. In some instances, on the contrary, a French transitive has the force of an English verb + a preposition.

Payez-lui les livres.

Pay him *for* the books.

Je regarde cet arbre-là.

I am looking *at* that tree.

Such verbs are:

accepter, *accept of*
 admettre, *admit of*
 approuver, *approve of*
 attendre, *wait for*
 chercher, *look for*

demander, *ask for*
 désirer, *wish for*
 écouter, *listen to*
 envoyer chercher, *send for*
 espérer, *hope for*

payer, *pay for*
 regarder, *look at*
 rencontrer, *meet with*
 souhaiter, *wish for*
 etc.

4. *De* and *à* frequently have, as compared with English, a special idiomatic force with certain verbs:

Cela dépend *de* vous.

That depends on you.

Pensez *à* votre devoir.

Think of your duty.

Such verbs are:

s'affliger de, *grieve at*
 approcher(s') de, *draw near to*

blâmer de, *blame for*
 complimenter de, *compliment on*

consoler de, *console for*
 déjeuner de, *breakfast on*
 dépendre de, *depend on*

se désoler de, <i>grieve over</i>	se nourrir de, <i>live on</i>	remercier de, <i>thank for</i>
dîner de, <i>dine on</i>	profiter de, <i>profit by</i>	rire de, <i>laugh at</i>
féliciter de, <i>congratulate on</i>	punir de, <i>punish for</i>	triompher de, <i>triumph over</i>
gémir de, <i>lament over</i>	récompenser de, <i>reward for</i>	vivre de, <i>live on</i>
louer de, <i>praise for</i>		etc.
se mêler de, <i>meddle with</i>	se réjouir de, <i>rejoice at</i>	

acheter qqch. à qqu., *buy something from (or for) some one*

arracher qqch. à qqu., *snatch from*

cacher qqch. à qqu., *hide from*

conférer qqch. à qqu., *confer on*

demander qqch. à qqu., *ask for (of)*

dérober qqch. à qqu., *steal from*

emprunter qqch. à qqu., *borrow from*

infliger qqch. à qqu., *inflict on*

inspirer qqch. à qqu., *inspire with*

mêler qqch. à qqch., *mingle with*

ôter qqch. à qqu., *take away from*

pardonner qqch. à qqu., *pardon for*

payer qqch. à qqu., *pay for*

penser à qqch. or à qqu., *think of*

prendre qqch. à qqu., *take from*

pourvoir à qqch., *provide for*

procurer qqch. à qqu., *procure for*

prodiguer qqch. à qqu., *lavish on*

reprocher qqch. à qqu., *reproach with*

souhaiter qqch. à qqu., *wish*

voler qqch. à qqu., *steal from*

5. Many verbs have a double construction with varying meaning:

Ils jouent *aux cartes*.

They are playing cards.

Elle joue *du piano*.

She is playing the piano.

Such verbs are:

abuser qqu., *deceive*

abuser de qqch., *misuse*

assister qqu., *help*

assister à qqch., *be present at, witness*

concourir à qqch., *contribute to*

concourir pour qqch., *compete for*

convenir à qqu., *suit*

convenir de qqch., *agree about*

croire qqu. or qqch., *believe*

croire à, en, *believe in*

demander qqu. or qqch., *ask after*

demander qqch. à qqu., *ask for (from, of)*

hériter de qqu., *be heir of*

hériter de qqch., *inherit*

jouer qqu., *deceive*

[*strument*

jouer d'un instrument, *play on an in-*

jouer à un jeu, *play (at) a game*

manquer qqu. or qqch., *miss*

manquer de, *lack, be nearly*

manquer à, *fail in*

penser à, *think of (about)*

penser de, *have opinion of*

prétendre qqch., *assert*

prétendre à, *aspire to*

servir, *serve (tr. and intr.)*

servir de, *serve as*

servir à, *be useful for*

se servir de, *make use of*

suppléer qqu., *take the place of*

suppléer à qqch., *complete*

toucher qqu. or qqch., *touch*

toucher de l'argent, *draw money*

toucher à, *meddle with, be near to*

toucher d'un instrument, *play an in-*
strument (keyed)

user qqch., *wear out*

user de, *make use of*

en user de, *deal, act*

veiller qqu., *watch over, nurse*

veiller à qqch., *attend to, watch over*

veiller sur qqu., *watch over, etc.*

297. Position. Objects and prepositional complements regularly follow the verb, the direct object (if any) being first; but if of unequal length, the longer is usually last. For position of personal pronouns, see the Pronoun.

298. Composite Complement. The various parts of a complement must be of the same grammatical value, *i.e.*, all nouns, all verbs, etc.:

Il apprend à lire et à chanter.	He learns to read and sing.
Il apprend la lecture et le chant.	He learns reading and singing.

299. Manifold Verb. Two or more verbs can govern the same complement only if alike in government:

Il aime et respecte son <i>oncle</i> .	He loves and respects his uncle.
Il aime son <i>oncle</i> et <i>lui</i> obéit.	He loves and obeys his uncle.

THE NOUN

GENDER OF NOUNS

300. General Rule. Nouns in French are either masculine or feminine. As an aid to memory, general rules for determining gender are given in the following sections.

301. Gender by Derivation. 1. Nouns derived from Latin masculines are regularly masculine:

Mur (L. *murum*); **livre** (L. *librum*); Wall; book; order; poet.
ordre (L. *ordinem*); **poète** (L. *poeta*).

a. Exceptions are not uncommon; Latin masculine abstracts in **-or** (accusative **-orem**) have become feminine, except masculine **honneur**, **déshonneur**, **labeur**, **amour**:

candeur, f. (L. <i>candorem</i>), <i>innocence</i>	erreur, f. (L. <i>errorem</i>), <i>error</i>
* couleur, f. (L. <i>colorem</i>), <i>color</i>	fureur, f. (L. <i>furorem</i>), <i>fury</i>
douleur, f. (L. <i>dolorem</i>), <i>pain</i>	etc.

* Masculine in such phrases as **couleur de feu**, **couleur de rose**, etc., *e.g.*, **ce ruban est d'un beau couleur de rose**.

2. Nouns derived from Latin feminines are regularly feminine:

Justice (L. *justitiam*); **charité** (L. *caritatem*); **main** (L. *manum*); **foi** (L. *fidem*). Justice; charity; hand; faith.

3. Nouns derived from Latin neuters are regularly masculine:

Corps (L. *corpus*); **fer** (L. *ferrum*); **Body**; **iron**; **gold**; **meadow**; **cen-**
or (L. *aurum*); **pré** (L. *pratium*); **tury**; **verb**.
siècle (L. *sæculum*); **verbe** (L. *verbum*).

a. More than a hundred neuter plurals in **-a** have become feminine singular in French, just as if derived from nouns in **-a** of the Latin first declension:

arme (L. <i>arma</i>), <i>arm</i>	feuille (L. <i>folia</i>), <i>leaf</i>	lèvre (L. <i>labra</i>), <i>lip</i>
date (L. <i>data</i>), <i>date</i>	graine (L. <i>grana</i>), <i>seed</i>	œuvre (L. <i>opera</i>), <i>work</i>
dette (L. <i>debita</i>), <i>debt</i>	huile (L. <i>olea</i>), <i>oil</i>	pomme (L. <i>poma</i>) <i>apple</i>
étude (L. <i>studia</i>), <i>study</i>	joie (L. <i>gaudia</i>), <i>joy</i>	<i>etc.</i>

302. Gender by Endings. 1. Masculine are most nouns ending as follows:

(1) In a vowel sound (not **-e** mute):

Un opéra (côté, chapeau, cheveu). An opera (side, hat, hair).
Un parti (zéro, caillou, tissu). A party (zero, pebble. tissue).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

guérilla , <i>guerilla</i>	moitié , <i>half</i>	bru , <i>daughter-in-law</i>
gutta-percha , <i>gutta-percha</i>	fourmi , <i>ant</i>	glu , <i>bird lime</i>
polka , <i>polka</i>	merci , <i>mercy</i>	tribu , <i>tribe</i>
razzia , <i>raid</i>	foi , <i>faith</i>	vertu , <i>virtue</i>
tombola , <i>charity lottery</i>	loi , <i>law</i>	eau , <i>water</i>
véranda , <i>veranda</i>	paroi , <i>wall</i>	peau , <i>skin</i>
cit�� , <i>city</i>	virago , <i>virago</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Further, most abstracts in **-t  **, **-ti  **:

amiti�� , <i>friendship</i>	libert�� , <i>liberty</i>	sant�� , <i>health</i>
charit�� , <i>charity</i>	piti�� , <i>pity</i>	<i>etc.</i>

(2) In a consonant:

Le sac (pied, joug, sol, nez, temps). The sack (foot, yoke, soil, nose, time).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

<i>clef, key</i>	<i>chair, flesh</i>	<i>vis, screw</i>	<i>croix, cross</i>
<i>nef, ship, nave</i>	<i>cour, court</i>	<i>dent, tooth</i>	<i>faux, scythe</i>
<i>soif, thirst</i>	<i>cuiller, spoon</i>	<i>dot, dower</i>	<i>noix, walnut</i>
<i>faim, hunger</i>	<i>mer, sea</i>	<i>forêt, forest</i>	<i>paix, peace</i>
<i>façon, fashion</i>	<i>tour, tower</i>	<i>gent, tribe</i>	<i>perdrix, partridge</i>
<i>fin, end</i>	<i>brebis, sheep</i>	<i>mort, death</i>	<i>poix, pitch</i>
<i>leçon, lesson</i>	<i>fois, time</i>	<i>nuit, night</i>	<i>toux, cough</i>
<i>main, hand</i>	<i>oasis, oasis</i>	<i>part, part, share</i>	<i>voix, voice</i>
<i>rançon, ransom</i>	<i>souris, mouse</i>	<i>chaux, lime</i>	<i>etc.</i>

Further, nouns in **-son, -ion** and most abstracts in **-eur** (cf. § 301, *a*):

<i>chanson, song</i>	<i>nation, nation</i>	<i>faveur, favor</i>
<i>maison, house</i>	<i>occasion, occasion</i>	<i>fureur, fury</i>
<i>raison, reason</i>	<i>possession, possession</i>	<i>peur, fear</i>
<i>trahison, treason</i>	<i>couleur, color</i>	<i>etc.</i>

(3) In -acle, -age, -asme, -ège, -ème, -isme, -tère:

Le spectacle (<i>voyage, sarcasme, collège, diadème, magnétisme, mystère</i>).	The spectacle (<i>journey, sarcasm, college, diadem, magnetism, mystery</i>).
---	--

a. The following feminines in -age should be noted:

<i>cage, cage</i>	<i>nage, swimming</i>	<i>plage, beach</i>
<i>image, image</i>	<i>page, page (of a book)</i>	<i>rage, rage</i>

2. Feminine are most nouns ending as follows:**(1) In -e preceded by a vowel or double consonant:**

Une année (<i>vie, vue, raie, soie, roue, pluie, famille, flamme, couronne, tristesse, botte</i>).	A year (<i>life, sight, streak, silk, wheel, rain, family, flame, crown, sadness, boot</i>).
---	---

(2) In -ace, -ade, -ance, -ence, -ense, -ière, -oire, -ude, -ure:

La préface (<i>salade, constance, présence, défense, lumière, histoire, habitude, culture</i>).	The preface (<i>salad, constancy, presence, defence, light, history, habit, culture</i>).
--	--

303. Gender by Meaning. 1. Names of male beings are usually masculine, and names of female beings feminine:

Un homme; une femme.

A man; a woman.

Un bœuf; une vache.

An ox; a cow.

a. Most nouns denoting professions, *e.g.*, **auteur**, *author*, **écrivain**, *writer*, **imprimeur**, *printer*, etc., and a few nouns lacking a feminine form, *e.g.*, **ange**, *angel*, **témoin**, *witness*, etc., remain masculine when applied to females:

Cette dame est un auteur distingué. That lady is a celebrated authoress.

Marie est un ange. Mary is an angel.

b. Some names of lower animals are masculine only, *e.g.*, **éléphant**, *elephant*, **hibou**, *owl*; others are feminine only, *e.g.*, **fourmi**, *ant*, **souris**, *mouse*; ambiguity may be avoided by adding **mâle** or **femelle**:

Un éléphant mâle (femelle). A bull (cow) elephant.

c. Some nouns are feminine only, whether applied to males or females:

caution, <i>surety</i>	personne, <i>person</i>	vedette, <i>scout</i>
connaissance, <i>acquaintance</i>	pratique, <i>customer</i>	victime, <i>victim</i>
dupe, <i>dupe</i>	recrue, <i>recruit</i>	vigie, <i>look-out man</i>
ganache, <i>blockhead</i>	sentinelle, <i>sentinel</i>	etc.

2. The following are masculine:

(1) Names of cardinal points and winds:

Le nord; le sud; le zéphyr. The north; the south; the zephyr.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

bise, <i>north wind</i>	mousson, <i>monsoon</i>	tramontane, <i>north wind</i>
brise, <i>breeze</i>		

(2) Names of seasons, months, days of the week:

Le printemps; octobre; lundi. Spring; October; Monday.

(3) Names of countries not ending in -e:

Le Canada; le Dauphiné; le Chili. Canada; Dauphiny; Chile.

(4) Most names of mountains not ending in -es, and most names of rivers:

Le Hartz; le Jura.	The Harz mts.; the Jura mts.
Les Apennins.	The Apennines.
Le Volga; le Rhône; le Rhin.	The Volga; the Rhone; the Rhine.
But fem.: Les Alpes (Pyrénées, Vosges, etc.).	

a. The rivers of France in -e are nearly all feminine:

La Seine, la Loire, etc. The Seine, the Loire, etc.

(5) Names of trees and shrubs:

Le chêne; le bouleau; le pommier. The oak; the birch; the apple tree.

a. Feminine exceptions are:

aubépine, *hawthorn*
bourdaine, *buckthorn*
bruyère, *heath*

épine, *thorn*
hièble, *dwarf elder*
ronce, *bramble*

vigne, *vine*
viorne, *wild clematis*
etc.

(6) Names of weights and measures of the metrical system:

Un mètre (gramme, litre, etc.). A meter (gramme, liter, etc.).

(7) Names of metals and chemicals:

Le fer (or, cuivre, argent, sulfate). Iron (gold, copper, silver, sulphate).

a. Feminine exceptions are:

fonte, *cast iron*

tôle, *sheet iron*

(8) Words and phrases not nouns when used as nouns:

Le beau; le blanc; le français. The beautiful; white; French.
Un a; un mais; un oui-dire. An 'a'; a 'but'; a rumor.
Le derrière de la tête. The back of the head.

a. Adjectives referring to concrete objects have the gender of the noun understood:

Une belle (*sc. dame, femme, etc.*). A beauty.
Une capitale (*sc. ville, lettre*). A capital.

b. The names of the letters of the alphabet, as given in § 4, are all masculine, but **f, h, l, m, n, r, s** are often treated as feminine.

Un a; un b; une (*or un*) f. An 'a'; a 'b'; an 'f.'

3. The following are feminine:

(1) Names of countries in **-e**:

La France (*Asie, Normandie*). France (*Asia, Normandy*).

a. Some masculine exceptions are:

le Bengale, *Bengal* le Mexique, *Mexico* le Maine, *Maine* (*in Fr.*)

(2) Most names of cities and towns, especially in **-e, -es**:

Rome; Athènes; Tyr; Ilion. Rome; Athens; Tyre; Ilium.

a. Masculine exceptions are:

le Caire, *Cairo* Londres, *London* Paris, *Paris*
le Havre, *Havre* Versailles, *Versailles* etc.

NOTES. — 1. Any name of a town or city is masculine as a collective: *Tout Rome le sait, All Rome knows it.* 2. In case of doubt as to the gender, the name may always be preceded by **la ville de** = *the town (city) of*.

(3) Names of holidays, *fête de* being understood:

La Saint-Martin; la mi-juin. *Martinmas; mid-June.*

a. Observe:

Noël, m. (la Noël, la fête de Noël). *Christmas.*

(4) Names of arts, sciences, trades:

La peinture (chimie, librairie). *Painting (chemistry, book-trade).*

a. Principal exception:

le dessin, drawing

304. Nouns of Double Gender. 1. Some nouns denoting persons, mostly in *-e*, and adjectives in *-e*, when so used, are either masculine or feminine:

Un (une) artiste; un (une) élève. *An artist; a pupil.*

Un (une) malade; un (une) rebelle. *A patient; a rebel.*

Such nouns are:

<i>aide, assistant</i>	<i>* enfant, child</i>	<i>propriétaire, owner</i>
<i>camarade, comrade</i>	<i>esclave, slave</i>	<i>pupille, ward</i>
<i>compatriote, compatriot</i>	<i>locataire, tenant</i>	<i>etc.</i>

** Regularly masculine in the plural. But: belles enfants, pretty little girls.*

2. The meaning of some nouns varies with the gender:

Un critique; une critique. *A critic; a criticism.*

Le mode; la mode. *The mode, mood (gram.); the fashion.*

Other such nouns are:

	MASC.	FEM.		MASC.	FEM.
<i>aide</i>	<i>assistant</i>	<i>assistant, help</i>	<i>page</i>	<i>page</i>	<i>page(of a book)</i>
<i>aune</i>	<i>alder</i>	<i>ell</i>	<i>pendule</i>	<i>pendulum</i>	<i>clock</i>
<i>crêpe</i>	<i>crape</i>	<i>pancake</i>	<i>poêle</i>	<i>stove, pall</i>	<i>frying-pan</i>
<i>garde</i>	<i>guard (mil.), keeper, body of</i>	<i>politique</i>	<i>politique</i>	<i>politician</i>	<i>politics</i>
	<i>keeper</i>	<i>troops, watch, hilt</i>	<i>poste</i>	<i>position</i>	<i>post office</i>
<i>guide</i>	<i>guide</i>	<i>rein</i>	<i>somme</i>	<i>sleep, nap</i>	<i>sum</i>
<i>livre</i>	<i>book</i>	<i>pound</i>	<i>souris</i>	<i>smile</i>	<i>mouse</i>
<i>manche</i>	<i>handle</i>	<i>sleeve</i>	<i>statuaire</i>	<i>sculptor</i>	<i>sculpture</i>
<i>mémoire</i>	<i>memorandum</i>	<i>memory</i>	<i>tour</i>	<i>turn, trick</i>	<i>tower</i>
<i>merci</i>	<i>thanks</i>	<i>mercy, pity</i>	<i>trompette</i>	<i>trumpeter</i>	<i>trumpet</i>
<i>moule</i>	<i>mould</i>	<i>mussel</i>	<i>vapeur</i>	<i>steamer</i>	<i>steam</i>
<i>mousse</i>	<i>cabin-boy</i>	<i>moss</i>	<i>vase</i>	<i>vase</i>	<i>slime, mud</i>
<i>office</i>	<i>service</i>	<i>larder</i>	<i>voile</i>	<i>veil</i>	<i>sail</i>

3. The following nouns are either masculine or feminine, with identical or closely related meaning:

a. **Après-midi** = *afternoon* and **automne** = *autumn* are usually masculine, sometimes feminine.

b. **Amour** (m.) = *love, loved object, passion, amour*; **amour** (f. s. poet.) = *passion, amour*; **amours** (f. pl.) = *passion, amours*.

c. **Automobile** (m. or f.), more commonly feminine.

d. **Délice** = *delight* and **orgue** = *organ (music)* are masculine in singular and feminine in plural.

e. **Hymne** (m.) = *hymn, song of praise*; **hymne** (f.) = *(church) hymn*. (Commonly **cantique** is used.)

f. **Couple** (m.) = *couple, pair (joined by affection, sentiment, etc.)*; **couple** (f.) = *couple, two (two like objects taken together)*:

Un couple d'amoureux. A pair of lovers.

Une couple d'œufs. Two (a couple of) eggs.

Note: **Une paire de gants**, etc. A pair of gloves, etc.

g. **Pâque** or **pâques** (m. s.) = *Easter*; **pâques fleuries** (f. pl.) = *Palm Sunday* (so also in other phrases); **pâque** (f.) = *Passover*.

h. **Orge** (f.) = *barley* is masculine in **orge mondé** (*perlé*) = *pot-(pearl-) barley*.

i. **Foudre** (f.) = *thunderbolt* is sometimes masculine in poetry or elevated prose; **foudre** (m.) in **le foudre de Jupiter** = *Jove's thunderbolt* and in figurative expressions, e.g., **un grand foudre de guerre** = *a great warrior*.

j. **Œuvre** (f.) = *work, works*, is sometimes masculine in elevated style; **œuvre** (m. s.) = *works* (collectively of an engraver or musician); **le grand œuvre** = *the philosopher's stone*.

k. **Gens** (pl. m. or f.) = *people, persons*, etc. Attributive adjectives are feminine when preceding, and masculine when following **gens**, but predicatives, before or after, are masculine. *All* is translated by **toutes** only when attributive and separated from **gens** by an adjective variable for the feminine; otherwise by **tous**:

De bonnes gens. Good people.

Les vieilles gens sont malheureux. Old people are unhappy.

Les petites gens et les grands.	The small people and the great.
Merci, bonnes gens, merci.	Thanks, good people, thanks.
Ces gens sont heureux.	Those people are happy.
Toutes les vieilles gens.	All (the) old people.
Tous les gens.	All the people.
But: Tous les habiles gens.	All the clever people.
Tous ces gens-ci.	All these people.
Tous sont de bonnes gens.	All are good people.
Les gens sont tous ici.	The people are all here.

NOTES. — 1. A pronoun to which *gens* is antecedent is masculine: *Les gens qui sont venus*, *The people who have come*. 2. *Gens* in expressions like *gens de robe* = *lawyers* and in *jeunes gens* = *young men* is always masculine.

305. Gender of Compound Nouns. 1. Compound nouns made up of a verb + a governed noun are regularly masculine:

Un cure-dents; un porte-plume.	A toothpick; a penholder.
Un tire-bouchon; un portefeuille.	A corkscrew; a portfolio.

a. Occasionally they are feminine:

Une perce-neige.	A snowdrop.
------------------	-------------

2. The gender of other compounds is regularly that of the noun when only one noun is present, or of the principal noun in case there are two:

Une eau-forte.	An etching.
Une mappe-monde.	A map of the world.
La fête-dieu.	Corpus Christi day.

306. Formation of the Feminine. Most nouns denoting living beings distinguish the masculine and feminine as follows:

1. Some by a different word:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
bœuf, <i>ox</i>	vache	mari, <i>husband</i>	femme
bouc, <i>he-goat</i>	chèvre	oncle, <i>uncle</i>	tante
coq, <i>cock</i>	poule	parrain, <i>godfather</i>	marraine
frère, <i>brother</i>	sœur	porc, <i>pig</i>	truie
homme, <i>man</i>	femme	etc.	etc.

a. The feminine form is often obviously cognate:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
ambassadeur, <i>ambassador</i>	ambassadrice	gouverneur, <i>tutor</i>	gouvernante
canard, <i>drake</i>	cane	loup, <i>wolf</i>	louve
* chanteur, <i>singer</i>	cantatrice	mulet, <i>mule</i>	mule
cochon, <i>hog</i>	coche	* procureur, <i>proxy</i>	procuratrice
compagnon, <i>companion</i>	compagne	serviteur, <i>servant</i>	servante
dindon, <i>turkey cock</i>	dinde	vieillard, <i>old man</i>	vieille
empereur, <i>emperor</i>	impératrice	etc.	etc.

* Also in **-euse**, see § 337, 2 (2), a.

2. Some by adding **-esse** to the last consonant:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
abbé, <i>abbot</i>	abbesse	ogre, <i>ogre</i>	ogresse
âne, <i>ass</i>	ânesse	pair, <i>peer</i>	païresse
chanoine, <i>canon</i>	chanoinesse	pauvre, <i>pauper</i>	pauvresse
comte, <i>count</i>	comtesse	prêtre, <i>priest</i>	prêtresse
diable, <i>devil</i>	diabliesse	prince, <i>prince</i>	princesse
drôle, <i>rogue</i>	drôlesse	suisse, <i>Swiss</i>	suisseesse
druide, <i>druid</i>	druïdesse	tigre, <i>tiger</i>	tigresse
hôte, <i>host</i>	hôtesse	traître, <i>traitor</i>	traîtresse
maître, <i>master</i>	maîtresse	etc.	etc.

a. So also the following, but with changes in the stem:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
dieu, <i>god</i>	déesse	défendeur, <i>defendant</i>	défenderesse
doge, <i>doge</i>	dogaresse	* demandeur, <i>plaintiff</i>	demanderesse
duc, <i>duke</i>	duchesse	docteur, <i>doctor</i>	doctoresse
larron, <i>thief</i>	larronnesse	enchanteur, <i>enchanter</i>	enchanteresse
nègre, <i>negro</i>	négresse	pécheur, <i>sinner</i>	pécheresse
prophète, <i>prophet</i>	prophétesse	* vendeur, <i>seller (law)</i>	venderesse
* chasseur, <i>hunter</i>	chasseresse	vengeur, <i>avenger</i>	vengeresse

* Also in **-euse**, see § 337, 2 (2), a.

3. A few nouns take **-ine**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
tsar, <i>czar</i>	tsarine	Philippe, <i>Philip</i>	Philippine
héros, <i>hero</i>	héroïne	etc.	etc.

4. Most other nouns follow the analogy of adjectives of like termination, and will be noted under the Adjective.

NUMBER OF NOUNS

307. General Rule. The plural of a noun is regularly formed by adding **-s** to the singular:

Roi(s); reine(s); jardin(s). King(s); queen(s); garden(s).

308. Principal Exceptions. The following are the principal exceptions to the above rule:

1. Nouns in **-s**, **-x**, **-z** remain unchanged in the plural; so also invariable words when used as nouns:

Le bras; la voix; le nez.	The arm; the voice; the nose.
Les bras; les voix; les nez.	The arms; the voices; the noses.
Les <i>oui</i> et les <i>non</i>; les <i>on dit</i>.	The ayes and noes; the rumors.
Plusieurs <i>peu</i> font un <i>beaucoup</i>.	Many littles make a 'muckle.'

2. Nouns in **-au**, **-eu**, and seven in **-ou**, take **-x**:

Noyau(x); château(x); jeu(x),	Kernel(s); castle(s); game(s);
vœu(x).	vow(s).

The seven nouns in **-ou** are:

bijou(x), <i>jewel</i>	genou(x), <i>knee</i>	joujou(x), <i>toy</i>
caillou(x), <i>pebble</i>	hibou(x), <i>owl</i>	pou(x), <i>louse</i>
chou(x), <i>cabbage</i>		
But: clou(s), <i>nail</i> , sou(s), <i>half-penny</i> , etc.		

3. Most nouns in **-al** change **-al** to **-au**, and add **-x** as above:

Général; cheval; journal.	General; horse; newspaper.
Généraux; chevaux; journaux.	Generals; horses; newspapers.

a. But the following, and a few rarer ones in **-al**, are regular:

aval(s), <i>endorsement</i>	cal(s), <i>callosity</i>	chacal(s), <i>jackal</i>
bal(s), <i>ball (for dancing)</i>	carnaval(s), <i>carnival</i>	régal(s), <i>treat</i>

4. The following in **-ail** have the plural in **-aux**:

bail (-aux), <i>lease</i>	travail (-aux), <i>work</i>	vitrail (-aux), <i>stained</i>
corail (-aux), <i>coral</i>	vantail (-aux), <i>folding-door</i>	glass window
soupirail (-aux), <i>air-hole</i>	ventail (-aux), <i>ventail</i>	

But: détail(s), *detail*; éventail(s), *fan*, etc., are regular.

NOTE. — **Bestiaux** (pl.), *cattle*, is often given as the plural of **bétail**, *cattle*; it is from an obsolete form **bestiail**, parallel to **bétail**.

5. **Gent** = *race*, *tribe*, has the plural **gens** = *people*, etc.

309. Double Plurals. The following have two plural forms, mostly with varying meaning:

aïeul (aïeux), <i>ancestor</i>	œil (yeux), <i>eye</i>
aïeul (aïeuls), <i>grandfather</i>	œil (œils-) in compounds, <i>e.g.</i> ,
ail (aulx), <i>garlic</i>	œils-de-bœuf, <i>oval windows</i>
ail (ails), <i>garlic</i>	pal (paux), <i>pale, stake</i>
ciel (cieux), <i>sky, heaven, climate</i>	pal (pals), <i>pale, stake</i>
ciel (ciels), <i>bed-tester, sky (in painting), roof (of a quarry)</i>	travail (travaux), <i>work</i>
	travail (travails), <i>report (of a minister, etc.), brake (for horse-shoeing)</i>

Obs.: The -x plural regularly has the literal meaning of the word.

310. Foreign Nouns. Nouns of foreign origin take -s, usually only when fully naturalized, but usage varies greatly (see a dictionary):

a. Partial list of variable foreign nouns:

accessit(s), <i>honorable mention</i>	bill(s), <i>bill</i>	toast(s), <i>toast</i>
album(s), <i>album</i>	duo(s), <i>duo</i>	tramway(s), <i>street-railway</i>
alibi(s), <i>alibi</i>	jury(s), <i>jury</i>	vivat(s), <i>hurrah</i>
bifteck(s), <i>beefsteak</i>	opéra(s), <i>opera</i>	etc.
	pensum(s), <i>task</i>	

b. Partial list of invariable foreign nouns:

amen	in-folio	magnificat	requiem	veto
facsimile	in-octavo	nota bene	Te Deum	etc.
item	intérim	post-scriptum	vade mecum	

c. A few Italian nouns retain their plural in *i*:

dilettante(-i), <i>dilettante</i>	soprano(-i), <i>soprano</i>	quintetto(-i), <i>quintette</i>
libretto(-i), <i>libretto</i>	lazzarone(-i), <i>beggar</i>	etc.

311. Compound Nouns. The only components which take a plural sign are nouns and adjectives. The following are special rules:

1. Compounds without hyphen are treated as one word, and follow the general rules:

Portemanteau(x); grand'mère(s). Valise(s); grandmother(s).

a. Exceptions are:

bon(s)homme(s), <i>goodman, etc.</i>	madame (mesdames), <i>madam, Mrs.</i>
gentil(s)homme(s), <i>nobleman</i>	mademoiselle (mesdemoiselles), <i>Miss</i>
monsieur (messieurs), <i>Mr., sir, etc.</i>	monseigneur (messeigneurs), <i>my lord</i>

2. When placed in juxtaposition and connected by a hyphen, nouns and adjectives are variable:

Chef(s)-lieu(x); chou(x)-fleur(s); County-town(s); cauliflower(s);
grand(s)-père(s). grandfather(s).

a. **Demi-** is invariable in compounds.

Des demi-heures.

Half hours.

b. Further exceptions are:

blanc-seing(s), *signature in blank*

terre-plein(s), *platform*

chevau-léger(s), *light-horseman*

etc.

3. Of two nouns joined by preposition and hyphens, the first only is variable:

Arc(s)-en-ciel; chef(s)-d'œuvre. Rainbow; masterpiece.

a. The preposition **de** is sometimes understood:

bain(s)-marie, *water bath, double boiler*

timbre(s)-poste, *postage-stamp*

hôtel(s)-dieu, *hospital*

etc.

b. The following are invariable, since the idea conveyed by their plural does not properly belong to the first component simply:

coq-à-l'âne, *cock-and-bull story*

pot-au-feu, *beef and soup*

pied-à-terre, *temporary lodging*

tête-à-tête, *private interview*

4. A noun with preceding invariable component is usually variable:

Anglo-Saxon(s); avant-garde(s)

Anglo-Saxon; vanguard

tire-bouchon(s); vice-roi(s)

corkscrew; viceroy

bouche-trou(s)

stop-gap

a. But the final noun remains invariable when the plural idea does not properly belong to it:

abat-jour, *lamp shade*

gagne-pain, *means of living* **réveille-matin,** *alarm*

coupe-gorge, *cut-throat place* **perce-neige,** *snowdrop*

clock

crève-cœur, *heartbreak*

prie-dieu, *praying-stool*

serre-tête, *headband*

contre-poison, *antidote*

boute-en-train, *jolly fellow* etc.

b. On the other hand, a final noun of clearly plural sense retains **-s** in the singular:

un (des) casse-noisettes, *nutcracker*

un (des) porte-clefs, *turnkey*

un (des) cure-dents, *toothpick*

etc.

5. Invariable words, such as verb, adverb, preposition, etc., are invariable in compounds:

Des on dit; des passe-partout.

Rumors; master-keys.

a. **Garde-** is usually variable in compounds denoting persons, and invariable in those denoting things:

Des gardes-malades.

Sick-nurses.

But: Des garde-robes.

Wardrobes.

312. Plural of Proper Nouns. 1. Names of persons or families are usually invariable in the plural:

Les deux Racine.

The two Racines.

Les Corneille et les Racine de la scène.

The Corneilles and Racines of the stage (*i.e.*, Corneille, Racine, and others like them).

Les Duval sont arrivés.

(The) Duvals have come.

a. A few Latin names, originally plural in form, and certain well-known historical names of families and dynasties, take **-s**:

Les Bourbons

Les Gracques

Les Pharaons

Les Tudors

Les Césars

Les Guises

Les Scipions

etc.

Les Condés

Les Horaces

Les Stuarts

b. Names of persons used as common nouns to denote 'persons like' or 'works by' those named are often variable, but usage is not fixed:

Les Corneilles sont rares.

Corneilles are rare.

J'ai vu deux Raphaëls.

I saw two Raphaels.

But: Les Hamlet; les La Fontaine; les Goethe; les Washington, etc.

2. Names of places take **-s** when the idea is plural:

Les Indes; les Vosges.

The Indies; the Vosges.

Les deux Romes.

The two Romes (*i.e.*, the ancient and modern).

CASE RELATION AND AGREEMENT OF NOUNS

313. Case Relations. The noun in French does not vary in form to denote case; it is used as follows:

1. With verbs, as subject, object, predicate:

Le père aime son fils.

The father loves his son.

Jean est devenu soldat.

John has become a soldier.

2. In appositions, and with adjectival force:

Henri IV, roi de France.

Henry IV, King of France.

Un roi enfant.

A child king.

3. After prepositions:

J'ai parlé à son père.

I have spoken to his father.

4. Absolutely, generally with adverbial force:

Le dîner fini, il partit.

The dinner ended, he set out.

Il était là, le chapeau à la main.

He was there, (with) his hat in his hand.

Je suis venu samedi.

I came on Saturday.

Il est resté trois heures.

He stayed three hours.

J'ai marché dix milles.

I walked ten miles.

Nous l'avons acheté dix francs.

We bought it for ten francs.

5. Vocatively:

Bonjour, mes amis.

Good morning, my friends.

314. Agreement. A predicate noun, or a noun used adjectivally, usually agrees like an adjective with the word referred to (see Agreement of the Adjective):

Ils (elles) sont Allemand(e)s.

They are Germans.

La reine mère.

The queen mother.

THE ARTICLE

315. The Indefinite Article

MASC.

FEM.

un, a (an)

une, a (an)

316. The Definite Article

SING.

PL.

MASC.	le (l')	} the
FEM.	la (l')	

MASC. or FEM. les, the

Obs.: For the forms in parenthesis, see § 19, 1.

317. Contractions. The prepositions **de** and **à** + **le** and **les**, are always contracted as follows:

de + le = du

à + le = au

de + les = des

à + les = aux

NOTES. — 1. No contraction takes place with **la**, **l'**. 2. Formerly **en** + **les** was contracted to **ès**, a form still used in academical titles, *e.g.*, *Bachelier ès lettres*, *Bachelor of Arts*.

318. Agreement and Repetition. The article agrees in gender and number with its noun, and is regularly repeated (as also **de**, **à**) before each noun or adjective denoting a distinctive object:

Une maison et un jardin.

A house and garden.

Le flux et le reflux.

High and low tide.

Au bon et au mauvais côté.

On the good and bad side.

Les bons et les mauvais.

The good and the bad.

Des hommes ou des femmes.

Men or women.

But: Le bon et pieux prêtre.

The kind and pious priest.

Le delta ou basse Égypte.

The Delta or Lower Egypt.

a. The definite article is not repeated when a single adjective precedes nouns joined by **et**:

**Les principales villes et provinces
de la France.**

The principal towns and provinces
of France.

b. Singular adjectives in apposition to a plural noun omit the article:

Les langues française et anglaise. The French and English languages.

Or: La langue française et la langue anglaise.

La langue française et l'anglaise.

c. A few expressions of collective force, like the following, are permissible, but are either not obligatory or are confined to set expressions:

Les père et mère.

The parents.

Les lundi et mardi.

(On) Mondays and Tuesdays.

Les trois et quatre avril.

The third and fourth of April.

Les officiers et soldats.

The officers and soldiers.

École des ponts et chaussées.

School of bridges and roads.

d. For the repetition of **le**, **la**, **les** with the superlative, see Comparison of Adjectives.

USE OF THE ARTICLE WITH NOUNS

319. Use in General. French and English agree to a considerable extent in the use of the article; differences are noted below.

320. The Indefinite Article. 1. Its use corresponds in general with that of English *a, an*; its plural is the partitive *des* (§ 323):

Un homme; une femme; des gens. A man; a woman; people.

2. Contrary to English usage, the indefinite article also commonly stands before an abstract noun used partitively with an adjective or an adjectival adjunct:

<i>Il montra un soin extrême.</i>	He showed extreme care.
<i>Il a une patience à toute épreuve.</i>	He has patience equal to anything.
<i>Elle jouit d'une bonne santé.</i>	She enjoys good health.
<i>C'est une triste nouvelle.</i>	It is sad news.

a. The adjective or complementary clause depending on such a noun may be understood:

<i>Voilà une patience!</i>	There is patience for you!
<i>J'étais d'une humeur . . .</i>	I was in a temper . . .
<i>Un garçon d'une raison . . .</i>	A young fellow of (splendid) intellect!

NOTE. — For several cases in which the English indefinite article is replaced by the French definite article, or *vice versa*, or is omitted, see below.

321. The General Noun. A noun used in a general sense, *i.e.*, 'in general,' 'all,' 'every,' etc., being implied with it, regularly has the definite article in French, though not usually in English:

<i>La vie est courte.</i>	Life is short.
<i>Le fer et le cuivre sont utiles.</i>	Iron and copper are useful.
<i>J'étudie la musique.</i>	I am studying music.
<i>Les Français aiment la gloire.</i>	The French love glory.
<i>Le cheval est l'ami de l'homme.</i>	The horse is the friend of man.
<i>Le noir vous sied bien.</i>	Black becomes you.
<i>J'aime les pommes et les poires.</i>	I like apples and pears.
<i>Le beau et l'utile.</i>	The beautiful and the useful.
<i>Le boire et le manger.</i>	Eating and drinking.

a. So also, names of languages, except after **en**; but not, however, after **parler**:

Sait-il le français ?	Does he know French ?
Il parle bien (le) français.	He speaks French well.
But: Dites cela en français.	Say that in French.
Parlez-vous français ?	Do you speak French ?

322. The Partitive Noun. A noun implying 'an undetermined quantity or number of' is said to be used partitively or in a partitive sense.

323. Partitive with Article. The partitive sense, expressed in English by the noun simply, or else the noun preceded by 'some' or 'any,' is regularly expressed in French by the noun preceded by **de** + the definite article:

Du pain trempé dans du vin.	(Some) bread dipped in wine.
A-t-il des amis ?	Has he (any) friends ?
Des enfants poussaient des cris désespérés.	Some children were uttering terrible cries.
Il est des gens qui le croient.	There are people who believe it.
C'est du Carlyle pur.	That is pure Carlyleism.

NOTE. — This use of **de** + the definite article, or even of **de** alone (see next section), is often called the 'partitive article'; it is entirely identical in form with **de** + the article in other senses, *e.g.*, **Je vends du blé**, *I sell wheat*; **Quel est le prix du blé?** *What is the price of the wheat?*

324. Omission of Article. The partitive sense is expressed by **de** alone + the noun as follows:

1. When an adjective precedes the noun; so also, when a noun is understood after an adjective:

Avez-vous de bon papier ?	Have you any good paper ?
Donnez-moi de ces plumes-là.	Give me some of those pens.
J'ai de vos livres.	I have some of your books.
De bon vin et de mauvais (sc. vin).	Good wine and bad.
De gros livres et de petits (sc. livres).	Big books and little ones.
But: Des soldats français.	French soldiers.
J'ai du pain blanc.	I have white bread.

a. The article is not omitted when the noun has a distinctive adjunct:
Du bon papier qu'il a acheté. Some of the good paper he bought.

b. The article is not omitted when adjective and noun are indivisible in sense, *i.e.*, when forming a real or a virtual compound:

Des grands-pères; des petits-fils.	Grandfathers; grandsons.
Des petits pois; du bon sens.	Green peas; common sense.
Des jeunes gens; de la bonne foi.	Young men; honesty.

c. Familiarly, the article is often used contrary to the rule:
Du bon vin; du vrai bonheur. Good wine; true happiness.

2. After a general negation, implying non-existence of the object in question:

Il n'a pas de montre.	He has no (not any) watch.
Je n'ai point de livres.	I have no (not any) books.
Sans avoir d'argent.	Without having (any) money.
Il ne fit pas de remarques.	He made no remarks.
Pas d'argent et pas d'amis.	No money and no friends.

3. But the article is not omitted, the negation being no longer general:

a. When the noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Je n'ai plus <i>du</i> vin de cette année.	I have no more of this year's wine.
Je n'ai pas <i>de</i> l'argent pour le gaspiller.	I have no money to waste (= I have money, but not to waste).

b. In contrasts:

Pas <i>du</i> lait, mais <i>du</i> thé.	Not milk, but tea.
--	--------------------

c. In negative interrogation implying affirmative answer:

N'avez-vous pas <i>des</i> amis, <i>de</i> la santé, <i>de</i> l'influence ?	Have you not friends, health, influence?
---	--

325. Omission of the Partitive Sign. The partitive sense is expressed by the noun simply, when the preposition *de* forms an essential part of the governing expression, thus:

1. In expressions of quantity or number:

Une livre de thé (noix).	A pound of tea (nuts).
Un morceau de papier.	A piece of paper.
Une foule de gens.	A crowd of people.
Peu de temps; beaucoup d'amis.	Little time; many friends.
Assez de livres.	Enough books (<i>or</i> books enough).

Trop de peine.

Too much trouble.

Que de gens assemblés!

What a number of people assembled!

a. Analogous to the above are expressions like the following:

Trois jours de marche.

Three days' march.

Cent soldats de tués.

A hundred soldiers killed.

Quelque chose (rien) de bon.

Something (nothing) good.

b. Bien = beaucoup regularly has **de** + the definite article:

Bien *de* l'argent; bien *du* monde.

Much money; many people.

Bien *des* gens le croient.

Many people think so.

But: Bien *d'*autres.

Many others.

NOTE. — Bien in other senses does not take **de**: *J'ai bien faim, I am very hungry.*

c. La plupart = *most, the greater part, etc.*, has **de** + the def. art.:

La plupart *des* hommes.

Most men.

La plupart *du* temps.

Most of the time.

d. Expressions of quantity or number with a distinctive adjunct have **de** + the definite article; so also, **beaucoup**, **peu**, etc., absolutely:

Une livre *du* thé *de* ce marchand.

A pound of this tradesman's tea.

Beaucoup *des* gens *de* ce pays.

Many of the men of that country.

2. After a verb requiring **de** before its complement, and in phrases, adjectival or adverbial, formed from **de** + a noun:

Il vit *de* pain (not *de du* pain).

He lives on bread.

Il manquait *d'*argent.

He lacked money.

J'ai besoin *d'*argent.

I need money.

Il se passe *de* vin.

He does without wine.

Un vase rempli *d'*eau.

A vessel filled with water.

Il était couvert *de* plaies.

He was covered with wounds (sores).

Une robe *de* soie.

A silk dress.

Un homme *de* génie.

A man of genius.

Une bourse pleine *d'*or.

A purse full of gold.

326. General and Partitive Sense. The general sense of a noun (§ 321) is to be carefully distinguished from the partitive sense (§ 322):

Les oiseaux ont des ailes.

Birds have wings.

Les hommes sont des animaux.

Men are animals.

327. Article with Titles. A title of dignity or profession, preceding a proper name, regularly takes the definite article, except in direct address:

La reine Victoria fut aimée.	Queen Victoria was beloved.
Le docteur Ribot est arrivé.	Doctor Ribot has come.
Qu'est-ce que le père Daru dit?	What does Father Daru say?
But: Bonjour, docteur Ribot.	Good morning, Doctor Ribot.

a. So also, when such title is preceded by a title of courtesy (**mon-sieur, madame, etc.**), whether in speaking to or in speaking of the person:

Bonjour, monsieur le docteur.	Good morning, doctor.
Monsieur le président l'a dit.	The president said so.

b. A preceding attributive adjective may have the force of a title:
La petite Claire; le gros Robert. Little Clara; big Robert.

328. Article for Possessive. The definite article is commonly used with the force of a possessive adjective, when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il a perdu la vie.	He has lost his life.
Il avait le chapeau sur la tête.	He had his hat on his head.

a. The use of an indirect pronoun object + the definite article often avoids ambiguity:

Le courage <i>lui</i> manqua.	His courage failed (him).
Elle <i>lui</i> a arraché les yeux.	She tore out his eyes.
Il s'est fait mal à la tête.	He hurt his head.

b. Possessive force appears also in **avoir mal (froid, chaud, etc.) à** + the definite article followed by a noun denoting part of the person; similarly, in phrases of personal description made up of **avoir** + the definite article + a noun + an adjective:

J'ai mal à la tête.	I have a headache (my head achés).
Il a mal aux yeux.	He has sore eyes (his eyes, etc.).
Il a froid aux pieds.	He has cold feet (his feet, etc.).
Il a la tête grosse (or une grosse tête).	He has a large head.
Il a les bras longs (or de longs bras).	He has long arms.
Le chêne a l'écorce rude.	The oak has (a) rough bark.

329. Article Distributively. 1. The definite article with distributive force replaces English *a* of weight, measure, number, when indicating price:

Deux francs <i>la</i> livre (<i>le</i> mètre).	Two francs a pound (a meter).
Des œufs (à) dix sous <i>la</i> douzaine.	Eggs at ten cents a dozen.
Des poires (à) un sou <i>la</i> pièce.	Pears at a cent apiece.

a. Otherwise *par* is generally used with price:

Cinq francs <i>par</i> jour.	Five francs a (per) day.
Cent francs <i>par</i> tête.	A hundred francs a (per) head.
Trois francs <i>par</i> leçon.	Three francs a (per) lesson.

! 2. The definite article is also used distributively with names of days:

Il vient <i>le</i> dimanche.	He comes (on) Sundays.
Le bateau part tous <i>les</i> lundis.	The boat goes every Monday.

330. Omission of the Article. The article, whether definite, indefinite, or partitive, is frequently omitted. This takes place:

1. In a large number of expressions made up of a verb + a noun:

J'ai sommeil; il a honte.	I am sleepy; he is ashamed.
Je vous demande pardon.	I beg your pardon.

Further examples are:

avoir besoin, <i>need</i>	donner avis, <i>notify</i>	faire place, <i>make room</i>
avoir faim, <i>be hungry</i>	donner ordre, <i>give orders</i>	prendre congé, <i>take leave</i>
avoir bonne mine, <i>look well</i>	faire attention, <i>pay at-</i>	prendre garde, <i>take care</i>
avoir peur, <i>be afraid</i>	<i>tention</i>	rendre visite, <i>pay a visit</i>
avoir tort, <i>be (in the) wrong</i>	faire cadeau, <i>make a</i>	trouver moyen, <i>find</i>
courir risque, <i>run the risk</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>means</i>
demander conseil, <i>ask ad-</i>	faire faillite, <i>fail (in</i>	etc., etc.
<i>vice</i>	<i>business)</i>	

2. In many adjectival and adverbial phrases made up of a preposition + a noun:

D'après nature; devant témoins.	After nature; before witnesses.
Sans cause; à travers champs.	Without cause; across the fields.

Further examples are:

à bord, <i>on board</i>	chien de berger, par chemin de fer, <i>by rail-</i>
à cheval, <i>on horseback</i>	<i>shepherd's dog</i> <i>way</i>
à dessein, <i>intentionally</i>	homme de cœur, par exemple, <i>for example</i>
à genoux, <i>on one's knees</i>	<i>man of feeling</i> par expérience, <i>by experience</i>
à pied, <i>on foot</i>	homme de génie, par terre, <i>by land</i>
pot à fleurs, <i>flowerpot</i>	<i>man of genius</i> sans crainte, <i>without fear</i>
moulin à vent, <i>windmill</i>	en bateau, <i>in a boat</i> sans raison, <i>without reason</i>
après dîner, <i>after dinner</i>	en été, <i>in summer</i> sous condition, <i>on condition</i>
avec intérêt, <i>with interest</i>	en voiture, <i>in a car-</i> sous presse, <i>in the press</i>
avec plaisir, <i>with pleasure</i>	<i>riage</i> sur papier, <i>on paper</i>
sortir de table, <i>leave the table</i>	par an, <i>by the year</i> etc., etc.

3. Before a predicate noun which qualifies in a general way the personal subject, or object, of certain verbs (cf. § 295):

Ils sont Russes.	They are Russians.
Elle est modiste.	She is a milliner.
Nous sommes médecins.	We are doctors.
Il paraît honnête homme.	He seems an honest man.
Son frère se fit soldat.	His brother became a soldier.
On l'a ordonné prêtre.	He was ordained a priest.
Soyons amis.	Let us be friends.

NOTE. — Nouns so used are commonly those of nationality, profession, title, etc., and their function is adjectival. Whenever a predicate noun denotes an individual or a species, it must have the article: **La rose est une fleur**, *The rose is a flower*; **Les rois sont des hommes**, *Kings are men*.

a. The article is not omitted when the predicate noun has a distinctive adjunct:

Son frère est <i>un</i> artiste de mérite.	His brother is an artist of merit.
Ils sont devenus <i>des</i> généraux distingués.	They became distinguished generals.

b. Observe the predicative force of a noun after **traiter + de**, **qualifier + de**:

Il m'a traité de sot.	He called me a fool.
Je qualifie cela de fraude.	I call that fraud.

a. After **c'est**, **ce sont**, the noun is logical subject, not predicate, and hence the article or some other determinative word must be used with it:

C'est <i>une</i> Allemande.	She is (a) German.
Ce sont <i>les</i> (mes) gants.	Those are the (my) gloves.

4. Before such an appositive noun as serves merely the purpose of a parenthetical explanation:

L'Avare, comédie de Molière.

L'Avare, a comedy by Molière.

Pâris, fils de Priam, ravit Hélène,
femme de Ménélas.

Paris, the son of Priam, carried off
Helen, (the) wife of Menelaus.

a. Thus is explained the omission of the article in numerical titles:
Jacques premier (deux). James the First (the Second).

b. An apposition which distinguishes, contrasts, compares, regularly has the article, as in English:

Pierre le Grand.

Peter the Great.

Racine le fils et non Racine le
père.

Racine the son and not Racine the
father.

Montréal, la plus grande ville du
Canada.

Montreal, the largest city in
Canada.

M. Cook, un ami de mon père.

Mr. Cook, a friend of my father.

c. Colloquially, the article is often omitted in contrasts:
Dumas père et Dumas fils. Dumas the elder and Dumas the younger.

NOTE. — Pseudo-apposition (really ellipsis of *de* or of a *de* clause) is found in many cases like *L'église* (*sc. de*) *Saint-Pierre*, *St. Peter's Church*; *des meubles* (*sc. du temps de*) *Louis XV*, *Louis XV furniture*; *La rue* (*sc. de*) *Mirabeau*, *Mirabeau Street*.

5. In condensed sentences, such as titles of books, enumerations, addresses, advertisements, proverbs, antithetical expressions, etc., and usually after *ni . . . ni*, *sans . . . ni*, *soit . . . soit*, *tant . . . que*, *jamais*:

Causes de la perte de Rome.

Causes of the fall of Rome.

Portrait de Napoléon III.

(A) portrait of Napoleon III.

Soldats, officiers, citoyens, tous
accoururent.

Soldiers, officers, citizens, all has-
tened up.

Beauté, talent, esprit, tout s'use
à la longue.

Beauty, talent, wit, everything
wears out in the long run.

Il loge rue Richelieu.

He lives in Richelieu street.

Maison à vendre.

(A) house for sale.

Chapeaux pour hommes.

Men's hats.

Corps et âme; nuit et jour.

Body and soul; night and day.

Soit peur, soit prudence, il évita
le combat.

Whether from fear or prudence, he
avoided the combat.

Il n'a ni père ni mère.
 Sans amis ni argent.
 Tant hommes que femmes.
 Jamais père n'a tant aimé.

He has neither father nor mother.
 Without friends or money.
 As well men as women.
 Never did a father love so much.

331. Unclassified Examples. The following examples show idiomatic distinctions in the use of the article which, from the point of view of English, cannot conveniently be brought under general rules:

Vous êtes *le* bienvenu.
 Demander (faire) *l'*aumône.
 Avoir *le* temps.
 Aller à *l'*école (*l'*église).
 Commander *le* respect.
Le feu s'est déclaré.
 Faire *la* guerre.
 Jeter (lever) *l'*ancré.
 Garder *le* silence.
 Mettre *le* feu à.
 Sur (vers) *les* trois heures.
Au revoir !
*L'*année dernière (prochaine).
La semaine (*l'*année) passée.
Le vendredi saint.
Le mercredi *des* cendres.
Le printemps, *l'*été, etc.
Au printemps, en été, etc.
La (sc. fête de) Saint-Michel.
La (sc. fête de) mi-juin.
La moitié de *l'*année.
Les deux tiers du temps.
 Tous (*les*) deux; tous (*les*) trois.
 Tous *les* mois.
 Le ministre de *la* guerre.
 Le meilleur *des* amis.
 Il cria à *l'*assassin.
 Je l'ai dit *au* hasard.
 Prendre *le* deuil de quelqu'un.
 Sentir *la* fumée.
 Je vous souhaite *la* bonne année.
 Il n'a pas *le* sou.

You are welcome.
 Ask (give) alms.
 To have time.
 To go to school (church).
 To command respect.
 Fire broke out.
 To make war.
 To cast (weigh) anchor.
 To keep silence.
 To set fire to.
 Towards three o'clock.
 Good-bye !
 Last (next) year.
 Last week (year).
 Good Friday.
 Ash Wednesday.
 Spring, summer, etc.
 In spring, in summer, etc.
 Michaelmas.
 Mid-June.
 (The) half (of) the year.
 Two-thirds of the time.
 Both; all three.
 Every month.
 The minister of war.
 The best of friends.
 He cried murder.
 I said it at random.
 To go into mourning for somebody.
 To smell of smoke.
 I wish you a happy new year.
 He is wretchedly poor.

Il est plus grand que vous de la tête.	He is taller than you by a head.
Un homme à la barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
La belle question !	What a (fine) question !
À la (sc. mode) française.	In the French style.
S'en aller à l'anglaise.	To take French leave.
À la (sc. mode de) Henri IV.	In the style of Henry IV.
Cent (mille) ans.	A hundred (<i>a thousand</i>) years.
Les amis, où allez-vous ?	(My) friends, where are you going ?

THE ARTICLE WITH PROPER NOUNS

332. Names of Persons. 1. As in English, names of persons usually take no article:

Corneille; George Fox.	Corneille; George Fox.
------------------------	------------------------

a. The definite article is a constituent part of some surnames:

Les romans de Lesage.	The novels of Lesage.
Les fables de La Fontaine.	The fables of La Fontaine.

2. The definite article is used according to Italian analogy in the French form of a few famous Italian surnames; so also sometimes in a very few names which are not Italian:

Le Corrège; le poème du Tasse.	Correggio; the poem of Tasso.
Le Poussin; le Camoëns.	Poussin; Camoens.

3. The article is used when the name has a distinctive adjunct, when it is plural, or when used as a common noun:

Le Christ.	Christ (= the 'Anointed').
Le Satan de Milton; le grand Condé.	Milton's Satan; the Great Condé.
Les Corneille et les Racine.	A Corneille, a Racine (= Corneille, Racine and others like them).
C'est un Alexandre.	He is an Alexander.
C'est du Cicéron tout pur.	It is pure Ciceronian.
J'ai lu le Télémaque.	I have read <i>Télémaque</i> .

4. Familiarly, often in a depreciatory sense, the definite article is not uncommon, especially with names of females:

Sans attendre la Barquette.	Without waiting for Barbara.
Le Duval me l'a dit.	Duval told me so.

333. Names of Countries. 1. Names of continents, countries, provinces, large European islands, take the definite article, especially when standing as subject or object of a verb:

<i>L'Asie</i> est un grand continent.	Asia is a large continent.
Nous aimons <i>la France</i> .	We love France.
<i>La Normandie</i> produit des céréales.	Normandy produces cereals.
<i>La Corse</i> est une île française.	Corsica is a French island.

But non-European islands often do not take the article:

<i>Madagascar</i> est une grande île.	Madagascar is a large island.
<i>Cabot</i> découvrit <i>Terre-Neuve</i> .	Cabot discovered Newfoundland.

Note also such forms as: *L'île de Cuba*, *les îles Bahama*.

2. Before names of continents, European countries and islands singular, and feminine countries singular outside of Europe, **en** without the article denotes 'where,' 'where to'; so also, after **de** denoting 'point of departure from' and after **de** in most adjectival phrases:

<i>Il est en (va en) Europe</i> .	He is in (is going to) Europe.
<i>Il voyage en France (Portugal)</i> .	He travels in France (Portugal).
<i>Il vient d'Espagne (Danemark)</i> .	He comes from Spain (Denmark).
<i>Le roi de Portugal (Espagne)</i> .	The King of Portugal (Spain).
<i>Le fer de Suède</i> .	Swedish iron.
<i>Il va en Corse</i> .	He is going to Corsica.

a. Exceptions are rare, *e.g.*, *au Maine*, *Le duc du Maine*, etc.

NOTE. — In an adjectival phrase, **de** denoting titular distinction, origin, description, or mere apposition usually omits the article, *e.g.*, *le pays de France*, *Le Royaume Uni de Grande-Bretagne et d'Irlande*.

3. But the definite article is not omitted, in answer to 'where?' 'where to?' or after **de** as above, when the name is plural, or has a distinctive adjunct, or denotes a masculine name of a country outside of Europe:

<i>Il est aux Indes</i> .	He is in India.
<i>Il va aux États-Unis</i> .	He goes to the United States.
<i>Aux Pays-Bas</i> .	In (to) the Netherlands.
<i>L'impératrice des Indes</i> .	The Empress of India.
<i>Venir des Indes (de l'Inde)</i> .	To come from India.
<i>Dans la France méridionale.</i>	In Southern France.
<i>Dans le Midi de la France.</i>	

Dans l'Amérique du Nord.	In North America.
La reine de la Grande-Bretagne.	The Queen of Great Britain
Il revient de l'Afrique australe.	He returns from South Africa.
Au Mexique (Japon).	In (to) Mexico (Japan).
Le Dominion du Canada. }	The Dominion of Canada.
La Puissance du Canada. }	
Chassé de la Chine.	Expelled from China.
Le consul du Pérou.	The consul of Peru.
Le fer du Canada.	Canadian iron.

But note such as: *Son père est à Madagascar.*

a. In a few names like *Asie Mineure*, *basse Bretagne*, the adjective is no longer felt to be distinctive:

En Asie mineure.	In Asia Minor.
------------------	----------------

4. Omission of the article in the predicate, in enumerations, titles, etc., sometimes occurs (cf. § 330, 5):

La Gaule est devenue France.	Gaul became France.
Espagne, Italie, Belgique, tout eût pris feu.	Spain, Italy, Belgium, all would have caught fire.

334. Names of Cities. Names of cities and towns usually have no article, unless used with a distinctive adjunct:

Londres, Paris, Québec.	London, Paris, Quebec.
À Boston (Montréal).	To <i>or</i> in Boston (Montreal).
But: <i>La Rome de ce siècle.</i>	(The) Rome of this century.
<i>La Nouvelle-Orléans.</i>	New Orleans.

a. The definite article is an essential part of several names of cities: *Le Caire*; *le Havre*; *la Havane*. *Cairo*; *Havre*; *Havana*.

335. Names of Mountains and Rivers. Names of mountains always, and names of rivers regularly, have the definite article:

Les Alpes; le Nil; le mont Blanc.	The Alps; the Nile; Mt. Blanc.
-----------------------------------	--------------------------------

a. For rivers, the usage after *en*, *de*, is parallel with that described in § 333, 2:

De l'eau de Seine.	Seine water.
Un abordage a eu lieu en Seine.	A collision occurred on the Seine.

THE ADJECTIVE

THE FEMININE OF ADJECTIVES

336. General Rule. The feminine of an adjective is regularly formed by adding **-e** to the masculine singular, but adjectives ending in **-e** remain unchanged:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
grand,	grande, <i>tall</i>	facile,	facile, <i>easy</i>
joli,	jolie, <i>pretty</i>	jeune,	jeune, <i>young</i>
rusé,	rusée, <i>cunning</i>	sincère,	sincère, <i>sincere</i>
mort,	morte, <i>dead</i>	célèbre,	célèbre, <i>celebrated</i>

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination (but see § 306, 2):

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
marquis, <i>marquis</i> ,	marquise	artiste, <i>artist</i> ,	artiste
ami, <i>friend</i> ,	amie	camarade, <i>comrade</i> ,	camarade
cousin, <i>cousin</i> ,	cousine	concierge, <i>porter</i> ,	concierge
lapin, <i>rabbit</i> ,	lapine	malade, <i>patient</i> ,	malade

b. Adjectives in **-gu** are regular, but require the diæresis to indicate that **u** is sounded, *e.g.*, **aigu**, *sharp*, **aiguë**.

c. The circumflex in **dû** (f. *due*) distinguishes it from **du** = *of the*, and disappears in the fem. (§ 214); observe also **mû** (f. *mue*, § 219).

d. Besides adjectives in **-e**, a very few others are invariable for the feminine, *e.g.*, **capot**, in **être capot** = *have come to grief*, **grognon**, *grumbling*, **rococo**, *rococo*, **sterling**, *sterling*, and rarer ones.

NOTE. — Here also properly belongs **grand** in **grand'mère**, etc. In O. F. **grand** was masculine or feminine, but grammarians at a later date gave it the apostrophe to denote the supposed elision of **e**.

337. Special Rules. 1. Irregularities consist chiefly of changes in the stem on adding the feminine sign **-e**; thus, when **-e** is added:

(1) Final **f** = **v**, **x** = **s**, **c** = **ch** in some, and **qu** in others, **g** = **gu**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
actif, <i>active</i> ,	active	* blanc, <i>white</i> ,	blanche
bref, <i>brief</i> ,	brève	† public, <i>public</i> ,	publique
heureux, <i>happy</i> ,	heureuse	long, <i>long</i> ,	longue

* So also: **franc**, *frank*, **franche**; **sec**, *dry*, **sèche**.

† So also: **ammoniac** (**-que**), *ammoniac*; **turc** (**-que**), *Turkish*.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
veuf, <i>widower</i> ,	veuve	époux, <i>spouse</i> ,	épouse	turc, <i>Turk</i> ,	turque

NOTE. — Here also belongs **bailli**, *bailiff* (O. F. *baillif*), *baillive*.

b. The adjectives *doux*, *douce*, *sweet*, *faux*, *fausse*, *false*, *roux*, *rousse*, *red* (of hair, etc.), retain the [s] sound in the feminine, denoted by **c** and **ss** respectively; *grec*, *Greek*, has feminine *grecque*; *préfix*, *prefixed*, is regular.

(2) Final **-el**, **-eil**, **-ien**, **-on**, and usually **-s**, **-t**, double the final consonant:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
cruel, <i>cruel</i> ,	cruelle	gros, <i>big</i> ,	grosse
pareil, <i>like</i> ,	pareille	épais, <i>thick</i> ,	épaisse
ancien, <i>old</i> ,	ancienne	exprès, <i>express</i> ,	expresse
bon, <i>good</i> ,	bonne	muet, <i>dumb</i> ,	muette
bas, <i>low</i> ,	basse	sot, <i>foolish</i> ,	sothe

But: *ras*, *rase*, *flat*; *gris*, *grise*, *gray*; *mat*, *mate*, *dead*, *dull*; *prêt*, *prête*, *ready*; *dévot*, *dévote*, *devout*; *bigot*, *bigote*, *bigoted*; *cagot*, *cagote*, *hypocritical*; *idiot*, *idiote*, *idiotic*, and a few rarer ones.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
mortel, <i>mortal</i> ,	mortelle	lion, <i>lion</i> ,	lionne	poulet, <i>chicken</i> ,	poulette
chien, <i>dog</i> ,	chienne	chat, <i>cat</i> ,	chatte	linot, <i>linnet</i> ,	linotte

b. A very few adjectives and nouns of other endings follow this analogy:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
paysan, <i>peasant</i> ,	paysanne	gentil, <i>nice</i> ,	gentille
rouan, <i>roan</i> ,	rouanne	nul, <i>null</i> ,	nulle

(3) The following have two masculine forms, one of which doubles **l** for the feminine, like the above:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
beau or bel, <i>fine</i> ,	belle	mou or mol, <i>soft</i> ,	molle
fou or fol, <i>mad</i> ,	folle	nouveau or nouvel, <i>new</i> ,	nouvelle
jumeau or (O. F. jumel), <i>twin</i> ,	jumelle	vieux or vieil, <i>old</i> ,	vieille

Obs.: The **-l** form is regularly used only before a vowel or **h** mute; **vieux** before a vowel is permissible, e.g., **un vieux ami** (better: **un vieil ami**).

a. Analogous are a few nouns:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
chameau, <i>camel</i> ,	chamelle	jouvenceau, <i>young fellow</i> ,	jouvencelle, etc.

(4) Before final **-r** and **-et** of a few adjectives **e** becomes **è** (cf. § 12, 1); so also in **bref**, **brève**, **sec**, **sèche**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
cher, <i>dear</i> ,	chère	complet, <i>complete</i> ,	complète
léger, <i>light</i> ,	légère	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns in **-er**.

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
berger, <i>shepherd</i> ,	bergère	étranger, <i>stranger</i> ,	étrangère, etc.

b. The complete list of adjectives in **-et** with fem. in **-ète** is:

(in)complet, (<i>in</i>) <i>complete</i>	(in)discret, (<i>in</i>) <i>discreet</i>	replet, <i>over-stout</i>
concret, <i>concrete</i>	inquiet, <i>uneasy</i>	secret, <i>secret</i>

(5) The following feminine stems show etymological elements which have disappeared in the masculine:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
coi (L. <i>quietus</i>), <i>quiet</i> ,	coite	frais (L. L. <i>frescus</i>), <i>cool</i> ,	fraîche
bénin (L. <i>benignus</i>), <i>benign</i> ,	bénigne	tiers (L. <i>tertius</i>), <i>third</i> ,	tierce
favori (It. <i>favorito</i>), <i>favorite</i> ,	favorite		

2. Adjectives in **-eur** form their feminine as follows:

(1) **Majeur**, **mineur**, **meilleur** and those in **-érier** are regular:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
majeur, <i>major</i> ,	majeure	extérieur, <i>exterior</i> ,	extérieure
meilleur, <i>better</i> ,	meilleure	supérieur, <i>superior</i> ,	supérieure

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
mineur, <i>minor</i> ,	mineure	prieur, <i>prior</i> ,	prieure	inférieur, <i>inferior</i> ,	inférieure

(2) Those in **-eur** with a cognate present participle in **-ant** change **-r** to **-s** and add **-e**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
causeur, <i>talkative</i> ,	causeuse	rêveur, <i>dreamy</i> ,	rêveuse
flatteur, <i>flattering</i> ,	flatteuse	trompeur, <i>deceitful</i> ,	trompeuse
menteur, <i>lying</i> ,	menteuse	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see also § 306, 1, a, 2, a:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
danseur, <i>dancer</i> ,	danseuse	buveur, <i>drinker</i>	buveuse
chanteur, <i>singer</i> ,	chanteuse	vendeur, <i>seller</i>	vendeuse
flatteur, <i>flatterer</i> ,	flatteuse	etc.	etc.

(3) Those in **-teur**, with no cognate present participle in **-ant**, have the feminine in **-trice**:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
accusateur, <i>accusing</i> ,	accusatrice	directeur, <i>directive</i> ,	directrice
créateur, <i>creative</i> ,	créatrice	etc.	etc.

a. Similarly, nouns of like termination, but see § 306, 1, a, 2, a:

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
accusateur, <i>accuser</i> ,	accusatrice	créateur, <i>creator</i> ,	créatrice,
acteur, <i>actor</i> ,	actrice	etc.	etc.

THE PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES

338. General Rule. Most masculine adjectives and all feminines form their plural by adding **s** to the singular (cf. § 307):

grand(s),	grande(s)	jeune(s),	jeune(s)	bas,	basse(s)
joli(s),	jolie(s)	aigu(s),	aiguë(s)	doux,	douce(s)
rusé(s),	rusée(s)	complet(s),	complète(s)	etc.	etc.

339. Special Rules. The following rules are parallel with those for the irregular plural of nouns (cf. § 308):

1. Masculine adjectives in **-s**, **-x** (none in **-z**) remain unchanged:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
bas	bas	gris	gris	faux	faux
épais	épais	soumis	soumis	vieux	vieux
frais	frais, etc.	doux	doux, etc.	heureux	heureux, etc.

2. Masculine adjectives in **-eau**, and one in **-eu** take **x**:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
beau	beaux	jumeau	jumeaux
nouveau	nouveaux	hébreu	hébreux

But: bleu, bleus; feu, feus

3. Masculine adjectives in **-al** regularly have the plural in **-aux**:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
amical	amicaux	général	généraux	moral	moraux
brutal	brutaux	légal	légaux	principal	principaux
capital	capitaux	libéral	libéraux	rural	ruraux
cardinal	cardinaux	local	locaux	spécial	spéciaux
égal	égaux	loyal	loyaux	trivial	triviaux

- a. **Fatal** makes **fatals**; Littré gives also **final(s)**.
- b. According to the *Dictionnaire de l'Académie*, the following have no masculine plural:
* automnal frugal * jovial naval † pascal
* colossal glacial natal * partial
- * Littré gives a plural in **-aux**.
- † Littré admits a plural in **-aux**, and quotes authority for a plural in **-s**.

NOTES. — 1. There are upwards of a hundred and fifty adjectives in **-al**. The *Dictionnaire de l'Académie* is silent regarding the masculine plural of some sixty of these, to nearly fifty of which, however, Littré gives a plural in **-aux**. The following have not been pronounced upon by either authority: **Brumal**, **déloyal**, **diagonal**, **instrumental**, **labial**, **médicinal**, **mental**, **monacal**, **paradoxal**, **quadragésimal**, **total**, **virginal**.

2. Regular plurals in **-als** were formerly much commoner, and usage is still unsettled for some words. When the plural is wanting or doubtful it is often avoided, *e.g.*, **Un repas frugal**; **des repas simples**. Plurals commonly so avoided are: **Final**, **frugal**, **glacial**, **initial**, **matinal**, **natal**, **naval**, **théâtral**.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

340. General Rule. An adjective, whether attributive or predicative, regularly agrees in gender and number with its substantive:

Les saisons froides sont saines.	Cold seasons are healthful.
Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Ils se disaient malades.	They said they were ill.
Je les crois sincères.	I believe them sincere.

- a. When the substantive has a **de** clause, the agreement is parallel with that explained for subject and verb (cf. § 232, 2).
- b. The agreement with **vous** is according to the sense:
Madame, vous êtes bien bonne. Madam, you are very kind.

341. Manifold Substantive. 1. One adjective qualifying two or more substantives is made plural, and agrees in gender with both, if of the same gender; if of different gender, the adjective is masculine.

De la viande et des pommes de terre froides. Cold meat and potatoes.

Sa sœur et lui sont contents. His sister and he are pleased.

a. When substantives are joined by **ou, ni . . . ni**, or are synonymous, or form a climax, etc., the principles stated for agreement of subject and verb apply (cf. § 233).

b. When nouns differ in gender, the masculine one is usually placed nearest the adjective, especially when the feminine form is distinct from the masculine.

La mer et le ciel bleus. The blue sea and sky.

2. When the noun is followed by a preposition + a noun, the agreement is, of course, according to the meaning:

Une table de bois *dur*. A table of hard wood.

Une table de bois *carrée*. A square wooden table.

342. Manifold Adjective. When two or more adjectives, denoting different objects singular, refer to one noun, the noun is made plural, and the adjectives follow it in the singular, or the noun is made singular, and the article repeated with each adjective.

Les nations grecque et romaine. The Greek and Roman nations.

La nation grecque et la romaine. The Greek nation and the Roman.

Or: La nation grecque et la nation romaine.

a. The agreement for a preceding ordinal is parallel to this:

Les sixième et septième rangs. The sixth and seventh ranks.

Le sixième rang et le septième. The sixth rank and the seventh.

Le sixième et le septième rang. The sixth and the seventh rank.

343. Special Cases. 1. Adjectives used as adverbs are regularly invariable:

Cette rose sent bon. That rose smells sweet.

Les livres coûtent cher ici. Books cost dear here.

a. Possible, replacing a clause, and **fort**, in **se faire fort** = *to pledge oneself*, are considered as adverbs:

J'ai fait le moins de fautes possible.	I have made as few mistakes as possible.
Elle se fait fort de le payer.	She pledges herself to pay it.

2. Compound adjectives, with or without hyphen, are treated as follows:

(1) Both components are variable when coördinate, except first components in **-o**:

Des sourd(e)s-muet(te)s.	Deaf-mutes.
Des oranges aigres-douces.	Sourish oranges.
But: Les lettres gréco-romaines.	Græco-Roman literature.

(2) A subordinate component is usually invariable, being regarded as adverbial, but the principle is not fully carried out:

Des mots grecs-moderne.	Modern Greek words.
Des enfants court-vêtus.	Short-coated children.
Une dame haut placée.	A lady of high rank.
Des enfants nouveau-nés.	New-born infants.

a. But the subordinated component is variable in **frais cueilli** = *freshly gathered*, in **ivre mort** = *dead drunk*, in **grand ouvert** = *wide open*, and in **premier**, **dernier**, **nouveau** + a past participle (except **nouveau-né**, see above):

Des fleurs fraîches cueillies.	Freshly gathered flowers.
La porte est grande ouverte.	The door is wide open.
Les nouveaux mariés.	The bridegroom and bride.

3. Nouns serving as adjectives of color are regularly invariable:

Des robes lilas (citron).	Purple (lemon-colored) dresses.
---------------------------	---------------------------------

a. **Rose**, **cramoisi**, **pourpre**, are exceptions, and vary:

Des robes roses (cramoisies).	Pink (crimson) dresses.
-------------------------------	-------------------------

b. Modified adjectives of color are also usually invariable, the modifier being also invariable by rule, 2 (2), above:

Des cheveux blond ardent.	Reddish blond hair.
---------------------------	---------------------

NOTE. — These constructions are explained by supplying the ellipsis:
Des robes (couleur de) lilas; Des cheveux (couleur de) blond ardent.

4. A few adjectives are variable or invariable according to position or context:

a. **Demi** = *half*, **nu** = *naked*, **plein** = *full of*, are invariable before and variable after the noun; so also, **excepté** and others (§ 289, *a*, *b*), **franc de port** = *postpaid* (also **franco**, adverb) is invariable before, and usually variable after:

Une demi-heure; une heure et demie. Half an hour; an hour and a half.

Il a de l'or plein ses poches. He has his pockets full of gold.

Il est nu-tête; il a les bras nus. He is bareheaded; his arms are bare.

Il a les yeux pleins de larmes. His eyes are full of tears.

Recevoir franc de port une lettre. To receive a letter postpaid.

Des lettres franches de port. Postpaid letters.

Obs.: **demi**, **nu**, when preceding, form a compound with hyphen.

b. **Feu** = *late*, *deceased*, is invariable when preceding the definite article, or determinative, and variable after it:

Feu la reine (la feuë reine). The late queen.

c. After **avoir l'air** = *have an air* (*appearance*) the adjective agrees with **air**; but it agrees with the subject of the verb when the expression means *seem*, *appear*:

Cette dame a l'air hautain. That lady has a haughty air

Elle a l'air malheureuse. She seems unhappy.

Cette soupe a l'air bonne. This soup looks good.

5. A very few adjectives are always invariable:

Nous avons été capot. We had come to grief.

Vingt livres sterling. Twenty pounds sterling.

344. Nouns as Adjectives. By a sort of apposition, nouns are frequently used as adjectives; when so used, they usually agree like adjectives:

Une maîtresse cheminée. A main chimney.

Des philosophes poètes. Poet philosophers.

But: La race nègre, etc.

a. **Témoin** = *witness*, at the head of a phrase, is adverbial and invariable:

J'ai bien combattu, témoin les blessures que j'ai reçues. I have fought well, witness the wounds I received.

b. For nouns as adjectives of color, see § 343, 3.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

345. The Comparative. It is regularly denoted by placing **plus** = *more*, **moins** = *less*, for inequality, and **aussi** = *as*, for equality, before each adjective compared; *than* or *as* = **que**:

Il est plus grand que Jean.	He is taller than John.
Il est moins grand que Jean.	He is less tall than (not so tall as) John.
Il est aussi grand que Jean.	He is as tall as John.
Il est plus diligent et plus attentif que Jean.	He is more diligent and (more) attentive than John.
Il est plus faible que malade.	He is more weak than ill.

a. **Aussi**, used negatively, may be replaced by **si**:

Il n'est pas aussi (*si*) grand que J. He is not so tall as John.

b. When **aussi** or **si** is omitted, **comme** (*not que*) is used:

Un roi riche comme Crésus. A king as rich as Croesus.

c. After **plus**, **moins**, affirmatively, *than* = **que . . . ne** when coming before a finite verb:

Il est plus grand qu'il ne (le) paraît. He is taller than he seems.

d. *More and more* (or *-er and -er*) = **de plus en plus**; *less and less* (or *-er and -er*) = **de moins en moins**; *the more . . . the more* = **plus . . . (et) plus**; *the less . . . the less* = **moins . . . (et) moins**; *the more . . .* = **d'autant plus . . .**:

L'air devint de plus en plus froid.	The air became colder and colder.
Il devint de moins en moins actif.	He became less and less active.
Plus il devient riche (et) moins il est généreux.	The richer he becomes the less generous is he.
Il en sera d'autant plus riche.	He will be the richer for it.

346. Irregular Comparison. The adjectives **bon**, **mauvais**, **petit**, have a special comparative form:

Pos.	Comp.	Pos.	Comp.
bon, <i>good</i> ,	meilleur	or bon,	plus bon (rare)
mauvais, <i>bad</i> ,	pire	or mauvais,	plus mauvais
petit, <i>small</i> ,	moindre	or petit,	plus petit

a. **Bon** is hardly ever compared regularly:

À bon marché, à meilleur marché. Cheap, cheaper.

Cela sent bon (meilleur). That smells good (better).

But: Ce n'est ni plus bon ni plus mauvais.

NOTES. — 1. In expressions like **Ce vin est plus ou moins bon**, **bon** is not really comparative. 2. Some grammarians admit **plus bon** = *more good-natured*.

b. **Pire** is, in general, stronger than **plus mauvais**, and may serve also as a comparative to **méchant** = *bad, evil, wicked*:

Cet homme est méchant (pire). That man is bad (worse).

c. In general, **moindre** = *less, lesser, less (in importance)* and **plus petit** = *smaller, less (in size)*:

Votre douleur en sera moindre. Your sorrow will hence be less.

Une plus petite pomme. A smaller apple.

347. The Superlative Relative. 1. It is denoted by placing the definite article (variable) or a possessive adjective (variable) before the comparative of inequality:

Elle est la moins aimable. She is the least amiable.

Mes meilleurs amis. My best friends.

La moindre difficulté. The slightest difficulty.

a. When the superlative follows the noun, the definite article is not omitted:

C'est l'enfant le plus diligent et le plus attentif de tous. He is the most diligent and attentive boy of all.

Mes amis les plus fidèles. My most faithful friends.

2. After a superlative, *in* = **de** (not **à, dans**, etc.); *among* = **entre** or **d'entre**:

L'homme le plus riche de la ville. The richest man in the city.

Le meilleur écrivain des États-Unis. The best writer in the United States.

Le plus brave (d')entre les Grecs. The bravest among the Greeks.

348. The Superlative Absolute. It is expressed by **le** (invariable) + **plus** or **moins** before the adjective, or else by an adverb, such as **très, bien, fort, extrêmement**, etc., or some other modifying expression:

Elle est le plus heureuse (moins heureuse) quand elle est seule. She is happiest (least happy) when she is alone.

Vous êtes très aimable.	You are very (most) kind
C'est tout ce qu'il y a de plus beau.	It is most beautiful.
Un brave des braves.	One of the bravest.
Un homme des plus dignes.	A most worthy man.
Une dame on ne peut plus digne.	A most worthy woman.
Des tribus sauvages au possible.	Most savage tribes.

a. Occasionally it is denoted in familiar style by repetition of the adjective, or by *-issime*:

Cet homme est rusé, rusé.	That man is very, very cunning.
Il est richissime.	He is very wealthy.

349. Remarks. 1. Comparative and superlative are indistinguishable in constructions requiring in English a definite article before the comparative:

Le plus fort de mes deux frères.	The stronger of my two brothers.
---	---

2. *De* denotes *by how much* after a comparative or superlative:

Plus âgé <i>de</i> trois ans.	Older by three years.
Il est <i>de</i> beaucoup le plus grand.	He is the tallest by far.
But: Il est beaucoup plus grand.	He is much taller.

3. Observe the following:

<u>Les basses classes.</u>	The lower classes.
<u>J'ai fait mon possible.</u>	I did my utmost.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

350. Predicative Adjectives. They are placed, in general, as in English:

Elles sont contentes.	They are pleased.
Elle parut fatiguée.	She seemed tired.
Brave, savant, vertueux, il se fit aimer de tous.	Brave, learned, virtuous, he made himself beloved by all.

a. Observe the position after *assez*, after *plus... plus*, *moins... moins*, and in exclamations with *combien! comme! que! tant!* as compared with the order of words in English:

Il est assez sot pour le croire.	He is silly enough to believe it.
---	--

Plus il devint riche moins il fut The richer he became the less
généreux. generous was he.

Que vous êtes aimable de venir ! How kind you are to come !

351. Attributive Adjectives. When used literally, to define, distinguish, specify, emphasize, etc., they usually follow; but when used figuratively, or as a merely ornamental epithet, or denoting a quality viewed as essential to the object, or when forming, as it were, one idea with the noun, they usually precede:

Une rue étroite; une étroite A narrow street; an intimate
amitié. friendship.

Un roi savant; le savant auteur. A learned king; the learned author.

Le fameux Pitt; un rusé coquin. The famous Pitt; a cunning rogue.

a. The following, of very common use, generally precede:

beau	grand	joli	meilleur	pire	vilain
bon	gros	long	moindre	sot	
court	jeune	mauvais	petit	vieux	

352. Special Rules for Attributives. 1. Certain adjectives serve regularly to define, distinguish, etc., and hence regularly follow; such are:

(1) Adjectives of physical quality:

Une table carrée; une pierre dure; A square table; a hard stone; cold
de l'eau froide (chaude); de (hot) water; black ink; a pi-
l'encre noire; une sauce pi- quant sauce.
quante.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

De noirs chagrins; une verte Dark sorrows; a green old age;
vieillesse; le bleu ciel d'Italie. the blue sky of Italy.

(2) Adjectives of nationality, religion, profession, title, and those from proper names:

Le droit anglais; un prêtre catho- English law; a Catholic priest;
lique; une splendeur royale; royal splendor; Ciceronian
le latin cicéronien. Latin.

(3) Participles used as adjectives:

Une étoile filante; un homme A shooting star; an educated man;
instruit; une porte ouverte. an open door.

a. By the general rule (§ 351) they sometimes precede:

Une éclatante victoire.

A signal victory.

b. Past participial forms which have become real adjectives, *e.g.*, **prétendu**, **absolu**, **parfait**, **dissolu**, **feint**, **rusé**, etc., very often precede (**prétendu** nearly always):

Une feinte modestie.

Feigned modesty.

Le prétendu comte.

The would-be count.

2. Adjectives sometimes follow the noun on account of their adjuncts or their function; thus:

(1) When modified by an adverb, other than **aussi**, **si**, **très**, **bien**, **fort**, **plus**, **moins**, **assez**:

Un discours extrêmement long.

An extremely long speech.

But: Un très long discours.

A very long speech.

(2) When modified by an adverbial phrase, or in comparisons:

Une contrée riche en vins.

A district rich in wines.

Un guerrier brave comme un lion.

A warrior as brave as a lion.

(3) Nouns used appositively as adjectives:

Une puissance amie.

A friendly power.

3. Two or more adjectives, with one noun, follow, in general, the rules stated, but, if joined by a conjunction, they all follow, in case one is such as must follow:

Une jolie petite fille.

A pretty little girl.

Une belle maison blanche.

A beautiful white house.

Un objet blanc et étincelant.

A white and dazzling object.

Une dame belle et savante.

A beautiful and learned lady.

a. The more specific of two or more adjectives which follow comes last, contrary to English usage:

Des écrivains français habiles.

Clever French writers.

4. A considerable number of adjectives differ more or less widely in meaning, according as they precede or follow:

Mon cher enfant; une robe chère.

My dear child; a costly dress.

Le moyen âge; un homme d'âge moyen.

The Middle Ages; a middle-aged man.

Such adjectives are:

ancien	dernier	fort	jeune	parfait	sage
bon	différent	furieux	maigre	pauvre	seul
brave	digne	galant	malhonnête	petit	simple
certain	divers	grand	mauvais	plaisant	triste
cher	fameux	gros	méchant	premier	véritable
commun	faux	haut	mort	propre	vrai
cruel	fier	honnête	nouveau	pur	etc.

NOTE. — Distinctions of this kind depend, in the main, upon the general principles laid down above, but they are too numerous and too subtle to be given in detail here. Observation, and the use of a good dictionary will, in time, make the learner familiar with the most important of them.

353. Determinatives. Such adjectives, including numerals, possessives, demonstratives, indefinites, precede:

Trois plumes; mes plumes.

Three pens; my pens.

Ces plumes-ci; d'autres plumes.

These pens; other pens.

PREPOSITIONAL COMPLEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

354. An adjective is often followed by a complement connected with it by a preposition, such as *à, de, en, envers,* etc. The preposition to be used is determined by the meaning of the adjective, as explained in the following sections.

355. Adjective + à. The preposition *à* = *to, at, for,* etc., is required after most adjectives denoting tendency, fitness, and their opposites, comparison, etc.

Cet homme est adonné à la boisson.

That man is addicted to drink.

Il est favorable à mes projets.

He is favorable to my projects.

Il est bien habile aux affaires.

He is very clever in business.

Un homme supérieur à tous.

A man superior to all.

Ce n'est bon à rien.

That is good for nothing.

Such adjectives are:

accoutumé, <i>accustomed (to)</i>	cher, <i>dear (to)</i>	hardi, <i>bold (in)</i>
adroit, <i>clever (at)</i>	convenable, <i>suitable (to)</i>	impropre, <i>unfit (for)</i>
agréable, <i>pleasant (to)</i>	égal, <i>equal (to)</i>	inférieur, <i>inferior (to)</i>
antérieur, <i>anterior (to)</i>	exact, <i>exact (in)</i>	infidèle, <i>unfaithful (to)</i>
ardent, <i>ardent (in)</i>	fidèle, <i>faithful (in)</i>	inutile, <i>useless (to)</i>
bon, <i>good, fit (for)</i>	fort, <i>clever (at)</i>	lent, <i>slow (in)</i>

nuisible, <i>hurtful (to)</i>	prêt, <i>ready (to)</i>	semblable, <i>similar (to)</i>
opposé, <i>opposed (to)</i>	prompt, <i>prompt (in)</i>	utile, <i>useful (to)</i>
pareil, <i>similar (to)</i>	propice, <i>propitious (to)</i>	etc.
porté, <i>inclined (to)</i>	propre, <i>fit (for)</i>	

a. *Bon pour* = *good for, beneficial to, kind to*.

356. Adjective + *de*. The preposition *de* = *of, from, with, etc.*, is required after most adjectives denoting source or origin (hence also, feeling, sentiment, abundance), separation (hence also, absence, distance, want, etc.), and after most past participles to denote the agent (cf. § 240):

Êtes-vous natif <i>de</i> Paris?	Are you a native of Paris?
Ils sont contents <i>de</i> mon succès.	They are pleased at my success.
Elle est pleine <i>de</i> vanité.	She is full of vanity.
Je suis libre <i>de</i> soucis.	I am free from care.
Il est inconnu <i>de</i> tous.	He is unknown to all.

Such adjectives are:

absent, <i>absent (from)</i>	digne, <i>worthy (of)</i>	jaloux, <i>jealous (of)</i>
affligé, <i>grieved (at)</i>	éloigné, <i>distant (from)</i>	lourd, <i>heavy (with)</i>
aise, <i>glad (of)</i>	enchanté, <i>delighted (with)</i>	offensé, <i>offended (at)</i>
alarmé, <i>alarmed (at)</i>	ennuyé, <i>weary (of)</i>	pauvre, <i>poor (in)</i>
ambitieux, <i>ambitious (of)</i>	étonné, <i>astonished (at)</i>	plein, <i>full (of)</i>
avide, <i>greedy (of)</i>	exempt, <i>free (from)</i>	ravi, <i>delighted (with)</i>
béni, <i>blessed (by)</i>	fâché, <i>sorry (for)</i>	satisfait, <i>satisfied (with)</i>
capable, <i>capable (of)</i>	fier, <i>proud (of)</i>	soucieux, <i>anxious (about)</i>
charmé, <i>delighted (with)</i>	glorieux, <i>proud (of)</i>	souillé, <i>soiled (with)</i>
chéri, <i>beloved (by)</i>	hérissé, <i>bristling (with)</i>	sûr, <i>sure (of)</i>
confus, <i>confused (at)</i>	heureux, <i>glad (of)</i>	surpris, <i>surprised (at)</i>
contrarié, <i>vexed (with)</i>	honteux, <i>ashamed (of)</i>	triste, <i>sad (at)</i>
dénué, <i>destitute (of)</i>	ignorant, <i>ignorant (of)</i>	vain, <i>vain (of)</i>
dépourvu, <i>devoid (of)</i>	indigne, <i>unworthy (of)</i>	vexé, <i>vexed (at)</i>
désireux, <i>desirous (of)</i>	inquiet, <i>uneasy (about)</i>	vide, <i>empty (of)</i>
différent, <i>different (from)</i>	ivre, <i>intoxicated (with)</i>	etc.

a. *Fâché contre* = *angry at or with (a person)*.

357. Adjective + *en*. *En* is required after a few adjectives denoting abundance, skill, etc.:

Le Canada est fertile <i>en</i> blé.	Canada is fertile in wheat.
Il est expert <i>en</i> chirurgie.	He is expert in surgery.

Such adjectives are:

abondant, <i>abounding (in)</i>	fort, <i>strong (in), learned (in)</i>	riche, <i>rich (in)</i>
fécond, <i>fruitful (in)</i>	ignorant, <i>ignorant (in)</i>	savant, <i>learned (in)</i>

a. **fort** and **ignorant** sometimes have **sur**:

Il est **fort** *sur* l'histoire.

He is well versed (good) in history.

Ignorant *sur* ces matières-là.

Ignorant about those matters.

358. Adjective + envers. **Envers** is used after most adjectives denoting disposition or feeling towards:

Il est libéral *envers* tous.

He is liberal towards all.

Such adjectives are:

affable, <i>affable</i>	honnête, <i>polite</i>	poli, <i>polite</i>
bon, <i>kind</i>	indulgent, <i>indulgent</i>	prodigue, <i>lavish</i>
charitable, <i>charitable</i>	ingrat, <i>ungrateful</i>	reconnaissant, <i>grateful</i>
civil, <i>civil</i>	insolent, <i>insolent</i>	respectueux, <i>respectful</i>
cruel, <i>cruel</i>	juste, <i>just</i>	responsable, <i>responsible</i>
dur, <i>hard, harsh</i>	méchant, <i>malicious</i>	rigoureux, <i>stern</i>
généreux, <i>generous</i>	miséricordieux, <i>merciful</i>	sévère, <i>severe, stern</i>
grossier, <i>rude</i>	officieux, <i>obliging</i>	etc.

a. **Bon**, **dur**, very frequently take **pour**; **indulgent** may take **pour** or **à**:

Il est bon (dur) pour moi.

He is kind (harsh) to me.

Indulgent pour (à) ses enfants.

Indulgent to his children.

b. Observe that **bien** and **mal** are sometimes used adjectivally, as in: il est **bien**, *he is good-looking*; elle n'est pas **mal**, *she is not bad-looking*; nous sommes **bien** ici, *we are comfortable here*, etc.

THE PRONOUN

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

359. Personal Pronouns

1. Conjunctive forms:

	1ST PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.)	3RD PER. (f.)	3RD REF. (m.f.)
(SING.) N.	je I	tu thou	il he, it	elle she, it	
D.	me (to) me	te (to) thee	lui (to) him	lui (to) her	se (to) -self
A.	me me	te thee	le him, it	la her, it	se -self
(PL.) N.	nous we	vous you	ils they	elles they	
D.	nous (to) us	vous (to) you	leur (to) them	leur (to) them	se (to) -selves
A.	nous us	vous you	les them	les them	se -selves

2. Disjunctive forms:

	1ST. PER.	2ND PER.	3RD PER. (m.)	3RD PER. (f.)	3RD REF. (m.f.)
(SING.) N. } A. } P. }	moi I, me	toi thou, thee	lui he, him	elle she, her	soi oneself, etc.
(PL.) N. } A. } P. }	nous we, us	vous you	eux they, them	elles they, them	

[N. = nominative; D. = dative; A. = accusative; P. = object of a preposition.]

NOTE. — A more scientific terminology would be 'unstressed' and 'stressed' instead of 'conjunctive' and 'disjunctive,' as indicating the real distinction between the two sets of forms, *e.g.*, *Je* (unstressed) *parle*; *Qui parle*? — *Moi* (stressed). As a matter of fact, the unstressed forms usually stand in immediate connection with the verb (as subject or object), hence the term 'conjunctive,' while the stressed forms are usually employed otherwise, hence the term 'disjunctive.'

360. Pronominal Adverbs

y = *to* (*at, on, in, into, etc.*) *it* or *them*; *there, thither*.

en = *of* (*from, etc.*) *it* or *them*; *some, any, some of it, some of them, thence, from there*.

NOTE. — **Y** and **en** were originally adverbs (**y** from L. *ibi* = *there*, and **en** from L. *inde* = *thence*), but they are now usually pronominal in function, and are used precisely like the conjunctive forms.

361. Agreement. The personal pronoun regularly agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person:

Nous les avons frappé(e)s.

We have struck them.

Elle lit la lettre; elle la lit.

She reads the letter; she reads it.

a. The first person plural for the first person singular is used by sovereigns and authorities, and by writers, as in English:

Nous (le roi) avons ordonné et ordonnons ce qui suit.

We (the king) have ordained and ordain as follows.

Comme nous avons dit déjà.

As we have said already.

b. **Vous** = *you* (singular or plural) has a plural verb; its other agreements, as also those of **nous** above, are according to the sense:

Nous (la reine) sommes contente.

We (the queen) are satisfied.

Madame, vous êtes bien bonne.

Madam, you are very kind.

c. For imperative first plural instead of first singular, see § 267, *a.*

d. *Il* and *le* are used as invariable neutral forms, when the antecedent is one to which gender cannot be ascribed:

Y en a-t-il ? — Je le crois.

Is there any (of it)? I think so.

362. Case Relations of Conjunctives. 1. The nominative forms stand as subject and the accusative forms as direct object to a verb; their use is obvious:

Il nous a vus.

He saw us.

a. The conjunctive is optional when there are two accusatives:

Je (les) blâme lui et elle.

I blame him and her.

2. The dative forms denote the person or thing for whose 'advantage' or 'disadvantage' the action is done, denoted by *à* = *to, for, from*, with nouns:

Je leur prêterai les livres.

I shall lend them the books.

On lui a volé son argent.

His money has been stolen from him.

But *à* + a disjunctive form is used in the following cases:

(1) When two datives are joined by a conjunction, or when in emphasis a second dative is implied:

J'en ai parlé à lui et à elle.

I spoke of it to him and to her.

Je donne le livre à elle (pas à lui).

I give the book to her (not to him).

(2) When the conjunctive direct object is any other pronoun than *le, la, les*:

Je vous présente à elle.

I introduce you to her.

Il se présenta à moi.

He introduced himself to me.

But: *Je le (la, les) leur présente, etc.*

(3) After verbs of motion and some others, to denote the 'object towards which the action tends,' the relation, though expressed by *à*, not being really dative:

Je courus à lui.

I ran to him.

Cette maison est à moi.

That house belongs to me.

Il pense (songe, rêve) à eux.

He thinks (muses, dreams) of them.

Such verbs are:

accoutumer, <i>accustom</i>	comparer, <i>compare</i>	prendre intérêt, <i>take interest</i>
aller, <i>go</i>	courir, <i>run</i>	
appeler, <i>call</i>	être (à), <i>belong (to)</i>	prétendre, <i>aspire</i>
en appeler, <i>appeal</i>	faire attention, <i>pay attention</i>	recourir, <i>have recourse</i>
aspirer, <i>aspire</i>		renoncer, <i>renounce</i>
attirer, <i>attract</i>	habituer, <i>accustom</i>	revenir, <i>come back</i>
avoir affaire, <i>have to do</i>	marcher, <i>march</i>	rêver, <i>dream</i>
avoir recours, <i>have recourse</i>	penser, <i>think</i>	songer, <i>muse</i>
	prendre garde, <i>take heed</i>	venir, <i>come</i>

a. Certain verbs of this class, when not literal, take the conjunctive dative:

Il lui vint une idée.

There occurred to him an idea.

Vous nous reviendrez.

You will come to see us again.

NOTE. — The ethical dative, denoting the person 'interested in' or 'affected by' an action, rare in English, is common in French: *Goûtez-moi ce vin-là, Just taste that wine.*

363. Impersonal *il*. For invariable *il* as the subject of an impersonal verb, see §§ 248-253.

364. Predicative *le, la, les*. As predicate the third person is either variable or invariable:

1. **Le** agrees when referring to a determinate noun or to an adjective used as such:

Êtes-vous sa mère? — Je *la* suis. Are you his mother? — I am.

Êtes-vous la mariée? — Je *la* suis. Are you the bride? — I am.

2. **Le**, invariable, is used when referring to an adjective, or to a noun as adjective:

Êtes-vous fatiguée? — Je *le* suis. Are you tired? — I am.

Êtes-vous mère? — Je *le* suis. Are you a mother? — I am.

365. Pleonastic *le*. The neutral form *le* (§ 361, *d*) is often pleonastic, as compared with English usage:

Êtes-vous mère? — Je *le* suis. Are you a mother? — I am.

Qu'ils soient venus, je *le* sais. That they have come, I know.

Fais du bien, quand tu *le* peux. Do good when you can.

Ce qu'il voulait, il *le* veut encore. What he wished, he still wishes.

Je suis prête, s'il <i>le</i> faut.	I am ready if need be.
Je m'en irai, si vous <i>le</i> désirez.	I shall go if you wish (it).
Ils sont comme je (<i>le</i>) désirerais.	They are as I should like.
Il est plus âgé que je ne (<i>le</i>) suis.	He is older than I am.

Obs.: This *le* is optional in comparative clauses.

a. *Le* is also used in a number of fixed expressions:

Il ne <i>le</i> cède à personne.	He yields to nobody.
Nous <i>l'</i> avons emporté.	We have carried the day.
Il <i>l'</i> a échappé belle.	He had a narrow escape.

b. *Le* may sometimes be translated by *one* or *so*:

Il est soldat; je <i>le</i> suis aussi.	He is a soldier; I am one too.
Sois brave, et je <i>le</i> serai aussi.	Be brave and I shall be so too.

366. Reflexives. 1. A special conjunctive reflexive form, *se* for dative or accusative of either gender or number, is required in the third person only; for the first and second person the ordinary forms are used (cf. § 242):

Il (elle) <i>se</i> loue.	He (she) praises him (her) -self.
Ils (elles) <i>se le</i> sont dit.	They said so to each other.

But: Je *me* loue; tu *te* loues; nous *nous* louons; vous *vous* louez.

2. The disjunctive *soi* is hardly used beyond the third singular in an indefinite or general sense:

Chacun travaille pour <i>soi</i> .	Every one works for himself.
On doit parler rarement de <i>soi</i> .	One should rarely speak of oneself.
De <i>soi</i> le vice est odieux.	In itself vice is hateful.

But: Elle est contente d'*elle-même*; ils ne songent qu'à *eux-mêmes*.

a. The use of *soi* is rarer for the feminine than for the masculine:

Un bienfait porte sa récompense avec <i>soi</i> (<i>lui</i>).	A good deed brings its reward with it.
La guerre entraîne après <i>elle</i> (<i>soi</i>) des maux sans nombre.	War brings after it countless evils.

NOTE. — *Soi* is no longer used of persons denoted by a general noun, *e.g.*, *L'avare ne vit que pour lui-même* (not *pour soi*), nor is it used, as formerly, of persons to avoid ambiguity, *e.g.*, *Quoique son frère soit dans la misère, il ne pense qu'à lui-même* (not *à soi*).

367. Uses of *en*. 1. *En* is in function an equivalent of *de* + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and less commonly of persons:

Je parle des plumes; j'en parle.	I speak of the pens; I speak of them.
Donnez-les-moi; j'en ai besoin.	Give me them; I need them.
Il est mon ami; j'en répons.	He is my friend; I answer for him.
Il aime ses fils, et il en est aimé.	He loves his sons, and is loved by them.

Vous voilà; j'en suis content.	There you are; I am glad of it.
Vient-il de Chicago? — Il en vient.	Does he come from C.? He does.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

Voyons! où en étions-nous?	Let me see, how far on were we?
Ils en sont venus aux mains.	They came to blows.
Il m'en veut.	He has a grudge against me.
Tant s'en faut.	Far from it.
C'en est fait de lui.	It is all up with him.
À vous en croire.	If one is to believe you.
Quoi qu'il en soit.	However it (that) may be.
Je n'en peux plus.	I am worn out.
Il y en a qui le croient.	There are some who think so.

2. Through a somewhat special application of the general principle, it is further used:

(1) In a partitive sense:

Voici du papier; en voulez-vous?	Here is some paper; do you wish
— Merci, j'en ai.	any? — Thank you, I have some.
Avez-vous une plume? — J'en ai	Have you a pen? — I have one (I
une (j'en ai plusieurs).	have several).
Il me faut en acheter d'autres.	I must buy others.

(2) **En** = *thereof* + the definite article replaces a possessive adjective referring to a possessor in the preceding clause, but only when the thing possessed is a direct object, a subject of *être*, or a predicate noun:

J'aime ce pays; j'en admire les institutions.	I like this country; I admire its institutions.
Blâmez les péchés de ces gens, mais n'en blâmez pas les malheurs.	Blame the sins of those people, but do not blame their misfortunes.
Cette affaire est délicate; le succès en est douteux.	That affair is delicate; its success is doubtful.
Ceci est la gloire du pays; cela en est la honte.	This is the country's glory; that is its disgrace.

But: Cette maison a ses défauts (the possessor not being in the pre-

vious sentence); *J'aime ces vers; leur harmonie me ravit* (the thing possessed being subject of another verb than *être*); *J'admire ce pays; il est fameux par ses bonnes lois* (the thing possessed being governed by a preposition).

368. Use of *y*. *Y* is in function equivalent to *à* (*en, dans, etc.*) + a pronoun of the third person of either gender or number; it is used of things, and rarely of persons:

<i>Je pense à mes péchés; j'y pense.</i>	I think of my sins; I think of them.
<i>Il est en Europe; il y est, et moi j'y vais aussi.</i>	He is in Europe; he is there, and I am going there too.
<i>Il se connaît en ces choses, mais moi je ne m'y connais pas.</i>	He is an expert in those things, but I am not.
<i>Il aspire à cela; il y aspire.</i>	He aspires to that; he aspires to it.
<i>Vous fiez-vous à lui? — Je m'y fie.</i>	Do you trust him? — I trust him.

a. The antecedent is often understood or indefinite:

<i>Il y va de votre vie.</i>	Your life is at stake.
<i>J'y suis! Qu'y a-t-il?</i>	I have it! What is the matter?
<i>Il s'y prend adroitement.</i>	He goes about it cleverly.
<i>Est-ce que Monsieur B. y est?</i>	Is Mr. B. at home?
<i>Y pensez-vous?</i>	You don't mean it?

369. Position of Conjunctive Objects. 1. They stand immediately before their governing verb, except the imperative affirmative:

<i>Je leur en parlerai.</i>	I shall speak to them of it.
<i>Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.</i>	I sent him there to tell them it.
<i>Il lui faut parler; il faut lui parler.</i>	He must speak; one must speak to him.

a. With negative infinitive, the object may stand between *ne* and *pas* (*point, rien, etc.*); similarly adverb + infinitive:

<i>Je suis étonné de ne point le voir (or ne le point voir).</i>	I am astonished not to see him.
<i>Pour les bien considérer.</i>	To consider them well.

b. The objects of an infinitive governed by *faire, laisser* (cf. § 230, 6, 7) or a verb of perceiving (*entendre, etc.*), accompany the finite verb:

<i>Je le lui ferai dire.</i>	I shall make him say it.
<i>Il se le voit refuser.</i>	He sees himself being refused it.
<i>Faites-vous-la raconter.</i>	Have it related to you.

c. A similar arrangement is permissible with *aller*, *venir*, *envoyer*, etc. + an infinitive:

<i>Je vais le chercher.</i>	<i>I'll fetch it (or him).</i>
<i>J'enverrai le chercher or</i> }	<i>I shall send for him.</i>
<i>Je l'enverrai chercher.</i>	

NOTE. — In the older language, objects of an infinitive often stood before the so-called modal auxiliaries, *e.g.*, *Je vous dois dire*, but usage hardly permits this now, except for *en*, *y*, *e.g.*, *Ce qu'on en doit attendre*.

2. Conjunctive objects stand immediately after an imperative affirmative:

<i>Regardez-les; écoutez-nous.</i>	<i>Look at them; listen to us.</i>
<i>Donnez-le-lui; allons-nous-en.</i>	<i>Give it to him; let us go away.</i>
<i>But: Ne les regardez pas.</i>	<i>Do not look at them.</i>
<i>Ne les écoutez point.</i>	<i>Do not listen to them.</i>
<i>Ne le lui donnez pas.</i>	<i>Do not give it to him.</i>

a. The rule does not apply to the subjunctive as impve. (§ 272, 1, a):
Qu'il les écoute. *Let him listen to them.*

NOTES. — 1. Formerly, but rarely now, an imperative affirmative when joined to another by *et* (*ou*, *mais*) might have an object before it: *Achetez-les et les payez*, etc.

2. *Voici* and *voilà*, which are imperatives by derivation, are always preceded by their conjunctive object: *Les voici*, *en voilà*, etc.

370. Relative Position of Objects. Personal pronoun objects and pronominal adverbs are arranged with reference to each other, as follows:

1. When coming before the verb:

<i>me</i>	} before	{ <i>le</i> <i>la</i> <i>les</i> }	before {	<i>lui</i> <i>leur</i> }	before <i>y</i> — before <i>en</i>
<i>te</i>					
<i>se</i>					
<i>nous</i>					
<i>vous</i>					

<i>Il me les donne.</i>	<i>He gives them to me.</i>
<i>Il les lui donne.</i>	<i>He gives them to him.</i>
<i>Il nous en donne.</i>	<i>He gives us some of it.</i>
<i>Je leur en parlerai.</i>	<i>I shall speak to them of it.</i>
<i>Ne leur en parlez pas.</i>	<i>Do not speak of it to them.</i>
<i>Je l'y ai envoyé pour le leur dire.</i>	<i>I sent him there to tell them it.</i>

a. When there are two direct or two indirect objects, they become disjunctive and follow the verb:

<i>J'ai vu lui et elle.</i>	I have seen him and her.
<i>J'en ai parlé à lui et à elle.</i>	I spoke of it to him and to her.

2. When coming after the verb:

<i>le</i> (la les)	before <i>moi</i> (toi, lui, nous, vous, leur)
<i>me</i> (te, lui, nous, vous, leur)	before <i>y</i> (en)
<i>y</i>	before <i>en</i>
<i>Donnez-les-moi.</i>	Give them to me.
<i>Donnez-leur-en.</i>	Give them some of it.
<i>Donnez-m'en; va-t'en.</i>	Give me some; begone.
<i>Conduisez-nous-y.</i>	Take us there.
<i>Allez-vous-en.</i>	Go away.

a. After an imperative, the indirect objects **nous**, **vous**, may precede the direct **le**, **la**, **les** in familiar language:

<i>Conservez-vous-le.</i>	Keep it for yourselves.
<i>Tenez-vous-le pour dit.</i>	Consider it as final.

3. Reference table showing possible combinations of two pronouns:

(Before the Verb)				(After the Verb)		
<i>me le</i>	<i>te le</i>	<i>se le</i>	<i>le lui</i>	<i>-le -moi</i>	<i>-le -toi</i>	<i>-le -lui</i>
<i>me la</i>	<i>te la</i>	<i>se la</i>	<i>la lui</i>	<i>-la -moi</i>	<i>-la -toi</i>	<i>-la -lui</i>
<i>me les</i>	<i>te les</i>	<i>se les</i>	<i>les lui</i>	<i>-les-moi</i>	<i>-les-toi</i>	<i>-les-lui</i>
<i>nous le</i>	<i>vous le</i>	<i>se le</i>	<i>le leur</i>	<i>-le -nous</i>	<i>-le -vous</i>	<i>-le -leur</i>
<i>nous la</i>	<i>vous la</i>	<i>se la</i>	<i>la leur</i>	<i>-la -nous</i>	<i>-la -vous</i>	<i>-la -leur</i>
<i>nous les</i>	<i>vous les</i>	<i>se les</i>	<i>les leur</i>	<i>-les-nous</i>	<i>-les-vous</i>	<i>-les-leur</i>
<i>m'en</i>	<i>t'en</i>	<i>s'en</i>	<i>lui en</i>	<i>-m'en</i>	<i>-t'en</i>	<i>-lui-en</i>
<i>m'en</i>	<i>t'en</i>	<i>s'en</i>	<i>l'en</i>	<i>-m'en</i>	<i>-t'en</i>	<i>-l'en</i>
<i>nous en</i>	<i>vous en</i>	<i>s'en</i>	<i>leur en</i>	<i>-nous-en</i>	<i>-vous-en</i>	<i>-leur-en</i>
<i>nous en</i>	<i>vous en</i>	<i>s'en</i>	<i>les en</i>	<i>-nous-en</i>	<i>-vous-en</i>	<i>-les -en</i>
<i>m'y</i>	<i>t'y</i>	<i>s'y</i>	<i>[lui y]</i>	<i>[-m'y]</i>	<i>[-t'y]</i>	<i>[-lui-y]</i>
<i>m'y</i>	<i>t'y</i>	<i>s'y</i>	<i>l'y</i>	<i>[-m'y]</i>	<i>[-t'y]</i>	<i>-l'y</i>
<i>nous y</i>	<i>vous y</i>	<i>s'y</i>	<i>leur y</i>	<i>-nous-y</i>	<i>-vous-y</i>	<i>-leur-y</i>
<i>nous y</i>	<i>vous y</i>	<i>s'y</i>	<i>les y</i>	<i>-nous-y</i>	<i>-vous-y</i>	<i>-les -y</i>
	<i>y en</i>				<i>y-en</i>	

Obs.: 1. The disjunctive forms **moi**, **toi** are used instead of **me**, **te** after the verb, except before **en**.

2. After the verb, the forms are joined to it and to each other by hyphens, apostrophe instead of hyphen being used according to § 19.

3. Combinations of three forms are rare, *e.g.*, **Il nous y en a donné**; they are usually avoided, *e.g.*, **Donnes-y-en à moi** for **Donne-m'y-en**.

4. The forms in [] are almost always avoided, either by transposition or by some other form of expression, *e.g.*, **Mènes-y-moi** or **Mène-moi là** for **Mène-m'y**, etc. See § 159, 4.

371. Omission of Object. The object of the second of two verbs in a compound tense joined by **et** or **ou** may be omitted along with the auxiliary and the subject:

Il l'a pris et tué.

He caught and killed it.

Or: **Il l'a pris et l'a tué.**

He caught it and killed it.

Il l'a pris et il l'a tué.

He has caught it and has killed it.

But: **Il l'a pris, l'a tué.**

He has caught it, has killed it.

Il le prend, et le tue.

He catches it, and kills it.

NOTE. — The verbs must be alike in government, must have the same auxiliary, must both be affirmative or negative, otherwise no omission is allowed.

372. Disjunctives. When, for any reason, the pronoun is stressed (§ 7), the disjunctive form is usually employed (see § 359, note); thus, the disjunctives are used:

1. Absolutely, a verb being implied, but not expressed:

Qui est là? — Moi (eux, elle).

Who is there? — I (they, she).

Qui as-tu vu? — Lui (eux).

Whom did you see? — Him (them).

Toi absent, que ferai-je?

You absent, what shall I do?

a. So also, in comparisons, and analogously, after **ne . . . que**:

Je suis plus grand que toi.

I am taller than you.

Faites comme eux.

Do as they do.

Je n'ai vu que lui.

I have seen him only.

2. In appositions, often emphatic:

Moi, je l'ai vu (moi-même).

(Why) I saw it myself.

Toi qui l'as vu, tu me crois.

You who saw it (you) believe me.

Lui aussi (il) le sait.

He too knows it.

Cela vous est facile à vous.

That is easy for you.

a. With **lui** so used, and sometimes also with **eux**, the conjunctive subject may be omitted:

Lui seul (il) ne le voulait pas.

He alone did not wish it.

Lui travaillait; eux jouaient.

He worked; they played.

NOTE. — **Je soussigné** = *I the undersigned* is a relic of the earlier language.

3. As logical subject after **ce + être**:

C'est moi (toi, vous); ce sont eux.

It is I (thou, you); it is they.

4. With an infinitive:

Moi t'oublier ! jamais.

I forget thee ! Never.

Et eux de s'enfuir.

And they made off.

5. When the subject or object is composite, see also § 362, 1, a and 2, (1):

Son frère et lui sont venus.

His brother and he have come.

a. A composite subject or object is usually summed up by a pleonastic appositive conjunctive, especially when the components are unlike in person:

Vous et lui (vous) l'avez vu.

You and he saw it.

Je vous envoie, toi et ton frère.

I send you and your brother.

6. After a preposition:

Je parle de toi et d'eux.

I speak of you and of them.

Ils sont chez eux.

They are at home.

Il se moque de nous.

He makes sport of us.

a. Observe the peculiar use of a preposition + a disjunctive pronoun as a sort of emphatic appositive of possession.

J'ai une maison à moi.

I have a house of my own.

Mon idée à moi, c'est, etc.

My (own) idea is, etc.

NOTE. — A disjunctive for things after a preposition is usually avoided, either by means of **en**, **y**, or else by an adverb, such as **dedans**, **dehors**, **dessus**, **devant**, **derrière**, etc.: **Je ne vois rien là dedans** (*in it*); **Voyez sur la table, cherchez dessus** (*on it*) **et dessous** (*under it*).

7. For **moi** and **toi** after imperative, see § 370, 3, obs. 1.

373. Pronouns in Address. In addressing one person **vous** is, in general, the pronoun of formality and respect, whilst **tu** denotes familiarity, affection, solemnity, etc., as follows:

1. **Tu** = *you*, of one person, is generally used between members of the same family (husband and wife, parents and children, brothers and sisters), between very intimate friends, between children, by grown persons to children and sometimes to servants, by everybody to animals and inanimate objects:

Où es-tu, mon cher père?

Where are you, my dear father?

Est-ce toi, mon enfant?

Is that you, my child?

Pauvre chien, tu as faim.

Poor dog, you are hungry.

2. **Tu** = *thou* is used in poetry and elevated prose, and by Protestants in addressing God, Roman Catholics using **vous**:

Nous te (vous) louons, ô Dieu! We praise thee, O God!

3. **Vous**, with the above limitations, is used, both in the singular and plural, as 'you' is in English.

THE POSSESSIVE PRONOUN

374.

Possessives

1. Adjectival Forms:

2. Pronominal Forms:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
m. mon	mes, my	m. le mien	les miens
f. ma (mon)		f. la mienne	les miennes
m. ton	tes, thy, your	m. le tien	les tiens
f. ta (ton)		f. la tienne	les tiennes
m. son	ses } his, her,	m. le sien	les siens
f. sa (son)		f. la sienne	les siennes
m. }	nos, our	m. le nôtre	les nôtres, ours
f. }		f. la nôtre	
m. }	vos, your	m. le vôtre	les vôtres, yours
f. }		f. la vôtre	
m. }	leurs, their	m. le leur	les leurs, theirs
f. }		f. la leur	

Obs.: 1. The forms in parenthesis, **mon**, **ton**, **son**, are used instead

Obs.: 1. The feminine, except for **leur**, is formed as for adjectives of

of **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, before a vowel or **h** mute: *Mon amie*, *my friend* (f.); *ton histoire* (f.), *your story*; *son aimable tante*, *his amiable aunt*.
 2. Since **son** (**sa**, **ses**) = *his*, *her*, *its*, *one's*, the context determines which sense is intended.

like ending. 2. **De**, **à** + **le**, **les**, contract as usual; thus, *du mien* (= *de* + *le mien*), *aux miennes* (= *à* + *les miennes*), etc. 3. Note the accent mark in **nôtre**, **vôtre**, absent in **notre**, **votre**. 4. Since **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.) = *his*, *hers*, *its*, *one's*, the context determines which sense is intended.

NOTE. — The regular feminine forms, **ma**, **ta**, **sa**, were at one time used before a vowel sound; a trace of this usage survives in **ma mie** (for *m'amie*).

375. Agreement. The possessives agree in gender and number with the noun denoting the object possessed, and in person with the possessor:

Elle a son crayon et les miens.	She has her pencil and mine.
Il a sa plume et les vôtres.	He has his pen and yours.

a. The possessive adjective must be repeated precisely like the definite article (cf. § 318):

Mes parents et mes amis.	My relatives and friends.
--------------------------	---------------------------

b. When the possessor is indefinite, **son** (**sa**, etc.) and **le sien** (**la sienne**, etc.), are used:

On doit tenir sa parole.	One must keep one's word.
Se charger des affaires d'autrui et négliger les siennes.	To undertake the business of others and neglect one's own.

376. Use of Adjectival Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are:

1. The possessive adjective is commonly replaced by the definite article (cf. § 328) when no ambiguity arises from its use:

Il s'est cassé la jambe.	He broke his leg.
Donnez-moi la main.	Give me your hand.
Il m'a déchiré le visage.	He has scratched my face.
But: Il a déchiré son habit.	He has torn his coat.

a. If the sense is specific, emphatic, or distinctive, the possessive is used:

Mon bras me fait mal.	My arm pains me.
Voilà ma migraine encore !	There is my sick-headache again !

Je l'ai vu de mes propres yeux.

I saw it with my own eyes.

Elle lui a donné sa main.

She has given him her hand (sc. in marriage).

2. **En** + the definite article serves in certain cases as a substitute for **son**, **leur**, see § 367, 2, (2):

a. This construction is more usual for things than for persons; for things personified, for names of places, or to avoid ambiguity, **son**, **leur** are not uncommon:

La nécessité parle; il faut suivre sa loi.

Necessity speaks; we must follow her law.

Vous rappelez-vous cette ville? Ses promenades sont très belles.

Do you remember that city? Its promenades are very fine.

La source de toutes les passions est la sensibilité, l'imagination détermine leur pente.

Sensation is the source of all the passions, imagination determines their tendency.

3. The emphatic *own* is denoted by **propre** or by an apposition with **à**:

Je l'ai écrit de ma propre main.

I wrote it with my own hand.

C'est mon opinion à moi.

That is my own opinion.

Cf. also: J'ai un cheval à moi.

I have a horse of my own.

a. Along with **son** the **à** construction often avoids ambiguity:

Son père à lui.

His (i.e., not her) father.

Sa mère à elle.

Her mother.

4. **Mon** (**ma**) is commonly used, in direct address, before the name of a relative (not before **papa**, **maman**) or the title of a superior officer:

Bonjour *mon* père (*mon* colonel).

Good morning, father (colonel).

But: Est-ce toi **papa** (**maman**)?

Is that you, **papa** (**mamma**)?

NOTE. — This usage explains the origin of **monsieur** (= **mon** + **sieur**), **madame** (= **ma** + **dame**), etc.

5. In speaking to a person of his or her relatives, **votre** (**vos**) is often preceded by **monsieur**, etc., for politeness:

Madame **votre** mère y est-elle? Is your mother in?

6. When there is plurality of possessor, the object possessed usually remains singular, if it is singular as regards the individual possessor:

Les hommes songent moins à leur	Men think less of their
âme qu'à leur corps.	souls than
	of their bodies.
Ils ont perdu la vie.	They lost their lives.

a. Sometimes the sense demands a plural:

Leurs têtes se ressemblent.	Their heads are alike.
-----------------------------	------------------------

377. Use of Pronominal Forms. They are used, in general, like the corresponding English forms; idiomatic distinctions and special rules are the following:

1. *Mine*, etc., after *être* is regularly expressed by *à + moi*, etc., when denoting ownership simply, while *le mien*, etc. denotes a distinction of ownership:

Cette montre est à moi.	} That watch is mine.
Cette montre est la mienne.	
	That watch is mine (<i>not yours</i>).

2. The pronominal form sometimes stands without article in the predicate after certain verbs:

Ces opinions sont vôtres.	Those opinions are yours.
Elle deviendra mienne.	She shall become mine.
Je les ai fait miens.	I made them mine.

Such verbs are:

être	devenir	dire	faire	regarder comme, etc.
------	---------	------	-------	----------------------

3. The idiom *a friend of mine*, etc., is not literally translated:

Un de mes amis.	A friend of mine.
Un médecin de mes amis.	{ One of my friends, (who is) a doctor.
	{ A doctor, a friend of mine.
Un ami à moi.	A friend of mine.
Mon ami que voici.	This friend of mine.
Cf.: Un tour de sa façon.	One of his tricks.

a. The use of *mien* (*tien*, *sien*) attributively in this sense is familiar:

Un mien parent.	A relative of mine.
Une sienne cousine.	A cousin of his.

4. Emphatic *own* is rendered by **propre**, or is, more usually, untranslated:

Son avis et le mien (**propre**). His opinion and my own.

5. When used absolutely, *i.e.*, without antecedent, the singular denotes *property, what is mine*, etc., and the plural *relatives, friends, allies*, etc.:

Je ne demande que le mien. I ask only for what is mine.
 Les nôtres se sont bien battus. Our soldiers (etc.) fought well.

a. Familiarly, the feminine means *pranks*, etc.:

Il fait encore des siennes. He is at his pranks again.

NOTE. — Other absolute uses are not permissible, *e.g.*, **Votre lettre** (not *la vôtre*) **de la semaine dernière**.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUN

378. Demonstratives

1. Adjectival forms: 2. Pronominal forms:

SING.	PL.	SING.	PL.
m. ce (cet)	this, that ces	m. celui	that (one), etc. ceux
f. cette		f. celle	
m. ce (cet) . . . - ci	this ces . . . - ci	m. celui-ci	this (one), etc. ceux-ci
f. cette . . . - ci		f. celle-ci	
m. ce (cet) . . . - là	that ces . . . - là	m. celui-là	that (one), etc. ceux-là
f. cette . . . - là		f. celle-là	

Obs.: The form **cet** is used before a vowel or **h** mute: **Cet arbre**; **cet homme**; **cet autre dé**; but: **ce chêne**; **ce hêtre**.

Invar. **ce**, this (these), that (those), he (she, it, they)
ceci, this
cela, that

Obs.: The **e** of **ce** is elided before a vowel or **h** mute (§ 19); **c'** becomes **ç'** before **a** (§ 5, 4): **ç'a été**.

379. Agreement. The adjectival form agrees in gender and number with the noun before which it stands; the pronominal form agrees in gender and number with the noun instead of which it stands:

Cette plume et celle de Jean. This pen and that of John.
 J'aime ces livres-ci, mais je n'aime pas ceux-là. I like these books, but I do not like those.

a. The demonstrative adjective must be repeated like the definite article (cf. § 318).

380. Use of Adjectival *ce*. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.) = *this* or *that*; to distinguish *this* from *that* *-ci* and *-là* are respectively added to the noun:

Lis *ce* livre-*ci*; lis *ce* livre-*là*.

Read this book; read that book.

J'aime *ces* tableaux-*là*.

I like those pictures.

a. *Ce* (*cette*, etc.), referring to what has already been mentioned, sometimes has the force of *that*:

Le télégraphe, *cette* grande découverte de notre siècle.

The telegraph, that great discovery of our century.

b. The definite article replaces the demonstrative adjective in a few idioms:

Ne parlez pas de *la* sorte.

Do not speak in that way.

Je reviens à *l'*instant.

I shall be back in a moment.

381. *Celui*. The pronoun *celui* (*celle*, etc.) = *that*, *that one*, *the one*, *he*, is regularly used only along with a relative clause or a *de* clause:

Ceux qui rient pleureront.

Those who laugh will weep.

Celle dont je parle est venue.

She of whom I speak has come.

Le devoir d'aimer Dieu et *celui* d'aimer son prochain.

The duty of loving God and that of loving one's neighbor.

Cette robe et celle que j'ai vue.

This dress and the one I saw.

Mes plumes et celles de mon frère.

My pens and my brother's.

Obs.: Note the use of *celui* = English possessive noun.

a. The relative sentence is sometimes elliptically expressed by the past participle:

Les découvertes énumérées sont celles faites par Edison.

The discoveries enumerated are those made by Edison.

b. *Celui-là* replaces *celui* when the predicate comes before the relative:

Celui-là est riche qui est toujours content.

He (that man) is rich who is always happy.

382. *Celui-ci*, *celui-là*. The pronouns *celui-ci* (*celle-ci*, etc.) = *this*, *this one*, *he*, *the latter* and *celui-là* (*celle-là*,

etc.) = *that, that one, the former*, are used to contrast the nearer with the more remote:

Voici les deux chaînes; gardez celle-ci, et renvoyez celle-là.	Here are the two chains; keep this (one), and send back that (one).
Veut-il ceux-ci ou ceux-là?	Does he wish these or those?
Cicéron et Virgile étaient Romains; celui-ci était poète, et celui-là orateur.	Cicero and Virgil were Romans; the former was an orator, and the latter a poet.

Obs.: The idiom in the last example is literally *the latter . . . , the former*.

a. *This* or *that* for emphasis, not contrast, is **celui-là**:

C'est une bonne loi (que) celle-là. This (that) is a good law.

383. Ce as Representative Subject. **Ce** = *this, that, these, those, he, she, it, they*, according to the context, is used with **être**, or with **devoir, pouvoir, savoir + être**, as representative subject, when the logical subject is:

1. A proper noun, or a determinate noun, including adjectives as such:

C'est Marie et sa mère.	It is Mary and her mother.
Ce sera un beau spectacle.	That (it) will be a fine sight.
Ce sont nos plumes.	These (those) are our pens.
Était-ce le meilleur?	Was it the best?
Ce sont des Allemands.	They (those) are Germans.
C'est mon ami(e).	He (she) is my friend.
Ce peut être Jean.	That may be John.

a. Before **être** + an indeterminate noun **il** (ils, elles) is the regular construction:

Il est temps de s'en aller.	It is time to go.
Ils sont amis (Français).	They are friends (French).
Elle est couturière.	She is a seamstress.

NOTE. — For a few expressions like **c'est dommage**, etc., in which **c'est** stands with an indeterminate noun, see 384, 1, note 3.

b. **Il est** is always used to indicate hours of the day:

Il est midi (trois heures).	It is noon (three o'clock).
But: Quelle heure est-ce qui vient de sonner? — C'est cinq heures.	What hour has just struck? — It is five.

c. Observe the use of **ce** in the following date idioms:

<i>C'est aujourd'hui lundi.</i>	To-day is Monday.
<i>Ce sera demain le quatre.</i>	To-morrow will be the fourth.

2. A pronoun:

<i>Qui est-ce? — Ce sont eux.</i>	Who is it? — It is they.
<i>Ce sont les leurs.</i>	Those are theirs.
<i>C'est ceci; c'est cela.</i>	It is this; it is that.
<i>C'étaient les mêmes.</i>	They (those) were the same.
<i>Ce doivent être les miens.</i>	Those must be mine.

3. An infinitive, or an infinitive with **de**:

<i>Ce serait tout perdre.</i>	That would be losing everything.
<i>Voir c'est croire.</i>	Seeing is believing.
<i>Ce que je crains c'est de l'offenser.</i>	What I fear is to offend him.

4. A noun sentence:

<i>Est-ce que vous ne le ferez pas?</i>	Will you not do it?
<i>Où est-ce qu'il est?</i>	Where is it that he is?
<i>Ce n'est pas qu'il ait peur.</i>	It is not that he is afraid.

a. The noun sentence may be understood:

<i>Vous partirez, n'est-ce pas? (= n'est-ce pas que vous partirez?)</i>	You will go, will you not?
---	----------------------------

5. An adverb of quantity:

<i>Combien est-ce? C'a été trop.</i>	How much is it? It was too much.
--------------------------------------	----------------------------------

NOTE. — For agreement of the verb, see § 232, 3.

384. Ce as Real Subject. *Ce* stands as real subject of *être*, or of *devoir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir* + *être*, when the complement of *être* is:

1. A masculine adjective, an adjective + *à* + an infinitive, an infinitive preceded by *à*, an adverb (in all these cases without further syntactical connection; see *a*, below):

<i>C'est beau (vrai, bien).</i>	That (it) is fine (true, well).
<i>Ce doit être (ne saurait être) vrai.</i>	That must be (cannot be) true.
<i>Il est parti, c'est clair.</i>	He is gone, that is clear.
<i>C'est clair, il est parti.</i>	It is clear, he is gone.
<i>C'est à désirer.</i>	That (it) is to be desired.
<i>La vue est belle! — Oui, c'est beau! The view is fine! — Yes, it is fine!</i>	

Où sera-ce?

Where will it (that) be?

C'était bien mal à vous.

That was very wrong of you.

a. When followed by **de** + an infinitive or by a **que** clause, the regular construction for the above is impersonal **il** (not **ce**); so also the parenthetical **il est vrai** and **n'est-il pas vrai?** (= **n'est-ce pas?**), though without syntactical connection:

Il est facile de dire cela.

It is easy to say that.

Il est triste de vous voir ainsi.

It is sad to see you thus.

Il est clair que j'ai raison.

It is clear that I am right.

Il est à désirer que la guerre finisse bientôt.

It is to be desired that the war will soon end.

On rit, il est vrai, mais attendez.

They laugh, to be sure, but wait.

Il est bien mal à vous de parler ainsi.

It is very wrong of you to speak so.

NOTE. — 1. Colloquially, **c'est** is pretty freely used instead of **il est** before **de** + infinitive or a **que** clause: **C'est facile de faire cela**; **C'est clair que j'ai raison**, etc.

2. This use of **ce** is permissible in the literary style only in expressions of emotion, e.g., **C'est heureux (malheureux, beau, triste, étonnant, etc.)**, **c'est à présumer (craindre, regretter, etc.)**: **C'est triste de vous voir**; **C'est à craindre qu'il ne soit noyé**.

3. The **ce** construction is obligatory after a few noun phrases of like value, e.g., **C'est dommage (pitié, plaisir, justice)**, etc., **C'est pitié de l'entendre**.

2. A prepositional phrase, or a conjunction:

C'est pour vous.

It (that) is for you.

C'est pourquoi je suis venu.

That is why I came.

C'est comme vous (le) dites.

It is as you say.

385. Ce + a Relative. As antecedent **ce** + a relative denotes *that which, what, which*, etc.:

Ce qui m'amuse.

What (that which) amuses me.

Ce que je dis est vrai.

What I say is true.

Ce dont nous parlions.

What we were speaking of.

Ce à quoi je pense.

What I am thinking of.

Il est âgé, ce qui est dommage.

He is old, which is a pity.

a. **Ce**, so used, either immediately precedes the relative, or is, for emphasis, divided from it by **être** + a predicate substantive:

Ce qu'il veut c'est la gloire.

What he desires is glory.

C'est la gloire qu'il veut.

It is glory that he desires.

NOTE. — This type of construction is widely used to render a predicate substantive emphatic, e.g., **C'est ton frère qui le dit**; **C'est à vous que** (= **à qui**) **je parle**; **C'est mourir que de vivre ainsi**; **C'est une belle ville que Paris** (cf. 397, 2, note 1).

386. Other uses of *ce*. Apart from its use with *être* or with a relative, *ce* is found in a few phrases only, mostly archaic, familiar or jocular:

Ce devint un usage.

This (that) became a custom.

Tu crains, *ce* lui dit-il.

"You fear," said he to him.

Sur *ce*, je vous quitte.

And now, I leave you.

De *ce* non content.

Not satisfied with this.

a. The parenthetical *ce semble* may be used only when unconnected (cf. § 384, 1, *a*), otherwise *il semble*:

C'est lui, *ce* me semble, au moins. It's he, it seems to me, at least.

But: *Il* me semble *que c'est* lui.

387. Pleonastic *ce*. As compared with English, *ce* is often pleonastic; thus, it is used with *être* + a logical subject:

1. Regularly, after *celui qui* and *ce qui*:

Celle qui l'a dit *c'est* vous.

The one who said so is you.

Ce que je crains *ce* sont mes prétendus amis.

What I fear is my would-be friends.

Ce à quoi je pense *c'est* sa santé.

What I think of is his health.

2. Regularly, between infinitives when not negative:

Penser, *c'est* vivre.

To think is to live.

But: *Végéter (ce)* n'est pas vivre.

To vegetate is not to live.

3. Regularly, in inversion with *que*:

C'est une belle ville *que* Paris.

{ Paris is a beautiful city.
{ It is a fine city, (is) Paris.

4. Optionally, in other inversions for emphasis:

La guerre (ce) serait la ruine.

War would be ruin.

NOTE. — When the complement of *être* is an adjective or participle, pleonastic *ce* may not be used: *Ce qui est utile n'est pas toujours juste.*

388. *Ceci* and *cela*. *Ceci* = *this*, the nearer, and *cela* = *that*, the more remote, are used to denote something indicated, but not yet named:

Gardez *ceci* et donnez-moi *cela*. Keep this and give me that.

Obs.: If the object has been already named, or if the name is fully implied by the context, *celui-ci* (-là), etc. must be used.

a. *Ceci* also refers to what is about to be said, and *cela* to what has been said:

Réfléchissez bien à ceci.

Think well on this.

Je ne dis pas davantage, cela suffit. I say no more, that is enough.

b. *Ceci* (*not cela*) may have a predicate noun:

Ceci est un secret.

Or: *C'est ici* un secret (rarer). } This is a secret.

But: *C'est là* un secret. }

Cela c'est un secret. } That is a secret.

NOTE. — *Cela* is not so divided before *même*, *seul*, and its division in negations is optional: *Cela seul* (*même*) *en est la cause*; *Cela n'est pas* (*or ce n'est pas là*) *une faute*.

c. *Cela* (*not ceci*) = *this* before a *de* clause:

Paris a *cela* d'avantageux.

Paris has this advantage.

d. *Cela* may be replaced by *là* after *de* and *par*:

De *là* vient que, etc.

From that it comes that, etc.

Il faut commencer par *là*.

We must begin with that.

e. *Cela* is often contracted to *ça* colloquially:

Ça ne fait rien.

That doesn't matter.

f. *Ça* is sometimes used familiarly or contemptuously of persons instead of a personal pronoun:

Regardez comme *ça* mange.

Look how they (etc.) eat.

Ça veut faire à sa tête.

You (etc.) wish to do as you please.

NOTE. — Distinguish *ça* from *çà* (adverb) and *çà!* (interjection).

THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

389.

Interrogatives

1. Adjectival forms:

2. Pronominal forms:

SING.	PL.		SING.	PL.	
m. quel?	quels?	} which? what? etc.	m. lequel?	lesquels?	} which? which or what one(s)?
f. quelle?	quelles?		f. laquelle?	lesquelles?	
			(Invar.)	qui?	who? whom?
				que?	what?
				quoi?	what?

Obs.: 1. For the feminine and plural of *quel*, cf. §§ 337, 1 (2), and 338.

2. *Lequel* = *le* + *quel*, both parts being inflected (§§ 316, 389, 1); *de*, à contract with *le*, *les* (*duquel*, *auquel*, etc., cf. § 317).

3. *Que* = *qu'* before a vowel or *h* mute (§ 19).

390. Agreement. The adjectival forms agree like ordinary adjectives; the variable pronominal forms agree in gender, but not necessarily in number, with the nouns for which they stand; the invariable *qui?* assumes the number of the noun or pronoun referred to:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Quelle plume avez-vous prise?	Which pen did you take?
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Laquelle des dames est venue?	Which of the ladies has come?
Qui sonne? Qui sont-elles?	Who rings? Who are they?

391. Quel? Lequel? The adjective *quel?* = *which?* *what?* and the pronoun *lequel?* = *which (one)? what (one)?* refer either to persons or things, and stand both in direct and indirect questions:

Quels livres avez-vous?	Which (what) books have you?
Dites-moi quel livre il a.	Tell me which (what) book he has.
Desquels avez-vous besoin?	Which (ones) do you need?
Dites-moi lesquels vous avez.	Tell me which (ones) you have.
Quelle dame est arrivée?	Which (what) lady has come?
Je ne sais pas laquelle.	I do not know which (one).
Quelles sont vos raisons?	What are your reasons?
Quel homme est-ce là?	What (what kind of) man is that?
Auquel des hommes parle-t-il?	To which of the men does he speak?

a. Quel! in exclamations sometimes = *what a! what!:*

Quel héros! Quels héros!	What a hero! What heroes!
Quelle belle scène! — Oui, c'est beau!	What a beautiful scene! — Yes, it is fine.

b. Quel? as predicative adjective often replaces *qui?* = *who?*

Quels sont ces gens-là?	Who are those people? (or what kind of people are those?)
Sais-tu quelle est cette dame?	Do you know who that lady is?

NOTE. — A pleonastic *de* is commonly used before alternatives after *quel?* *lequel?* and other interrogatives, probably caused by case attraction with *des deux*, often present in such expressions: *Lequel (des deux) est le plus habile, de cet homme-ci ou de celui-là; Laquelle est la plus illustre, d'Athènes ou de Rome?*

392. Qui? 1. The pronoun *qui?* = *who? whom?* is regularly used of persons only, and stands in both direct and indirect questions:

Qui frappe? Qui est là?

Who is knocking? Who is there?

De qui (à qui) parle-t-il?

Of whom (to whom) is he speaking?

Qui avez-vous vu?

Whom did you see?

Qui êtes-vous?

Who are you?

Dites-moi qui est venu.

Tell me who has come.

a. *Qui?* is sometimes used, though rarely and not necessarily, as subject of a transitive verb in the sense of *what?*

Qui vous amène de si bonne heure? What brings you so early?

b. *Qui?* predicatively, is often replaced, especially when feminine or plural, by *quel?*

Quelle est cette dame?

Who is that lady? (What l. is that?)

Quels sont-ils?

Who are they?

2. *Whose?* denoting simply ownership = *à qui?* otherwise generally *de qui?* sometimes *quel?* but never *dont*:

À qui est cette maison-là?

Whose house is that?

De qui êtes-vous fils?

Whose son are you?

Quelle maison a été brûlée?

Whose (what) house was burnt?

NOTE. — Compare with this the idiom *c'est à qui*: *C'était à qui finirait le premier*, *It was a strife as to who would finish first.*

393. Que? Quoi? The form *que?* = *what?* is conjunctive, while *quoi?* = *what?* is disjunctive; their uses in detail are:

1. *Que?* stands regularly as direct object or as predicate, and in direct question only:

Que vous a-t-il dit?

What did he say to you?

Que cherchez-vous?

What are you looking for?

Que sont-ils devenus?

What has become of them?

a. *Que?* alternatively with *quoi?* may stand with an infinitive in indirect question:

Je ne sais que (quoi) dire.

I know not what to say.

b. *Que?* and *que!* sometimes have adverbial force:

Que ne m'avez-vous dit cela?

Why did you not tell me that?

Que vous êtes heureux!

How happy you are!

Que d'argent perdu!

What a quantity of money lost!

2. *What?* as subject of a verb is regularly *qu'est-ce qui?*

Qu'est-ce qui fait ce bruit?

What is making that noise?

a. The form *que?* may stand as subject of a few intransitive verbs, mostly such as may also be impersonal, but never as subject of a transitive verb:

Que sert de pleurer?

What is the use of crying?

Que vous en semble?

What do you think of it?

Qu'est-ce?

What is it?

3. *Quoi?* is used absolutely, *i.e.*, with ellipsis of the verb, and after a preposition:

Il y a du nouveau. — Quoi?

There is news. — What?

Quoi de plus beau que cela?

What finer than that?

Quoi! vous l'admirez!

What! You admire him!

À quoi pensez-vous?

What are you thinking of?

En quoi puis-je vous servir?

In what can I help you?

a. In cases of special emphasis *quoi?* may be direct object:

Je reçois quoi? — Des lettres.

I receive what? — Letters.

b. With an infinitive, *que?* or more emphatically, *quoi?* is used:

Que (quoi) faire?

What is one to do?

Je ne sais que (quoi) répondre.

I know not what to answer.

394. Interrogative Locutions. The use of interrogative phrases formed with *est-ce*, etc., instead of the simple forms is very frequent (cf. §§ 392–3):

Qui est-ce qui chante?

for *Qui chante?*

Qui est-ce que vous demandez?

“ *Qui demandez-vous?*

À qui est-ce que vous parliez?

“ *À qui parliez-vous?*

Qu'est-ce que cela prouve?

“ *Que prouve cela?*

Qu'est-ce que c'est?

“ *Qu'est-ce?*

Qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?

“ *Qu'est-ce que cela?*

De quoi est-ce qu'il parle?

“ *De quoi parle-t-il?*

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

395. Relative Pronouns

qui, who, which, that; whom (*after a preposition*)

que, whom, which, that

dont, whose, of whom, of which, etc.

où, in which, into which, at which, to which, etc.

lequel, m. s.	lesquels, m. pl.	} who, whom, which, that
laquelle, f. s.	lesquelles, f. pl.	

quoi, what, which

Obs.: For **qu'**, see § 19.

396. Agreement. A relative pronoun, whether variable or invariable in form, is of the gender, number, and person of its antecedent:

Moi qui étais (vous qui étiez) là.	I who was (you who were) there.
Les lettres que j'ai apportées.	The letters which I have brought.
Moi qui suis son ami(e).	I who am his friend (m. or f.).
Dieux (vous) qui m'exaucez !	(Ye) gods who hear me !
C'est nous qui l'avons dit.	It is we who have said it.
Je suis celui qui l'ai dit.	I am the one who has said it.

a. When the antecedent is a predicate noun, or an adjective as such, the relative may agree in person either with this noun or with the subject of the sentence:

Nous sommes deux moines qui voyageons (voyagent).	We are two monks who are traveling.
Je suis le seul qui l'aie (ait) dit.	I am the only one who has said it.

b. The relative after **un** + a plural is either singular or plural, usually according to the sense:

C'est un de mes (des) procès qui m'a (m'ont) ruiné.	It is one of my (of the) lawsuits which has (have) ruined me.
---	---

397. Qui, Que. Both **qui** and **que** refer to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things; their uses in detail are:

1. **Qui** = *who, which, that*, serves as subject; **qui** = *whom*, of persons only, or things personified, may also be used after a preposition:

La dame qui a chanté.	The lady who (that) has sung.
Les amis qui sont arrivés.	The friends who (that) have come.
La vache qui beugle.	The cow which (that) lows.
Les livres qui ont été perdus.	The books which have been lost.
Les oiseaux qui volent.	The birds which (that) fly.
Ce qui m'amuse.	What (that which) amuses me.
Rien qui soit beau.	Nothing that is beautiful.
La tante chez qui je demeure.	The aunt with whom I live.
Les amis à (de) qui je parlais.	The friends to (of) whom I spoke.
Rochers à qui je me plains.	Rocks to whom I complain.

a. **Qui**, without antecedent, sometimes = **celui qui** (**ceux qui**, etc.), or, when repeated, = **les uns . . . les autres**:

Aimez qui vous aime.	Love him (the one) who loves you.
Jouera qui voudra.	Let those who will play.
Pour qui connaît.	For any one who knows.
Qui d'un côté, qui de l'autre.	Some on one side, some on the other.

b. Similarly, in a few phrases, mostly exclamatory or parenthetical, **qui** = **ce qui**:

Voilà qui est étrange !	That is strange !
Qui pis est (<i>or ce qui est pis</i>).	What is worse.

2. **Que** = *whom, which, that*, serves regularly as direct object:

Les ami(e)s que j'aime.	The friends whom (that) I love.
Le livre (cheval) que j'ai.	The book (horse) which I have.
Les plumes que j'ai achetées.	The pens which I have bought.
Ce que vous dites.	That which you say.
Rien de ce que vous dites.	Nothing that you say.

a. **Que** stands also as predicate nominative (cf. § 295, 1), and as logical subject of an impersonal verb:

Malheureuse que je suis !	Unhappy woman that I am !
Qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue ?	What has become of her ?
À l'heure qu'il est.	At the present hour.
L'homme qu'il vous faut.	The man that you need.
Prenez ce qu'il vous faut.	Take what you need.

NOTES. — 1. The **que** of emphatic inversions (§ 385, *a*, *n.*) is best explained as predicative **que**: **C'est une belle ville *que* Paris** = **C'est une belle ville *que* Paris (est)** or **C'est une belle ville (ce) *que* (c'est) Paris**; **Erreur *que* tout cela** = **(C'est) erreur *que* tout cela (est)** or **(C'est) erreur (ce) *que* (c'est) tout cela**.

2. The form **que** is often a relative adverb, not to be confounded in function with the relative proper: **Dans le temps *que* cela arrivait**; **C'est à vous *que* je parle** (or **C'est vous à qui je parle**).

398. Dont. The form **dont** = *whose, of whom, of which*, etc., has the value of **de** + a relative; it refers to antecedents, of either gender or number, denoting persons or things (**dont** is never interrogative):

L'homme dont le fils est mort.	The man whose son is dead.
Les gens dont je parle.	The people of whom I speak.
Les plumes dont je me sers.	The pens which I make use of.
La gloire dont il est avide.	The fame for which he is eager.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.

a. A noun after **dont** = *whose* does not omit the article as in English, and must follow its governing verb (cf. § 400, 2):

Le monsieur dont j'ai trouvé la bourse.	The gentleman whose purse I found.
--	------------------------------------

b. As compared with **d'où** (cf. § 399, *a*), **dont** has figurative force in expressions referring to extraction, lineage, etc.:

La maison dont il sort.	The family from which he comes.
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

c. **Dont** was originally an adverb (L. *de* + *unde*), and is often best construed as such:

Le pays dont il est venu.	The country whence he came.
----------------------------------	-----------------------------

399. Où. The adverb **où** = *where* is also used as a relative with the value of **dans** (*à, sur, vers*, etc.) + a relative; if preceded by a preposition, **où** = *which, where*:

La maison où je loge.	The house in which I lodge.
Le siècle où nous vivons.	The age in which we live.
Le but où il tend.	The end towards which he tends.
Les villes par où je suis venu.	The cities through which I came.
L'endroit d'où il vient.	The place from which he comes.

a. D'où = from which, whence, is usually literal in force:

La maison d'où il sort.

The house out of which he comes.

400. Lequel. The form **lequel** = *who, whom, which, that*, refers to persons or things, and varies in form to agree with its antecedent; it is chiefly used where **qui, que**, etc., may not be employed:

1. **Lequel**, being inflected, stands where **qui, que**, from want of inflection, would be ambiguous, or it serves, owing to its stress, to denote the more remote of two possible antecedents:

La sœur de mon ami laquelle vient d'arriver. The sister of my friend who has just come.

Le fils du rédacteur lequel je viens de voir. The son of the editor whom (*i.e.*, the son) I have just seen.

a. Lequel may not be used of persons after **en**, and it must be used of persons after **parmi, entre**:

Un homme en qui je crois. A man in whom I believe.

Les amis parmi (entre) lesquels. The friends among whom.

2. When depending on a noun governed by a preposition, *whose* must be turned by **duquel**, etc., which must follow the noun (cf. § 398, *a*):

La dame au fils de laquelle (or de qui) je donne des leçons. The lady to whose son I give lessons.

NOTE. — **Lequel** is used exceptionally as an adjective: **J'espère partir demain, auquel cas**, etc.; **Je viens de toucher mille francs, de laquelle somme je payerai mes dettes.**

401. Quoi. 1. The form **quoi** = *what, which*, is used without definite antecedent, and stands after a preposition, rarely otherwise:

Voilà de quoi je parlais.

That is what I was speaking of.

Sur quoi il est parti.

Whereupon he went away.

C'est à quoi je pensais.

That is what I was thinking of.

Il m'a payé, ce à quoi je ne m'attendais guère.

He paid me, which I hardly expected.

a. **De quoi** + an infinitive, expressed or implied, denotes the means or cause of the action of the infinitive:

Il a de quoi vivre.	He has enough to live on.
Il a de quoi (<i>sc.</i> vivre, etc.).	He has means (is well off).
Donnez-moi de quoi écrire.	Give me something to write with.
Il n'y a pas de quoi.	There is no occasion (don't mention it, etc.).

b. **Quoi** stands without a preposition in a few expressions:

Quoi faisant.	(By) doing which.
Un je ne sais quoi de cruel.	A certain indefinable cruelty.

2. *What = that which* is expressed by **ce** + a relative (cf. § 385):

Je vois ce qui se passe.	I see what is going on.
Je sais ce que je sais.	I know what I know.
Ce dont je me plains.	That of which I complain.
Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
Il est sourd, ce qui est bien dommage.	He is deaf, which is a great pity.

402. Remarks. 1. The relative pronoun, often omitted in English, is never omitted in French:

Le tableau que j'ai vu là.	The picture (which) I saw there.
Le livre dont je parle est à moi.	The book (which) I speak of is mine.

2. Relative and antecedent should stand as near together as possible:

Il y a de ce livre une édition qui se vend, etc.	There is an edition of that book which is sold, etc.
Not: Une édition de ce livre qui, etc.	

3. A preposition never ends the relative sentence, as sometimes in English:

Ce à quoi je me fiais.	What I was trusting to.
------------------------	-------------------------

4. For English forms in **-ing** = relative clause, see § 287, 3.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

403.

Indefinites

1. Adjectival forms:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. certain , a certain; pl. certain | 4. divers , m. pl. } various, etc. |
| 2. chaque , each, every | diverses, f. pl. } |
| 3. différent(e)s , pl., various, etc. | 5. maint , many a |
| | 6. quelque , some; pl., some, (few) |

Obs.: Except for **divers**, the feminine and plural are formed like those of ordinary adjectives.

2. Pronominal forms:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. autrui , others, other people, etc. | 5. quelqu'un , m. s. } somebody, |
| 2. chacun , m. } each (one), every | quelqu'une , f. s. } etc. |
| chacune , f. } (one) | quelques-uns , m. pl. } some (peo- |
| 3. on (<i>l'on</i>), one, people, etc. | quelques-unes , f. pl. } ple), etc. |
| 4. personne . . . ne , nobody, etc. | 6. quelque chose , something |
| | 7. rien . . . ne , nothing |

Obs.: 1. **On** often becomes *l'on* after a vowel sound to avoid hiatus, especially after **et**, **ou**, **où**, **que**, **lorsque**, etc., **qui**, **quoi**, **pourquoi**, **si**, **ainsi**, **aussi**, but not usually when a closely following word has initial **l**; **qu'on** almost always becomes **que l'on** when a closely following word has initial [k] sound.

2. For **quelqu'un(e)**, see § 19.

3. Note the hyphen of the plural of **quelqu'un**.

3. Forms serving either as adjective or as pronoun:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. aucun . . . ne , no; nobody, etc. | 6. plusieurs , m. or f. pl., several |
| 2. autre , other | 7. tel , m. } such, etc. |
| 3. même , same, etc. | telle , f. } |
| 4. nul . . . ne , m. } no; nobody, | 8. tout , m. tous, m. pl. } all, every, |
| nulle . . . ne , f. } etc. | toute , f. toutes, f. pl. } etc. |
| 5. pas un . . . ne , no; nobody, etc. | 9. un , a; one, etc. |

Obs.: The feminine and plural are like those of adjectives of like ending, except the feminine of **nul** and the plural of **tout**.

404. Use of Adjectival Forms. 1. **Certain** = (*a*) *cer-tain*, pl. *certain*, *some*, precedes its noun; the use of **un** in the singular, and of partitive **de** in the plural, is optional:

(Un) **certain roi de France.**

A certain French king.

(De) **certaines gens.**

Certain (some) people.

a. **Certains** is exceptionally used as a pronoun:

Certains prétendent, etc.

Some assert, etc.

NOTE. — **Certain**, placed after the noun, is an ordinary adjective = *sure, trustworthy, positive*, etc. (cf. § 352, 4).

2. **Chaque** = *each, every*, is distributive and singular only:

Chaque homme (femme).

Each or every man (woman).

a. Distinguish **chaque** = *every, each*, which individualizes, from **tout** = *every, all*, which generalizes:

Chaque homme a des passions.

Every (each) man has passions.

Tout homme a une passion dominante.

Every man has (all men have) a ruling passion.

Chaque année; tous les ans.

Each year; every year.

3. **Différents, Divers** = *various, several, sundry, divers*, are indefinite adjectives only when plural and standing before nouns:

Différentes choses m'ont retenu.

Various things detained me.

On a essayé divers moyens.

Several methods have been tried.

NOTE. — With the sense of *different, diverse*, they are used as ordinary adjectives.

4. **Maint**, whether singular or plural, = *many a*; it is often repeated:

Maint(s) danger(s).

Many a danger.

Mainte(s) fois.

Many a time.

En mainte et mainte occasion.

On many an occasion.

5. **Quelque** = *some*; when used of quantity or number, **quelque** = *some, but not much or many, a little, a few*, and is of more limited force than the partitive *some* (§ 322):

Quelques amis sont pires que des ennemis.

Some friends are worse than enemies.

J'ai eu quelque difficulté.

I have had some (a little) difficulty.

Il a quelques amis ici.

He has some (a few) friends here.

Voici les quelques francs qui nous restent.

Here are the few francs we have left.

a. **Quelque** has adverbial force, and is invariable, before numerals (not nouns of number) = *about, some*:

À quelque dix milles d'ici.	About (some) ten miles from here.
But: Quelques centaines de pas.	A few hundred paces.
À cent et quelques pas.	At a little more than 100 paces.

b. Similarly before adjectives or adverbs = *however* (cf. § 271, 4, b):

Quelque riches qu'ils soient.	However rich they may be.
Quelque bien que vous parliez.	However well you may speak.

NOTE. — *However* + adjective is also expressed by **tout...que** (usually with the indicative), **si... (que)** (with the subjunctive), **pour...que** (with the subjunctive), e.g., *Toutes bonnes qu'elles sont, However good they are; Si bonnes qu'elles soient, However good they are; Pour bonnes qu'elles soient, However good they are.*

c. For the use of **quelque(s) ... que** = *whatever*, see § 407.

405. Use of Pronominal Forms. 1. **Autrui** = *others, other people, our neighbor* (in general), is rarely used except after a preposition:

Il ne faut pas convoiter les biens d'autrui.	We must not covet the goods of others.
La rigueur envers autrui.	Severity towards others.

NOTE. — *Others* is more usually **les autres, d'autres** (§406, 2, b); regularly so, as subject or direct object.

2. **Chacun** = *each, each one, every one* is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **chaque** (§ 404, 2):

Chacun d'eux a refusé.	Each (every) one of them refused.
Donnez à chacun(e) sa part.	Give to each his (her) share.
Des poires à deux sous chacune (chaque).	Pears at two cents each.

a. The possessive form to **chacun** is regularly **son**:

Mettez-les chacun(e) à sa place.	Put them each in his (her, its) place.
----------------------------------	--

b. **Chacun**, in apposition to **nous, vous**, takes, as its possessive, **notre, votre**:

Parlez chacun(e) à votre tour.	Speak each in your turn.
--------------------------------	--------------------------

c. **Chacun**, in apposition to **ils, elles**, takes the possessive **leur** before the direct object; otherwise **son or leur**:

Elles récitent chacune leur verset They each recite their verse (each
(chacune à son *or* leur tour). in turn).

d. The reflexive to **chacun** = *every one* is **se (soi)**:

Chacun pour soi. Every one for himself.

3. On = *one, some one, we, you, they, people, etc.*, is used as subject of a verb in the third singular, without specifying any person in particular:

On dit que la reine est malade. They (people) say the queen is ill.
A-t-on allumé mon feu? Has any one lighted my fire?
On ne peut pas mêler l'huile avec One (we, you) cannot mix oil with
l'eau. water.

a. The **on** construction often corresponds to an English passive, especially when the agent is not specified:

On a attrapé le larron. The thief has been caught.
On croit que la guerre est finie. It is thought the war is over.
On vous demande. You are wanted.

b. **On** may not be replaced by a personal pronoun subject:

On est triste quand on est sans A man is sad when he is without
argent. money.

c. Since **on** is subject only, the corresponding direct and indirect objects, when required, are borrowed from **vous**:

Lorsqu'on presse trop un poisson When you squeeze a fish too much
il vous échappe. it escapes you.

d. The reflexive to **on** is **se (soi)**, and the corresponding possessive is **son**, whatever be the English equivalent:

On se demande. People ask themselves (wonder).
On perdrait son temps. You would lose your time.

e. Although **on** is invariable, a feminine or plural noun or adjective may relate to it, when the sense is clearly feminine or plural:

On est plus jolie à présent. She is prettier now.
On est si proches voisins. We are such near neighbors.

f. **On** may replace a personal pronoun, often with depreciatory force:

On y pensera. I (we) shall see about it.
On se croit bien fin. You (he, etc.) think yourself very
cunning.

4. **Personne** and **rien** along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *nobody, no one, not anybody, etc.*, and *nothing, not anything*, respectively:

Personne n'est venu.

Nobody (no one) has come.

Je n'ai parlé à personne.

I have spoken to nobody (not spoken to anybody).

Ne dites rien.

Say nothing (do not say anything).

Personne ici ! — Personne.

No one here ! — No one.

Qu'a-t-il dit ? — Rien.

What did he say ? — Nothing.

a. If the context contains or implies negation, **personne**, **rien**, assume affirmative force (= *quelqu'un, quelque chose*):

Il n'a rien dit à personne.

He said nothing to any one.

Personne n'a jamais rien dit.

Nobody has ever said anything.

Je vous défends de rien dire.

I forbid you to say anything.

Je crains de parler à personne.

I fear to speak to anybody.

Impossible de rien faire !

Impossible to do anything !

Il cessa de rien donner.

He ceased giving anything.

Où trouverai-je rien de pareil ?

Where shall I find anything like it ?

Sans parler à personne.

Without speaking to anybody.

b. The above rule does not apply to pleonastic **ne**, nor to double negations:

**Je crains qu'il ne fasse mal à
quelqu'un.**

I fear he will hurt somebody.

**Ne revenez pas sans voir quel-
qu'un.**

Do not come back without seeing
somebody.

NOTE. — The pronoun **personne** is masculine (sometimes sylleptically feminine like **on**, 3, *e*, above); the noun **personne** is always feminine (cf. § 303, 1, *c*).

5. **Quelqu'un(e)** = *somebody, some one, any one, etc.*, with its plural **quelques-un(e)s** = *some, some people, any, a few, etc.*, is the pronoun corresponding to the adjective **quelque** (§ 404, 5):

Il y a quelqu'un là.

There is somebody there.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un là ?

Is there any one there ?

A-t-il quelques-unes des fleurs ?

Has he some (any) of the flowers ?

Il en reste quelques-unes.

A few of them remain.

Quelqu'une des dames viendra.

Some one of the ladies will come.

Quelques-uns le croient.

Some (people) believe it.

6. **Quelque chose** = *something, anything*, and is masculine, though formed from the feminine noun **chose**:

Quelque chose est promis.

Something is promised.

A-t-il dit quelque chose?

Did he say anything?

A-t-il quelque chose de bon?

Has he anything good?

406. Adjectival or Pronominal Forms. 1. **Aucun, nul, pas un**, along with **ne** + a verb, or when alone, a verb being understood, = *no, not any, not one*, as adjective, and *none, nobody, no one, not one*, as pronoun:

Aucun

Nul

Pas un

} écrivain ne le dit.

No writer says so.

Aucun ne le croit.

No one believes it.

Je n'en ai vu aucun(e).

I saw none of them.

Pas un de ses amis ne reste.

Not one of his friends remains.

A-t-il de l'espoir? — Aucun.

Has he any hope? — None.

a. **Aucun**, but not **nul** or **pas un**, becomes affirmative (= *quelque* or *quelqu'un*) when the context is negative (cf. § 405, 4, *a*):

Sans aucune cause.

Without any cause.

Rien pour aucun de nous.

Nothing for any of us.

Gardez-vous de faire aucune faute. Take care not to make any mistake.

b. The plural adjective **aucun(e)s** may be used, especially before nouns with no singular, or before such as are preferably plural; **(d')aucuns** = **quelques-uns** is sometimes found:

Il ne me rend aucuns soins.

He gives me no care.

(D')aucuns le croiraient.

Some would believe it.

2. **Autre** = *other*, is usually preceded in the singular by **un** or **l'**:

Une autre fois; d'autres livres.

Another time; other books.

En avez-vous un(e) autre?

Have you another?

Un autre dit le contraire.

Another says the contrary.

Les autres m'aideront.

The others will help me.

Entre autres choses.

Among other things.

a. Distinguish **un autre** = *another* (*a different*) from **encore un** = *another* (*an additional*):

Donnez-moi une autre plume.

Give me another pen.

Donnez-moi encore une plume.

b. Others, other people, = les autres or d'autres, sometimes autrui (cf. § 405, 1):

Il se méfie toujours des autres.	He always suspects others.
D'autres pensent autrement.	Others think otherwise.
Bien d'autres.	Many others.

Obs.: The *d'* of *d'autres* is a partitive sign (cf. § 325, 1, *b*).

c. Autres is often added familiarly to *nous, vous*:

Nous autres peintres.	We painters.
Vous autres Français parlez très vite.	You Frenchmen speak very fast.

d. Observe the following expressions with autre:

Autre part; de part et d'autre.	Elsewhere; reciprocally.
C'est un (tout) autre homme.	He is a very different man.
Parler de choses et d'autres.	To speak of this and that.
L'autre jour.	The other day.
Autre est promettre, autre est donner.	It is one thing to promise, and another to give.
Tout autre que lui.	Any one but him.
De temps à autre.	From time to time.
À d'autres (familiar).	Tell that to the marines (<i>familiar</i>).

e. For l'un . . . l'autre, les uns . . . les autres, see § 406, 7, (2).

3. *Même* varies in meaning and form according to its position and function:

(1) Preceding its noun or as a pronoun, *même* = *same*, and nearly always has the article:

La (les) même(s) chose(s).	The same thing(s).
Les miens sont les mêmes.	Mine are the same.
Donnez-moi des mêmes.	Give me some of the same.
Une même affaire.	One and the same business.
Des plantes de la même espèce.	Plants of the same species.

(2) Following the noun or pronoun qualified, *même* = *self, very, even*, and agrees, but has no article:

Dieu est la bonté même.	God is goodness itself.
Moi-même; elles-mêmes.	I myself; they themselves.
Cela même; celui-là même.	That itself; that man himself.
Les enfants mêmes.	The very (even the) children.

a. **Même** is also used as an adverb (invariable):

Il nous a même insultés.	He even insulted us.
Quand même il le dirait.	Even if he should say so.

b. **Même** forms a number of highly idiomatic locutions:

Cela revient au même.	That amounts to the same thing.
Êtes-vous à même de faire cela?	Are you in a position to do that?
Il en est de même de . . .	It is the same with . . .

4. **Plusieurs** = *several*; it is sometimes used in the sense of **beaucoup** = *many*:

Plusieurs hommes (femmes).	Several men (women).
Apporte plusieurs des plumes.	Bring several of the pens.
J'en ai plusieurs.	I have several of them.
Plusieurs l'ont cru.	Many (people) believed it.

5. **Tel**, as adjective, = *such, like*; **un tel** = *such a*; **tel**, as pronoun, = *many a one, he, some, etc.*:

Ne crois pas une telle histoire.	Do not believe such a story.
Tels sont mes malheurs.	Such are my misfortunes.
Il n'y a pas de tels animaux.	There are no such animals.
À telles et telles conditions.	On such and such conditions.
Telle qu'une tigresse.	Like (as) a tigress.
Tel qui rit vendredi dimanche pleurera (proverb).	Some (many a one, he) who laugh(s) on Friday will weep on Sunday.

a. Examples of more idiomatic uses are:

Tel père, tel fils.	Like father, like son.
Tel rit, tel pleure.	One laughs, another weeps.
Monsieur un tel (Mme une telle).	Mr. So-and-so (Mrs. So-and-so).
De la musique telle quelle.	Music such as it is.
Votre argent tel quel.	Your money intact.

NOTE. — *Such*, as adverb, is **si** or **tellement** (not **tel**): *Une si belle étoile*; *Un homme tellement cruel*.

6. **Tout** (singular) = *all, every, any, whole, etc.*; **tous** (plural) = *all*:

Toute ma vie; tous les hommes.	All my (my whole) life; all (the) men.
Tout homme; toute créature.	Every (any) man; every creature.
Tous (toutes) sont venu(e)s.	All have come.

C'est tout; de tous côtés.

That is all; on all sides.

Tout m'effraie.

Everything frightens me.

a. Tout is often adverb = *quite, wholly, very, very much*, etc., and agrees like an adjective, when immediately preceding a feminine adjective with initial consonant or *h* aspirate, but is elsewhere invariable:

Elles étaient toutes pâles et tout agitées. They were quite pale and very much excited.

But: Ils étaient *tout* pâles et *tout* agités, etc.

NOTE. — So also, in the compound *tout-puissant*, e.g., *Elle est toute-puissante*.

b. Observe the following idiomatic expressions:

Tout le monde (cf. *le monde entier*). Everybody (cf. *the whole world*).

Tous les mois; pas du tout. Every month; not at all.

Tous les deux jours. Every other (alternate) day.

Tous (les*) deux or les deux. Both.

Tout à l'heure. Presently (or a little while ago)

Tout beau; tout doux. Gently (slowly); softly.

(Pour) tout de bon. Seriously.

* Tous deux (trois, etc.) — without *les* — usually denotes 'simultaneousness' (= *both together*, etc.); *les* is obligatory above ten, and usual from five to ten.

c. For the distinction between *tout* and *chaque* see § 404, 2, a; for *tout . . . que* = *however*, see § 404, 5, b, note.

7. Un is used either alone or as correlative to *autre*:

(1) Un, as adjective, = *a, an* (cf. § 320), *one, a certain*;
un, as pronoun, = *one*:

La maison est d'un côté.

The house is on one side.

Un monsieur A. l'a dit.

A (certain) Mr. A. said so.

Une des dames l'a dit.

One of the ladies said so.

Voici un crayon. — J'en ai un.

Here is a pencil. — I have one.

Les uns sont de cet avis, les autres n'en sont pas.

Some are of this opinion, (the) others are not.

a. Un as a pronoun is often preceded by *l'*, especially with a *de* clause:
L'un des consuls est arrivé. One of the consuls has come.

(2) L'un l'autre, so also the feminine and plural, are combined into various correlative phrases, as follows:

l'un l'autre = *each other, one another*; pl. ditto

l'un et l'autre = *both*; pl., *both, all*

l'un ou l'autre = *either*; pl., ditto

ni l'un ni l'autre (. . . ne) = *neither*; pl., *neither, none*

Elles se flattent l'une l'autre.

They flatter each other.

Ils parlent les uns des autres.

They speak of one another

Ils se parlent l'un à l'autre.

They speak to one another.

L'une et l'autre occasion.

Both occasions.

Les uns et les autres parlent.

All of them speak.

Dites ceci aux uns et aux autres.

Say this to all.

Je prends l'un(e) ou l'autre.

I take either.

Parle à l'une ou à l'autre.

Speak to either.

*Ni les un(e)s ni les autres ne
sont pour vous.*

*Neither (none of them) is for
you.*

Ni pour l'un(e) ni pour l'autre.

For neither.

407.

Indefinite Relatives

1. Adjectival:

2. Pronominal:

Quelconque, any (whatever, at all)

Quiconque, whoever

Quel que (+ subjunctive of être), whatever

Qui que . . . (+ subjunctive of être), whoever

Quelque . . . que (+ subjunctive), whatever

Quoi que . . . (+ subjunctive), whatever

a. Quelconque takes -s for the plural, and always follows its noun; *quiconque* is invariable; the other forms are made up from *quel, quelque, qui, quoi, + que*:

Un (deux) point(s) quelconque(s).

Any (two) point(s) whatever.

Une raison quelconque.

Any reason whatever (at all).

Quiconque parle sera puni(e).

Whoever speaks will be punished.

*Quels que soient (puissent être)
vos desseins.*

Whatever be (may be) your designs.

Quelle que fût la loi.

Whatever the law was.

Quelques efforts qu'il fasse.

Whatever efforts he makes.

Qui que tu sois (puisses être).

Whoever you be (may be).

Quoi que vous fassiez.

Whatever you do.

Obs.: For the use of the subjunctive, see § 270, 4:

b. Qui que and *quoi que* are also used with *ce* before *soit*:

Qui que ce soit qui le dise.

Whosoever says it.

Quoi que ce soit qu'il dise.

Whatsoever he says.

THE ADVERB

408. Simple Adverbs. The following list contains the commoner simple adverbs:

<i>ailleurs, elsewhere</i>	<i>encore, still</i>	<i>pas, not</i>
<i>ainsi, thus, so</i>	<i>enfin, at last</i>	<i>peu, little</i>
<i>alors, then</i>	<i>ensemble, together</i>	<i>pis, worse</i>
<i>après, afterwards</i>	<i>ensuite, then</i>	<i>plus, more</i>
<i>assez, enough, rather</i>	<i>environ, about</i>	<i>plutôt, rather</i>
<i>aujourd'hui, to-day</i>	<i>exprès, on purpose</i>	<i>point, not</i>
<i>auparavant, before</i>	<i>fort, very</i>	<i>pourquoi(?) why(?)</i>
<i>aussi, also, too, as</i>	<i>hier, yesterday</i>	<i>pourtant, however</i>
<i>aussitôt, directly</i>	<i>ici, here</i>	<i>près, near (by)</i>
<i>autant, as much</i>	<i>jadis, formerly</i>	<i>presque, almost</i>
<i>autrefois, formerly</i>	<i>jamais, ever, never</i>	<i>proche, near (by)</i>
<i>beaucoup, much</i>	<i>là, there</i>	<i>puis, then, there-</i>
<i>bien, well, very, much</i>	<i>loin, far (off), a long</i>	<i>upon</i>
<i>bientôt, soon</i>	<i>way</i>	<i>quand(?) when(?)</i>
<i>cependant, however</i>	<i>longtemps, (a) long</i>	<i>que ! how(!)</i>
<i>certes, indeed</i>	<i>(while)</i>	<i>quelquefois, sometimes</i>
<i>combien(?) how much(?)</i>	<i>lors, then</i>	<i>si, so ; yes</i>
<i>comme, as, like</i>	<i>maintenant, now</i>	<i>souvent, often</i>
<i>comment(?) how(?)</i>	<i>mal, badly</i>	<i>surtout, especially</i>
<i>davantage, more</i>	<i>même, even</i>	<i>tant, so much</i>
<i>dedans, inside</i>	<i>mieux, better</i>	<i>tantôt, soon, recently</i>
<i>dehors, outside</i>	<i>moins, less</i>	<i>tard, late</i>
<i>déjà, already</i>	<i>ne . . ., not</i>	<i>tôt, soon</i>
<i>demain, to-morrow</i>	<i>néanmoins, neverthe-</i>	<i>toujours, always, still</i>
<i>derrière, behind</i>	<i>less</i>	<i>tout, quite, entirely</i>
<i>désormais, henceforth</i>	<i>non, no</i>	<i>toutefois, however</i>
<i>dessous, under</i>	<i>où(?) where(?)</i>	<i>très, very</i>
<i>dessus, above</i>	<i>oui, yes</i>	<i>trop, too (much)</i>
<i>devant, before</i>	<i>parfois, sometimes</i>	<i>vite, quickly</i>
<i>dorénavant, henceforth</i>	<i>partout, everywhere</i>	<i>volontiers, willingly</i>

409. Adverbs from Adjectives. Most adjectives become adverbs by the addition of **-ment** to the feminine singular:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
pur,	purement, <i>purely</i>	doux,	doucement, <i>sweetly</i>
strict,	strictement, <i>strictly</i>	fou,	follement, <i>madly</i>
actif,	activement, <i>actively</i>	facile,	facilement, <i>easily</i>
sec,	sèchement, <i>dryly</i>	autre,	autrement, <i>otherwise</i>

a. Adjectives ending in a vowel, other than **-e**, drop the **-e** of the feminine on adding **-ment**:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
poli(e),	poliment, <i>politely</i>	décidé(e),	décidément, <i>decidedly</i>
absolu(e),	absolument, <i>absolutely</i>	etc.	etc.

NOTE.—The omitted **e** is denoted by a circumflex accent in **assidûment**, **continûment**, **crûment**, (in)**dûment**, **gaîment** (better, **gaiement**), **nûment**.

b. The following adjectives in **-e** change **e** to **é** on adding **-ment**:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
aveugle,	aveuglément	immense,	immensément
commode,	commodément	incommode,	incommodément
conforme,	conformément	opiniâtre,	opiniâtrément
énorme,	énormément	uniforme,	uniformément

c. The following adjectives change the added **-e** of the feminine to **é**:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
commun(e),	communément	obscur(e),	obscurément
confus(e),	confusément	opportun(e),	opportunément
diffus(e),	diffusément	précis(e),	précisément
expresse(e),	expressément	profond(e),	profondément
importun(e),	importunément	profus(e),	profusément

d. Adjectives in **-ant**, **-ent** (except **lent**, **présent**, **véhément**) assimilate **-nt** to **m** and add **-ment** to the masculine form:

ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
constant,	constamment, <i>constantly</i>	prudent,	prudemment, <i>prudently</i>
élégant,	élegamment, <i>elegantly</i>	etc.	etc.

But: **Lentement**, *slowly*; **présentement**, *presently*; **véhémentement**, *vehemently*.

e. **Gentil** gives **gentiment**, *nicely*; the adverb to **bref** is **brièvement** (from a parallel form), *briefly*; the adverb to **impuni** is **impunément** (probably from L. *impune*, cf. *b*, above), *with impunity*.

f. The adverbs corresponding to **bon**, *good*, and **mauvais**, *bad*, are **bien**, *well*, and **mal**, *badly*. From **bon** comes regularly **bonnement** = *simply*.

410. Adjectives as Adverbs. Adjectival forms are not uncommonly used as adverbs, and, as such, are regularly invariable:

1. A number of adjectives serve as adverbs in certain fixed expressions:

Cette sottise lui coûte *cher*.

That folly is costing him dear.

Elles parlent *bas* (*haut*).

They speak low (loud).

Such expressions are:

coûter bon, <i>cost dear</i>	arrêter court, <i>stop short</i>	coûter gros, <i>cost dear</i>
sentir bon, <i>smell good</i>	filer doux, 'sing small'	viser haut, <i>aim high</i>
tenir bon, <i>stand firm</i>	aller droit, <i>go straight</i>	chanter juste, <i>sing in tune</i>
acheter cher, <i>buy dear</i>	viser droit, <i>aim straight</i>	frapper juste, <i>strike straight</i>
coûter cher, <i>cost dear</i>	chanter faux, <i>sing out of</i>	sentir mauvais, <i>smell bad</i>
vendre cher, <i>sell dear</i>	<i>tune</i>	écrire serré, <i>write small</i>
voir clair, <i>see clearly</i>	frapper ferme, <i>strike hard</i>	(à) vrai dire, <i>speak truly</i>
prouver clair, <i>prove</i>	parler ferme, <i>speak firmly</i>	etc. etc.
<i>clearly</i>		

2. An adjective sometimes modifies another adjective:

Des dames *haut* placées.

Ladies of high rank.

Un *véritable* grand homme.

A truly great man.

3. Besides the above, a few adjectival forms serve also as adverbs:

Je l'ai dit *exprès*.

I said it purposely.

Soudain nous vîmes l'ennemi.

Suddenly we saw the enemy.

Such forms are:

bref, <i>in short</i>	même, <i>even</i>	tout beau, <i>not so fast</i>
exprès, <i>purposely</i>	proche, <i>near (by)</i>	tout doux, <i>gently</i>
fort, <i>very, hard, loud</i> , etc.	soudain, <i>suddenly</i>	† vite, <i>quickly</i>
juste, <i>exactly</i> , etc.	* tout, <i>quite, very</i> , etc.	

* For the inflection of **tout** as adverb, see § 406, 6, *a*.

† The adverb **vitement** = *quickly*, is familiar.

a. For certain adverbs used adjectivally, see § 358, *b*.

411. Adverbial Locutions. Phrases with adverbial function are numerous:

Je viendrai tout à l'heure.

I shall come presently.

Venez de bonne heure.

Come early.

Further examples are:

à bon marché, <i>cheap</i>	d'ailleurs, <i>besides</i>	nulle part, <i>nowhere</i>
à côté, <i>near, near by</i>	dès lors, <i>since</i>	plus tôt, <i>sooner</i>
à droite, <i>to the right</i>	d'ordinaire, <i>usually</i>	quelque part, <i>somewhere</i>
à jamais, <i>forever</i>	d'où, <i>whence</i>	tant mieux, <i>so much the better</i>
à la fois, <i>at once</i>	d'où? <i>whence?</i>	tôt ou tard, <i>sooner or later</i>
à l'avenir, <i>in future</i>	du moins, <i>at least</i>	tour à tour, <i>in turn</i>
à peine, <i>hardly</i>	en avant, <i>forward</i>	tout à coup, <i>suddenly</i>
à peu près, <i>nearly</i>	en bas, <i>below, down stairs</i>	tout de suite, <i>at once</i>
au juste, <i>exactly</i>	en effet, <i>in fact</i>	tout d'un coup, <i>all at once</i>
au moins, <i>at least</i>	en haut, <i>above, up stairs</i>	
autre part, <i>elsewhere</i>	là-bas, <i>yonder</i>	
d'abord, <i>at first</i>	là-dessus, <i>thereupon</i>	

412. Comparison of Adverbs. 1. Adverbs are regularly compared like adjectives (cf. § 345) by the use of **plus**, **moins**, **aussi**; **que** = *than*, *as*:

Plus, moins facilement que Jean.	More, less easily than John.
Aussi facilement que Jean.	As easily as John.

a. Further examples, illustrating § 345, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*, as applied to adverbs:

Il ne marche pas aussi (si) vite.	He does not walk as (so) fast.
Vite comme un éclair.	As quick as lightning.
Il marche plus vite que je ne pensais.	He walks faster than I thought.
De plus en plus vite.	Faster and faster.
Plus je le connais (et) moins je l'estime.	The more I know him the less I esteem him.

b. *More than, less than*, as adverbs of quantity = **plus de**, **moins de**, respectively; they must be carefully distinguished from **plus (moins) que** = *more (less) than* in an elliptical sentence:

J'ai plus (moins) de dix francs.	I have more (less) than ten francs.
En moins d'une demi-heure.	In less than half an hour.
But: Un éléphant mange plus que six chevaux (ne mangent).	An elephant eats more than six horses (eat).

2. The following are irregularly compared:

bien, well	mieux, better	beaucoup, much	plus, more
mal, badly, ill	pis, worse	peu, little	moins, less
	plus mal, worse		

a. Beaucoup = *much* (*many*) or *very much* (*many*), and is never modified by another adverb, except *pas*.

3. The superlative is formed by placing *le*, which is invariable, before the comparative of inequality:

Le plus souvent (*moins souvent*). (The) most frequently (least f.).
Elle parle le plus (*mieux, moins*). She speaks (the) most (best, least).

413. Position. 1. An adverb regularly stands immediately after its verb, rarely between the subject and the verb:

<i>Charles porte souvent ma canne.</i>	Charles often carries my cane.
<i>On devrait lire lentement.</i>	One should read slowly.
<i>Se levant tard, se couchant tôt.</i>	Rising late, going to bed early.
<i>Ils l'ont bien reçu.</i>	They have received him well.

Obs.: Hence the adverb regularly comes between the auxiliary and the participle in compound tenses, except when it is in a stressed position:

Je l'avais rencontré déjà = *I had met him already*.

a. The adverbs *aujourd'hui*, *hier*, *demain*, *autrefois*, *tôt*, *tard*, *ici*, *là*, *ailleurs*, *partout*, never come between the auxiliary and the participle:

<i>Il est parti hier.</i>	He went away yesterday.
<i>Je l'ai cherché partout.</i>	I looked for it everywhere.

b. Long adverbs in *-ment* not uncommonly stand after the past participle:

<i>Il a parlé éloquemment.</i>	He has spoken eloquently.
--------------------------------	---------------------------

c. Most adverbs of quantity, such as *peu*, *beaucoup*, *trop*, etc., and a few short adverbs like *bien*, *mal*, *mieux*, etc., as also adverbs of negation, regularly precede the infinitive:

<i>Tu ne devrais pas trop lire.</i>	You should not read too much.
<i>Il ne saurait mieux faire.</i>	He cannot do better.
<i>Il parle de ne pas y aller.</i>	He speaks of not going (there).

d. Interrogative adverbs head the phrase, as in English; other adverbs are not uncommonly placed first for emphasis (cf. § 237, 3):

<i>Quand allez-vous revenir?</i>	When are you going to come back?
<i>Aujourd'hui je vais me reposer.</i>	To-day I am going to rest.
<i>Malheureusement tout est perdu.</i>	Unfortunately all is lost.

2. Adverbs usually precede the nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and phrases modified by them:

Assez de livres, et assez chers. Books enough, and dear enough.
 Bien mal à propos. Very unseasonably.

a. For *combien ! comme ! que ! tant !* and *plus . . . plus, moins . . . moins*, with adjectives or adverbs, cf. § 350, *a*.

3. Adverbial phrases follow the same rules as adverbs, except that only the shorter ones may usually come between the auxiliary and the verb:

Nous étions à peine partis. Hardly had we gone.

NEGATION

414. Negation without Verb. **Non** = *no, not*, apart from a verb; it is often emphasized by **pas, point**:

L'avez-vous dit? — Non.	Did you say it? — No.
Vous viendrez? — Non pas (point).	You will come? — Certainly not.
Non, non, je n'irai pas.	No, no, I shall not go.
Non content de dire cela.	Not satisfied with saying that.
Riche ou non, il ne l'aura pas.	Rich or not, he shall not have it.
A-t-il, oui ou non, du talent?	Has he talent, yes or no?
Des idées non moins vastes.	Ideas not less vast.
Une maison non meublée.	A house not furnished.
Non seulement . . . mais encore.	Not only . . . but also.

a. For the use of *que non*, see § 420, 1, *a*.

415. Negation with Verb. 1. Along with a verb, a negation consists regularly of two parts, **ne** (*n'*, see § 19) together with some other word or words; the principal correlative expressions of this kind are:

ne . . . pas, <i>not</i>	ne . . . aucunement	} <i>not at all</i>	ne . . . rien, <i>nothing</i>
ne . . . point, <i>not</i>	ne . . . nullement		ne . . . ni (. . . ni) <i>neither</i>
ne . . . guère, <i>hardly</i>	ne . . . aucun	} <i>no, none</i>	... <i>nor</i>
ne . . . jamais, <i>never</i>	ne . . . nul		
ne . . . plus, <i>no more</i>	ne . . . pas un		
ne . . . que, <i>only</i>	ne . . . personne, <i>nobody</i>		

NOTES. — 1. **Point** is usually more emphatic than **pas**, and is less common in ordinary language.

2. Negation is often denoted by **pas**, without **ne**, in familiar language: **Ai-je pas** dit cela? (= *N'ai-je pas dit cela?*)

2. Other forms of less frequent use are:

a. Ne . . . quelconque = no . . . whatsoever (at all), ne . . . qui que ce soit = nobody whatsoever (at all), ne . . . quoi que ce soit = nothing whatsoever (at all).

Je n'ai dit quoi que ce soit. I said nothing at all.

b. Ne . . . brin (lit. blade), or mie (lit. crumb), or goutte (lit. drop), or mot (lit. word) = ne . . . rien, in certain phrases:

Il n'y en a brin. There is none of it.

Je n'y entends goutte. I understand nothing of it.

c. Ne . . . âme vivante, or homme qui vive, or âme qui vive, etc. = ne . . . personne:

Il n'y avait âme vivante dans la maison. There was not a living soul in the house.

d. Ne . . . de + an expression of time, e.g., la (ma) vie, de huit jours, etc.

Je ne l'oublierai de ma vie. I shall not forget it while I live.

416. Position. *Ne* always precedes the verb, and its conjunctive objects, if any; **pas**, **point** and other adverbs immediately follow the verb, and its conjunctive pronouns, if any; indefinites have their usual place.

Je ne le leur ai pas (point) dit. I did not tell them it.

Je n'en ai guère. I have hardly any of it.

Ne les a-t-il jamais vus? Did he never see them?

Je n'y resterai plus. I shall stay there no longer.

Il ne le veut nullement. He does not wish it at all.

Il ne prend aucun soin. He takes no care.

Personne ne peut le dire. Nobody can say (it).

Il n'a pas mal du tout. He has no pain at all.

Je ne l'ai dit à qui que ce soit. I have told it to nobody at all.

a. Pas, *point*, usually, and *plus*, often, precede the simple infinitive, and its conjunctive objects; they may precede or follow *avoir*, *être*, either when alone or in a compound infinitive:

Il parle de ne pas vous voir. He speaks of not seeing you.

Être ou ne pas être. To be or not to be.

J'étais fâché de ne vous avoir pas vu (or de ne pas vous avoir vu, or de ne pas avoir vu). I was sorry not to have seen you.

b. Rien as object is treated as an adverb; it may also precede an infinitive like an adverb:

Il promet de ne rien dire. He promises to say nothing.

c. The *que* of *ne . . . que* immediately precedes the word it modifies:

Je n'en ai vu *que* trois. I saw only three of them.
Il n'y a pas *qu'*eux qui en aient. It is not they only who have some.

d. To denote *neither . . . nor*, *ni* is placed before each coördinate word, and, when verbs are expressed, *ne* stands before the auxiliary or other leading verb. When principal verbs are coördinated, *ne* stands before each of them, while *ni* also must stand with the last, but may not stand with the first, and is optional with others:

Qui le sait? — Ni lui ni moi.	Who knows it? — Neither he nor I.
Il n'a ni parents ni amis.	He has neither relatives nor friends.
Je ne l'ai ni vu ni entendu.	I neither saw nor heard it.
Il ne sait ni lire ni écrire.	He can neither read nor write.
Je ne veux ni qu'il lise ni qu'il écrive.	I neither wish him to read nor to write.
Il ne le blâme ni ne le loue.	He neither blames nor praises it.
Je ne pouvais, (ni) ne devais, ni ne voulais céder.	I neither could, nor should, nor would yield.

417. Ellipsis of the Verb. If the verb be omitted, but understood, *ne* is also omitted, and the correlative itself denotes negation:

Est-il venu? — Pas encore (= Il n'est pas encore venu).	Has he come? — Not yet (= He has not yet come).
Qui est là? — Personne.	Who is there? — Nobody.
Plus de larmes; plus de soucis.	No more tears; no more cares.

a. *Pas*, when so used, may not stand alone:

Non (pas); pas encore; pas lui; pas du tout; pas ce soir, etc.	No; not yet; not he (him); not at all; not this evening, etc.
---	--

418. *Ne* alone as Negative. Negation with verbs is expressed by *ne* alone in certain cases, as follows:

1. After *que* = *pourquoi*? and usually after *que*, *qui* in rhetorical question or exclamation:

Que ne le disiez-vous plus tôt?	Why did you not say so sooner?
Que ne ferais-je pour lui?	What would I not do for him?
Qui ne voit cela?	Who does not see that?

2. After condition expressed by inversion:

N'eût été la pluie.	Had it not been for the rain.
---------------------	-------------------------------

a. Sometimes also in conditions regularly expressed with **si**:

Si je ne me trompe (m'abuse).	If I am not mistaken.
Qui, si ce n'est vous?	Who, if not you?

3. In dependent sentences after negation, either fully expressed or implied:

Je n'ai pas (j'ai peu) d'amis qui ne soient les vôtres.	I have no (I have few) friends who are not yours.
Il n'y a rien qu'il ne sache.	There is nothing he does not know.
Non que je ne le craigne.	Not that I do not fear him.
Impossible qu'il ne vienne !	Impossible that he will not come !
Ai-je un ami qui ne soit fidèle? — Non.	Have I one friend who is not faithful? — No.

a. More obscure cases of implied negation are **prendre garde que** = *take care that not*, etc., and such expressions as **il tient** = *it depends on*, used interrogatively:

Prenez garde qu'il ne tombe.	Take care he does not fall.
Gardez qu'il ne sorte.	Take care he does not go out.
À quoi tient-il qu'on ne fasse cela?	What is the cause of that not being done?

4. Sometimes with **savoir**, **bouger**, and with **pouvoir**, **oser**, **cesser** + an infinitive, expressed or implied:

Je ne sais (pas).	I do not know.
Ne bougez (pas) de là.	Do not stir from there.
Je ne puis (pas) répondre.	I cannot answer.
Il n'oserait (pas) le dire.	He would not dare to say so.
Elle ne cesse (pas) de pleurer.	She does not cease weeping.

a. Always **ne** alone in **je ne saurais** and **je ne sais quoi**:

Je ne saurais vous le dire.	I cannot tell you.
Ne sauriez-vous m'aider?	Can you not help me?
Un je ne sais quoi de terrible.	Something indefinably terrible.

5. In a few set expressions, such as:

N'importe; n'avoir garde.

It does not matter; not to care.

Ne vous en déplaie.

By your leave.

N'avoir que faire de.

To have no use (whatever) for.

Il n'est pire eau que l'eau qui dort (proverb).

Still waters run deep.

419. Pleonastic *ne*. In a *que* clause *ne* is often pleonastic, as compared with English; thus, *ne* stands:

1. After *empêcher* = *prevent*, *éviter* = *avoid*, *à moins que* = *unless*, or *que* so used:

Empêchez qu'il *ne* sorte.

Prevent him from going out.

J'évite qu'on *ne* me voie.

I avoid being seen.

À moins que je *ne* sois retenu.

Unless I be detained.

a. This *ne* is often omitted after *empêcher* and *éviter*, after *empêcher* mostly when negative or interrogative.

b. *Ne* may also stand after *avant que*:

Avant qu'il (*ne*) parte.

Before he goes away.

2. After expressions of fearing, such as *craindre*, *redouter*, etc., *avoir peur*, etc., when not negative, or when negation is not implied by interrogation expecting negative answer, or by condition:

Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne.

I fear he will come.

Craignez-vous qu'il *ne* vienne?

Do you fear he will come?

But: Je ne crains pas qu'il vienne. Sans craindre qu'il vienne. Craignez-vous qu'il vienne? — Non. Si je craignais qu'il vînt.

a. What it is, or is not, feared will not happen, has the full negation *ne . . . pas* in the *que* clause:

Je crains qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*.

I fear he will not come.

Je ne crains pas qu'il *ne* vienne *pas*. I do not fear he will not come.

b. Negation and interrogation or condition neutralize each other, and *ne* stands:

Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il *ne* vienne? Do you not fear he will come?

Si je ne craignais (*pas*) qu'il *ne* vînt. If I did not fear he would come.

Quand même je ne craindrais pas qu'il *ne* vînt. Even though I did not fear he would come.

3. With a finite verb in the second member of a compari-

son of inequality, when the first member is not negative, or does not imply negation as above:

Il est plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était.	He is richer than he was.
Est-il plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était?	Is he richer than he was?
Il gagne moins qu'il <i>n'</i> espérait.	He earns less than he hoped.
But: Il n'est pas plus riche qu'il l'était; est-il plus riche qu'il l'était? — Non.	

a. A negative interrogation implies affirmation, and *ne* stands:

N'est-il pas plus riche qu'il <i>ne</i> l'était?	Is he not richer than he was?
--	-------------------------------

NOTE. — Autre, autrement, plutôt, plus tôt, similarly take *ne*: Il est tout autre que je *ne* pensais.

4. Usually after expressions of doubt, denial, such as *douter*, *nier*, *disconvenir*, etc., often *désespérer*, when negative, or when negation is implied as above:

Je ne doute pas qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne.	I do not doubt that he will come.
Doutez-vous qu'il <i>ne</i> vienne? — Non.	Do you doubt whether he will come? — No.

But: Je doute qu'il vienne; doutez-vous qu'il vienne? (— question for information).

5. After *il s'en faut* negatively, interrogatively, or with *peu*, *guère*, etc.:

Il ne s'en fallut pas (de) beaucoup qu'il <i>ne</i> fût tué.	He came very near being killed.
Il s'en faut de peu que ce vase <i>ne</i> soit plein.	This vessel is nearly full.
Peu s'en est fallu que je <i>ne</i> vinsse.	I came very near coming.

6. With compound tenses after *il y a*, *voilà*, *depuis*:

Il y a (voilà) trois jours que je <i>ne</i> l'ai vu.	It is three days since I saw him (I have not seen him for, etc.).
Il avait grandi depuis que je <i>ne</i> l'avais vu.	He had grown since I saw him.
Depuis que je <i>ne</i> vous ai vu.	Since I saw you.

a. In a simple tense (§§ 257, 2; 258, 4) negatively, *ne . . . pas*, etc., must be used:

Voilà un an qu'il <i>ne</i> buvait plus.	He had drunk none for a year.
--	-------------------------------

USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS

420. Distinctions. The following are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. **Oui, Si.** *Yes* in affirmation or assent is **oui**; *yes* is usually **si** in contradiction, in correction, in dissent:

L'avez-vous dit? — Oui, monsieur.	Did you say it? — Yes, sir.
Venez. — Oui, oui, j'y vais.	Come. — Yes, yes, I shall go.
Il ne s'en va pas. — Si, monsieur, il s'en va.	He is not going. — Yes, (sir), he is (going).
Il ne s'en va pas? — Mais si.	He is not going? — Yes, certainly.
Je n'irai pas. — Si, si, venez.	I shall not go. — Yes, yes, come.

NOTE. — The use of **si**, as also of the intensive **si fait**, etc., though very common, is classed as familiar by the *Académie*; it is often avoided by **pardon**, etc., or other expressions: **Il ne va pas. — Pardon, monsieur (il va).**

a. **Oui, si**, and **non** are often preceded by **que**, really with ellipsis of a whole **que** clause, and are then variously translated by *yes, so, no, not*, etc., or by a clause:

Je dis que oui (non).	I say yes (no).
Je crois que oui (non).	I think so (not).
Vous ne l'avez pas? — Oh ! que si.	You haven't it? — Oh yes !
Le fera-t-il? — Je crois que oui.	Will he do it? — I think he will.
Je dis que non.	I say it is not so.
Peut-être que non.	Perhaps not.

2. **Autant, Tant.** *As much (many) = autant; so much (many) = tant*:

Je gagne autant que vous.	I earn as much as you.
Il but tant qu'il en mourut.	He drank so much that he died from it.
J'ai tant d'amis; j'en ai autant que vous.	I have so many friends; I have as many as you.

3. **Plus, Davantage.** **Plus** is used in all senses of *more, most* (see below); **davantage** (strengthened sometimes by **bien** = *much*, **encore** = *still*) = *more*, is regularly used only absolutely, and usually stands at the end of its clause:

N'en parle pas davantage. }	Say no more about it.
N'en parle plus.	

Ne restez pas davantage. } Ne restez plus.	Do not remain any longer.
Cela me plaît encore davantage (plus).	That pleases me still more.
Je suis riche; il l'est bien davan- tage (plus).	I am rich; he is much more so.
But only: J'en ai plus que lui; il est plus habile; plus de dix francs; c'est ce qui le flatte le plus, etc.	

4. **Ne ... que, Seulement.** *Seulement* must be used, (1) when no verb is present, (2) when *only* refers to the subject, (3) or to the verb, (4) or to a *que* clause, and (5) it may be used to strengthen a *ne ... que*; otherwise *only* = *ne ... que* or *seulement*:

Seulement les braves.	Only the brave.
Seulement mon frère le sait.	Only my brother knows it.
Écoutez seulement.	Only listen.
Il dit seulement qu'il viendrait.	He only said he should come.
Il n'a (seulement) qu'à venir.	He has only to come.
But: Nous ne serons que trois (<i>or</i> trois seulement); je ne veux que voir son père (<i>or</i> je veux seulement voir son père), etc.	

a. Only, referring to the subject, may be turned also by *il n'y a que*, *il n'y a pas que*:

Il n'y a que les morts qui ne re- viennent pas.	The dead only do not come back.
Il n'y a pas qu'elles qui le sachent.	It is not only they who know.

THE NUMERAL

421.

Cardinal Numerals

1 un, une [œ̃, yn]	8 huit [qit]
2 deux [dø]	9 neuf [noef]
3 trois [trwa]	10 dix [dis]
4 quatre [katr]	11 onze [ɔ̃z]
5 cinq [sɛ̃k]	12 douze [duz]
6 six [sis]	13 treize [trɛz]
7 sept [set]	14 quatorze [katorz]

15 quinze	[kē:z]	70 soixante-dix	[swasā:tdis]
16 seize	[sɛ:z]	71 soixante et onze	[swasā:teʒ:z]
17 dix-sept	[disɛt]	80 quatre-vingts	[katrəvɛ]
18 dix-huit	[dizɥit]	81 quatre-vingt-un	[katrəvɛœ]
19 dix-neuf	[diznœf]	90 quatre-vingt-dix	[katrəvɛdis]
20 vingt	[vɛ]	91 quatre-vingt-onze	[katrəvɛʒ:z]
21 vingt et un	[vɛteœ]	100 cent	[sā]
22 vingt-deux	[vɛtdø]	101 cent un	[sāœ]
30 trente	[trā:t]	200 deux cents	[døsa]
31 trente et un	[trā:teœ]	201 deux cent un	[døsaœ]
40 quarante	[karā:t]	1000 mille	[mil]
50 cinquante	[sɛkā:t]	1001 mille un	[milœ]
60 soixante	[swasā:t]	2000 deux mille	[dømil]

NOUNS OF NUMBER: 1,000,000 = **un million** [œ miljɔ̃]; 2,000,000 = **deux millions** [dø miljɔ̃]; 1,000,000,000 = **un milliard** [œ milja:r].

Observe: 1. The hyphen unites together compound numerals under 100, except where **et** occurs. 2. **Et** stands regularly in 21, 31, 41, 51, 61, 71, omitted in 81, and elsewhere.

NOTES ON PRONUNCIATION: 1. The final consonant of 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 17, 18, 19, is silent before initial consonant or **h** aspirate of a word multiplied by them, not elsewhere: **Cinq livres** [sɛ li:vʁ], but **le cinq mai** [lə sɛ:k mɛ]. 2. No elision or liaison occurs before **huit**, **onze**: **Le huit** [lə ɥit]; **les huit livres** [lə ɥi li:vʁ]; **le onze** [lə ɔ̃:z]; **les onze francs** [lə ɔ̃:z frɑ̃]. 3. The **t** is sounded in **vingt**, in 21, 23, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29, is sounded with the **d** in 22, is silent from 81 to 99, is silent in **cent un**, **deux cent un**, etc.

a. **Un** (f. **une**) is the only cardinal which varies for gender:

Une (deux, trois, etc.) **plume(s)**. One (two, three, etc.) **pen(s)**.
Vingt et une vaches. Twenty-one cows.

b. Cardinals are invariable for number, except that **-s** is added to **quatre-vingt** and the multiples of **cent**, but only when immediately preceding a noun, or an adjective + a noun, or when they themselves serve as nouns of number:

Quatre-vingts francs.	Eighty francs.
Trois cents (bonnes) plumes.	Three hundred (good) pens.
Deux cents millions de francs.	Two hundred million francs.
Trois cents hommes.	Three hundred men.
Les cinq cents.	The five hundreds.

But: **Trois cent un francs**; les **cent hommes engagés**; **quatre-vingt-une plumes**; **deux cent mille**; **trois mille milles** (miles), etc.

N.B. — They are not nouns of number in dates (*c.* below) or when used as ordinals (§ 427): **L'an quatre cent**; **page deux cent**; **page quatre-vingt**.

c. The form **mil** (not **mille**) is used in dates of the Christian era from 1001 to 1999:

En mil huit cent quatre-vingt-onze. In eighteen hundred and ninety-one.

(En) **l'an mil six.** (In) the year 1006.

But: **L'an mille** (sometimes **mil**); **l'an deux mille trois cent**; **l'an mille cent du monde**, etc.

d. From 1100 onward dates are often expressed by hundreds, as so frequently in English:

Onze cent(s); **treize cent(s).** Eleven hundred; thirteen hundred.

Quinze cent cinquante. Fifteen hundred and fifty.

e. A (or one) hundred = **cent**; a (or one) thousand = **mille**:

Mille soldats. A (one) thousand soldiers.

NOTE. — **Septante** = 70, **octante** = 80, **nonante** = 90, **six-vingt(s)** = 120, and **quinze-vingt(s)** = 300, are now obsolete in the literary language, although sometimes heard in certain French-speaking regions.

422. Ordinal Numerals. The ordinal numerals denote order or place in a series relatively to the first; they are formed, from 'third' up, by adding **-ième** to the last consonant of the corresponding cardinal, **cinq** adding **u**, and **f** of **neuf** becoming **v** before **-ième**:

1st	premier	[prəmje]	7th	septième	[sɛtjɛm]
2nd	second	[səgɔ̃]	8th	huitième	[ɥitjɛm]
	deuxième	[døzjɛm]	9th	neuvième	[nœvjɛm]
3rd	troisième	[trwazjɛm]	10th	dixième	[dizjɛm]
4th	quatrième	[katriɛm]	11th	onzième	[ɔ̃zjɛm]
5th	cinquième	[sɛ̃kjɛm]	21st	vingt et unième	[vɛ̃teynjɛm]
6th	sixième	[sizjɛm]	22nd	vingt-deuxième	[vɛ̃tdøzjɛm]

NOTES. — 1. Besides the ordinary forms, **tiers** (*f.* **tierce**) = *third*, **quart(e)** = *fourth*, are used in a few expressions and in fractions: **Le tiers état**, *The commoners*; **En maison tierce**, *In the house of a third party*; **Une fièvre quarte**, *A quartan ague*.

2. **Quint** = *fifth* is used only in **Charles-Quint**, *Charles V (the Emperor)*; **Sixte-Quint**, *Sixtus V (the Pope)*.

a. Ordinals are like ordinary adjectives in inflection and agreement, and regularly precede the noun:

La (les) première(s) maison(s). The first house(s).

Nous sommes arrivés les premiers. We arrived first.

b. **Deuxième** instead of **second** is more usually employed in a series of more than two, and always in compounds:

Le second volume. The second volume (of two).

Le deuxième volume. The second volume (of three, etc.).

La cent deuxième fois. The hundred and second time.

423. Collectives. The following nouns are used with collective force:

un(e) couple, <i>a couple (two)</i>	une quarantaine, <i>about forty,</i> <i>quarantine</i>
une paire, <i>a pair</i>	une cinquantaine, <i>about fifty</i>
une huitaine, <i>about eight</i>	une soixantaine, <i>about sixty</i>
une dixaine, <i>about ten</i>	une centaine, <i>about a hundred</i>
une douzaine, <i>a dozen</i>	un cent, <i>a hundred</i>
une quinzaine, <i>about fifteen, a</i> <i>fortnight</i>	un millier, <i>(about) a thousand</i>
une vingtaine, <i>about twenty, a score</i>	un million, <i>a million</i>
une trentaine, <i>about thirty</i>	un milliard, <i>a billion, etc.</i>

a. They take -s in the plural, and have the construction of ordinary nouns:

Il y a une centaine d'élèves.

There are about 100 pupils.

Il y en a deux cents.

There are two hundred of them.

Des milliers de gens.

Thousands of people.

Deux millions de francs.

Two million(s of) francs.

424. Fractions. The numerator is regularly denoted by a cardinal and the denominator by an ordinal; *half* = **moitié**, f., as a noun, and **demi** as an adjective or a noun:

$\frac{1}{2}$ { un demi	$\frac{1}{4}$ un quart	$\frac{3}{16}$ trois seizièmes
{ une moitié	$\frac{3}{4}$ trois quarts	$\frac{7}{100}$ sept centièmes
$\frac{2}{2}$ deux demis	$\frac{1}{5}$ un cinquième	$\frac{10}{100}$ dix cent unièmes
$\frac{1}{3}$ un tiers	$\frac{1}{7}$ un septième	$\frac{11}{1000}$ onze millièmes
$\frac{2}{3}$ deux tiers	$\frac{1}{11}$ un onzième	etc.

a. **Demi**, before its noun, is invariable and joined by a hyphen, but agrees elsewhere; as a noun, **demi** is hardly used, except in arithmetical calculations; see also § 429:

Une demi-heure; une heure et demie.	Half an hour; an hour and a half <i>or</i> half past one.
Trois quarts d'heure.	Three quarters of an hour.
Quatre demis = deux.	Four halves = two.
La moitié de la somme.	Half the sum.

b. The definite article is required before fractions followed by **de** + a noun when the noun is determined by the definite article, a possessive, or a demonstrative, and similarly for pronominal substitutes for such constructions:

La moitié du temps.	Half the time.
Les trois quarts de ces (ses) biens.	Three-fourths of those (his) goods.
J'en prends les cinq sixièmes.	I take five-sixths of them.

425. Multiplicatives. 1. The following are used as adjectives, or absolutely as nouns:

double, <i>double</i>	septuple, <i>sevenfold</i>
triple, <i>triple</i>	octuple, <i>eightfold</i>
quadruple, <i>quadruple</i>	nonuple, <i>ninefold</i>
quintuple, <i>fivefold</i>	décuple, <i>tenfold</i>
sextuple, <i>sixfold</i>	centuple, <i>hundredfold</i>

As nouns, **le double**, *the double*, etc.:

La triple alliance.	The triple alliance.
Payer le double.	To pay twice as much.

a. Double is sometimes adverb:

Il voit double.	He sees double.
-----------------	-----------------

2. *Once, twice, three times, etc.* = **une fois, deux fois, trois fois, etc.**:

Dix fois dix font cent.	Ten times ten make a hundred.
Deux fois autant (plus).	Twice as much.

426. Numeral Adverbs. They are formed from the ordinals by **-ment**, according to rule (cf. § 409):

premièrement, <i>first, firstly</i>	troisièmement, <i>thirdly</i>
secondement	etc. etc.
deuxièmement	

} *secondly*

a. Substitutes for them, of very frequent use, are: **d'abord** = *at first*, **puis** = *then, after that*, **ensuite** = *then, next*, **en premier lieu** = *in the first place*, **en second lieu**, etc. = *in the second place*, etc.; or the Latin adverb forms **primo, secundo, tertio**, etc., abbreviated to 1°, 2°, 3°, are used.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF NUMERALS

427. Cardinals and Ordinals. 1. **Premier** = *first* is the only ordinal used to denote the day of the month or the numerical title of a ruler; otherwise, cardinals are employed:

Le premier (deux, dix) mai.	The first (second, tenth) of May.
Le onze de ce mois.	The eleventh of this month.
Napoléon (Grégoire) premier.	Napoleon (Gregory) the First.
Henri (Catherine) deux.	Henry (Catherine) the Second

2. Observe the following date idioms:

Quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	} What day of the month is this?
Quel jour du mois sommes-nous aujourd'hui?	
Quel quantième du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?	
C'est aujourd'hui le quinze.	To-day is the fifteenth.
Ce sera demain le seize.	To-morrow will be the sixteenth.
Le six janvier.	On the sixth of January.
Ils sont arrivés lundi.	They came <i>on</i> Monday.
D'aujourd'hui en huit.	A week from to-day (<i>future</i>).
Il y a quinze jours.	A fortnight ago.

3. Other numerical titles, book, chapter, scene, page, etc., are expressed as in English, ordinals being used before nouns, and either cardinals or ordinals after nouns:

Tome troisième (trois).	Volume third (three).
La dixième scène du second acte.	The tenth scene of the second act.

a. The first of two ordinals joined by **et** or **ou** is not uncommonly replaced by a cardinal:

La quatre ou cinquième page.	The fourth or fifth page.
------------------------------	---------------------------

b. Cardinals must precede ordinals in French:

Les deux premières scènes.	The first two scenes.
----------------------------	-----------------------

428. Dimension. The various methods of indicating dimension may be seen from the following:

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| (1) Une table longue de deux mètres. | } | A table two meters long. |
| (2) Une table de 2 m. de longueur. | | |
| (3) Une table de 2 m. de long. | | |
| (4) Une table d'une longueur de 2 m. | | |
| (5) La table est longue de 2 m. | } | The table is two meters long. |
| (6) La table a 2 m. de longueur. | | |
| (7) La table a 2 m. de long. | | |
| (8) La table a une longueur de 2 m. | | |

Obs.: 1. Dimension after an adjective is denoted by **de**, cf. (1), (5).

2. Substitutes for the adjectival construction of (1) are seen in (2), (3), (4).

3. The verb *to be* is **être**, as in (5), or **avoir**, as in (6), (7), (8).

4. **Haut**, **large**, **long** (but not **épais**, **profond**) may be used as nouns instead of **hauteur**, **largeur**, **longueur**, cf. (3), (7).

a. *By*, of relative dimension = **sur**; *by*, after a comparative = **de**:

Cette table a deux mètres de longueur sur un de largeur. This table is two meters long by one wide.

Plus grand de cinq centimètres. Taller by 5 cm. (= 2 inches).

429. Time of Day. The method of indicating the time of day may be seen from the following:

Quelle heure est-il?	What time (o'clock) is it?
Il est une (deux) heure(s).	It is one (two) o'clock.
Il est trois heures et demie.	It is half-past three.
Trois heures (et) un quart.	A quarter past three.
Quatre heures moins un (le) quart.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures trois quarts.	A quarter to four.
Trois heures dix (minutes).	Ten minutes past three.
Six heures moins cinq (minutes).	Five minutes to six.
Cinq heures cinquante-cinq.	Five fifty-five.
Il est midi et demi.	It is half-past twelve (noon).
Il est minuit (et) un quart.	It is a quarter past twelve (night).
À huit heures du soir.	At eight o'clock in the evening.
À quelle heure?	At what o'clock?
À trois heures précises.	At three o'clock precisely.
Vers (les) trois heures.	Towards (at about) three o'clock.

Obs.: 1. *It is* (*was*, etc.) = **il est** (**était**, etc.).

2. **Heure(s)** is never omitted.

3. **Et** is essential only at the half hour.

4. Demi(e) agrees with *heure* (f.) or with *midi* (m.), *minuit* (m.).
5. *Minutes* is often omitted.
6. *A quarter to, minutes to* is *moins* before the following hour.
7. Twelve o'clock is never *douze heures*.

430. Age. Idiomatic expressions denoting age are:

Quel âge avez-vous?	How old are you?
J'ai vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Je suis âgé de vingt ans.	I am twenty (years old).
Une fillette de six ans.	A little girl of six.
Plus âgé de deux ans.	Older by two years.

- Obs.:* 1. The construction with *avoir* is the more common.
 2. *An(s)* may be omitted in specifying age.
 3. *By* = *de*, after a comparison.

THE PREPOSITION

431. Simple Prepositions. The following list contains the commoner simple prepositions:

à, <i>to, at, in, on, etc.</i>	durant, <i>during</i>	parmi, <i>among</i>
après, <i>after, next to</i>	en, <i>in, to</i>	pendant, <i>during</i>
avant, <i>before</i>	entre, <i>between, among</i>	pour, <i>for</i>
avec, <i>with</i>	envers, <i>towards</i>	sans, <i>without</i>
chez, <i>with, at —'s</i>	hormis, <i>except</i>	sauf, <i>save, except</i>
contre, <i>against</i>	jusque, <i>till, until</i>	selon, <i>according to</i>
dans, <i>in(to)</i>	malgré, <i>in spite of</i>	sous, <i>under</i>
de, <i>of, from, with, etc.</i>	moyennant, <i>by means of</i>	suivant, <i>according to</i>
depuis, <i>since, from</i>	nonobstant, <i>notwith-</i>	sur, <i>on, upon</i>
derrière, <i>behind</i>	standing	vers, <i>towards</i>
dès, <i>from, as early as</i>	outre, <i>besides</i>	voici, <i>here is (are)</i>
devant, <i>before</i>	par, <i>by, through</i>	voilà, <i>there is (are)</i>

432. Prepositional Locutions. Phrases with prepositional function, mostly ending in *de* or *à*, are numerous:

À côté de l'église.	Beside the church.
Jusqu'à la semaine prochaine.	Until next week.
À travers la forêt.	Through the forest.

Such locutions are:

à cause de, <i>on account of</i>	au-dessus de, <i>above</i>	faute de, <i>for want of</i>
à côté de, <i>by the side of</i>	au lieu de, <i>instead of</i>	jusqu'à, <i>as far as, until</i>
à force de, <i>by dint of</i>	autour de, <i>around</i>	par delà, <i>beyond</i>
à l'égard de, <i>with regard to</i>	au moyen de, <i>by means of</i>	par-dessous, <i>under</i>
à l'exception de, <i>except</i>	auprès de, <i>near by</i>	par-dessus, <i>over</i>
à l'insu de, <i>unknown to</i>	au travers de, <i>across, through</i>	près de, <i>near</i>
à travers, <i>across, through</i>	d'après, <i>according to</i>	quant à, <i>as for</i>
au delà de, <i>beyond</i>	en deçà de, <i>on this side (of)</i>	vis-à-vis de, <i>opposite</i>
au-dessous de, <i>under</i>	en dépit de, <i>in spite of</i>	etc., etc.

433. Position. Prepositions regularly precede the governed word, as in English:

Je parle de Jean (de lui). I speak of John (of him).

a. Conjunctive personal pronouns governed by *voici, voilà*, precede:

Me voici; les voilà. Here I am; there they are.

En voici quelques-uns. Here are some of them.

b. *Durant* is sometimes placed after its noun:

Durant sa vie (or sa vie durant). During his life.

434. Repetition. The prepositions *à, de, en*, are regularly repeated before each governed substantive; the repetition of other prepositions is regular in contrasts, but is elsewhere optional, as in English:

Il aime à lire et à écrire. He likes to read and write.

Le père de Jean et de Marie. The father of John and Mary.

En France ou en Italie. In France or Italy.

Sur terre et sur mer. By land and sea.

Par la persuasion ou par la force. By persuasion or force.

But: Pour lui et (pour) son frère, etc.

IDIOMATIC DISTINCTIONS

435. Prepositions vary greatly as to idiomatic force in different languages. In the following sections are given some of the various French equivalents of the commoner English prepositions.

436.

About

1. In the sense of
- around*
- =
- autour de**
- :

Regardez autour de vous.

Look about you.

Autour de la place.

About the square.

2. In the sense of
- concerning, of*
- =
- de, à**
- :

De quoi parlez-vous?

What are you talking about?

À quoi pensez-vous?

What are you thinking about?

3. In the sense of
- with, about (the person)*
- =
- sur**
- :

Avez-vous de l'argent sur vous?

Have you any money about you?

4. Denoting approximation =
- environ, près de, à peu près, vers**
- :

Environ (près de, à peu près)
deux mille francs; vers (sur
les) dix heures; vers 1830.

About two thousand francs; about
ten o'clock; about 1830.

437.

After

1. Denoting time, rank, order, position =
- après**
- :

Après dîner; le premier après le
roi; on met l'adjectif après le
nom; courez après lui.

After dinner; the first after the
king; the adjective is placed
after the noun; run after him.

2. In the sense of
- at the end of*
- =
- au bout de**
- :

Au bout de trois siècles.

After three centuries.

3. Unclassified:

De jour en jour; dessiné d'après
Raphaël; le lendemain de son
retour; il tient de sa mère.

Day after day; drawn after Raph-
ael; the day after his return; he
takes after his mother.

438.

Among

1. In the sense of
- in the midst of, surrounded by*
- =
- parmi**
- , some-
-
- times
- entre**
- :

Une brebis parmi les loups.

A sheep among wolves.

Il fut trouvé entre les morts.

He was found among the dead.

- 2.
- Among*
- (distributively or reciprocally) =
- entre**
- :

Il le partagea entre ses amis.

He divided it among his friends.

Ils parlaient entre eux.

They spoke among themselves.

3. Unclassified:

C'était ainsi chez les Grecs.

It was so among the Greeks.

439.

At

1. Denoting place, time, = **à**, sometimes **en**:

À l'école; à Douvres; à table; à cinq heures; à l'âge de; en tête de; en (au) même temps; à la fin (enfin).	At school; at Dover; at table; at five o'clock; at the age of; at the head of; at the same time; at last.
---	---

2. In the sense of *at the house*, etc., *of*, *at* —'s = **chez**:

J'ai été chez vous; il est chez Monsieur Ribot.	I was at your house; he is at Mr. Ribot's.
---	--

3. Unclassified:

À mes dépens; à tout prix; d'abord; sous la main; entrer par la fenêtre; en haut (bas); au moins; sur mer; en guerre.	At my expense; at any price; at first; at hand; come (go) in at the window; at the top (bottom); at least; at sea; at war.
---	--

440.

Before

1. Denoting place, in the sense of *in front of*, *in the presence of* = **devant**:

Mettez cela devant le feu; le jardin est devant la maison; il prêcha devant le roi.	Put that before the fire; the garden is before the house; he preached before the king.
---	--

2. Denoting time, order = **avant**:

Avant midi; je l'ai vu avant vous; mettez l'article avant le nom.	Before noon; I saw him before you; put the article before the noun.
---	---

3. Unclassified:

Sous mes yeux; la veille de la bataille; comparaître par-devant le juge.	Before my eyes; the day before the battle; to appear before the judge.
--	--

441.

By

1. Denoting the agent after the passive = **par**, **de** (cf. § 240):

Elle fut saisie par le voleur; ils sont aimés de tous.	She was seized by the robber; they are loved by all.
--	--

2. Denoting means, way, etc. = **par** (usually):

Par la poste; par chemin de fer; par ce moyen; par un ami.	By post; by railway; by this means; by a friend.
--	--

3. Denoting measure = **de**; relative dimension = **sur**:

Plus grand de la tête; plus âgé de dix ans (de beaucoup); plus lourd d'une livre; moindre de la moitié; dix mètres sur six.

Taller by a head; older by ten years (by far); heavier by a pound; less by half; ten meters by six.

4. Unclassified:

De jour (nuit); à l'année; goutte à goutte; il est midi à ma montre; connaître de vue; de vive voix; un tailleur de son état; vendre au poids; fait à la main.

By day (night); by the year; drop by drop; it is noon by my watch; to know by sight; by word of mouth; a tailor by trade; to sell by weight; made by hand.

442.

For

1. In the sense of *for the sake of, instead of, (in exchange) for* = **pour**:

Mourir pour la patrie; je le fais pour vous; donnez-moi ceci pour cela.

To die for one's country; I do it for you; give me this for that.

2. Denoting destination:

Je pars pour la France; une lettre pour vous.

I leave for France; a letter for you.

3. Denoting a period of time (future) = **pour**:

Je resterai (pour) huit jours; j'en ai pour dix ans.

I shall stay (for) a week; I have enough of it for ten years.

NOTE. — *For*, of time not future, is variously rendered: **J'étais huit jours absent** or **J'étais absent pendant huit jours**, *I was absent for a week*; **Il y a (voici, voilà) deux heures que je lis** or **Je lis depuis deux heures**, *I have been reading for two hours*.

4. Unclassified:

Mot à mot or mot pour mot; un remède contre (pour); trembler de crainte; par exemple; quant à moi; vendre dix francs or laisser (donner) pour dix francs; remercier (punir) de; changer pour (contre); c'est à vous de dire; malgré tout cela.

Word for word; a remedy for; to tremble for fear; for example; as for me; to sell for ten francs or to give for ten francs; to thank (punish) for; to change for; it is for you to say; for all that.

443.

From

1. Usually = **de**:

Il vient de Paris; de trois à quatre heures; je l'ai appris de lui.	He comes from Paris; from three to four o'clock; I heard it from him.
---	---

2. In the sense of *because of, out of, through* = **par**:

Cela arriva par négligence; par expérience (amitié).	That happened from carelessness; from experience (friendship).
--	--

3. In the sense of *dating from* = **dès, depuis, à partir de**:

Dès (depuis, à partir de) ce jour; à partir de 1820.	From that day; from 1820 (on).
--	--------------------------------

4. Unclassified:

D'aujourd'hui en huit; dessiné d'après nature; boire dans un verre; ôtez cela à l'enfant.	A week from to-day; drawn from nature; to drink from a glass; take that from the child.
---	---

444.

In, into

1. Denoting place or time specifically, *i.e.*, in the sense of *within, inside of, in(to) the interior of* = **dans** (cf. § 333, 3):

Dans ce paquet (champ); dans la maison; dans l'Afrique australe; dans toute la ville; dans la même année.	In this parcel (field); in(to) the house; in South Africa; in the whole city; in the same year.
---	---

NOTE. — The governed noun usually has the definite article.

2. Denoting place or time generally = **en, à** (cf. § 333, 2, 3):

En Afrique; à la maison; aux champs; au Canada; à Londres; à la campagne (ville); en hiver; au printemps; en paix.	In Africa; in the house (at home); in the fields; in Canada; in London; in the country (city); in winter; in spring; in peace.
--	--

NOTE. — The governed word after **en** has but rarely the definite article (mostly in fixed expressions before initial vowel sound): **En l'air**; **En l'honneur de**, etc.

3. In the sense of *at the end of (time)* = **dans**; *in the course of (time)* = **en**:

Le train part dans une heure; on peut aller à L. en une heure.	The train leaves in an hour; one can go to L. in an hour.
--	---

4. Denoting place, after a superlative = **de**:

La plus grande ville du monde. The largest city in the world.

5. Unclassified:

Par la pluie; le matin; de nos jours; par le passé; à l'avenir; d'avance; entre les mains de; à mon avis; sous le règne de; sous presse; de cette manière; un sur dix. In the rain; in the morning; in our day(s); in the past; in the future; in advance; in the hands of; in my opinion; in the reign of; in (the) press; in this way; one in ten.

445.**Of**1. Usually = **de**:

Le toit de la maison; la ville de Paris; un homme d'influence; une livre de thé; digne d'honneur; il parle d'aller à Paris. The roof of the house; the city of Paris; a man of influence; a pound of tea; worthy of honor; he speaks of going to Paris.

2. Denoting material = **en**:

Un pont en bois (fer); les pièces de dix francs sont en or. A bridge of wood (iron); ten-franc pieces are (made) of gold.

3. Unclassified:

C'est aimable à vous; sur 100 personnes 50 sont échappées; docteur en médecine; un de mes amis; majeur. It is kind of you; of 100 persons 50 escaped; doctor of medicine; one of my friends; of age.

446.**On, upon**1. Usually = **sur**:

Le livre est (je mets le livre) sur la table. The book is (I put the book) on the table.

2. Is omitted in dates before specified days:

Le dix mai; je viendrai mardi; il arriva le lendemain. On the tenth of May; I shall come on Tuesday; he arrived on the morrow.

3. Unclassified:

Par une belle journée d'été; mettre au feu; pendre contre le mur; dans la rue; dans l'île; dans l'escalier; en (dans un) voyage; en visite (congé); en chemin (route); d'un côté; tomber par terre; à genoux; dans cette occasion; à cheval (pied); à droite (gauche); à son arrivée; au contraire; pour affaires.

On a fine summer day; to put on the fire; to hang on the wall; on the street; on the island; on the stairs; on a journey; on a visit (a holiday); on the way (the road); on one side; to fall on the ground; on one's knees; on that occasion; on horseback (foot); on the right (the left); on his arrival; on the contrary; on business.

447.

Out of

1. Unclassified:

Boire dans un verre; copier dans un livre; regarder par la fenêtre; un sur dix.

To drink out of a glass; to copy out of a book; to look out of the window; one out of ten.

448.

Over

1. In the sense of *above* = **au-dessus de**:

Au-dessus de la porte étaient écrits ces mots; les nombres au-dessus de mille.

Over the door were written these words; the numbers over one thousand.

2. Denoting motion above = **sur, par, par-dessus**:

Passez la main sur ce drap; par monts et par vaux; il sauta par-dessus la haie.

Pass your hand over this cloth; over hill and dale; he leaped over the hedge.

3. Unclassified:

Au delà de la rivière; l'emporter sur (trionpher de); se réjouir de; veiller sur.

Over the river; to triumph over; to rejoice over; to watch over.

449.

Through

1. Denoting motion across = **à travers (au travers de), par**:

Je passai à travers (au travers de) la forêt; passer par Paris.

I passed through the forest; to pass through Paris.

2. In the sense of *because of, owing to* = **par**:

Par négligence.

Through carelessness.

450.

Till, until

1. Unclassified:

Jusqu'à demain; pas avant l'année prochaine; jusqu'ici; du matin au soir.

Till to-morrow; not till next year; till now; from morning till night.

451.

To

1. Denoting the indirect object = **à** (cf. § 362, 2):

Je l'ai donné à un ami.

I gave it to a friend.

2. Denoting motion to = **à, en** (cf. § 333, 2, 3); in the sense of *to the house, etc., of, to* —'s = **chez**:

Il va à Paris (à l'école; au Japon; à un bal; en France; en Portugal; chez eux; chez mon ami).

He goes to Paris (to school; to Japan; to a ball; to France; to Portugal; to their house, etc.; to my friend's).

3. In the sense of *towards* = **vers** (physical tendency), **envers** (moral tendency):

Levez les yeux vers le ciel; il est juste envers tous.

Raise your eyes to heaven; he is just to all.

4. In the sense of *as far as* = **jusqu'à**:

Venez jusqu'au bout de la rue.

Come to the end of the street.

5. Unclassified:

Le voyage (train) de Montréal; écrire sous dictée; dans ce but.

The journey (train) to Montreal; to write to dictation; to this end.

452.

Towards

See § 451, 3.

453.

Under, underneath

1. Usually = **sous**:

Sous la table; sous la loi; sous peine de mort.

Under the table; under the law; under (on) pain of death.

2. Denoting *lower than, less than* = **au-dessous de**:

Au-dessous du coude; vendre une chose au-dessous de sa valeur.	Under the elbow; to sell a thing under its value.
--	--

3. Unclassified:

Fouler aux pieds; à cette condi- tion; dans les circonstances; dans la nécessité de; mineur.	To tread under foot; under this condition; under the circum- stances; under the necessity of; under age.
--	---

454.

With

1. In the sense of *along with, in company with* = **avec**:

Dînez avec moi à l'hôtel; un offi- cier avec des soldats.	Dine with me at the hotel; an offi- cer with some soldiers.
--	--

2. In the sense of *at the house, etc., of* = **chez**:

Il demeure chez nous.	He lives with us.
-----------------------	-------------------

3. Denoting instrument, manner = **avec** (usually):

Frapper avec un marteau; écrire avec une plume; avec courage (force).	To strike with a hammer; to write with a pen; with courage (force).
---	--

4. Denoting a characteristic = **à**:

Un homme à la barbe noire.	A man with a black beard.
----------------------------	---------------------------

5. *With* of accessory circumstance is usually turned by an absolute construction:

Il parla les yeux baissés.	He spoke with downcast eyes.
----------------------------	------------------------------

6. In the sense of *from, on account of*, and after many verbs and adjectives = **de**:

Elle pleura de colère; couvrir de; content de.	She wept with anger; to cover with; satisfied with.
---	--

7. Unclassified:

À l'exception de; à haute voix; à bras ouverts; de bon appé- tit; à l'œil nu; de tout mon cœur.	With the exception of; with a loud voice; with open arms; with a good appetite; with the naked eye; with all my heart.
--	---

THE CONJUNCTION

455. Conjunctions. The following table contains most of the conjunctions and conjunctive locutions in use:

†à (la) condition que, ³ <i>on condition that</i>	†en sorte que, ² <i>so that</i>
*afin que, ² <i>in order that, so that</i>	*en supposant que, ³ <i>supposing that</i>
ainsi, <i>therefore, hence</i>	et, <i>and</i>
ainsi que, <i>as well as, as</i>	et . . . et, <i>both . . . and</i>
alors que, <i>when</i>	excepté que, <i>except that</i>
à mesure que, <i>as, just as</i>	†jusqu'à ce que, ¹ <i>until</i>
*à moins que . . . ne, ³ <i>unless</i>	*loin que, ⁵ <i>far from</i>
après que, <i>after</i>	lorsque, <i>when</i>
à proportion que, <i>in proportion as</i>	mais, <i>but</i>
attendu que, <i>considering that</i>	*malgré que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>
†au cas où, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	néanmoins, <i>nevertheless</i>
*au cas que, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	ni, <i>nor</i>
aussi, <i>hence, therefore</i>	ni . . . ni . . . (. . . ne), <i>neither . . .</i>
aussitôt que, <i>as soon as</i>	<i>nor</i>
*avant que, ¹ <i>before</i>	*nonobstant que, ⁴ <i>notwithstanding</i>
*bien que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>	<i>that</i>
car, <i>for</i>	*non (pas) que, ⁵ <i>not that</i>
*ce n'est pas que, ⁵ <i>not that</i>	non seulement . . . mais encore, <i>not</i>
cependant, <i>however, yet</i>	<i>only . . . but also</i>
comme, <i>as</i>	or, <i>now</i>
†dans le cas où, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	ou, <i>or</i>
*de crainte que . . . ne, ² <i>for fear</i>	ou . . . ou, <i>either . . . or</i>
<i>that</i>	outré que, <i>besides that</i>
†de façon que, ² <i>so that</i>	parce que, <i>because</i>
†de manière que, ² <i>so that</i>	partant, <i>therefore, hence</i>
de même que, <i>as well as</i>	pendant que, <i>while, whilst</i>
*de peur que . . . ne, ² <i>for fear that</i>	*pour peu que, ⁴ <i>if ever so little</i>
depuis que, <i>since</i>	*pour que, ² <i>in order that</i>
†de (telle) sorte que, ² <i>so that</i>	pourtant, <i>yet, however</i>
dès que, <i>as soon as, when, since</i>	*pourvu que, ³ <i>provided that</i>
donec, <i>now, then, therefore</i>	puisque, <i>since</i>
*en attendant que, ¹ <i>until</i>	quand, <i>when</i>
*en cas que, ³ <i>in case (that)</i>	†quand même, ⁴ <i>though, even if</i>
encore, <i>yet, still</i>	†que, ⁶ <i>that, than, as</i>
*encore que, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>	*quoique, ⁴ <i>though, although</i>
	*sans que, ⁵ <i>without</i>

selon que, *according as*
 †si,³ *if* (§ 271, 3, a)
 †si bien que,² *so that*
 †si peu que,⁴ *however little*
 sinon, *if not, or else*
 sitôt que, *as soon as*
 soit . . . soit, *whether . . . or*
 soit . . . ou, *whether . . . or*
 *soit que . . . soit que,⁴ *whether*
 . . . *or*

*soit que . . . ou que,⁴ *whether . . . or*
 suivant que, *according as*
 *supposé que,³ *suppose that*
 tandis que, *whilst, whereas*
 tant . . . que, *both . . . and*
 tant que, *as long as*
 †tellement . . . que,² *so . . . that*
 toutefois, *yet, nevertheless*
 une fois que, *as soon as*
 vu que, *seeing that*

* Followed by the subjunctive.

† Followed by the indicative or subjunctive.

N.B. — Conjunctions without * or † in the table are followed by the indicative.

¹ See § 271, 1 (time before which or up to which).

² See § 271, 2 (purpose or result).

³ See § 271, 3 (condition).

⁴ See § 271, 4 (concession).

⁵ See § 271, 5 (negation).

⁶ See § 269, § 271, 6, and § 458.

USE OF CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

456. Et. 1. When repeated, **et** usually denotes *both . . . and*; otherwise it stands with the last only of two or more clauses:

Je connais et le père et le fils.
 Les femmes pleuraient, criaient
 et gesticulaient.

I know both the father and son.
 The women wept, (and) screamed,
 and gesticulated.

2. *And* after a verb of motion is usually untranslated:

Allez leur parler.

Go and speak to them.

457. Ni. 1. A finite verb with **ni** or **ni . . . ni** must be preceded by **ne**:

Il n'a ni or ni argent.
 Il ne mange ni ne boit.

He has neither gold nor silver.
 He neither eats nor drinks.

a. For the position of **ni . . . ni . . . ne**, see § 416, d.

2. In sentences of negative force, *and*, *or*, are rendered by *ni*:

Honneurs ni richesses ne font le bonheur.	Honors and wealth do not constitute happiness.
---	--

3. Observe the following equivalents of *neither*, *not either*, *nor either*, *nor*, when not correlative:

Je ne le ferai pas. — (Ni) moi non plus.	I shall not do it. — Nor I either (or Neither shall I).
Il ne le fera pas non plus.	He will not do it either.
Il ne l'a pas fait, et il ne le fera pas.	He has not done it, nor will he (do it).

458. Que. 1. *Que* = *that* is followed by the indicative or subjunctive according to the context:

Je dis que vous avez raison.	I say that you are right.
Je suis fâché que vous ayez raison.	I am sorry that you are right.

2. *Que* often replaces another conjunction; when so used, it takes the same construction as the conjunction for which it stands, except that *que* instead of *si* = *if* always requires the subjunctive:

Quand vous aurez fini, et que vous aurez le temps.	When you have finished, and (when you) have time.
Venez que (= afin que, pour que) je vous voie.	Come that I may see you.
Si vous venez demain, et que vous ayez le temps.	If you come to-morrow, and (if you) have time.

3. *Que* may not be omitted before a finite verb, as *that* often is in English:

Je crois qu'il viendra et qu'il restera.	I think (that) he will come and (that he will) stay.
--	--

459. Distinctions. The following conjunctions are especially liable to be confounded in use:

1. *Quand*, *Lorsque*. They are equivalents in the sense of *when*, but *quand* (*not lorsque*) serves also as an interrogative adverb in direct or indirect questions:

Quand est-il arrivé?

Dis-moi quand il est arrivé.

Quand (*or lorsque*) je l'ai vu.

Nous partirons lorsque (*or quand*)
la lettre arrivera.

When did he come?

Tell me when he came.

When I saw him.

We shall leave when the letter
comes.

2. Pendant que, Tandis que. *Pendant que* = *while, whilst, during the time that*; *tandis que* = *while, whilst, during the time that*, and also, *whilst, on the contrary, whereas*:

Lisez le journal pendant que
j'écris ce billet.

Pendant (Tandis) que vous êtes
ici.

Le père travaille, tandis que le fils
ne fait rien.

Read the newspaper while I write
this note.

Whilst you are here.

The father works, while the son
does nothing.

3. Depuis que, Puisque. *Depuis que* denotes time; *puisque* denotes cause assigned:

Je suis bien seul depuis que mon
frère est parti.

Il me faut rester, puisqu'il n'y a
pas de train ce soir.

I am very lonely since my brother
went away.

I must remain, since there is no
train this evening.

THE INTERJECTION

460. Interjections. The commoner interjections and expressions used as such are:

1. Joy, admiration, approval:

ah! *ah!*

ha, ha! *or hi, hi! (to denote
laughter)*

bon! *good!*

bien! *good!*

à merveille! *capital!*

à la bonne heure! *well done! that's
right!*

bis! *encore!*

bravo! *or bravissimo! well done!
bravo!*

hourra! *or vivat! hurrah!*

2. Disgust, disapproval, indifference:

fi! *fie!*

fi donc! *for shame!*

fie de! *fie on!*

foin de! *a plague upon!*

pouah! *disgusting! faugh!*

oh! *oh!*

bah! or ah! bah! nonsense! pooh-pooh!

baste! enough! pooh! nonsense!

3. Grief, fear, pain:

ah! ah!

oh! oh!

hélas! alas!

aïe! oh! oh dear!

4. Surprise:

ah! ah!

oh! oh!

eh! ah!

ha! ha!

comment! what!

par exemple! dear me!

zest! pshaw!

zut! pshaw!

miséricorde! mercy!

ouf! (to express suffocation, or relief and exhaustion)

quoi! what!

vraiment! indeed!

tiens! indeed! hallo!

par exemple! you don't say so!

miséricorde! mercy!

5. Encouragement, reproof:

allons! come!

courage! cheer up!

voyons! come now!

çà! or or çà! or sus! or or sus! now then!

en avant! forward!

ferme! steady!

preste! quick!

6. Warning:

gare! look out! take care!

attention! look out! take care!

7. Calling:

hé! or ohé! or holà! ho! hoy! halloo!

hem! ahem!

st! hi there!

qui vive! who goes there!

8. Calling for aid:

à moi! or au secours! help!

à l'assassin or au meurtre! murder!

au voleur! stop thief!

au feu! fire!

9. Silencing, stopping:

chut! or st! hush!

silence! silence!

motus! [mōty:s] not a word!

tout doux or tout beau! gently! not so fast!

halte-là! stop there!

NOTE. — Akin to interjections are imitations of sounds: **Cric crac!** *breaking*; **drelin, drelin!** or **drelin, din, din!** *ringing*; **pan pan!** *bang*; **pif paf!** *gunshots*; **boum!** *cannonading*; **rataplan!** *drum*; **dare dare!** *quick movement*; **cahin-caha,** *jogging along*; **clopin-clopant,** *hobbling*; **tic tac,** *ticking*, etc.

ABBREVIATIONS

461. French Abbreviations. The following are the commoner abbreviations used in French:

c.-à.-d. = c'est-à-dire, *that is*
 C^{ie} or C^e = compagnie, *company*
 etc. = et cætera
 fr. or f. = francs, *francs*
 h. = heure, *hour*
 in-f^o = in-folio, *folio*
 J.-C. = Jésus-Christ, *Jesus Christ*
 M. = Monsieur, *Mr.*
 MM. = Messieurs, *Messrs.*
 M. R. or M. R . . . = Monsieur R.
 or Monsieur R * * *, *Mr. R.*
 or *Mr. R—*.
 M^d = marchand, *merchant*
 M^e (pl. M^{es}) = maître, *is used*
 with names of lawyers instead of
 monsieur
 Mgr (pl. NNSS.) = monseigneur,
 my lord
 M^{lle} (pl. M^{lles}) = Mademoiselle,
 Miss

M^{me} (pl. M^{mes}) = Madame, *Mrs.*
 Mⁿ = maison, *house, firm*
 ms. (pl. mss.) = manuscrit, *manu-*
 script
 N.-D. = Notre-Dame, *Our Lady*
 N.-S. = Notre-Seigneur, *Our Lord*
 n^o = numéro, *number*
 R.S.V.P. = Répondez s'il vous
 plaît, *an answer is requested*
 S. A. R. = Son Altesse Royale, *His*
 Royal Highness
 s.-ent. = sous-entendu, *understood*
 S. Exc. = Son Excellence, *His Ex-*
 cellency
 S. M. (pl. LL. MM.) = Sa Majesté,
 His (Her) Majesty
 S. S. = Sa Sainteté, *His Holiness*
 s. v. p. = s'il vous plaît, *if you*
 please
 V^e = veuve, *widow*

I^{er} (in titles) = premier, *the First*
 II (in titles) = deux, *the Second*
 Le XV^e siècle, etc. = le quin-
 zième siècle, *the 15th century*

1^{er} (fem. 1^{re}) = premier, *first*
 2^e = deuxième, *second*
 1^o = primo, *firstly*
 7^{bre} = septembre, *September. Etc.*

EXERCISES

[The references at the head of the exercises are to the sections in the Grammar on which they are based.]

THE CORRELATION OF TENSES

I a (§§ 153–155)

Regular Verbs in *-er*

A. (1) *Give the principal parts of regarder and conjugate regarder les roses in the indicative, the imperative, and the subjunctive moods, as follows:*

regarder regardant regardé je regarde je regardai

Indicative Mood

PRESENT

je regarde les roses
tu regardes les roses
etc.

PAST INDEFINITE

j'ai regardé les roses
tu as regardé les roses
etc.

IMPERFECT

je regardais les roses
etc.

PLUPERFECT

j'avais regardé les roses
etc.

(2) *Conjugate negatively in the indicative and the imperative moods: oublier l'argent; demander l'heure.*

(3) *Conjugate interrogatively throughout the indicative mood: raconter une histoire; dîner de bonne heure.*

(4) *Conjugate negatively and interrogatively throughout the indicative mood: marcher beaucoup; inviter un ami.*

B. 1. (*We are thanking*) le monsieur. 2. (*We were thanking*) les messieurs. 3. (*You are thanking*) le garçon. 4. (*You were thanking*) l'homme. 5. (*Shall we look for*) l'auto? 6. (*He has asked for*)

un chapeau. 7. (*Would you invite*) son amie? 8. (*Will they not have related*) l'histoire?

C. 1. This morning Helen bought a new dress. 2. Now Mary and Louise are choosing some shoes and some hats. 3. Helen finds that her dress is too long, consequently her mother is working on (à) the dress. 4. She is shortening it a little. 5. If it is fine to-morrow, they will spend the afternoon in the park. 6. They like the animals and they visit them at least every month. 7. They do not live far from the park. 8. They have brought some apples and some nuts. 9. They will give the nuts to the monkeys and the apples to the other animals. 10. The guardian will not scold them if they do not tease the animals.

I b (§§ 153-155)

Regular Verbs in *-ir*

A. (1) *Give the principal parts of bâtir and the complete conjugation of bâtir une maison; obéir à la loi.*

(2) *Conjugate negatively in the indicative and the imperative moods: choisir un chapeau rouge; désobéir à la loi.*

B. 1. (*Let us obey*) à la loi. 2. (*Do we not obey*) à nos parents? 3. (*He disobeys*) à sa sœur. 4. (*We were filling*) la malle. 5. (*We had chosen*) nos gants. 6. (*They will have built*) la maison.

C. 1. Here is the man who built the house where we live. 2. Now he is building a garage for my uncle. 3. Last year he was working for the contractor who built the large shop where my sisters bought their pretty dresses. 4. They like this shop because the proprietor chooses well his merchandise. 5. To-day they bought some lace. 6. To-morrow they will look for some gloves. 7. They are filling their trunks with pretty things.

I c (§§ 153-155)

Regular Verbs in *-re*

A. *Give the principal parts of rompre and the complete conjugation of rompre le bâton.*

B. 1. (*He has broken*) mon bâton. 2. (*We used to break*) ses bâtons. 3. (*Let us not interrupt*) l'homme. 4. (*Has he not interrupted*) son frère? 5. (*We were finishing*) notre repas.

C. 1. Look at that man; he is striking his donkey with a big stick. 2. The poor animal is carrying a heavy load. 3. Consequently it cannot walk very fast. 4. If no one stops that man, he will break the stick on the back of the poor beast. 5. Why doesn't he choose a smaller stick? 6. The poor beast does not merit that punishment. 7. It will fall if the man does not stop. 8. He is not a good citizen. 9. A good citizen obeys the law and is good to (*pour*) animals.

I d (§ 154)

Auxiliary Verbs *avoir* and *être*

A. Give the principal parts of *avoir* and the complete conjugation of *avoir pitié de Jean*.

B. 1. I have had his bicycle twice. 2. They have a good father and a good mother. 3. Haven't we had good parents? 4. Let us pity this poor man. 5. The little boy is sorry for his dog. 6. The boys are not hungry, but they are thirsty.

C. Give the principal parts of *être* and the complete conjugation of *être content(e)(s)*.

D. 1. Have you been to town this morning? 2. You will be happy, won't you? 3. They are late, are they not? 4. We are all happy to-day. 5. You are John's brother, are you not? 6. They will be in the country at six o'clock this evening.

E. 1. There is a man at the door. 2. He is old and hungry. 3. He has no work and is asking for some bread. 4. Let us give something to this poor man. 5. No doubt he is thirsty also. 6. He enters and the father speaks to him in French. 7. The man speaks French also; and now they are speaking together. 8. This man and my father were neighbors when my father was young. 9. This poor man has had much trouble. 10. Now that he is old, he does not work as he used to work when he was younger.

ORTHOGRAPHICAL PECULIARITIES

II a (§§ 156–158)

Verbs in *-cer, -ger*

- A. (1) *List the verb forms where the cedilla must be inserted under c.*
 (2) *List the verb forms where e must be inserted after g.*

B. 1. He was announcing the news when I was there. 2. Let us place the table before the door. 3. They were eating some apples in the dining room. 4. Let us correct our errors. 5. That little boy pronounced his words very well. 6. We are arranging the boxes in (à) their places. 7. They have shared their candy with their playmates.

C. 1. It is noon, let us begin our lunch. 2. I thank you, John, but I had mine at eleven o'clock. 3. I shared it with a little boy. 4. He was looking at a little girl who was eating a cake. 5. Let us go to the park and let us look for this little boy. 6. If we find him, I shall give him this peach. 7. Little boys like peaches. 8. When I was younger, I used to eat many of them. 9. Paul, look at that stone. 10. It is on that stone that we place our lunch when the family spends the day in the park.

II b (§ 157)

Verbs in *-yer*

- A. (1) *List the verb forms where y changes to i.*
 (2) *Give the principal parts of payer and a complete synopsis of payer la montre au garçon in the third person singular.*

B. 1. I am paying the boy. 2. He was paying the man when I arrived. 3. They are cleaning the silverware now, are they not? 4. John is sweeping the garage. 5. Mr. B. employs twenty men. 6. He will pay you this evening. 7. Let him clean his shoes; they are not clean.

C. 1. Mr. Brown has a car in his garage. 2. It is large and comfortable. 3. My brother wishes to have this car because it is in

good condition. 4. It is not old and it is not expensive. 5. We have a garage, but we do not have a car. 6. Mr. Brown employs the boy who is now cleaning the car. 7. This afternoon he will sweep our garage. 8. This evening we shall try the car. 9. If it goes well, Paul will pay Mr. Brown for it. 10. There are some pretty cushions in this car.

II c (§ 158)

Verbs with Stem Vowel *e* or *é*

A. (1) *List the verb forms where **e** and **é** are changed to **è**, also where the consonant is doubled.*

(2) *Give the principal parts of **mener** and a complete synopsis of **mener le cheval** in the first person singular.*

B. 1. They are leading the horses to the country. 2. We shall call the little boy. 3. He is throwing stones, is he not? 4. She prefers an orange. 5. We prefer some apples. 6. It is freezing hard this morning. 7. She is buying a pretty dress. 8. Will she buy a hat also? 9. They have bought two large houses. 10. Mary is peeling the oranges.

C. 1. Here is a man who has some apples and some pears. 2. If they do not cost too much, we shall buy some. 3. I like apples, but I prefer pears when they are good. 4. Are your pears good, Mr. Smith? 5. Yes, sir, and they are not expensive. 6. And your apples, are they good also? 7. Yes, sir, and they are fresh and cheap. 8. Paul, let us buy a dozen apples and a dozen pears. 9. Now, we shall call Henry. 10. He is in the kitchen where he is peeling some potatoes. 11. They enter the kitchen, and Henry raises his head. 12. He calls Mary who is in the dining room.

IRREGULAR VERBS

III a (§§ 160–161)

Irregular Verbs in *-er*

A. (1) *Give the principal parts of **aller** and a complete synopsis of **aller en ville** in the first person singular.*

(2) Give the present indicative, the past indefinite, the future, and the present subjunctive of **aller**.

B. 1. (*Is he going*) en ville? 2. (*Are they not going*) à l'église? 3. (*We shall go*) au marché. 4. (*They have gone*) au magasin. 5. (*Have they not gone*) à la campagne? 6. (*They are sending*) les œufs. 7. (*We shall send*) les légumes. 8. (*Have they sent*) les boîtes? 9. (*Let them send*) les paniers. 10. (*Let him send*) l'argent.

C. 1. Where are you going, John? 2. I am going to the shop. 3. And you, Henry, are you going to the shop also? 4. No, I was going to town; let us go (there) together. 5. I shall go with you, if you have (some) money. 6. I have (some) money and I shall buy a box of chocolates for Helen. 7. I shall send it to her tomorrow. 8. I send her a box of chocolates every month. 9. My mother went to town this morning. 10. If I meet her, I shall ask her for some money.

III b (§§ 162–166)

Irregular Verbs in **-ir**

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **courir** and a complete synopsis of **courir vite** in the first person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **dormir** and a complete synopsis of **dormir tard** in the third person singular.

B. 1. (*We are gathering*) de jolies fleurs. 2. (*We were not running*) à la maison. 3. (*They will run*) ce soir. 4. (*They have acquired*) une grande fortune. 5. (*Are they not sleeping*) maintenant? 6. (*The water will boil*) dans deux minutes. 7. (*Are we not going out*) ce soir? 8. (*Mary went out*) tout à l'heure. 9. (*We are leaving*) pour Paris. 10. (*We shall leave*) pour l'Angleterre en juillet.

C. 1. We are leaving now. 2. We have gathered all the flowers. 3. Do not leave; come into the kitchen. 4. I shall give you a cup of chocolate. 5. The milk is not boiling, but it will boil in five minutes. 6. We thank you, Mrs. B., but we are going to the hospital. 7. If we do not leave now, we shall be late. 8. Don't you ever run when you are late? 9. Yes, Mrs. B., we run fast. 10. We are not late, and we do not want to be late; we shall leave now.

III c (§§ 167-179)

Irregular Verbs in *-ir* (continued)

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **fuir** and a synopsis of the verb in the third person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **ouvrir** and a synopsis of **ouvrir la porte** in the first person singular.

B. 1. (*We do not hate*) cet homme. 2. (*He died*) hier soir. 3. (*She has not opened*) la fenêtre. 4. (*They are covering*) les fleurs. 5. (*He is offering*) des pommes au garçon. 6. (*This book is not*) à Jean. 7. (*They do not come*) de bonne heure. 8. (*Will you not come*) ce soir? 9. (*He will come back*) demain. 10. (*We shall hold*) le cheval.

C. 1. This box belongs (**appartenir**) to John. 2. It contains his money. 3. Let us not open it. 4. If we open it, he will hate us. 5. Where is John? Is he ill? 6. Yes, he is ill; and he suffers much. 7. Have you opened the windows in his room? 8. Yes, I open them every day. 9. The doctor is coming this afternoon. 10. If he has a fever, his mother will come to-morrow.

III d (§§ 180-188)

Irregular Verbs in *-re*

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **battre** and a complete synopsis of **battre du tambour** in the third person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **boire** and a complete synopsis of **boire de l'eau** in the first person plural.

B. 1. (*We are beating*) du tambour. 2. (*We shall not beat*) le cheval. 3. (*They are drinking*) du lait. 4. (*Let us drink*) de l'eau froide. 5. (*He has concluded*) l'affaire. 6. (*You were constructing*) une maison. 7. (*You are*) en retard. 8. (*We are acquainted with*) votre frère. 9. (*They recognized*) l'homme. 10. (*He will reappear*) demain.

C. 1. In the morning, the farmer leads his cows to the meadow. 2. They are very glad because they are hungry. 3. He opens the

gate and they pass into the meadow. 4. They go immediately to the pond. 5. They drink much water for they are very thirsty. 6. At noon, the farmer reappears to see if his cows are in the meadow. 7. His dog is with him and, if one of the cows has disappeared, the dog brings it back into the meadow. 8. The farmer returns to the house without his dog. 9. The dog remains with the cows to watch them. 10. They do not run because they know the dog.

III e (§§ 189–193)

Irregular Verbs in *-re* (continued)

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **coudre**, and a synopsis of **coudre ma robe** in the first person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **peindre**, and a synopsis of **peindre le bateau** in the third person singular.

B. 1. (*Is she sewing*) sa robe? 2. (*He does not fear*) votre cousin. 3. (*She will dye*) son chapeau. 4. (*We shall rejoin*) notre famille. 5. (*Has he painted again*) son bateau? 6. (*I shall put out*) le feu. 7. (*I believe*) en Dieu. 8. (*We shall believe*) cet homme. 9. (*He does not contradict*) ses parents. 10. (*Did he slander*) son ami?

C. 1. Is Mary sewing her dress? 2. No, she was sewing, but now she is painting a chair. 3. Paul, I do not believe you. 4. You are not telling the truth. 5. I believe that Mary is sewing. 6. I shall not contradict you. 7. Say, John, did Henry slander you yesterday? 8. No, Henry did not slander anybody. 9. He was saying that his team would win the game. 10. And I was saying that my team would win it.

III f (§§ 194–200)

Irregular Verbs in *-re* (continued)

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **écrire**, and a synopsis of **écrire une lettre** in the first person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **faire**, and a synopsis of **faire attention** in the second person plural.

B. 1. (*They are writing*) une lettre. 2. (*He will not describe*) l'homme. 3. (*You are not paying*) attention. 4. (*Do not disturb*) les journaux. 5. (*Shall we read*) les journaux? 6. (*They are reading again*) le journal. 7. (*We are not committing*) une grande faute. 8. (*Let us omit*) celui-là. 9. (*John was born*) en 1917. 10. (*We are making*) une boîte.

C. 1. Here is a letter from my sister. 2. She is in the country at my uncle's. 3. She says that my uncle has a mill and that he grinds wheat every day in winter. 4. She describes this old mill and says that it is very picturesque in summer in the midst of the wheat fields. 5. Do you write to your sister every week? 6. Yes, I write to her every week and yet she says that I do not write often enough. 7. What would you do if you had a sister like her? 8. If I had a sister like her, I should send her a newspaper. 9. You are not paying attention. 10. You do not say that you would not write to your sister, do you? 11. No, I should not do that. 12. If I did that, I should be making a great mistake.

III g (§§ 201-211)

Irregular Verbs in *-re* (continued)

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **prendre**, and a synopsis of **prendre l'air** in the first person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **suivre**, and a synopsis of **suivre une carrière** in the third person singular.

B. 1. (*We do not understand*) cette affaire. 2. (*Will he not surprise*) sa mère? 3. (*They are following*) un lapin. 4. (*We shall follow*) le gendarme. 5. (*Is she not milking*) la vache? 6. (*Let him sell*) la maison. 7. Cet homme (*is he still living*)? 8. (*They are living*) en paix. 9. (*We are looking at*) ce chien. 10. (*We were laughing*) aux éclats.

C. 1. Yesterday John surprised his friend Peter. 2. He told him that he would follow his example. 3. Peter is a young man who has learned a great deal from the lives of his friends. 4. Consequently, he has resolved to conquer his laziness. 5. A wise man follows the example of the men who are older and who have resolved

to (**de**) follow the good way. 6. After all, it is the example which speaks. 7. John is a boy who wants to set a good example. 8. What he has done will please (**à**) his parents, because they understand life. 9. They have lived much longer than John. 10. They have learned many things that John has not yet learned.

III h (§§ 212–222)

Irregular Verbs in **-oir**

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **recevoir**, and a synopsis of **recevoir un chèque** in the first person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **devoir**, and a synopsis of **devoir de l'argent** in the third person singular.

B. 1. (*Let us not deceive*) nos parents. 2. (*I shall owe you*) vingt dollars. 3. (*Will she not receive*) un cadeau? 4. (*Was it not raining*) hier? 5. (*It will not rain*) demain. 6. (*Are they not able*) écrire? 7. (*They would be able*) dormir. 8. (*Let us know*) la vérité. 9. (*We will not know*) l'heure. 10. (*He has had*) son déjeuner.

C. 1. Mr. Smith, whom you know, owes me ten dollars. 2. Last week he wrote to his parents and told them that he had no money. 3. To-day he received a letter with a check for (**de**) twenty dollars. 4. Now he says that he cannot pay the money which he owes me. 5. Paul Smith is a boy who spends a great deal. 6. He forgets that his parents are not rich and that they are working hard to give him a good education. 7. He buys things at a high price and sells them cheap. 8. When it is raining he buys an overcoat and when it is not raining he sells it at half price. 9. I think that he deceives his parents. 10. If he does not pay me what he owes me, I shall write to his father.

III i (§§ 223–225)

Irregular Verbs in **-oir** (*continued*)

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **valoir**, and a synopsis of **valoir la peine** in the third person singular.

(2) Give the principal parts of **voir**, and a synopsis of **voir l'enfant** in the first person singular.

B. 1. (*It is worth*) deux dollars. 2. (*Would it not be worth*) dix francs? 3. (*It used to be worth*) cent francs. 4. (*Shall we not see*) les ours? 5. (*Didn't we see*) l'éléphant? 6. (*They will see again*) le tigre. 7. (*We foresaw*) le danger. 8. (*Will he not want*) une bicyclette? 9. (*They did not want*) le faire. 10. (*I do not want*) ce chapeau.

C. 1. Have you seen our car? 2. No, I have not seen your car; I want to see it. 3. Is it in the garage? 4. No, it is in front of the garage. 5. My father employs a man to clean it and he is cleaning it now. 6. This man will clean the car once a week. 7. He will also sweep the garage. 8. I see your car now; does it go very fast? 9. It can go fast, but my father does not want to make it go fast. 10. He says that it is dangerous to drive too fast.

IV (§§ 227-229)

USE OF AUXILIARY VERBS

See also §§ 290-291

A. 1. Ma mère (*has arrived*) ce matin. 2. Mes sœurs (*have seen*) mon cousin. 3. Ma cousine (*was born*) en 1913. 4. (*They have not come*) hier soir. 5. (*They remained*) chez elle. 6. (*Has he not sold*) sa maison? 7. (*We have found*) l'enfant. 8. Le cheval (*fell*) ce soir. 9. (*They have gone*) en ville.

B. 1. Have you seen the little boy who climbed into that big tree this morning? 2. No, I have not seen him. 3. Where is he now? Did he remain in the tree? 4. No, he did not remain there; he came down. 5. Why did he go up into the tree? 6. He did it so as to get an umbrella which the wind had lodged up there. 7. A young lady was passing and, as it was raining, she opened her umbrella. 8. Suddenly a puff of wind took it and left it in (à) the top of the tree. 9. This little boy saw that the young lady had lost her umbrella. 10. He told her that if she waited a few minutes he would return the umbrella to her.

USE OF VERB PHRASES

V a (§ 230)

Use of *devoir* followed by an Infinitive

A. Give the principal parts of **devoir**, and a synopsis in the first person singular of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods.

B. The verb **devoir** without an infinitive = *to owe*.

1. He owes me ten dollars. 2. She will owe him a great deal. 3. They owe us respect and we owe them our protection. 4. You used to owe me something, but now you owe me nothing. 5. I should owe him five francs if he were here. 6. He owed me money, but now it is I who owe him something.

C. Followed by an infinitive the verb **devoir** has various shades of meaning. It implies *duty, intention, inference*.

(1) *Duty*, moral or otherwise, and when *should* and *must* have the meaning of *ought*.

1. You did not close the door, you ought to do so. 2. He should have paid me, he has not done so. 3. Don't you know that you should have bought that house? 4. The rich should help the poor, but they do not always do so. 5. They should have told the truth. 6. Children must obey their parents.

(2) *Intention*, also when *am to* means *expect* or *intend*.

1. He is to play this evening. 2. We intend to (are to) go for a walk. 3. Were we to sing yesterday? 4. Mary, you should have sung last evening. 5. I am to work with you to-morrow. 6. Were you not to dine with us last night?

(3) *Inference* or *supposition*.

1. John did not come; he must be ill. 2. They must have found him because they have returned. 3. The windows are frozen; it must be cold. 4. You must be hungry; it is ten o'clock. 5. That poor man must have been very tired; he is still asleep. 6. She must have a lot of money because she has many friends.

D. 1. The man who lives in that beautiful house owes my father five hundred dollars. 2. He ought to pay him. 3. He ought to

have paid him last year, but he did not do so. 4. If he does not pay what he owes us, I must tell him that he is not a good neighbor. 5. That large house belongs to him and he has several other houses also. 6. He must have some money. 7. My father must go to see him. 8. He should be home now because his car is near the garage. 9. We are to take a trip in Europe next year, and we must have the money. 10. If he does not pay us, I shall think that he is a man who is not honest.

V b (§ 230)

Use of *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, *savoir* with an Infinitive

A. (1) Give the principal parts of **vouloir**, and a synopsis in the third person singular of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods.

(2) **Vouloir** with the infinitive implies *want* or *desire*, and *will* or *determination*.

✓ (a) *Wish*, when it has the meaning of *to desire* or *to like*, *vouloir*.

1. What did he want? He wanted some apples. 2. Do you want this dog? I shall give it to you. 3. She says that she wishes to see you to-day. 4. They will want to buy it if they see it. 5. Does that man want a cup of coffee? 6. No, sir, he does not wish any coffee; he wants a cup of tea.

(b) *Will*, when **vouloir** implies *determination* or *insistence* upon having one's own way.

1. I have called him, but he does not want to come. 2. I want him and I insist that he comes (*subjunctive*). 3. We want some money and we shall have it. 4. She did not wish to buy it and she did as she wanted. 5. If they had been willing to leave early, we should be in the country now. 6. I want it and I shall have it.

B. (1) Give the principal parts of **pouvoir**, and a synopsis in the third person singular of the indicative and of the subjunctive moods.

(2) **Pouvoir** with the infinitive implies *ability*, and *permission* or *consent* to do a thing.

✓ (a) *Ability*.

1. We can heat the house now; we have some coal. 2. I haven't the money and I cannot pay you. 3. The children cannot go out, because it is raining. 4. This poor dog can't walk, his paw is

broken. 5. We cannot go farther; we have no gasoline. 6. He fears that she cannot (*subjunctive*) do that.

(b) *Permission or consent to do a thing.*

1. May I take this chair? I am tired. 2. You may take it now. 3. You told him that he could not have your hat. 4. They could not come; their mother was not willing. 5. I could have done it if I had wanted to. 6. We haven't the permission, we cannot cut down this tree.

C. (1) *Give the principal parts of savoir, and a synopsis in the first person singular.*

(2) **Savoir** followed by an infinitive implies *to be able to do a thing* when the idea involved is *to know how to do a thing*.

1. I can do that; I have learned it. 2. He cannot write, but he can read. 3. Can you play this new piece? It is very pretty. 4. We can play the piano, but we cannot play the violin. 5. This man knows how to construct a large building. 6. John cannot do this problem; can you do it?

D. 1. There has been a collision in the street. 2. Paul wanted to take all the road and he collided with John's car. 3. After the collision, Paul's car could not go any farther; it was damaged too much. 4. John's car was not damaged; consequently he was able to continue his journey. 5. Paul wants John to pay for the repairs, but he does not want to do so. It was not his fault. 6. I believe that Paul cannot drive a car. 7. He did not know how to do it last week. 8. He told me that he wanted to learn, but he could not use the car because his father did not want to give him permission. 9. Paul will say that John is responsible for the accident. 10. He will not be able to make him pay for the repairs because John knows that he is in the right.

V c (§ 230)

Use of *faire, oser, laisser, aller, venir (de)* with Infinitives

A. *Give the principal parts of faire, and a synopsis in the first person singular.*

1. They made me work every day. 2. I am having a suit made. 3. We shall have the windows washed to-morrow. 4. He does not

dare open the door. 5. They let us sleep late when we are tired. 6. They let us do what we wanted to do. 7. He has gone to see his relatives. 8. We shall go to town to buy some shoes. 9. He came to see you. 10. They saw him leave by the window. 11. She has just seen some pretty hats. 12. We had just seen the little boy when you arrived.

B. (1) *Conjugate aller voyager in the present and the imperfect of the indicative.*

(2) *Conjugate venir de voyager in the present and the imperfect indicative.*

1. I am going to write. I have just written. 2. He is going to buy a hat. He has just bought a hat. 3. We are going to sell it. We have just sold it. 4. You are going to speak. You have just spoken. 5. They are going to fall. They have just fallen. 6. I was going to cry. I had just cried. 7. He was going to call me. He had just called me. 8. We were going to eat. We had just eaten.

C. 1. My parents do not dare go out this afternoon. 2. My father has caught cold. 3. Mother says that she will have the doctor come if he is not better to-morrow. 4. When a member of the family has a cold, we make him remain in bed for twenty-four hours. 5. We give him some very hot lemonade. 6. The next day we let him come down in (à) the drawing room and we make him remain quiet. 7. If he dares go out, we send for the doctor and he sends him to bed again for one day. 8. I was going to say two days. 9. I know all that because I have just undergone that experience. 10. My brother has just had the same experience also.

VI (§§ 231-234)

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

A. *Conjugate c'est moi qui parle throughout the indicative, as follows:*

Indicative Mood

PRESENT
c'est moi qui parle
c'est toi qui parles, etc.

PAST INDEFINITE
c'est moi qui ai parlé
c'est toi qui as parlé, etc.

B. 1. (croire) La plupart du monde — l'affaire. 2. (venir) Tout le monde — de bonne heure. 3. (aller) Une partie des citoyens — à l'église. 4. (trouver) Ce sont eux qui — le petit chien. 5. (arriver) Vous et lui — en retard. 6. (parler) Combien de gens lui — ? 7. (se lever) Il y a beaucoup de jeunes gens qui — de bonne heure. 8. (faire) C'est vous qui — cela. 9. (acheter) C'est moi qui — les bonbons. 10. (inviter) Lui et moi — Jean et sa sœur.

C. 1. You and I are good friends, are we not? 2. If that is true, I want to ask you a question. 3. Well, ask your question and, if I can, I shall answer you. 4. Say, John, are you going to have a suit made this spring? 5. Yes, and if my father is willing to give me the money, I want to buy several of them. 6. Everybody likes to have new clothes in the spring. 7. I wish to have several good suits, because I am going to travel this summer with one of my friends. 8. He and I are going to spend a few days with some friends who live in Canada. 9. Most people know that Canada is a large country. 10. We shall be able to hunt, play tennis, and take long rides in the country.

VII (§§ 235-238)

POSITION OF SUBJECT

Interrogative Word Order, Rhetorical Inversions, etc.

A. 1. Is he buying? 2. Was he throwing? 3. Will he buy? 4. Has he thrown? 5. Is she selling? 6. Has she not sold? 7. Does this boy swim? 8. Is that true? 9. Are yours not here? 10. At what time did he come? 11. Which of the two is here? 12. Are you reading? 13. When did he live? 14. Why does John remain here? 15. Where does Mary buy her shoes?

B. 1. (trouver) C'est vous qui — ce canif. 2. (courir) Est-ce que ces athlètes — vite? 3. (manger) Quel chien — la viande? 4. (parler) Pourquoi Marie ne — elle pas à Louise? 5. (appeler) Il — son père à deux heures. 6. (aller) Vos sœurs — en ville? 7. (dire) — nous ce que vos amis ont acheté.

8. (être à) Cette plume — moi. 9. (être à) Ces assiettes — elle. 10. (faire) — attention!

C. 1. Where are you going to spend your vacation this summer, John? 2. I don't know; perhaps I shall go to the country. 3. And you, Henry, where will you be? 4. Probably I shall spend part of my vacation in Paris. 5. Tell me what your cousin will do. 6. Didn't you know that he had gone to Paris with his father? 7. No, why did he leave so soon? 8. He should have waited, at least, until the summer season. 9. It will soon come. 10. Will his father do in Paris what he used to do here?

VIII (§§ 239–241)

THE PASSIVE VOICE

A. (1) *Conjugate throughout être loué(e)(s).*

(2) *Give a negative synopsis of être obéi(e)(s) in the third person plural.*

B. 1. This house has been rented. 2. They say that the thief has been caught. 3. By whom was he caught? 4. The beautiful gardens of Versailles were built by Louis XIV. 5. That mother's order has been disobeyed by her son. 6. Those children have always been praised. 7. Gaul was conquered by Julius Cæsar. 8. His book is published here. 9. He has been deceived more than once. 10. She will be obeyed, will she not?

C. 1. One day Gaul was attacked by the Romans. 2. These Romans were led by Julius Cæsar. 3. He was a celebrated general greatly loved by his soldiers. 4. The Gauls did not want to be conquered by the Romans. 5. Consequently they chose a young man, Vercingétorix, as general. 6. He was chosen because he was brave and because he was not afraid of the Roman soldiers. 7. Vercingétorix assembled an army and went to meet Cæsar. 8. At first the Romans were defeated by Vercingétorix and his soldiers. 9. In order to celebrate this victory many large fires were lighted on the hills. 10. Later the Gauls were defeated by the Romans.

IX (§§ 242-247)

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

A. (1) *Conjugate se flatter in the present and in the past indefinite of the indicative.*

(2) *Conjugate être flatté(e)(s) in the present and the past indefinite of the indicative.*

B. 1. We are hurrying. We have hurried. 2. We go to bed early. We went to bed early. 3. They were flattering themselves. They had flattered themselves. 4. He will get up. He will have gotten up. 5. Get up; don't get up. 6. She is going away. She has gone away. 7. Go away; don't go away. 8. We remember your father (2 ways). 9. They flattered each other. 10. We gave each other some handkerchiefs.

C. 1. I am going to relate to you what Louise did yesterday. 2. She went away at noon and came back at six o'clock in the evening. 3. She dined with the family and after dinner she wrote to her cousin. 4. They have written to each other for a long time. 5. Last week they gave each other some books. 6. Next summer they are going to travel together in Europe. 7. She mailed the letter and then went upstairs to rest. 8. She sat in her large chair, took an apple which was on the table and began to peel it. 9. The knife slipped and she cut herself. 10. Fortunately the cut was not deep.

X (§§ 248-253)

THE IMPERSONAL VERB

Time, Weather, *il y a, il faut*, etc.

Il fait obscur. }
Il fait noir. } It is dark.

Il fait nuit. It is night.

Il fait du soleil. The sun is shining.

Il fait du brouillard. It is foggy.

Il fait bon. It is comfortable (pleasant).

Il est tard. It is late (*the hour*).

Il est en retard. He (it) is late (*person or thing*).

Le (la) voici. Here it is.

Les voilà. There they are.

A. (1) *Conjugate y avoir*. The expression is conjugated only in the third person singular. There is no imperative.

(2) *Conjugate y avoir negatively*.

(3) *Conjugate y avoir interrogatively*.

(4) *Conjugate y avoir negatively and interrogatively*.

1. There is some sugar on the table. 2. There is some in the cupboard also. 3. There isn't any. 4. Is there some bread? 5. Is there some? 6. Isn't there any milk in the glass? 7. Isn't there any? 8. Will there be some flowers in the dining room? 9. Yes, and there will be some in the drawing-room also. 10. There were no boys in my garden.

B. 1. It is thundering. 2. It was freezing. 3. It has snowed. 4. It is ten o'clock. 5. It will be fine weather. 6. It was not windy. 7. It isn't comfortable. 8. Is it not dark? 9. Was it not foggy? 10. It is late; it is noon.

C. *Conjugate falloir*. The verb is conjugated in the third person singular only. There is no imperative.

1. John must leave now because it is late. 2. We shall have to remain in town this evening; the train is late. 3. His friend had to go; it was too cold to remain longer. 4. They will have to buy some umbrellas, for it is raining. 5. It is necessary to wear an overcoat when it is cold. 6. I shall be obliged to remain if I am late.

D. 1. It is cold. I need my shawl. 2. It was cold yesterday and it was necessary to light the fire in the fireplace. 3. No doubt it will be colder this evening. 4. If it freezes, we shall have to light the furnace. 5. Henry, is there some coal in the basement? 6. Yes, mother, and there is also some wood. 7. Must I light the fire in the furnace? 8. No, not now, but bring me my shawl and I shall sit here near the fire. 9. The sun is shining now and it will be comfortable in this room in a little while.

THE INDICATIVE

XI a (§§ 254–257)

Present Indicative. Idiomatic Present. Present after *si*.

A. 1. We get up, we do get up, we are getting up. 2. They are calling the dog. 3. Are they not eating? 4. He always gets up at that time. 5. His son thinks that he is in town. 6. I have been waiting for three weeks. 7. We have been living in this house for two years. 8. This horse has been working since this morning. 9. John has been ill for two weeks. 10. How long has he been sitting near the fire? 11. If he is here, he is ill. 12. He is pleased if he is laughing. 13. If they are in town, they have some money. 14. If he is eating, he has bought some provisions. 15. She has missed her train, if she is at the house.

B. 1. James has been waiting for the postman for two hours. 2. He is expecting a letter with some money from his mother. 3. If the postman does not come soon, he will think that his mother has not written to him. 4. We have been together for six months and James has been without money for ten days. 5. I have lent him ten dollars, but he does not want to borrow. 6. James looks at the clock and he sees that it is now eleven o'clock. 7. He says that the postman is late and that he has been late three times. 8. If he does not arrive in a half hour, he has gone by. 9. At last there he is. 10. He is speaking to one of the neighbors whom he has known for twenty years.

XI b (§§ 258–262)

The Imperfect, Past Indefinite, Past Definite, Pluperfect and Past Anterior

A. (1) Imperfect to denote what was happening; what used to happen, etc.

1. He was running when I saw him. 2. You were sleeping when we arrived. 3. She was playing the piano while I was eating. 4. It was snowing when they arrived. 5. The children used to get

up early. 6. The Gauls used to live in houses made with earth and covered with straw.

(2) Idiomatic imperfect with *il y a depuis*, etc.

1. James had been without money for ten days when his letter came. 2. I had been at home for two weeks when he saw me. 3. We had been saying so for six months. 4. This poor horse had been running for three hours when it fell dead. 5. He had been ill for ten days when he called the doctor. 6. He had been married two months when his wife died.

(3) Imperfect in the *si* clause when the conditional is in the result clause of a conditional sentence.

1. If he were ill, we should be sorry. 2. James would play the flute if he were here. 3. They would not go out if it should rain. 4. If she had no money, would you give her some? 5. Wouldn't they go in if the door were open? 6. The newspapers would be more interesting if they contained less news about (*de*) crime.

B. Past indefinite, denoting what has happened, as conversational past, after *si* in a conditional sentence, etc.

1. This man has sold his house. 2. They have seen the President of the United States. 3. They found the little dog. 4. Mary says that George has bought a new automobile. 5. John, have you closed the door? 6. Yes, mother, and I have closed the windows also.

C. Past definite denoting past events in literary style.

1. One time Hastings wanted to take a city. 2. The walls of this city were very high. 3. Hastings saw that he could never take it. 4. He had an idea. 5. He sent a messenger to the Bishop of the city and he told him that Hastings was dead and that before dying he had said that he wanted to be buried in the city. 6. The Bishop believed it and allowed the coffin of Hastings to enter. 7. Hastings placed himself alive in the coffin. 8. When he was in the city, he came out of the coffin and began to fight the inhabitants with his men.

D. 1. This morning, while I was taking a walk I met a man. 2. This man was a former soldier; he had been to war. 3. We

spoke about the weather and, as I was going to leave, he asked me if I wanted to hear him relate one of his war stories. 4. I told him that I should be very glad to hear it since he was willing to tell it to me. 5. We sat down under a large tree and he told me how a dog had saved his life. 6. "It was during the Great War," said he. 7. "We were in the midst of a great battle. 8. All of a sudden, I was struck by a bullet. 9. When I came to, it was dark and it was raining, but I was not alone. 10. Rover, the faithful dog of the regiment, had found me. 11. As soon as he had noticed that I was still alive, he went away at full speed. 12. A few minutes later, he returned with the patrol. 13. If that faithful dog had not found me, I should be dead to-day."

XI c (§§ 263-267)

Future, Future Anterior, Conditional, Conditional Anterior. Imperative

A. Future to denote what will happen, used when future time is implied after *quand, lorsque, aussitôt que*; future anterior.

1. We shall go for a walk to-morrow. 2. It will not rain now. 3. Will he buy that house? 4. He will talk to his neighbors, will he not? 5. When he comes he will be late. 6. As soon as they arrive, I shall give it to them. 7. When we go to bed, we shall put out the fire. 8. She will be hungry when she comes.

B. Conditional in conditional sentences, etc.; conditional anterior.

1. This man would be glad if his brother were alive. 2. He would speak, if he had the time. 3. Would you like to go out this evening, George? 4. I ought to see my friends. 5. He thought it would snow to-day. 6. She would have written to her, if she had known that she was in town.

C. Imperative.

Qu'il le lise.

Let him read it.

Qu'ils les achètent.

Let them buy them.

1. Let us take pity on that poor boy, he is ill. 2. Go away, you are not telling the truth. 3. Let us go and see the airplane. 4. Do

not give him that cup; he will lose it. 5. Let her get up; it is late. 6. Let them call, they have good voices.

D. 1. Paul, my father told me that if I work well this year, he will buy me a car. 2. I said to him that I should apply myself because I did not want to lose that opportunity. 3. I shall go to the country if I receive this car. 4. The country pleases me because the roads are not always full of people. 5. Will you drive fast when you have your car, John? 6. Come now, I haven't it yet. 7. As soon as I have it, I shall learn to drive it. 8. I should not dare drive fast because my father would not be pleased.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

XII a (§§ 268-269)

Use of Subjunctive

A. 1. We want him to come with us. 2. He prefers that we go away. 3. They prefer that I call them early. 4. Do you want us to succeed? 5. This little boy wants his sister to buy him some candy. 6. She deserves that her parents buy her what she wants. 7. I approve of his remaining with his aunt. 8. It is better for us to leave early to-morrow morning. 9. He is anxious that I see his cousin when I am in Paris. 10. It is fitting for us to send flowers to those who are ill. 11. We are glad that you are going to Paris. 12. They regret that their friends are not here. 13. He is ashamed that he does not write well. 14. She is angry that you do not speak to her brother. 15. It is a pity that this young man is not educated. 16. He doubts that we are French. 17. We deny that you told it to him. 18. It is possible that he has gone to town. 19. Are you sure that she has wept? 20. Does he hope that I shall find his purse?

B. 1. Mr. B. wants us to see his garden. 2. It seems to him that it is very fine. 3. I do not believe that I can look at it this week. 4. It is a pity that we live in the country. 5. I shall be very glad when we live in town. 6. In winter when it is cold I do not get up early. 7. My parents prefer that I sleep later in winter because in

summer I must arise with the sun. 8. It is evident that we shall remain here this year; my father has not sold his farm.

XII b (§§ 270–271)

A. Subjunctive in adjectival clauses when purpose regarding the antecedent or unattained result is implied.

1. He wants a pen that writes well. 2. He has a pen that writes well. 3. We are looking for a house which is near the University. 4. We have found a house which is near the University. 5. James is asking for a book which is interesting.

B. Subjunctive in adjectival clauses when the principal clause contains negation, etc.

1. There are no cars that go faster than mine. 2. We have no chairs that are more comfortable than Paul's chair. 3. Here are the only friends that he has. 4. The first book that we ever read is in the library. 5. It is the last thing that he ever did.

C. Subjunctive with concessive force in compound relative and indefinite clauses (*whoever, whatever, etc.*).

1. Whoever you are, do not speak. 2. Whatever you do, do not lose your purse. 3. Whatever be your reasons, we cannot go with you. 4. Whatever we do we must not be late. 5. Whoever you are, come in.

D. Subjunctive in adverbial clauses.

1. He will come before we leave. 2. They are playing tennis while waiting for us to dine. 3. I shall go with you until you meet your brother. 4. They are going to town in order that I may buy some shoes. 5. He is going to call you for fear that you will sleep too late.

E. 1. To-morrow is my mother's birthday. 2. I want to give her a present. 3. Whatever I do, I must not give her something which will not be useful. 4. My mother is the best friend that I have. 5. She deserves that I give her the best present possible. 6. Let's see! What could I give her? I have it (*l'affaire*). 7. My mother needs a watch. 8. But good watches are expensive.

9. Never mind, I shall buy her a watch that will please her. 10. In order that this watch be good enough, it must cost not less than (de) fifty dollars.

XII c (§§ 272–273)

Subjunctive in Principal Clauses. Tense Sequence

A. 1. Long live France! France is a beautiful country. 2. Long live England! England is strong and powerful. 3. Long live Canada! Canada is a large and beautiful country. 4. Long live the United States! It is a young and vigorous country. 5. May God be praised! The child has been saved.

B. 1. We doubt that he is coming. 2. You doubt that he has come. 3. Do you believe that she is coming? 4. I do not believe that she has arrived. 5. Even though he is buying a boat, he will not go out often. 6. Even though he has bought a car, he will not drive fast. 7. He is afraid that we shall not come. 8. She is afraid that they have not come.

C. 1. I do not believe there are many people who have not heard of Lindbergh. 2. It is he who flew from New York to Paris. 3. His plane was called "The Spirit of Saint Louis." 4. Many people doubted that he would succeed. 5. Some laughed at him. 6. The perils in his pathway were great and numerous. 7. He had to combat the wind and the storms. 8. But nothing could conquer his superb courage. 9. To avoid the storms he ascended or descended. 10. Now he was flying high, now he was flying low. 11. But always forward over the dark and deep waters. 12. Finally he reached the Bourget (Field). 13. Paris gave him the most enthusiastic welcome he had ever had. 14. The Parisians cried, "Long live Lindbergh! Long live the United States! Long live France!"

XIII (§§ 274–275)

THE CONDITIONAL

Simple Tenses

A. 1. We should write to them if we had time. 2. If he were here, they would tell you. 3. It would snow if it were colder. 4. If

the weather were warmer, I should go to the country with my friends who came from Paris. 5. The children would be glad if they should find the little cat. 6. If I could go with them, that would give them much pleasure. 7. The horse could not draw well if he were not well harnessed. 8. Would it snow if it were not cold? 9. If we were in his place, we should send for the doctor. 10. If he were tired, he would sit down for a few moments.

B.

December 12, 1931.

Dear James,

1. My aunt wants me to spend a week with her in the country next summer. 2. If you have not left for Europe, she wants you to come also. 3. If you should come, we should have a good time. 4. My aunt is a charming woman. 5. She would be delighted to see you. 6. My cousin (*f.*) is charming also. 7. She has pretty blue eyes. 8. She often speaks of you. 9. I believe that she likes you, James. 10. I am not joking. 11. My father says that he would go also, if he had time. 12. He is always busy; he scarcely amuses himself. 13. He says that he would sell his business if he had earned enough money to raise his children and to live at ease. 14. You know, James, that living is dear in the city. 15. I believe that my father would have sold his business last year if he had known that he would never be free. 16. I hope that you will answer my letter immediately and that you will accept my invitation.

Your sincere friend,
Henry.

THE INFINITIVE

XIV a (§§ 276-279)

A. Infinitive without preposition.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. To want to dine. | He wants to dine early. |
| 2. To prefer to sleep. | We prefer to sleep to-morrow morning. |
| 3. To want to get up. | He does not want to get up. |
| 4. To be going to buy. | They are going to buy a boat. |
| 5. To be useless to speak. | It is useless for him to speak; I cannot hear him. |

B. Infinitives taking à.

- | | |
|-----------------------|---|
| 1. To begin to eat. | He began to eat at five o'clock. |
| 2. To like to sing. | We used to like to sing in the evening. |
| 3. To happen to find. | If I happen to find your friend,
I shall give him this book. |
| 4. To learn to play. | She is learning to play the piano. |
| 5. To expect to see. | We expect to see our parents. |

C. Infinitives with à as a complement of certain adjectives and nouns to form adjectival phrases.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. To be good to eat. | These apples are good to eat. |
| 2. To be ready to sing. | Are they ready to sing? |
| 3. To have something to do. | We have something to do this evening. |
| 4. To have a letter to write. | I have five letters to write. |
| 5. To be the only one to speak. | He was the only one to speak. |

D. ✓

December 16, 1931.

Dear Henry,

1. I cannot describe the joy that you gave me by inviting me to accompany you to your aunt's home. 2. I assure you that I prefer to spend my vacation in the country rather than to (*que de*) remain in town. 3. Since I have received your letter I have done nothing but (*que*) think about what we are going to do. 4. I like to run in the fields and I like to look for nests. 5. But I prefer to sit near the pond to watch the ducks swim. 6. I see you laughing and I hear you say that, if I were telling the truth, I should say that I prefer to chat with your cousin. 7. Well, continue to laugh. You will see later. Seeing is believing. 8. We shall be able to take long walks. 9. I want to learn to jump because I want to become an athlete. 10. I like to sing and to play the clarinet. 11. I know that your cousin can play the piano. 12. We shall have a good time singing together. 13. Well, I must stop now. 14. I cannot thank you enough for having thought of me.

Your sincere friend,
James.

XIV b (§§ 280-281)

A. (1) Infinitives with **de** as logical subject of impersonal verbs and as complements of most adjectives and nouns.

1. It is difficult to do that. 2. Is it not important to finish this book? 3. It is certain to rain this evening. 4. It becomes her well to dress that way. 5. We felt like laughing when we saw the picture. 6. The necessity of remaining is greater than the necessity of going.

(2) Expressions with **avoir**.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. To need some money. | John needs money. |
| 2. To need shoes. | This man needs shoes. |
| 3. To be ashamed of one's conduct. | He is ashamed of his conduct. |
| 4. To be ashamed of her room. | Mary is not ashamed of her room. |
| 5. To be afraid of the dogs. | The children are afraid of those dogs. |

(3) After verbs as object or complement; after **que de** in the second member of a comparison.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. To take care not to fall. | She will take care not to fall. |
| 2. To excuse oneself for not getting up. | They excused themselves for not getting up. |
| 3. To blame oneself for having gone away. | We blamed ourselves for having gone away. |
| 4. To promise to come. | They have promised to come on time. |
| 5. To command to open. | Command him to open the door. |
| 6. To stop crying. | The little girl will stop crying. |
| 7. To be more important than. | It is more important to sell this house than to buy that one. |

B. 1. Well, James, we are back from our trip in the country. 2. What do you think of our visit? 3. It is the best vacation that I have ever had. 4. Your aunt and your uncle are charming. 5. And my cousin, is she not charming also? 6. Well, James, hasten to reply; it is your turn to speak. 7. Do not make me blush. 8. I see that you want to tease me. 9. Well, some time ago, you told me in your letter that you preferred to sit by the pond to watch the ducks swim rather than to run in the fields. 10. You also said

"Seeing is believing." 11. I have seen, now I believe. 12. Was I wrong in believing that you would prefer to chat with my cousin rather than to watch the ducks swim?

XIV c (§§ 282-285)

A. (1) Infinitives after **par, pour, sans**.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. To begin by getting up. | I shall begin by getting up early. |
| 2. To begin by calling. | They began by calling the children. |
| 3. To study in order to know how to play. | She studies in order to know how to play the piano. |
| 4. To run to be able to catch. | He is running to be able to catch the train. |
| 5. To leave without speaking. | He will not leave without speaking to me. |
| 6. To enter without knocking. | One should not enter a house without knocking. |

(2) Perfect infinitive after **après, sans, pour**.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. After having dined. | We went to town after having dined. |
| 2. After calling the dog. | After calling the dog, he left for the hunt. |
| 3. Without having paid. | He left town without having paid his debts. |
| 4. To be punished for having lost. | She will be punished for having lost her watch. |
| 5. To be loved for having been good. | That woman is loved for having been a good mother. |

B. Infinitive for subordinate clauses, passive force.

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 1. To tell to go away. | I shall tell the man to go away. |
| 2. To be afraid to cross. | They are afraid to cross the bridge. |
| 3. To run in order to win. | He will run in order to win the race. |
| 4. To call before leaving. | I shall call you before leaving tomorrow. |
| 5. To read in order to know. | She read the book in order to know the story. |

C. 1. Yesterday I went to the park after having dined. 2. I left without knowing whether I had some money in my pocket. 3. Fortunately for me, I had not left without having some. 4. I started by renting a boat and I began to row on the lake. 5. I had been rowing for half an hour when I met a friend of mine. 6. He had been rowing for two hours. 7. Consequently he was very hungry and he did not want to continue rowing without eating. 8. He said that he did not live to eat, but that it was necessary to eat to live. 9. We tied our boats in order to go to a restaurant near the lake. 10. We began by eating soup; then we ordered several good things and we finished by eating some peaches.

XV a (§§ 286-287)

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

A. As a verbal adjective, etc.

1. That man does good to the living and to the dying. 2. A living dog is better than a dying horse. 3. Running water is better to drink than stagnant water. 4. Do not be afraid of his threatening words. 5. She is a powerful woman.

B. Gerund with *en*.

1. He reads the paper while eating. 2. One learns to play the piano by playing the piano. 3. Upon arriving she began to laugh aloud. 4. While saying that, I am not making fun of you. 5. They are going away singing.

C. After verbs of perception, etc., the relative or the infinitive construction replaces the participle. Compound nouns in *-ing*.

1. We saw them coming at full speed. 2. He heard us laughing in the corridor. 3. I shall see the parade passing near our house. 4. He has bought a typewriter. 5. She has sold her sewing machine.

D. 1. When I was a little boy, I lost my watch in a wheat field while running after a cow. 2. I looked for it for some time, but I did not succeed in finding it. 3. I returned to the house and told my father that I had lost my watch in the wheat field while trying to stop a cow which had broken loose. 4. My father told me to cease

crying, that the watch would be found while cutting the wheat. 5. Still weeping, I replied that the watch would be damaged by the rain. 6. Taking me in his arms, he embraced me like a loving father. 7. Then he said that, as I had lost my watch while doing my duty, he would buy me another. 8. Having listened to his comforting words, I ceased crying knowing that my father was a man of his word and that he would do what he had promised.

XV b (§§ 288-292)

A. The past participle with **être** agrees with the subject, only in the passive voice and in the **aller-venir** group of verbs.

(a) 1. (*We left*) de bonne heure. 2. Étant fatiguée (*she remained*) chez elle. 3. Mes parents (*have been invited*) au dîner. 4. La porte (*will be closed*) à dix heures. 5. (*She died*) il y a dix jours. 6. Votre lettre (*has been received*).

(b) 1. John has arrived, but Mary has not yet arrived. 2. Having been invited, she left early. 3. Having fallen once, we did not go up the second time. 4. The children had gone to town. 5. The lady has been bitten by a dog. 6. Our parents remained at home, but we went to the park.

B. The past participle with **avoir** agrees with the preceding direct object.

(a) 1. He sold the house; he sold it. 2. We have found the roses; we have found them. 3. John has bought the basket; he has bought it. 4. You have invited the boys; you have invited them.

(b) 1. La dame (*whom we saw*) est riche. 2. Les roses (*which they bought*) sont blanches. 3. Les garçons (*whom we invited*) sont arrivés. 4. Quelle viande (*have you ordered*)? 5. Laquelle de ces tasses (*has she broken*)? 6. Combien de pommes (*have they eaten*)? 7. Voici deux grandes tables; (*which one did you buy*)? 8. J'ai acheté celle que (*you have put*) dans votre chambre.

C. The past participle of reflexive verbs agrees with the preceding direct object.

(a) 1. Jean (*got up*) de bonne heure. 2. Les garçons (*got up*) à six heures. 3. Marie (*had a good time*) à Paris. 4. Les jeunes filles (*had a good time*) à Londres. 5. Ma mère (*cut her finger*) ce matin.

6. Mes sœurs (*washed their hands*) à l'eau froide. 7. La peine (*which he gave himself*) est perdue. 8. Les chaises (*which I bought (for) myself*) sont arrivées.

(b) 1. Paul and Mary hurried. 2. The men cut themselves this morning. 3. We stopped near the house. 4. The boys dressed in (en) two minutes. 5. The dress which she bought (for) herself is very pretty. 6. The maid burned her hand. 7. Paul bit his tongue. 8. She did not break her finger.

D. 1. This morning Mary and Louise went to the shop. 2. They asked the grocer if he had some strawberries picked this morning. 3. He looked at them astonished and replied that the strawberry season was past. 4. He added that he had some good oranges, bought the previous day. 5. They examined them and found that they were very good. 6. They bought a dozen (of them) and left the shop. 7. On the way Mary fell, but she got up immediately. 8. They thought that she had hurt her hand, but they were mistaken. 9. The two young ladies resumed their journey and arrived at the house a little before noon.

XVI (§§ 293-299)

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS

Transitives and Intransitives. Predicative Complement. Prepositional Complement

A. 1. They have given back the boat to the boy. 2. We shall relate a story to the little girl. 3. He did not advise his brother to go to the farm. 4. We were not laughing at Paul. 5. They are now reading to the visitors.

B. 1. They are Irishmen and we are Scotchmen. 2. Your cousins are Americans and mine are Canadians. 3. Henry's wife is English, is she not? 4. No, she is French; at least her parents are French. 5. Mr. Brown is a doctor and his father is a lawyer. 6. His grandfather was a judge.

C. 1. The family enjoyed the vacation last summer. 2. His son needs a pair of gloves. 3. We use a brush to clean our shoes. 4. Let

us allow the boy to fly his kite. 5. Let us obey our parents; they are our best friends. 6. A good citizen obeys the law of his country. 7. That dress suits your sister. 8. He is asking his father for some money.

D. 1. Mother, do you remember Henry? 2. Well, I am sorry to tell you, but he is a good-for-nothing. 3. Paul, why do you slander that boy? 4. One does not speak thus of people. 5. What did he do to you? 6. He told me that I considered myself better than the others. 7. What did you answer him? 8. I asked him if he still grieved at the loss of his dog. 9. You are not enemies for that. 10. I told him also that he needed new clothes and that he could not be congratulated on the house in which he lived. 11. Paul, why did you meddle with his affairs? 12. His mother has remained a widow and she is doing her best to raise her family.

THE NOUN

XVII a (§§ 300–306)

A. Nouns and their gender.

I	II	III
Je vois	Nous aimons	Il a vendu
1. her husband.	liberty.	an egg
2. his wife.	truth.	a paper.
3. our companion.	virtue.	a pair of gloves.
4. the general.	honesty.	a jewel.
5. the horse.	peace.	a toy.

B. 1. The man called the boy three times. 2. Virtue is better than glory. 3. What is the color of iron? 4. He gave the boy half of his apple. 5. The critic wrote a good criticism. 6. She is a victim of fear. 7. Patrick Henry said: "Give me liberty or give me death." 8. Here are the oxen arriving.

C. 1. Mary is an angel! Without her my brother would have been the victim of an accident. 2. I am glad of it; her cousin and my brother are comrades. 3. They are reading together the works of Lamartine. 4. Lamartine, as you know, was one of the

famous French poets. 5. Furthermore, Mary's aunt and her uncle invite us often to their home. 6. We spend half of our vacation with them on the farm. 7. We like the country because the landscape is beautiful and the air is pure. 8. The farm belongs to my aunt; but my uncle owns the house in the city.

XVII b (§§ 307-314)

A. Nouns and their number.

I	II	III
J'entends	Il a acheté	Savez-vous que
1. a voice.	an egg.	he is French?
2. two voices.	some eggs.	she is French?
3. a horse.	a stamp.	they (<i>m.</i>) are French?
4. some horses.	some stamps.	they (<i>f.</i>) are French?
5. an ox.	a paper.	we are English?

B. 1. It is clear, and the sky is blue. 2. That artist paints beautiful skies. 3. We are French, but they are English. 4. She has blue eyes. 5. The poor child has lost an eye. 6. Do you like the works of Racine? 7. Yes, and I like the works of Molière also. 8. These ladies are French, are they not?

C. 1. This morning, James and Joseph, while taking a ride on horseback, met two young ladies. 2. They were also on horseback, and they were looking for something. 3. The boys asked them if they had lost anything. 4. They replied that they were looking for a little dog named Carlo. 5. The boys had not seen the animal; nevertheless they offered to assist them in looking for their dog. 6. The boys set out with them and they all began to look for the dog. 7. These young ladies were charming. 8. They had blue eyes, brown hair, and gentle voices.

THE ARTICLE

XVIII a (§§ 315-324)

A. Agreement and repetition.

(1) *Repeat the verb form at the head of each column with each expression in that column:*

I

He is speaking

1. to the boy.
2. to the man.
3. to the officer.
4. to the girl.
5. to Mary's friend.

II

She spoke

- of the boy.
- of the man.
- of the officer.
- of the girl.
- of Mary's friend.

III

We were speaking

- to a gentleman.
- to a lady.
- of a gentleman.
- of a lady.
- with a friend (*m.*)

(2) Use in general.

1. That man has Job's patience. 2. We like the beautiful country. 3. Boys like apples; girls like them also. 4. Peace is better than war. 5. A faithful dog is a good friend. 6. Although he does not know English, he speaks French very well. 7. We are going to Paris in order to learn to speak the French language. 8. Horses, cows, sheep, and pigs are the animals which the farmers raise on the farm.

B. The simple partitive construction.

avoir du sucre, to have sugar

en avoir, to have some

J'ai du sucre;

I have some sugar;

j'en ai;

I have some;

je n'en ai pas

I haven't any

I

You have

1. some sugar.
2. some meat.
3. some ink.
4. some histories.
5. some plates.

II

We haven't

- any sugar.
- any meat.
- any ink.
- any histories.
- any plates.

III

He has

- (some) good sugar.
- good meat.
- good ink.
- good histories.
- good plates.

IV

She has

1. (some) white sugar.
2. (some) white bread.
3. fresh meat.
4. French histories.
5. clean plates.

V

I have some also.

He has some also.

Has he any?

Have we some also?

Have you some also?

VI

I haven't any.

He hasn't any.

Hasn't he any?

Haven't we any?

Haven't you any?

XVIII b (§§ 325-327)

A. (1) The partitive after adverbs of quantity.

avoir beaucoup d'argent
to have a lot of money

en avoir beaucoup
to have a lot of it

avoir autant de poires que de pommes
to have as many pears as apples

avoir autant de pommes que Marie
to have as many apples as Mary

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. to have many friends. | He has many friends. |
| 2. to have many of them. | She has many of them also. |
| 3. to buy enough bread. | We bought enough bread. |
| 4. to buy enough (of it). | They bought enough (of it). |
| 5. to have little ink. | John has little ink. |
| 6. to have little (of it). | Mary has little (of it) also. |
| 7. to make too much coffee. | The cook has made too much coffee. |
| 8. to make too much (of it). | She made too much (of it). |
| 9. to have less money. | Henry has less money than Paul. |
| 10. to have less (of it). | We have less (of it) than they. |

(2) The partitive with expressions of quantity, measure, number, etc.

I	II	III
We have	You have	They haven't
1. a piece of chocolate.	a piece also.	a single piece of it.
2. a box of candy.	two boxes of it.	three boxes of it.
3. a pound of meat.	four pounds of it.	a pound of it.
4. a dozen pears.	a dozen also.	a dozen of them.
5. a glass of milk.	a glass of it.	two glasses of it.
6. a million stamps.	a million of them.	a million of them.

B. 1. Baron de Dietrich, Mayor of Strasburg, loved music. 2. He used to invite friends to spend the evening with him. 3. One of these friends was called Rouget de Lisle. 4. This young officer was an excellent musician and he amused himself by composing pieces of music during his leisure hours. 5. One evening Rouget de Lisle and other friends were in the Baron's home. 6. They were

speaking of the ceremony which was to take place in honor of the soldiers of the army of the Rhine, and, turning toward Rouget de Lisle, the Baron said: "Come now, de Lisle! compose us something for this army." 7. "I shall try," replied Rouget de Lisle. 8. That night he began to think. 9. He thinks, he plays, he sings; but he does not write anything. 10. Finally overcome by fatigue he falls asleep. 11. The next morning, upon awakening, the words and the music came to him as though he had had a dream. 12. Little by little, he wrote them down. 13. There he is hurrying to show the Baron what he has done. 14. He enters and shows him his composition. 15. The Baron's daughter plays the piano and Rouget de Lisle sings the song. 16. The song is accepted and is named "Chant de guerre de l'armée du Rhin." 17. A battalion of soldiers from Marseilles sang it upon entering Paris. 18. From that day the song of Rouget de Lisle composed in 1792 became the national song of France and was called "La Marseillaise."

XVIII c (§§ 328-335)

A. With names of countries; for possession, etc.

I	II	III
Nous allons	Nous venons	Nous aimons
1. to France.	from France.	France.
2. to Paris.	from Paris.	Paris.
3. to England.	from England.	England.
4. to Germany.	from Germany.	Germany.
5. to South America.	from South America.	South America.
6. to the United States.	from the United States.	the United States.

Repeat the verb with each expression whenever possible.

B. 1. Il a (*a headache*), (*the toothache*), (*a sore foot*). 2. Cela coûte dix francs (*a pound*), (*a dozen*), (*a piece*). 3. Il est (*in France*), (*in Paris*), (*on board the boat*). 4. Elle était (*without friends*), (*without money*). 5. Il s'est cassé (*his finger*), (*his fingers*), (*his arm*), (*his arms*). 6. Elle a (*blue eyes*), (*black hair*), (*rosy cheeks*).

C. 1. Next summer, John and his wife are going to Europe for their wedding trip. 2. They intend to leave at the beginning of

June for Chicago where they will spend a few days with a rich aunt of the bride. 3. From Chicago they will go to Montreal. 4. Montreal is an important city and one should spend a few days there. 5. They will take the boat in Montreal for Le Havre. 6. They intend to spend much of their time in France, especially in Paris. 7. They like France very much. 8. One can find there a cool place in summer and a comfortable place in winter. 9. From France they will go to Switzerland, to Germany, and to Italy. 10. They will leave Italy to go to Paris where they will make some purchases before leaving France. 11. They will go to England to spend several weeks in London, where they will visit the British Museum, the Tower of London, and other interesting places. 12. They hope to see the King and the Queen of England, and the Prince of Wales. 13. They will leave London for Liverpool where they will take the boat for the United States.

THE ADJECTIVE

XIX (§§ 336-344)

Agreement

A. *Use the subject of each group with each expression of that group:*

I	II	III	IV
Cet homme	Cette femme	Son livre	Sa table
1. is tall.	is tall.	is white.	is white.
2. is active.	is active.	is long.	is long.
3. is happy.	is happy.	is old.	is old.
4. is brown.	is brown.	is heavy.	is heavy.
5. is cruel.	is cruel.	is small.	is small.
6. is old.	is old.	is new.	is new.

B. 1. We saw some Frenchmen (some Frenchwomen). 2. They like cold seasons (warm seasons), (cool seasons). 3. This man has fresh eggs (old potatoes), (new potatoes). 4. Those ladies are happy (American), (Canadian). 5. He found a pretty little red pocketbook. 6. We have just eaten cold meat and potatoes. 7. Here is a pretty square table.

C. 1. When one speaks of a person, one says he is loyal or she is loyal. 2. If they are friendly people, he is a friendly man and she is a friendly woman. 3. If he is generous and she is generous also, then they are two generous persons. 4. If they are good parents, they say, "my dear son" and "my dear daughter." 5. If the children are obedient, the son is obedient and the daughter is obedient too. 6. If they are both French, the son is French and the daughter is French too. 7. If she has blue eyes and his eyes are brown, their eyes are of a different color. 8. If they are not more than sixteen years old, he is a minor and she is a minor.

XX (§§ 345-358)

Comparison, Position, etc. Prepositional Complements

A. (1) Compare **bon** in the singular and plural. Compare **bonne** in the singular and plural.

(2) Repeat the subject with the adjective of each group:

I	II	III	IV
Son frère	Sa sœur	Ses frères	Ses sœurs
1. is good.	is good.	are good.	are good.
2. is better.	is better.	are better.	are better.
3. is the best.	is the best.	are the best.	are the best.
4. is bad.	is bad.	are bad.	are bad.
5. is worse.	is worse.	are worse.	are worse.
6. is the worst.	is the worst.	are the worst.	are the worst.

(3) 1. Elle est (*older*), (*younger*), (*more learned*) que Jean. 2. Jean est (*the best in the house*), (*the oldest in town*). 3. Marie n'était pas (*so courageous*), (*so generous*) que Paul. 4. C'est (*the best lawyer*), (*the worst writer in the United States*). 5. Elle a acheté (*a large square table*), (*a small round table*). 6. Marie est (*polite towards all*), (*pleased at your success*).

B. 1. Vous (*are clever in business*), (*are pleased at your brother's success*). 2. Elle (*is known to all*), (*loved by all*), (*worthy of that honor*). 3. Ce pays (*is rich in coal*), (*poor in copper and lead*). 4. Sa mère (*is charitable to the poor*), (*generous to the church*).

C. 1. There are eight persons in Mr. B.'s family; the father, the mother, three sons, and three daughters. 2. The boys are named Paul, Henry, and James, and the girls, Mary, Louise, and Helen. 3. James is fifteen, Henry is older, but Paul is the oldest of the boys. 4. Helen is eighteen, Louise is older than Helen, but younger than Mary. 5. Mary is the oldest of the girls and the oldest of all the children. 6. Her age will not be told because young ladies do not want their ages to be known after they have passed their twentieth birthday.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUN

XXI a (§§ 359-373)

Order of Pronouns before the Verb or the Auxiliary

A. (1) Conjunctive pronouns with one verb.

I	II	III	IV
He gave (<i>m.</i>)	She had given (<i>m.</i>)	They sent (<i>f.</i>)	They had sent (<i>f.</i>)
1. it to me.	them to me.	it to me.	them to me.
2. it to him.	them to him.	it to him.	them to him.
3. it to them.	them to them.	them to them.	them to them.
V	VI	VII	VIII
Give (<i>m.</i>)	Don't give (<i>f.</i>)	Let's give	Let's not give
1. it to me.	it to me.	them to him.	them to him.
2. it to him.	it to him.	them to her.	them to her.
3. it to her.	it to her.	them to them.	them to them.

(2) With more than one verb the pronoun precedes the verb of which it is the object.

I	II	III
He is going to give	He has just given	He wants
1. it to me.	them to me.	him to give it to her.
2. it to him.	them to him.	her to sell them to us.
3. it to them.	them to them.	them to announce it to her.

IV

They will tell

1. him to give it to her.
2. her to sell them to him.
3. you to send it to them.
4. them to write them to me.

V

He has not persuaded

- me to sell it to him.
- him to give it to you.
- her to rent them to us.
- us to write it to them.

(3) 1. John is going to sell his bicycle to Henry. 2. He is going to sell it to him. 3. John has sold his bicycle to Henry. He has sold it to him. 4. We are sending some letters to the boys. 5. We have sent them to them. 6. Do not pay the man for the trunks. Do not pay him for them. 7. We have not asked his friend for the tables. We did not ask him for them. 8. He did not give them to us. 9. If they give them to me, I shall sell them to you. 10. Are you tired? We are. 11. They are English, are they not? They are.

XXI b (§§ 359–373)

A. The disjunctive pronoun.

(1) Used absolutely; after **que**; in apposition, etc.

1. Who is making that noise? He. She. We. You. They.
2. Who has lost this pocketbook? They. You. We. She. He.
- I. 3. Whom did he invite? Me. You. Us. Him. Her. Them.
4. He has more money than I, than he, than she, than we, than you, than they. 5. She is more generous than they, than you, than we, than she, than he, than I. 6. She is as interesting as I, as he, as she, as we, as you, as they.

(2) As logical subject after **ce** + **être**.

I

1. It is I who spoke.
2. It was he who read.
3. It is she who will sing.
4. It is we who should get up.
5. It was you who remained.
6. It was they who were hurrying.

II

- It is I who gave it to him.
- It was he who sold them to her.
- It will be she who will sell it to you.
- It is we who should write it to them.
- It is you who told it to us.
- It is they who rented them to them.

(3) After prepositions

I	II	III
He is going	They speak	This book
1. to (chez) my house.	of me.	is (être à) mine.
2. to his house.	for them.	was his.
3. to her house.	of them (<i>m.</i>)	will be hers.
4. to our house.	of them (<i>f.</i>)	is theirs.

(4) When **me**, **te**, **se**, **nous** or **vous** is the direct object, the indirect object pronoun must be disjunctive after **à**.

I	II	III	IV
They presented me	He presented himself	She presented us	He will present you
1. to him.	to me.	to him.	to me.
2. to her.	to him.	to her.	to him.
3. to you.	to her.	to you.	to her.
4. to them (<i>m.</i>).	to us.	to them (<i>m.</i>).	to us.

B. 1. It is already ten o'clock and Henry has not yet arrived with my bicycle. 2. Paul is here and I promised him yesterday to lend it to him to-day at ten o'clock. 3. Wait a few moments, Paul, and I shall do my best to find him. 4. When I find him, I shall speak to him of his negligence. 5. It is he who took my bicycle three days ago and kept it all the afternoon. 6. The bicycle is not his; he has not bought it, and he ought not to act as though I had sold it to him. 7. He ought to think a little more about his friends. 8. He (to) worry! it's all the same to him. 9. What's the use of looking for him! 10. He will come when he wants to.

XXI c (§ 367)

A. (1) Use of **en** referring to antecedent with **de**.

I	II
He comes from	They come from
1. Paris.	Mexico. Do you come from there?
2. France.	Ireland. Does he come from there?
3. England.	Canada. Don't we come from there?
4. Scotland.	Chicago. No. They don't come from there.

(2) **En** replacing **de** and its complement; with **il y a**.

I	II	III	IV
He (she) needs	I need	Do you (they)	Do we (they) not
1. money.	some ¹ also.	need some? ¹	need any? ¹
2. the money.	it also.	need it?	need it?
3. ink.	some also.	need some?	need any?
4. the ink.	it also.	need it?	need it?

V	VI	VII
She is speaking	He is not speaking	Are we not speaking
1. of the presents.	of them to John.	of them to him?
2. of her parents.	of them to him.	of them to her?
3. of his cousin.	of them to her.	of him to her?
4. of the man.	of him to me.	of him to you?

VIII	IX	X
There is (are)	There is (are) some	There isn't (aren't) any
1. apples in the box.	on the table.	in the drawer.
2. boys here.	in the field.	in the yard.
3. sugar on the table.	in the cup.	in the glass.
4. milk in the glass.	in the glass.	on the table.

XI	XII
Is (are) there any	Isn't (aren't) there any
1. in your father's basement?	in John's drawer?
2. on your uncle's farm?	in the parlor?
3. at the little shop?	in the cupboard?
4. in the cupboard?	in Mary's glass?

B. 1. This woman loves her children, and she is loved by them.
 2. Let me see! Where are we? 3. I know. We were speaking of the horses. 4. We spoke to John about them and he said that he would answer for them. 5. We have found the pocketbook and we are glad of it. 6. We shall speak of it to Mary, with pleasure. 7. They like to speak of it from time to time. 8. Did he ask you many questions? 9. He asked me many of them. 10. We have been walking for three hours; we are exhausted. 11. Have you any stamps? Yes, thank you, I have three of them.

¹ Pronouns refer to nouns in column one.

XXI d (§ 368)

A. Use of **y** to replace **à, en, dans, etc.**; place mentioned.

I	II	III	IV
He will go	She did not	Shall you	Didn't they
1. to Canada.	go there.	walk there?	arrive there?
2. to France.	remain there.	remain there?	go there?
3. to the United States.	arrive there.	arrive there?	work there?
4. to Mexico.	go there with him.	run there with him?	die there?

1. Do you often think of your vacation of last summer? 2. Yes, I think of it often. 3. That man is not happy. 4. Did you see him in town? 5. Yes, we saw him there. 6. Did you put some pears on the table? 7. Yes, I put some (there). 8. Did you put some on the buffet? 9. No, I did not put any (there). 10. Do you want me to put some (there)? 11. Yes, put some (there). 12. No, don't put any there. 13. She plays tennis. 14. We play it also. 15. They attended the concert. 16. We attended it too.

B. 1. Well, Mary has just bought a bicycle and Paul is very glad of it. 2. She has gone towards the city because the roads are good. 3. Henry is not with her, but there he is coming towards Paul's house. 4. Now that he has seen Mary he will want to know whether the bicycle is hers. 5. Paul will not want him to know it immediately, because he will want to borrow his to accompany Mary. 6. At any rate, Paul is not offended at Henry. 7. If he asks him for the bicycle he will lend it to him. 8. Henry approaches Paul and greets him, but he does not borrow anything. 9. On the contrary, he tells him that he has good news to tell him. 10. Paul is surprised about it. 11. Henry tells him that henceforth he will not borrow his bicycle any more because his father has just bought him one (of them). 12. He adds that it has not yet arrived. 13. He and his father went to town yesterday, and on their way they stopped at a bicycle shop and chose one (of them). 14. There were many of them in the shop and it was difficult to choose one.

XXII (§§ 374-377)

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

A. I	II	III	IV
I like	He likes	She likes	We like
1. my father.	mine.	my parents.	ours.
2. your uncle.	yours.	your sisters.	yours.
3. his cousin (<i>m.</i>).	his.	his cousins (<i>m.</i>).	his.
4. their horse.	theirs.	their horses.	theirs.
5. my mother.	mine.	my friends (<i>f.</i>).	mine.
6. your chair.	yours.	your chairs.	yours.
7. their plate.	theirs.	their plates.	theirs.

B. 1. We sold his house, yours, hers, and mine. 2. Your brother is taller than mine, but he is not stronger than theirs. 3. We have lost our caps and coats. No, there they are. Here are mine, his, yours, and theirs. 4. His friend (*f.*) and hers are here. 5. Her friend (*f.*) and his are gone. 6. She has broken her plate and he has broken his. 7. Our uncle and aunt are richer than yours. 8. They have sold their apples and pears, but we have not sold ours.

C. 1. Good morning, mother, how are you this morning? 2. Quite well thank you, my daughter, and you? 3. Not very well; my head aches. 4. I am sorry that your head aches. 5. It is fine to-day; let us hurry to do our work and we shall go to the park. 6. We have not been there for a long time. 7. Besides, the walk will do you good. 8. Do you mean to say that we shall walk back, also? 9. I fear that it will be necessary because your father has his car, and mine is in the garage for repairs. 10. Perhaps Henry will lend us one of his. 11. He has three (of them). 12. Do you think he will do it if we ask him? 13. I am sure of it, because Mary is his friend and she is a friend of mine. 14. But Henry has callers, has he not? 15. Yes, but that makes no difference; they have theirs. 16. I regret that yours is out of order. 17. I am going to see Henry and I shall ask him to let us take one of his. 18. Where are your gloves, mother? I can't find mine. 19. Yours are in the drawer, I put them there this morning. 20. You had left them on the table.

XXIII (§§ 378-388)

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

A. (1)

I

II

I like	and he likes	She liked	and
1. this boy	that one.	these shoes	those.
2. that boy	this one.	those shoes	these.
3. this man	that one.	these coats	those.
4. that man	this one.	those coats	these.

III

IV

She likes	and he likes	We invited	and they invited
1. this girl	that one.	these girls	those.
2. that girl	this one.	those girls	these.
3. this dress	that one.	these ladies	those.
4. that dress	this one.	those ladies	these.

(2) To translate a possessive noun (-'s).

1. I have my book and she has Mary's. 2. You have my pen and I have your brother's. 3. Mary has her chair and Louise has her mother's. 4. The boys have their spoons and the girls have their cousins'.

(3) Demonstrative pronoun with a relative pronoun (395).

1. This book and the one $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{which is here} \\ \text{which I bought} \end{array} \right\}$ are interesting.
2. These books and $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the ones (which are) on the table} \\ \text{those (which) I bought} \end{array} \right\}$ are expensive.
3. That dress and the one $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{(which is) on the table} \\ \text{(which I saw)} \end{array} \right\}$ are pretty.
4. Those caps and $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the ones in the drawer} \\ \text{those he gave you} \end{array} \right\}$ are John's.
5. This man and $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the one} \\ \text{those} \end{array} \right\}$ we spoke about are rich.
6. This woman and the one to whose son I spoke are English.
7. That lady and $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{the one} \\ \text{those} \end{array} \right\}$ whose daughters you know have arrived.
8. That gentleman and the one whose son is a doctor are here.

(4) Use of **celui-ci**, **celui-là**, to translate *the former* and *the latter*, etc.

1. We saw a white horse and a black one; the former was young and the latter old. 2. He will speak of Mary and of Louise; the former is English and the latter American. 3. They bought some collars and some shoes; the former are here, but the latter have not yet arrived. 4. The ties and the caps that are on the table are pretty; the former are John's and the latter are Paul's.

B. Use of the pronoun **ce**.

(1) As representative subject.

1. It is Mary who arrived. 2. It is we who shall remain. 3. That was a fine concert. 4. They are my friends. 5. Yes, they are Frenchmen. 6. It is the smallest that I saw. 7. It is a pretty car. 8. It is the prettiest in town.

(2) **Ce** as the real subject.

1. John has arrived, it is true. 2. The child has fallen, it is clear. 3. They are ill, it is evident. 4. It is for her that she bought it. 5. That's beautiful, isn't it? 6. It is true. It isn't true.

(3) **Ce** followed by a relative.

1. What he has in his basket is something good to eat. 2. What is on the table is mine. 3. I know what is in his box. 4. I know what is on the table. 5. He knows what I bought. 6. They want to know what he lost.

C. Use of **ceci** and **cela**.

1. She likes this, but she doesn't like that. 2. This is too expensive, and that is not good enough. 3. This is a secret; do not tell it to anyone. 4. We must begin with this and finish with that.

D. 1. It is to-day that we are going to town. 2. Let us hurry so as to arrive there early. 3. We ought to examine the merchandise before buying anything. 4. It is only nine o'clock and here we are in the largest store in town. 5. See how few people there are here. 6. It is much easier to see the merchandise when there are not many people in the store. 7. This afternoon we shall not be able to move around. 8. Wait a moment; I want to look at this. 9. Let us go; I do not want that. 10. I thought it was what I was

looking for. 11. Do you know the clerk who was coming toward us? 12. I know him by sight; it is he who sold me these gloves. 13. Let us look at those dresses. 14. See how pretty they are! 15. I like this one, but I do not like that one.

XXIV (§§ 389-394)

INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

A. (1)

1. Which boat have you and which has she?
2. Which car have you and which has he?
3. Which hat have you and which has she?
4. Which tables have you and which have they?
5. Which collars have you and which have they?
6. Which chairs have you and which have they?
7. To which man did he speak and to which did they speak?
8. Of which man did he speak and of which did she speak?

(2) 1. Which house will he buy? 2. He will buy the one you will see to-day. 3. Which house has he bought? 4. He has bought the one you saw yesterday. 5. There are two roses, which one have you chosen? 6. Mr. B. has six sons, which (ones) did you invite?

B. Use of *qui*? *que*? and *quoi*?

(1) As subject for persons use *qui* or *qui est-ce qui*.

1. Who is making that noise? 2. Who is at the door? 3. Who has closed the door? 4. Who is knocking? 5. Who has lost his coat? 6. Who will go to the store for me?

(2) As object of verb for person use *qui* or *qui est-ce que*.

1. Whom did you invite? 2. Whom did you see? 3. Whom did they call? 4. Whom have you dismissed? 5. Whom has she flattered? 6. Whom will you pay?

(3) *Qui* as object of a preposition refers to persons.

1. To whom are you speaking? 2. Of whom were they thinking? 3. For whom are you speaking? 4. With whom is he going to town? 5. Before whom is he standing? 6. To whom did he give the book? 7. With whom is he staying?

(4) *Whose*, denoting simply ownership = *à qui*, and *de qui* for relationship.

1. Whose book is this? 2. Whose hat is that? 3. Whose son are you? 4. Whose daughter was she? 5. Whose gloves are these? 6. Whose friends are they?

(5) As subject **qu'est-ce qui** is used regularly for things.

1. What is making that noise? 2. What is on the table? 3. What was in this box? 4. What is shining like that? 5. What is burning? 6. What is boiling in that kettle?

(6) As object of verb for things use **que** or **qu'est-ce que**.

1. What do you want? 2. What have they found? 3. What have we lost? 4. What has he thrown away? 5. What is he burying? 6. What will they do?

(7) **Quoi** is the disjunctive form of **que**, used with ellipsis of the verb and after a preposition.

1. With what does one write? 2. Of what is she thinking? 3. What! Here you are again. 4. What! that man has gone away?

C. 1. What are you going to do this evening, Paul? 2. I am going to do what I wanted to do last night. 3. What was that? Pack your trunk, I suppose. 4. Yes, you are right. 5. Where are you going? 6. I expect to spend two weeks at Mr. B.'s. 7. What! You are going to leave us for two weeks? 8. Who is this Mr. B.? Where does he live and what does he do? 9. What kind of house does he live in? 10. Whom did he marry and what is the name of his daughter? 11. If he has any sons, which does he like best and to which one does he give the most money?

XXV (§§ 395-402)

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

A. (1) **Qui** as subject and **que** as object of relative clauses refer to persons and things.

1. The man $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{who is here} \\ \text{whom you saw} \end{array} \right\}$ is not John's father.

2. The lady $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{who was speaking} \\ \text{whom you invited} \end{array} \right\}$ is the one $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{whom you called.} \\ \text{who sold her house.} \end{array} \right\}$

3. The roses $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{which are on the table} \\ \text{which he bought} \end{array} \right\}$ are red.

(2) As object of a preposition **qui** refers to persons; **que** becomes **quoi**; **dont** = **de** + a relative; **où**.

1. The man with whom I go to town is rich. 2. Is he the one to whom you gave a package? 3. The boy for whom I write came from London. 4. The lady spoke, after which she sat down. 5. The person of whom I am thinking is not here. 6. I do not know what she is thinking about. 7. The lady with whom I was speaking yesterday has just arrived. 8. The man of whom I am speaking is not the one of whom you are thinking.

(3) *Whose* as a relative = **dont**; the form **dont** is not used to ask a question; when depending on a noun governed by a preposition *whose* must be expressed by **duquel**, etc. (§ 400, 2).

1. The man whose son is here has gone away. 2. The man whose son I see has gone away. 3. The man with whose son I go to school has gone away. 4. The lady whose house is white is rich. 5. The lady whose house we see is rich. 6. The lady to whose son I am speaking is rich.

(4) Use of **lequel**, **laquelle**, etc.

1. The horse to which I gave the sugar is very young. 2. The boy and the girl to whom he gave the flowers are friends. 3. He knows which of these two boys is right. 4. She does not know to which of the girls she has spoken because it was dark. 5. Ask him which of the boys he has invited. 6. She knows which of the girls she invited.

B. 1. Louis IX, son of Louis VIII and of Blanche of Castile, was born at Poissy in 1215. 2. He was king of France from 1226 to 1270. 3. He was only a child when his father died, and it was his mother who governed until the young king was of age to do so. 4. She was very pious. 5. It was she who told the King that it was better to die than to sin. 6. Louis IX was very charitable and very generous. 7. His teacher, who was a monk, loved him very much. 8. Because of his justice and of his goodness, he was given the name of Saint Louis. 9. He was very kind to the poor, especially to those who were blind. 10. He liked to serve the blind himself because they could not see that it was the king who was serving them. 11. If a man complained of another, he sent for both of them and after having heard them he told them which one was right and which one was wrong.

XXVI (§§ 403–407)**INDEFINITE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS**

A. 1. Each man took a copy. 2. Each one took one (of them).
 3. Give some coffee to each girl. 4. Give two cups (of it) to each one.
 5. John has a few dollars. 6. Paul has a few (of them).
 7. French is spoken here. 8. Someone is knocking on the wall.
 9. I saw nobody and nobody saw me. 10. Nothing has arrived because we have not ordered anything.

B. 1. Whoever has found the watch, let him give it back.
 2. Whatever may be her reasons, she does not want to come.
 3. Whoever you are, please close the door. 4. Whoever found the purse ought to give it back. 5. Whatever they say, do not listen to them.

C. 1. Mr. B. is a merchant of antiques. 2. He has several chairs and a few tables which date back to the time of Louis XIV. 3. Whoever buys them will have something very interesting. 4. Mary and I went to see this furniture, but there was no one in the shop. 5. There were two tables which we liked very much. 6. Each one was in mahogany. 7. We examined them carefully and decided that we wanted them. 8. Mary said that if I bought the one I wanted she would buy the other. 9. We looked for the proprietor and as we could not find him we returned home without having bought anything. 10. We intend to return in a little while because there are other things that interest us, such as old vases and candlesticks, cups and saucers, and many other things.

XXVII (§§ 408–420)**THE ADVERB**

A. (1) Simple adverbs; adverbial locutions.

I	II	III
He is working	She called	They went
1. elsewhere.	a little while ago.	to the right.
2. outside.	before noon.	here and there.
3. inside.	willingly.	forward.
4. to-morrow.	sometimes.	at once.

(2) Comparison of adverbs.

I	II	III
He is running	They were running	John ran
1. well.	better.	the best.
2. slowly.	more slowly.	most slowly.
3. fast.	faster.	the fastest.
4. little.	less.	the least.

B. Negation.

I	II
He has	She has
1. not the towel.	not had the mirror.
2. scarcely any soap.	scarcely slept.
3. nobody with him.	seen nobody.
4. nothing in his pocket.	heard nothing.

C. Miscellaneous adverbs and negations.

1. She speaks kindly to her children, and they obey her immediately. 2. Speaking truly, I do not think that you will be able to carry that trunk upstairs alone. 3. He stopped short and picked up a dime in the snow. 4. That's what I call seeing clearly. 5. That boy upset the pitcher of milk purposely. 6. That man speaks French more fluently than his brother. 7. If they arrive before noon, they will come on time. 8. We shall not see him because he is late. 9. He is speaking to us about his invention, but we understand nothing about it. 10. Has the newspaper arrived? Not yet; it rarely comes before five o'clock.

D. 1. Louis XIV was born in 1638. 2. He was scarcely five years old when his father, Louis XIII, died. 3. His mother, Anne d'Autriche, governed in his place. 4. At that age a boy should have nothing more to do than to enjoy his childhood. 5. But this young king did not always play. 6. Many times he had to leave his playmates in order to attend some ceremony as though he had been a man. 7. He was told what he should say when he was spoken to. 8. From time to time he forgot what he had learned which, of course, was embarrassing because he was often with the lords and the dignitaries of his kingdom. 9. Louis XIV was king from 1643

to 1718, but it was only in 1661 that he became the real king.
10. He was a handsome man.

XXVIII (§§ 421-430)

THE NUMERAL

A. (1) *Count to one hundred by tens, seven times; to one hundred by fives, seven times and then from one to one hundred several times.*

(2) I	II	III
He has	Here is the	I read it
1. two dogs.	first.	on the first page.
2. seven uncles.	eleventh.	in the second line.
3. fifteen cousins.	fifteenth.	in the fifteenth number.
4. twenty friends.	twentieth.	on page twenty.

B. Collectives, fractions, etc.

1. That man has a pair of good horses to sell. 2. He has just bought a dozen cows. 3. He wants about fifty sheep. 4. Five times twenty make one hundred. 5. When he has his ten thousand dollars he will not be rich. 6. They have been to town three times to-day. 7. The third time that I went to the country, I saw my friend, Paul. 8. Yesterday was the twentieth, to-day is the twenty-first, to-morrow will be the twenty-second.

C. 1. Charlemagne was crowned emperor in 800. 2. Francis the first was king of France in 1515. 3. Henry III was king of France from 1589 to 1610. 4. The Bastille was taken on July the fourteenth 1789. 5. Louis XVI was king of France at that time. 6. He was beheaded in 1793. 7. Napoleon was born in Ajaccio on the island of Corsica in 1769.

D. 1. Mr. B. has been selling automobiles for twenty-five years. 2. He was twenty years old when he began, and now he is forty-five. 3. He began in the spring of the year 1905. 4. He was poor when he started; now he is quite rich. 5. He owns a dozen houses and several farms. 6. I am glad of it because he is a man who has worked constantly from morning until night. 7. He works in the country as well as in the city. 8. When he goes to the country he has to get up early. 9. Very often he goes there early and comes back late. 10. When the farmers are in the fields he talks to them.

XXIX (§§ 431-454)

THE PREPOSITION

A. Prepositions and locutions.

I

He came

1. to church.
2. before three o'clock.
3. with them.
4. to John's.
5. behind him.
6. in front of the house.

II

She went

- on account of her business.
- towards the school.
- as far as the old building.
- under the bridge.
- through the yard.
- instead of remaining here.

B. Idiomatic distinctions.

1. What is he thinking about? 2. He is thinking about his future. 3. He is talking about his friends. 4. From day to day and from week to week he does the same thing. 5. Henry IV liked to dine at the home of his friend Sully. 6. We left before six o'clock in the morning. 7. They went away by railroad. 8. It is noon by my watch and eleven o'clock by his. 9. It is easier to die for one's country than to live for it. 10. They copied the letter word for word.

C. 1. It is to-day, the sixth of August; my uncle and I are going to see a house which he wishes to buy for his son. 2. On account of the rain, he has not yet arrived. 3. It is possible that he will not come before noon. 4. That will be better because I do not like to look at houses in the morning. 5. People are busy with their work and they do not like to be disturbed. 6. In the afternoon one is more at ease, especially when one arrives unknown to the owner. 7. I am going as far as the end of the road, and if I do not see him, that will mean that we are not going out this morning. 8. Here he is! No, it isn't he. 9. Evidently he is not coming this morning. 10. I should like to see the house, but I do not know which one he is thinking about. 11. If he is thinking about the one which is near the fountain, he is thinking about the one I do not want him to buy. 12. It is not in good condition for want of care. 13. If he does not come to-day, we shall look at it one week from to-day.

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

XXX a (§§ 455-459)

A. Locutions.

I

He will come

1. in order that we may see him.
2. as well as his brother.
3. unless he is working.
4. as soon as he can.
5. before I leave.

II

She finished the dress

- while I finished the hat.
- seeing that we were busy.
- without my knowing it.
- in order that I may be pleased.
- neither at one nor at two.

B. 1. Do you know his uncle and aunt? 2. That poor boy has neither brothers nor sisters. 3. Who is making that noise while we are eating? 4. We do not want to do that; they will not do it either. 5. We are all glad that they have found the little boy. 6. If we go there and if we see them, we shall tell them what you have just told us. 7. Do you know when he will come? 8. We do not know when he will come, but when he comes we shall call you. 9. You called me when I was in the garden, didn't you?

C. 1. Good morning, Paul, how glad I am to see you. 2. Let us sit down near this beautiful rose bush while you tell me something of your trip to Europe. 3. I am told that while you were in France you visited the Island of Jersey. 4. Yes, that is true and, without exaggerating, it is one of the most beautiful spots in Europe. 5. Furthermore one can bathe in sea water at any hour of the day. 6. Fishing is excellent and one can fish to his heart's content. 7. If you want to, you can play tennis in the fresh sea air all day. 8. As you already know, the island is situated about one hundred and fifty miles south of England and sixty miles north of Saint Malo. 9. It has an interesting history. 10. There are still some Celtic monuments in evidence. 11. The Romans fortified it and called it Cæsarea. 12. The island has an area of forty-five square miles with a population of sixty thousand inhabitants. 13. Three languages are spoken on the island: French, English, and a French dialect. 14. The farmers speak the dialect; English is spoken in the city, whereas French is the official language.

XXX b (§ 460)

A. 1. Well done! You have won the prize. 2. Bravo! Bravo! You will succeed if you continue. 3. Hurry, little Peter! You have not washed your hands. 4. This man tells us that he is the richest man in the world. Nonsense! 5. Alas! Alas! Someone has stolen my watch. 6. What! You are not going to the concert with me this evening. 7. Indeed! I was not expecting that. 8. Come! It is time to get up. It is eight o'clock.

B. 1. What! You have returned already from your fishing trip? 2. Yes, and we caught a fish which weighs ten pounds. 3. You don't say so! Where is it? 4. I should like to see it. 5. It is at the house. 6. If you want to see it, let us go now because I must go on an errand. 7. I am going to invite some of my boy friends to dinner to-morrow. 8. I hope that you can come because the group would not be complete without you. 9. That means that we shall be able to eat fish to our heart's content. 10. Fine! I like fish very much and I thank you for your invitation.

VOCABULARY

VOCABULARY

FRENCH-ENGLISH

The asterisks indicate the active vocabulary, i.e., the words actually used in the grammatical exercises of Part I. The words which are not starred occur in Part II, and in the "E" sections, in the "Anecdotes," and in the independent Lesson XXIV of Part I.

A

***a** [a] *pres. indic.* **avoir** to have
 ***à** [a] to, at, in, by; — **bord de** on board; — **travers** across
abandonner [abādone] to abandon, leave
abolir [abolir] to abolish
abondant [abōdā] abundant
abonder [abōde] to abound
 ***abord** [abōr]: **d'**—, at first, first
aborder [aborde] to approach
aboutir [abuti:r] to end, come to an end
abreuver [abroeve] to water, fill, irrigate
abrité [abrite] sheltered
abrupt [abrypt] abrupt, steep
 ***absolument** [apsolymā] absolutely
accepter [aksepte] to accept
accident [aksidā] *m.* accident; incident
accommoder [akomode] to accommodate; **s'**— **bien** be well satisfied
 ***accompagner** [akōpane] to accompany, go with; **s'**—, be accompanied
accorder [akorde] to grant
accourir [akuri:r] to run, hasten up

accourut [akury] *past def.* **accourir** to run, hasten up to
accueilli [akœji] received, welcomed
accuser [akyze] to accuse
achat [aʃa] *m.* purchase
 ***acheter** [aʃte] to buy
acti-f [aktif], **-ve** active
action [aksjō] *f.* action
admettre [admetr] to admit
admiration [admirasjō] *f.* admiration
admirer [admire] to admire
adoucir [adusi:r] to soften
adresser [adrese] to address
 ***affaire** [afe:r] *f.* affair, thing; **les** —**s** business
affectueux-x [afektuø], **-se** affectionate
affluent [aflyū] *m.* tributary, branch
 ***afin** [afē]: — **de** (+ *infin.*) in order to; — **que** in order (that)
Afrique [afrik] *f.* Africa
 ***âge** [a:ʒ] *m.* age; **moyen** —, Middle Ages
 ***âgé** [a:ʒe] aged, old
agir [aʒi:r] to act
agrandir [agrādi:r] to enlarge, extend
 ***agréable** [agreabl] agreeable, pleasant
agricole [agrikol] agricultural

*ah! [ɑ] ah! oh!

*ai [e] *pres. indic. avoir* to have

aide [ɛid] *f.* aid

*aider [ede] to aid, help

*aie [ɛ] *pres. subj. avoir* to have

aigu [egy], -*ë* sharp-pointed

*aille [a:j] *pres. subj. aller* to go

ailleurs (d') [ajœ:r] besides

aimable [emabl] kindly, pleasant

*aimer [eme] to like, love; —

mieux prefer

aîné [ene] elder, eldest

ainsi [ɛsi] thus, so; — *que* as well as

air [ɛ:r] *m.* air

aise [ɛiz] *f.* ease, comfort; *à ton* —, at your ease, comfortably

aisément [ezemā] easily

ajouré [azure] pierced

ajouter [azute] to add

alarme [alarm] *f.* alarm, fear

albigeois [albiʒwa] Albigensian

Alésia [alezja] *f.* former city in eastern France (*Côte-d'Or*)

algèbre [alzɛ:br] *f.* algebra

Algérie [alzeri] *f.* Algeria

Alice [alis] Alice

alimenter [alimāte] to feed, supply

Allah [alla] *m.* Allah

Allemagne [alman] *f.* Germany

*aller [ale] to go; *s'en* —, go away (*no definite destination*)

allèrent [alɛ:r] *past def. aller* to go

allure [aly:r] *f.* pace, rate

*alors [alɔ:r] therefore, then

Alpes [alp] *f. pl.* Alps

alpiniste [alpinist] *m.* alpinist

Alsace [alzas] *f.* province in eastern France

alsacien [alzasjɛ], -*ne* Alsatian

altitude [altityd] *f.* altitude

ambition [ābisjō] *f.* ambition

*amener [amne] to bring, lead, take

*américain [amerikē] American; *l'Américain* the American

Amérique [amerik] *f.* America

*ami [ami] *m.* friend

*amie [ami] *f.* friend

amour [amur] *m.* love; —*s* (*f. pl.*) beloved (ones)

amphithéâtre [āfitea:tr] *m.* amphitheater

amusant [amyzā] amusing

*amuser [amyze] to amuse; *s'—*, have a good time

*an [ā] *m.* year (*unit of time*); *avoir cinq —s* to be five years old

*ancien [āsɟɛ], -*ne* old, former

anecdote [anɛgdɔt] *f.* anecdote

Angélus [āzelys] *m.* celebrated painting by Millet

*anglais [āglɛ] English; *en* —, in English; *l'Anglais* the Englishman

*Angleterre [āglɛtɛ:r] *f.* England

*animal [animal] *m.* animal

animé [anime] animated, lively

*année [ane] *f.* year (*implies duration of time*)

*anniversaire [aniverse:r] *m.* birthday, anniversary

annoncer [anōse] to announce

anse [ā:s] *f.* bay

antichambre [ātiʃā:br] *f.* ante-chamber

antique [ātik] antique, ancient

antiquité [ātikite] *f.* antiquity

août [u] *m.* August

apercevoir [apersəvwair] to perceive, see

aperçut [apersy] *past def. apercevoir* to perceive

Apollon [apolō] Apollo

apôtre [apo:tr] *m.* apostle

apparaître [apare:tr] to appear

*appareil [apare:j] *m.* apparatus

*appartement [apartēmā] *m.* apartment

appel [apel] *m.* call

*appeler [aple] to call; *s'—*, be

called, named: **comment s'appelle-t-il?** what is his name?
faire —, call, send for
appelèrent [aplɛ:r] *past def.* **appeler** to call
appliqué [aplikɛ] applied
***apporter** [apɔrtɛ] to bring
apprécier [apʁɛsjɛ] to appreciate
***apprendre** [apʁɑ̃:dr] to learn
appris [apʁi] *past part.* **apprendre** to learn
apprît [apʁi] *impf. subj.* **apprendre** to learn
approche [apʁɔʃ] *f.* approach
approcher [apʁɔʃɛ] to approach, bring up; **s'—**, approach, draw near
approuver [apʁuve] to approve
appui [apɥi] *m.* support
***après** [apʁɛ] after, afterwards
après-demain [apʁɛdmɛ̃] *m.* day after to-morrow
***après-midi** [apʁɛmidi] (*either m. or f.*) afternoon; **dans l'—**, in the afternoon
aqueduc [akædyk] *m.* aqueduct
Aquitaine [akiten] *f.* Aquitania
Arabe [arab] *m.* Arab
***arbre** [arbr] *m.* tree
arc [ark] *m.* arch
Arc, Jeanne d' [ʒɑ̃n dark] Joan of Arc (1412-1431)
arcade [arkad] *f.* arcade
Arc de Triomphe [ark də triɔ̃:f] *m.* a triumphal arch in Paris
arche [arʃ] *f.* arch
architecte [arʃitekt] *m.* architect
architecture [arʃitektɥr] *f.* architecture
arène [arɛn] *f.* arena
***argent** [arʒɑ̃] *m.* money, silver
argument [argymɑ̃] *m.* argument, reasoning
aristocratie [aristɔkrasi] *f.* aristocracy
arme [arm] *f.* arm, weapon

armée [arme] *f.* army
armoire [armwa:r] *f.* cupboard
armure [army:r] *f.* armor
arrêter [arete] to stop, arrest; **s'—**, stop (*oneself*)
arrivée [arive] *f.* arrival
***arriver** [arive] to arrive, come
arsenal [arsənal] *m.* arsenal
art [a:r] *m.* art
articuler [artikyle] to utter
artifice [artifis] *m.* artifice; **feu d'—**, fireworks
Arverne [arvern] *m.* a Gaul of Auvergne
ascenseur [asœ̃sœ:r] *m.* elevator
ascension [asœ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* ascension
aspect [aspɛ] *m.* aspect, view
assassinat [asasina] *m.* assassination, murder
***asseoir** [aswa:r] to seat; **s'—**, sit down, be seated
***assez** [ase] enough, rather
***assiette** [asjet] *f.* plate
***assis** [asi] seated, sitting
associé [asɔsjɛ] *m.* partner
assurer [asyre] to assure, insure
asthme [asm] *m.* asthma
athlète [atlet] *m.* athlete
***athlétique** [atletik] athletic
athlétisme [atletism] *m.* athletics
Atlantique [atlātik] *m.* Atlantic
atmosphère [atmɔsfɛ:r] *f.* atmosphere
attaché [ataʃɛ] attached, fastened
attarder [atarde] (**s'**) to delay
atteindre [atɛ̃:dr] to reach
***attendre** [atɑ̃:dr] to wait, wait for; **s'—**, expect
attention [atœ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* attention
***au** [o] *contr. of à + le*
auberge [ɔberʒ] *f.* inn
aubergiste [ɔberʒist] *m.* inn-keeper
***aucun** [okœ̃] any, no; **ne . . . —**, no, none, no one
au-dessous [odsu] below

auditrice [oditris] *f.* listener
augmenter [ɔgmâte] to increase
Auguste [ɔgyst] Augustus
***aujourd'hui** [ɔʒurdʒi] to-day;
 d'— en huit a week from to-day;
 d'— en quinze two weeks from
 to-day
auprès de [oprədə] into the pres-
 ence of, to; in comparison with
***aurai** [ɔre] *fut.* **avoir** to have
***aussi** [osi] also, too; as (*in com-
 parison*)
***aussitôt que** [ositokə] as soon as
austère [ɔstɛ:r] austere
***autant** [otā]: — **de** as or so
 much or so many; — **que** as
 much as
***auteur** [otœ:r] *m.* author
autocar [otəkai:r] *m.* tourist bus
***automne** [otən] *m.* autumn
***automobile** [otəmobil], **auto** [oto]
 f. automobile, auto, car
***autre** [otr] other; **un —**, another
 (*different one*)
***autrefois** [otrəfwa] formerly
***autrement** [otrəmā] otherwise,
 in a different manner
Auvergnat [ɔvɛrna] *m.* inhabitant
 of Auvergne
Auvergne [ɔvɛrn] *f.* province in
 south central France
***aux** [o] *contr.* of à + les
***avais** [avɛ] *impf. indic.* **avoir** to
 have
***avancer** [avāse] to advance; —
 (**de**) be fast (*watch*)
***avant** [avā] before (*time*); —
 que before (*that*); — **de** before
avantage [avāta:ʒ] *m.* advantage
avant-hier [avā(t)jɛ:r] day before
 yesterday
***avec** [avɛk] with
avenue [avny] *f.* avenue
averse [avers] *f.* shower
***avez** [ave] *pres. indic.* **avoir** to
 have

Avignon [avɛnɔ̃] *city in southern
 France*

***avoir** [avwa:r] to have; **il y a**
 there is, there are; **il y avait**
 there was, there were; **il y a**
 (+ *time*) ago; — **à** have to;
 — **besoin de** need, be in need
 of; — **chaud** be warm (*of
 living beings*); — **faim** be hun-
 gry; — **froid** be cold (*of living
 beings*); — **honte** be ashamed;
 — **l'intention de** intend; — **la
 maladresse** be so clumsy; —
 de la peine have difficulty; —
 quelque chose be the matter
 with; **qu'avez-vous?** what is
 the matter with you? — **raison**
 be (in the) right; — **soif** be
 thirsty; — **soin de** take care of;
 — **sommeil** be sleepy; — **tort**
 be (in the) wrong; **elle a cinq
 ans** she is five years old

***avons** [avɔ̃] *pres. indic.* **avoir** to
 have

avril [avril] *m.* April

***ayez** [ɛje] *pres. subj. or impv.*
 avoir to have

***ayons** [ɛjɔ̃] *pres. subj. or impv.*
 avoir to have

azur [azy:r] azure; **Côte d'—**,
 northern Mediterranean coast

B

bah ! [ba] pshaw! bah!

baisser [bɛse] to lower, let down;
 se —, stoop

balle [bal] *f.* ball

balustrade [balystrad] *f.* balus-
 trade

Balzac, Honoré de [ɔnɔre də
 balzak] *French novelist (1799–
 1850)*

***banane** [banan] *f.* banana

banc [bā] *m.* bench

bander [bāde] to bind up

- banque** [bã:k] *f.* bank; **maison de —**, banking firm
- banquier** [bãkje] *m.* banker
- baptiser** [batize] to baptize
- Barbizon** [barbizõ] *village near Fontainebleau, home of the founders of the Barbizon school of painting*
- Bart, Jean** [zã ba:r] *famous French seaman (1651–1702)*
- Bartholdi** [bartõldi] *French sculptor who designed the Statue of Liberty in New York and “Le Lion de Belfort” in France*
- Basoche** [bazõʃ] *f. organization of Parliament clerks, formed during the Middle Ages; it gave plays and was active in public amusements*
- basque** [bask] Basque
- bassin** [basẽ] *m.* basin; — **houiller** coal fields
- *Bastille** [basti:j] *f. a former prison in Paris, captured by the populace in 1789*
- bataille** [bata:j] *f.* battle
- *bateau** [bato] *m.* boat; — **mouche** small passenger boat
- *bâtiment** [batimã] *m.* building
- bâtir** [batir] to build
- bâton** [batõ] *m.* stick
- battre** [batr] to beat, strike
- Bayard** [baja:r] (*Pierre du Terrail*) *celebrated French knight and warrior (c. 1473–1524)*
- *beau, bel, belle** [bo, bel, bẽl] *fine, beautiful, handsome; faire —*, to be fine (weather)
- *beaucoup** [boku] (very) much, (a good) many, a great deal (many)
- beau-père** [bopẽr] *m.* father-in-law
- beaux-arts** [boza:r] *m. pl.* fine arts
- bêcher** [bẽʃe] to dig
- Belfort** (belfõ:r] *territory in eastern France*
- Belgique** [belzik] *f.* Belgium
- bénir** [benir] to bless
- bercé** [berse] lulled, cradled
- Bergerac** [berʒerak] *city in south central part of France*
- Besançon** [bẽzãsõ] *city in eastern France*
- *besoin** [bẽzwẽ] *m.* need, necessity; **avoir — de** to need, be in need of
- bétail** [betaj] *m.* cattle
- bêtise** [beti:z] *f.* foolish thing
- betterave** [betra:v] *f.* beet
- *beurre** [bœ:r] *m.* butter
- Biarritz** [bjarits] *city on southwestern coast of France*
- bicyclette** [bisiklet] *f.* bicycle
- *bien** [bjẽ] well, indeed, very, many, very much; — **à vous** “yours truly”; **eh —! well! — entendu!** of course! — **que** though, although
- bien** [bjẽ] *m.* good; **faire le —**, to do good
- *bientôt** [bjẽto] soon; **à —**, good-bye for the present, I’ll see you soon (later)
- *bijou** [bizu] *m.* jewel
- *billet** [biʃe] *m.* ticket, note
- *blanc** [blã], **blanche** [blã:ʃ] white
- blanchir** [blãʃir] to whiten
- blasé** [blaze] blasé, tired of everything
- blé** [ble] *m.* wheat
- blessé** [blẽse] wounded
- blesser** [blẽse] to wound
- *bleu** [blø] blue
- Blois** [blwa] *city in Touraine*
- blonde** [blõ:d] blond, golden
- *boire** [bwa:r] to drink
- bois** [bwa] *m.* woods
- *bois** [bwa] *pres. indic. boire* to drink

Bois de Belleau [bwad(ə)bɛlo] *m.*
Belleau Wood

Bois de Boulogne [bwad(ə)bulɔ̃] *m.*
great park near Paris

boisé [bwaze] *wooded*

***boite** [bwa:t] *f.* box

***bon** [bɔ̃], **bonne** [bɔ̃n] *good*;
de bonne heure *early*; —
marché *cheap*

***bonbon** [bɔ̃bɔ̃] *m.* piece of candy;
—s candy (*collective*)

***bonjour** [bɔ̃ʒur] *good day, good morning, good afternoon*

bonne [bɔ̃n] *f.* maid

bonté [bɔ̃te] *f.* goodness

bord [bɔ̃r] *m.* bank, shore, edge;
au — **de** *on the bank of*; **à** —
de *on board of*; **pardessus le**
—, *overboard*

Bordeaux [bɔ̃do] *city in south-western part of France*

Bordelais [bɔ̃dɛlɛ] *m.* *region around Bordeaux*

border [bɔ̃de] *to border*

borner [bɔ̃ne] *to limit, bound*;
se —, *be limited*

bossu [bɔ̃sy] *m.* hunchback

botte [bɔt] *f.* bunch

bouche [bu:ʃ] *f.* mouth

bougie [buzi] *f.* candle

boulevard [bulva:r] *m.* boulevard

bouquiniste [bukinist] *m.* dealer
in old books

bourgade [burgad] *f.* village

Bourgogne [burgɔ̃] *f.* Burgundy
(province in eastern France)

Bourguignon [burgipɔ̃] *m.* Burgundian

bourse [burs] *f.* pocketbook

bout [bu] *m.* end

bouteille [butɛ:j] *f.* bottle

boutique [butik] *f.* shop

bras [bra] *m.* arm

brave [bra:v] *brave, worthy*

Bresse [bres] *f.* former province

in eastern France with Bourg as capital (Ain)

Brest [brɛst] *city in Brittany*

Bretagne [brɛtaɲ] *f.* Brittany
(province in western part of France)

breton [brɛtɔ̃], **—ne Breton**; **un Breton** *a Breton (an inhabitant of Brittany)*

Briey [brie] *district in eastern France (Meurthe-et-Moselle)*

brigade [brigad] *f.* brigade

brigand [brigã] *m.* thief

brin [brɛ̃] *m.* blade

briser [brize] *to break*

britannique [britanik] *British*

Brizeux, Auguste [ɔ̃gyst brizø] *Breton poet (1806–1858)*

brodé [brɔde] *embroidered*

***bruit** [bruɪ] *m.* noise

brûlant [brylã] *burning, hot*

brûler [bryle] *to burn*

brusque [brysk] *brusque, blunt*

***bu** [by] *past part. boire to drink*

bureau [byro] *m.* office

***bus** [by] *past def. boire to drink*

C

ça [sa] *here*; — **et là** *here and there*

cabinet [kabine] *m.* private office

cachot [kaʃo] *m.* dungeon

***cadeau** [kado] *m.* present

cadet [kade] *m.* cadet, young soldier

***café** [kafe] *m.* coffee; restaurant, café

café-concert [kafekɔ̃sɛ:r] *m.* café concert

cage [ka:ʒ] *f.* cage

cahier [kaje] *m.* notebook

caillou [kaju] *m.* pebble

caissier [kɛsjɛ] *m.* cashier

Calais [kalɛ] *seaport in northern France*

Californie [kaliførni] *f.* California
calme [kalm] calm, quiet
calmer [kalme] to calm, quiet
***camarade** [kamarad] *m. & f.* comrade, companion
Cambrai [kābre] *city in northern France*
***campagne** [kāpan] *f.* country; à la —, in the country; regarder la —, to look around
campus [kūpys] *m.* campus
***Canada** [kanada] *m.* Canada
canal [kanal] *m.* canal
***canif** [kanif] *m.* penknife
canne [kan] *f.* cane, walking stick
caoutchouc [kautʃu] *m.* rubber
capitaine [kapiten] *m.* captain
capitale [kapital] *f.* capital
capituler [kapityle] to capitulate, surrender
***car** [kar] for, because
caravane [karavan] *f.* caravan
Carcassonne [karkasɔn] *walled city in southern France*
carnaval [karnaval] *m.* carnival
***carotte** [karɔt] *f.* carrot
***carré** [kare] square
carrière [karjeir] *f.* quarry; profession
***carte** [kart] *f.* bill of fare, menu; card, map
cas [ka] *m.* case
cascade [kaskad] *f.* cascade
casino [kazino] *m.* casino
casser [kase] to break
catacombe [katakɔ:b] *f.* catacomb
cathédrale [katedral] *f.* cathedral
Catherine de Médicis [katrin də medisi:s] Catherine de Medici, 1519–1589 (*queen of France, wife of Henry II*)
cause [ko:z] *f.* cause; à — de because of
***causer** [koze] to chat

Causses [kos] (les) *plateaus in south central part of France*
caverne [kavern] *f.* cave, cavern
***ce** [sə] *pron.* it, this, that, he, she, they, these, those; — **que** that which, that
***ce, cet, cette, ces** [sə, sɛt, sɛt, sɛ] *adj.* this, that, these, those; — ...-ci, — ...-là this, that (*emphatic*)
ceci [səsi] this (*indefinite*)
céder [sɛde] to cede
***cela** [sɛla] that (*indefinite*)
célèbre [selebr] celebrated, famous
Celte [sɛlt] *m.* Celt (*early inhabitant of France*)
***celui, celle, ceux, celles** [səlqi, sɛl, sɔ, sɛl] this or that, this or that one; the one, he, him; — **qui** the one who, he or him who
***celui-ci** [səlqisi], **celle-ci, ceux-ci, celles-ci** this, this man, this one, the latter, he (too)
***celui-là** [səlqila], *etc.*, that, that man, that one, the former, he
cendre [sɑ:dr] *f.* ash
Cendrillon [sɑdrijɔ̃] Cinderella
***cent** [sɑ] (a) hundred
centaine [sɑten] *f.* about a hundred
***centime** [sɑtim] *m.* centime ($\frac{1}{100}$ of a franc, about $\frac{1}{25}$ of a cent)
centimètre [sɑtimetr] *m.* centimeter (about $\frac{2}{5}$ of an inch)
Cent Jours [sɑ zu:r] (les) *from March 20, 1815, Napoleon's entry into Paris up to June 28, date of the second Restoration (Louis XVIII)*
central [sɑtral] central
centre [sɑ:tr] *m.* center; au —, in the center
***cependant** [sɛpɑdɑ̃] however, nevertheless
céréale [sereal] *f.* cereal, grain
cerise [səri:z] *f.* cherry

certain [sertē] certain

César, Jules [ʒyl seza:r] Julius
Cæsar (101–44 B.C.)

*cesser [sɛsɛ] to cease, stop

Cévennes [seven] (les) mountains
in the center of France

*chacun [ʃakœ] each, each one,
every one

Chaillot [ʃajo] name of a street
in Paris

chaîne [ʃɛ:n] *f.* chain

*chaise [ʃɛ:z] *f.* chair

chaleur [ʃalœr] *f.* heat

Chambéry [ʃãberi] city in eastern
France

*chambre [ʃã:br] *f.* (bed)room

Chambre des députés [ʃã:br de
depytɛ] *f.* the French “House
of Representatives”

chameau [ʃamo] *m.* camel

Chamonix [ʃamœni] town in east-
ern France (Haute-Savoie)

champ [ʃã] *m.* field

Champagne [ʃãpan] *f.* province in
northeastern France

*champion [ʃãpjõ] *m.* champion

championnat [ʃãpjõna] *m.* cham-
pionship

Champs-Élysées [ʃãzelize] *m. pl.*
celebrated boulevard in Paris

chance [ʃã:s] *f.* risk, chance;
courir la —, to stand a chance

“chands” [ʃã] *slang form of mar-*
chands merchants

chant [ʃã] *m.* song, anthem

chanter [ʃãte] to sing

*chapeau [ʃapo] *m.* hat

chapelle [ʃapel] *f.* chapel

chaperon [ʃaprõ] *m.* hood; Cha-
peron rouge Red Riding-hood

chaque [ʃak] each, every

Charlemagne [ʃarlɛman] Charle-
magne (742–814)

*Charles [ʃarl] Charles

Charles V [ʃarl(ə) sɛ:k] king of
France from 1364 to 1380

Charles VII [ʃarl(ə) sɛt] king of
France from 1422 to 1461

*Charles X [ʃarl(ə) dis] king of
France from 1824 to 1830

charmant [ʃarmã] charming

charme [ʃarm] *m.* charm

*charmé [ʃarme] delighted, very
pleased

charmer [ʃarme] to charm, delight

chasse [ʃas] *f.* chase, hunting

chasseur [ʃasœ:r] *m.* hunter

Chat botté [ʃa bote] *m.* Puss in
Boots

châtaigne [ʃatɛn] *f.* chestnut

château [ʃato] *m.* château, castle

Chateaubriand [ʃatobriã], Fran-
çois René de celebrated French
writer (1768–1848)

Château-Thierry [ʃato tjɛri] town
in northeastern France

Chauchard [ʃoʃa:r], Alfred donor
of a collection of paintings in
the Louvre

*chaud [ʃo] *m.* heat, warmth; il
fait —, it is warm or hot (of
weather, etc.); avoir —, to be
warm or hot (of living beings)

chef [ʃɛf] *m.* chief, leader; —
d'œuvre [ʃɛ dø:vr] master-
piece; —-lieu capital; —
d'escadre rear admiral

*chemin [ʃɛmɛ] *m.* road, way; —
de fer railroad; (en) —, —
faisant on the way; — de
ronde sentinel's beat

cheminée [ʃɛmine] *f.* chimney

chêne [ʃɛn] *m.* oak

Chenonceaux [ʃɛnõso] castle in
Touraine

*chèque [ʃɛk] *m.* check

*cher [ʃɛ:r], chère *adj.* dear, ex-
pensive

Cher [ʃɛ:r] *m.* river in Touraine

*chercher [ʃɛrʃɛ] to look, look for,
get, search; — fortune seek
one's luck

- ***cheval** [ʃəval] *m.* horse; à —, on horseback
chevalier [ʃəvalje] *m.* chevalier, cavalier, knight
***chez** [ʃe] at (to or in) the home (house, office, etc.) of; — lui at his house, at home
***chien** [ʃjɛ̃] *m.* dog
chimère [ʃimɛ:r] *f.* gargoyle, chimera
***chimie** [ʃimi] *f.* chemistry
chocolat [ʃokola] *m.* chocolate
***choisir** [ʃwazi:r] to choose
choix [ʃwa] *m.* choice
***chosè** [ʃo:z] *f.* thing; quelque — (*m.*) something; quelque — de bon something good; si peu de —, so little
***chou** [ʃu] *m.* cabbage
chute [ʃyt] *f.* fall(s)
Cid [sid], (*le*) *tragedy by Corneille*
cidre [sidr] *m.* cider
ciel [sjɛl] *m.* sky
***cigare** [sigar] *m.* cigar
***cigarette** [sigaret] *f.* cigarette
cigogne [sigɔ̃] *f.* stork
cime [sim] *f.* crest, summit
cimetière [sintje:r] *m.* cemetery
***cinéma** [sinema] *m.* (**cinématographe**) [sinematograf] moving picture, "movies"
cinq [sɛ̃:k] five
cinquante [sɛ̃kɑ̃:t] fifty
cinquième [sɛ̃kjem] fifth
circuler [sirkyle] to circulate, move about
cirque [sirk] *m.* mountain basin
cité [site] *f.* city
Cité Universitaire [site yniver-site:r] *f.* "University City" (*a group of international residence halls for students at the University of Paris*)
citer [site] to cite, mention
citoyen [sitwajɛ̃] *m.* citizen
clair [kle:r] clear
claquement [klakmɑ̃] *m.* snapping
***classe** [klɑ:s] *f.* class; **salle de —**, classroom
classique [klasik] classic
clerc [kle:r] *m.* clerk
Clermont-Ferrand [klɛrmɔ̃ferɑ̃] *city in Auvergne*
climat [klima] *m.* climate
cloche [kloʃ] *f.* bell
Clovis [klɔvi:s] *m.* king of the Franks (c. 466–511)
***cœur** [kœ:r] *m.* heart
coiffe [kwaf] *f.* headdress
coin [kwɛ̃] *m.* corner
colère [kolɛ:r] *f.* anger; **se mettre en —**, to get angry
collaborer [kolabɔ:rɛ] to collaborate
collecteur [kolɛktœ:r] *m.* collector; — **d'égout** collecting pipe
collection [kolɛksjɔ̃] *f.* collection
collège [kolɛ:ʒ] *m.* school
colonie [kolɔni] *f.* colony
coloration [kolɔrasjɔ̃] *f.* coloration, coloring
***combien** [kɔ̃bjɛ̃] how many, how much; — **de temps?** how long?
comble [kɔ̃:bl] *m.* height, culmination
commander [kɔmɑ̃dɛ] to order
***comme** [kɔm] like, as, how
commencement [kɔmɑ̃smɑ̃] *m.* beginning
***commencer** [kɔmɑ̃sɛ] to begin, commence
***comment** [kɔmɑ̃] how? what? — **s'appelle-t-il?** what is his name? — **faire?** how to do it?
commerce [kɔmɛrs] *m.* commerce
***commode** [kɔmɔd] convenient
Commune [kɔmyn] *f.* Commune (*revolutionary government in Paris at the end of the Franco-Prussian war in 1871*)
communication [kɔmynikasjɔ̃] *f.* communication
compagne [kɔmpɑ̃] *f.* companion

- compagnie** [kõpani] *f.* company
compagnon [kõpanõ] *m.* companion
compassion [kõpasjõ] *f.* compassion
compatriote [kõpatriot] *m. & f.* compatriot
compensation [kõpãsasjõ] *f.* reward, compensation
complet [kõplɛ] complete; **au** —, full
compliment [kõplimã] *m.* compliment; **faire mes** —s to present my respects
composer [kõpoze] to compose
***comprendre** [kõprã:dr] to understand
***compter** [kõte] to count, count on; intend
concentrer [kõsãtre] to concentrate
***concert** [kõsɛ:r] *m.* concert
Conciergerie [kõsjɛrʒəri] *f.* celebrated prison in Paris, used especially during the “Reign of Terror”
conclure [kõkly:r] to conclude
concourir [kõkurir] to coöperate
concurrence [kõkyrã:s] *f.* rivalry
conduire [kõdqi:r] to conduct, take, lead, drive
conduite [kõdqi:t] *f.* guidance, conduct; — **d’eau** water pipe
confiseur [kõfizɛ:r] *m.* confectioner
***confiture** [kõfity:r] *f.* jam
confortable [kõfɔrtabl] comfortable
confortablement [kõfɔrtablɛmã] comfortably
connaissance [kõnɛsã:s] *f.* acquaintance
connaisseur [kõnɛsɛ:r] *m.* connoisseur, expert
***connaître** [kõnɛ:tr] to know, be acquainted with
***connu** [kõny] *past part.* **connaître** to know
conquérant [kõkerã] *m.* conqueror
conquérir [kõkeri:r] to conquer
conseil [kõsɛ:j] *m.* advice
conservé [kõsɛrve] to preserve
considérable [kõsiderabl] considerable
considérablement [kõsiderablɛmã] greatly
consoler [kõsɔle] to console
constamment [kõstamã] constantly
construire [kõstrui:r] to build, construct
***consulter** [kõsylte] to consult
contact [kõtakt] *m.* contact; **prendre** —, to come into touch
conte [kõ:t] *m.* story, tale
contempler [kõtãple] to contemplate, behold
***contenir** [kõtni:r] to contain
***content** [kõtã] glad, content, pleased, satisfied
contentement [kõtãtmã] *m.* satisfaction
***contiens** [kõtjɛ] *pres. indic.* **contenir** to contain
***continuer** [kõtinʒɛ] to continue
contraire [kõtrɛ:r]: **au** —, on the contrary
contraste [kõtrast] *m.* contrast
contre [kõtr] against; **par** —, on the other hand
contrée [kõtre] *f.* country, region
convenir [kõvni:r] to suit
conversation [kõversasjõ] *f.* conversation
Cook [ku:k] *family name*; “moutons —,” Cook’s tourists
coquet [køkɛ], —**te** coquettish, dainty, stylish
***corbeille** [kõrbɛ:j] *f.* basket; — **à papier** wastebasket
cordialement [kõrdjalmã] cordially

***Corneille** [kɔrne:j], **Pierre** *French writer of tragedy* (1606–1684)
corniche [kɔrniʃ] *f.* cornice (*of a column*)
Cornwallis [kɔrnvalis] *English general* (1738–1805)
Corot [kɔro] *French painter* (1796–1875)
corridor [kɔridɔ:r] *m.* hall
Corse [kɔrs] *f.* Corsica
costume [kɔstym] *m.* costume
côte [kɔ:t] *f.* coast, hillside-vineyard; — **d’Azur** *northern Mediterranean coast*
***côté** [kote] *m.* side; **de l’autre** —, on the other side; **à — de** beside
coteau [kɔto] *m.* hill, hillside
coton [kɔtɔ̃] *m.* cotton
***coucher** [kuʃe] to lay down; **se** —, lie down, go to bed
coude [kud] *m.* elbow, bend
coudre [kudr] to sew
coup [ku] *m.* blow; — **de théâtre** dramatic turn of events, unexpected happening
couper [kupe] to cut
couple [kupl] *m.* couple, pair
coupole [kupɔl] *f.* cupola
***cour** [ku:r] *f.* yard, courtyard; court (*of a king or noble*)
courage [kura:ʒ] *m.* courage
courant [kurɑ̃] *m.* current; **tenir au** —, to keep informed
courber [kurbe] to bend, bow
courir [kuri:r] to run (about); hunt after; — **la chance** stand a chance
couronne [kurɔn] *f.* crown
couronner [kurɔne] to crown
course [kurs] *f.* race, trip; — **de taureaux** bullfight
court [ku:r] *m.* court (*tennis*)
courtisan [kurtizɑ̃] *m.* courtier
***cousin** [kuzɛ̃] *m.* cousin
cousine [kuzin] *f.* cousin

***couteau** [kuto] *m.* (large) knife
***coûter** [kute] to cost
coûteu-x [kutø], **—se** costly
coutume [kutym] *f.* custom
couvert [kuvɛ:r] *m.* cover; **mettre le** —, to set the table
couvrir [kuvri:r] to cover; **se** —, cover oneself, put on one’s hat
craie [kre] *f.* chalk
craindre [krɛ:dr] to fear, be afraid of
***crayon** [krejɔ̃] *m.* pencil
création [kreasjɔ̃] *f.* creation
créer [kree] to create
crème [krɛ:m] *f.* cream
crénelé [krenle] battlemented
***crêpe** [krɛ:p] *m.* crêpe
crêpe de Chine [krɛ:p də ʃin] *m.* a variety of silk cloth
Creusot [krøzo], (**le**) *name of city and great steelworks*
crever [krəve] to burst; — **un pneu** burst a tire, have a blow-out
***croire** [krwa:r] to believe, think; **je le crois bien!** I believe it indeed! I should say so!
croisade [krwazad] *f.* crusade
croupe [krup] *f.* back, rump
***cru** [kry] *past part.* **croire** to believe
cruel [kryel], **—le** cruel
crypte [kript] *f.* crypt
***cuiller** [kuije:r] *f.* spoon
cuir [kui:r] *m.* leather
***cuisine** [kɥizin] *f.* kitchen, cooking
culture [kylty:r] *f.* culture, cultivation
cure [ky:r] *f.* medical treatment
curieu-x [kyrjø], **—se** curious
curiosité [kyrjozite] *f.* curiosity
Cyrano [sirano] (**de Bergerac**) *French writer* (1619–1655), *hero of the play, “Cyrano de Bergerac”* (1897) *by Edmond Rostand*

D

- dame** [dam] *f.* lady
danger [dãʒe] *m.* danger
dangereu-x [dãʒrø], **-se** dangerous
***dans** [dã] *in, into*
danse [dã:s] *f.* dance
danser [dãse] *to dance*
***date** [dat] *f.* date
dater [date] *to date*
datte [dat] *f.* date (*fruit*)
Dauphin [dofẽ] *m.* Crown Prince
Dauphiné [dofine] *m.* province in southeastern France
***de** [də] *of, from, about*
Deauville [dovil] *seaside resort*
***debout** [dəbu] *standing*
début [deby] *m.* beginning
décision [desizjõ] *f.* decision
déclarer [deklare] *to declare*
décor [dekõ:r] *m.* stage setting
découper [dekupe] *to cut up*
découvrir [dekuvri:r] *to discover;*
se —, uncover oneself, take off
one's hat
déçu [desy] *past part. décevoir to*
deceive
défaite [defet] *f.* defeat
défendre [defã:dr] *to defend*
défense [defãs] *f.* defense
défilé [defile] *m.* procession
***déjà** [deʒa] *already*
déjeuner [dezœne] *m.* lunch
***déjeuner** [dezœne] *to lunch, take*
lunch
délices [delis] *f. pl.* delight
***délicieu-x** [delisjø], **-se** delicious
***demain** [dəmẽ] *to-morrow*
***demander** [dəmãde] *to ask; — à*
ask of or from
***demeurer** [dəmœere] *to dwell,*
live
***demi** [dəmi] *half; à — mort half*
dead
démocratique [demokratik] *demo-*
cratic
demoiselle [dəmwazɛl] *f.* young
lady
démolir [demoli:r] *to demolish*
denier [dənje] *m.* denarius (*obs.*),
penny; —s money
départ [depa:r] *m.* departure
département [departəmã] *m.* de-
partment (political division)
dépasser [depase] *to surpass, ex-*
ceed
***dépêcher** [depeʃe] *to hurry; se*
—, hurry, hasten
***dépense** [depã:s] *f.* expense
dépenser [depãse] *to spend*
dépouiller [depuje] *to strip*
***depuis** [dəpuj] *since, for, from;*
— quand? how long? since
when? — deux jours for two
days
déranger [derãʒe] *to disturb*
***derni-er** [dərnje], **-ère** [dərnje:r]
last, final; la semaine —ère last
week
dérrouler [derule] *to unroll*
***derrière** [dərje:r] *behind*
***des** [de] *contr. of de + les*
dès [də] *from (dating from);*
— demain beginning to-morrow
désagréable [dezagreabl] *dis-*
agreeable
descendre [desã:dr] *to go down,*
descend
désert [dezɛ:r] *m.* desert
désir [dezir] *m.* desire
***désirer** [dezire] *to desire, want,*
wish
désobéir [dezobeir] *to disobey*
dessert [desɛ:r] *m.* dessert
dessous [dəsu] *beneath, below,*
under
dessus [dəsy] *over, above*
détail [deta:j] *m.* detail
détailler [detaje] *to give (relate)*
in detail
détroit [detrwa] *m.* strait
détruire [detruj:r] *to destroy*

***deux** [dø] two; **tous (les)** —, both
***deuxième** [døzjɛm] second
***devant** [dəvɑ̃] in front of, before (*place*)
développer [devlɔpɛ] to develop
***devenir** [dəvni:r] to become
***devenu** [dəvny] *past part.* **devenir** to become
***devins** [dəvɛ̃] *past def.* **devenir** to become
***devoir** [dəvwa:r] to owe, ought; be; must (*supposition*)
***dévoué** [devwe] devoted; **votre bien** —, yours truly
diable [dja:bl] *m.* devil
Diane de Poitiers [djan də pwatje] *Duchess of Valentinois*
***dictionnaire** [diksjoɛnɛ:r] *m.* dictionary
Dieu [djø] *m.* God
différer [difere] to differ
***difficile** [difisil] difficult, hard
Dijon [dziʒɔ̃] *a city in eastern France*
***dimanche** [dimɑ̃:s] *m.* Sunday
dimension [dimɑ̃sjɔ̃] *f.* dimension
***dîner** [dine] *m.* dinner; **à or au** —, at (to) dinner
***dîner** [dine] to dine, take dinner
***dire** [dir] to say, tell; **dites donc!** say! **vouloir** —, mean
diriger [dirizɛ] to direct; **se** —, go
***dis** [di] *pres. indic.* **dire** to say
***dise** [di:z] *pres. subj.* **dire** to say
disparaître [disparɛ:tr] to disappear
disposer [dispoze] to dispose, arrange
distance [distɑ̃:s] *f.* distance
distinct [distɛ̃] distinct
distinguer [distɛ̃ʒ] to distinguish
***dit** [di] *past part.* **dire** to say
divers [divɛ:r] different, diverse
divisé [divize] divided
division [divizjɔ̃] *f.* division

***dix** [dis] ten
***dix-huit** [dizɥit] eighteen
***dix-huitième** [dizɥitjɛm] eighteenth
dixième [dizjɛm] tenth
dix-neuf [diznoɛf] nineteen
dix-sept [disɛt] seventeen
dix-septième [disɛtjɛm] seventeenth
doigt [dwa] *m.* finger
***dois** [dwa] *pres. indic.* **devoir** to owe
***doive** [dwa:v] *pres. subj.* **devoir** to owe
dollar [dɔla:r] *m.* dollar
domaine [dɔmɛ:n] *m.* domain, estate
dôme [do:m] *m.* dome
domination [dɔminasjɔ̃] *f.* domination, rule
dominer [dɔmine] to dominate
dommage [dɔma:ʒ] *m.* damage, loss; **quel** —! what a pity!
Domremy [dɔrɛmi] *village in eastern France (Vosges)*
***donc** [dɔ̃:(k)] then, therefore; **dites** —! say!
***donner** [dɔne] to give; **donnez-moi** give me; **donnez-moi de vos nouvelles** give me news of yourself; — **sur** open out upon
***dont** [dɔ̃] of whom, of (from, *etc.*) which, whose, with which, *etc.*, whence
Dordogne [dɔrdɔɲ] *f.* river in the south central part of France
doré [dɔre] gilded, golden
dormir [dɔrmir] to sleep, be sleeping
double [dubl] double
doubles [dubl] *m. pl.* doubles (*tennis*)
douloureusement [dulurøzmɑ̃] sadly
***doute** [dut] *m.* doubt; **sans** —, doubtless

douter [dute] to doubt
 Douvres [du:vr] Dover (*seaport in southern England*)
 dou-x [du]; -ce soft, sweet, gentle
 *douzaine [duzɛn] *f.* dozen
 douze [du:z] twelve
 douzième [duzjem] twelfth
 droit [drwa] *adj.* right; *adv.* up-right
 droite [drwat] *f.* right, right side; à —, to the right
 *du [dy] *contr.* of *de* + *le*
 *du [dy] *past part.* *devoir* to owe
 duc [dyk] *m.* duke
 ducat [dyka] *m.* ducat (*gold coin worth \$2.50 to \$3.00*)
 durer [dyre] to last
 *dus [dy] *past def.* *devoir* to owe

E

eau [o] *f.* water, (*pl.* *eaux*) waters, fountains; —x *thermales* hot springs
 éblouissant [ebluisɔ̃] dazzling
 écarter [ekarte] to take away; s'— *de* stray away, ramble
 échange [eʃɑ̃ʒ] *m.* exchange
 échapper [eʃape] to escape; s'—, escape
 échelonner [eʃlɔne] (s') to rise up at intervals
 éclairé [eklere] lighted
 éclat [ekla] *m.* burst, outburst
 *école [ekɔl] *f.* school; à l'—, at school
 écoli-er [ekɔlje], -ère *m.* & *f.* schoolboy, schoolgirl
 économe [ekɔnɔm] economical
 économique [ekɔnɔmik] economic
 écourter [ekurte] to cut short
 écrier [ekrie] (s') to cry, cry out
 *écrire [ekri:r] to write
 écrivain [ekrivɛ̃] *m.* writer
 édifice [edifis] *m.* building, edifice
 Édouard [edwa:r] Edward
 *éducation [edykasjɔ̃] *f.* education
 effacer [efase] to rub out, efface, erase; s'—, be effaced
 effet [efɛ] *m.* effect; *en* —, in fact
 effort [efɔ:r] *m.* effort
 *égal [egal] equal, same; *cela m'est* —, it's all the same to me, I don't care
 également [egalmɔ̃] likewise, equally
 égarer [egare] to lose; s'—, be lost, lose one's way
 égayer [egeje] to enliven; s'—, be enlivened
 église [egliz] *f.* church
 égout [egu] *m.* sewer
 Égypte [ezipt] *f.* Egypt
 *eh! [e] ah! — *bien!* well!
 électricité [elektrisite] *f.* electricity
 électrique [elektrik] electric
 élégance [elegɑ̃:s] *f.* elegance, style
 élégant [elegɑ̃] elegant
 éléphant [elefɑ̃] *m.* elephant
 élevage [elva:ʒ] *m.* raising, breeding; *pré d'—*, pasture
 *élève [elɛ:v] *m.* & *f.* pupil
 *élever [elve] to bring up, raise, erect; s'—, rise
 élire [eli:r] to elect
 *elle [el] she, it, her; — *-même* herself, itself
 *elles [el] they (*f.*), them (*f.*)
 éloigné [elwape] distant
 éloigner [elwape] (s') to go away
 élu [ely] *past part.* *élire* to elect
 embarquer [ābarke] to embark
 embarras [ābara] *m.* embarrassment
 embarrasser [ābarase] to trouble, hamper
 embellir [ābeli:r] embellish
 embrasure [ābrazy:r] *f.* embrasure

émigrer [emigre] to emigrate
émotion [emosjō] *f.* emotion
émouvant [emuvā] moving, affecting, exciting
emparer [āpare] (s') to seize, take possession of
empêcher [āpeʃe] to prevent
empereur [āprœr] *m.* emperor
***empire** [āpir] *m.* empire
emplette [āplet] *f.* purchase; faire —, to purchase
***employer** [āplwaje] to use
emporter [āporte] to carry away, carry off
empressement [āprɛsmā] *m.* eagerness; avec —, eagerly
emprunté [āprôte] borrowed
***en** [ā] *prep.* in, while, by, upon, into; — **retard** late
***en** [ā] *pron. and adv.* of (from, out of, for, by, etc.) it or them; of it, of him, of her, some of it, some of them; some, any
enceinte [āsē:t] *f.* enclosure
***enchanté** [āʃāte] delighted
enchanter [āʃāte] to delight, charm
***encore** [ākœr] yet, still; — **un** another (*additional one*)
***encre** [ā:kr] *f.* ink
endormi [ādormi] asleep
endormir [ādormir] (s') to go to sleep, fall asleep
endroit [ādrwa] *m.* place
***enfant** [āfā] *m. & f.* child
enfermer [āferme] to shut up, imprison, enclose
***enfin** [āfē] finally, at last
enfuir [āfqir] (s') to flee, run away
engrais [āgre] *m.* fertilizer
ennemi [ɛnmi] *adj.* hostile, of the enemy
ennemi [ɛnmi] *m.* enemy
enseigner [āʃeɲe] to teach
***ensemble** [āsā:bl] together

ensoleillé [āsōleje] sunny
***ensuite** [āsuit] afterwards, then
***entendre** [ātā:dr] to hear; **bien entendu**! of course!
enti-er [ātje], **-ère** entire
entourer [āture] to surround, enclose
entraîner [ātrene] to carry off (away), drag
***entre** [ā:tr] between, among
entrée [ātre] *f.* entrance
***entrer** [ātre] to enter, go (come) in
énumérer [enymere] to enumerate
***enverrai** [āvere] *fut.* **envoyer** to send
***environ** [āvirō] about
***envoie** [āvwa] *pres. indic. and pres. subj.* **envoyer** to send
***envoyer** [āvwaje] to send
épargner [eparne] to save, spare
épée [epe] *f.* sword
épi [epi] *m.* head, ear (*of a stalk of wheat*)
épingle [epē:gl] *f.* pin
époque [epøk] *f.* epoch, era
éprouvé [epruve] experienced
Erckmann-Chatrian [ɛrkman-ʃatrijā] *Émile Erckmann* (1822–1889) and *Alexandre Chatrian* (1826–1890), collaborators in novel writing
ériger [erize] to erect
***Ernest** [ɛrnest] *m.* Ernest
érudition [erydisjō] *f.* erudition, learning
escadre [eskadr] *f.* squadron, fleet; **chef d'—**, rear admiral
escalader [eskalade] to scale
escalier [eskalje] *m.* stairway, stairs
Espagne [espan] *f.* Spain
espagnol [espanɔl] Spanish
espérance [esperā:s] *f.* hope
***espérer** [espere] to hope

*essayer [esɛje] to try
 essuyer [esɥije] to wipe
 *est [ɛ] *pres. indic. être* to be
 est [ɛst] *m.* east
 *est-ce que [ɛskə] *sign of a question to follow*
 estimer [ɛstime] to esteem
 *et [e] and
 établir [etabli:r] to establish
 étage [eta:ʒ] *m.* story (*house*);
 —s rows one above the other
 *étais [etɛ] *impf. indic. être* to be
 étalage [etala:ʒ] *m.* show case, display
 état [eta] *m.* state, condition;
 homme d'État statesman
 *États-Unis [etazyni] *m. pl.*
 United States
 été [ete] *m.* summer
 *été [ete] *pas. part. être* to be
 éteint [etɛ̃] extinct
 étendre [etɑ̃:dr] to spread; s'—,
 extend
 *êtes [et] *pres. indic. être* to be
 étoile [etwal] *f.* star
 *étonner [etone] to astonish
 étrang-er [etrɑ̃ʒe], -ère *adj.* foreign
 étrang-er [etrɑ̃ʒe], -ère *m. & f.*
 foreigner
 être [ɛ:tr] *m.* being
 *être [ɛ:tr] to be; *est-ce que*
 (*sign of a question to follow*);
 — à belong to
 étroit [etrwa] narrow
 *étude [etyd] *f.* study
 *étudiant [etydjɑ̃], -e *m. & f.*
 student
 *étudier [etydje] to study
 *eu [y] *past part. avoir* to have
 *Europe [œrɔp] *f.* Europe
 européen [œpeɛ̃], -ne European
 *eus [y] *past def. avoir* to have
 *eusse [ys] *impf. subj. avoir* to have
 *eux [ø] they, them; —-mêmes
 they themselves, themselves

évasion [evazjɔ̃] *f.* escape
 événement [evenmɑ̃] *m.* event
 éventualité [evɑ̃tualite] *f.* eventuality, happening
 *éviter [evite] to avoid
 évoquer [evɔke] to evoke
 exact [egzakt] exact
 *examen [egzamɛ̃] *m.* examination
 excellence [ɛkselɑ̃:s] *f.* excellence, excellency
 excellent [ɛkselɑ̃] excellent
 *excepté [ɛksepte] except
 *exception [ɛksepsjɔ̃] *f.* exception
 exciter [eksite] to excite, cause
 excursion [ɛkskysrjɔ̃] *f.* excursion
 excuser [ɛkskyze] to excuse; s'—,
 excuse oneself
 exhiber [ɛgzibe] to display
 existence [egzistɑ̃:s] *f.* existence
 expédition [ɛkspedisjɔ̃] *f.* expedition
 expérimenté [ɛksperimɑ̃te] experienced
 exposé [ekspoze] exposed, shown
 exposition [ekspozisjɔ̃] *f.* exposition;
 — universelle World's Fair
 expression [ɛksprɛsjɔ̃] *f.* expression
 extérieur [ɛksterjœ:r] *m.* outside, exterior
 extrait [ɛkstre] *m.* extract, selection
 extrême [ɛkstre:m] extreme
 Extrême-Orient [ɛkstre:mɔ̃rjɑ̃] *m.*
 Far East
 extrémité [ɛkstremite] *f.* extremity, end

F

fabrication [fabrikasjɔ̃] *f.* manufacture
 fabuliste [fabylist] *m.* fable-writer
 façade [fasad] *f.* front, façade

face [fas] *f.* face; **en — de** in front of, opposite
***fâché** [fa:ʃe] sorry, angry
***facile** [fasil] easy
façon [fasõ] *f.* manner, way
faculté [fakylte] *f.* faculty, college
faible [fɛ:bl] weak, feeble
***faim** [fẽ] *f.* hunger; **avoir —**, to be hungry
***faire** [fɛ:r] to do, make, cause, wage, be; — **appeler**, — **venir** call, send for; — **attention** pay attention; — **le bien** do good; — **mes compliments** present my respects (give my regards); — **ses malles** pack his trunks; — **de même** do the same; — **un pique-nique** have a picnic; — **plaisir à** please; — **une promenade à pied (en auto)** take a walk (an auto ride); — **sortir** expel; **il fait beau, mauvais, froid (temps)** it is fine, bad, cold (weather); **chemin faisant** on the way; — **la navette** go to and fro; — **visiter** show (to visitors); **rouler pour — sortir (blé)** rub out (the grain); — **naître** give birth to
***fais** [fɛ] *pres. indic.* faire to do
***faisais** [fɛzɛ] *impf. indic.* faire to do
***fait** [fɛ] *past part.* faire to do
faîte [fɛ:t] *m.* top
falaise [fale:z] *f.* cliff
***fallait** [falɛ] *impf. indic.* falloir to be necessary
***falloir** [falwa:r] *impers. verb* to be necessary, have to; **il faut + infin.** one (etc.) must, one has to
fameu-x [famø], **-se** famous
famille [fami:j] *f.* family
fandango [fãdãgo] *m.* fandango (*Spanish dance*)
farce [fars] *f.* farce

***fasse** [fas] *pres. subj.* faire to do
fastueu-x [fastuø], **-se** luxurious
fatigant [fatigũ] tiring
***fatigué** [fatige] tired
***fatiguer** [fatige] to tire
***faudra** [fodra] *fut.* falloir to be necessary
***faut** [fo] *pres. indic.* falloir to be necessary
faute [fo:t] *f.* fault
fauteuil [fotœ:j] *m.* armchair
favori [favøri], **-te** favorite
fée [fe] *f.* fairy
féerie [feri] *f.* fairyland
féérique [ferik] fairylike
***femme** [fam] *f.* woman, wife
***fenêtre** [fənɛ:tr] *f.* window
***fer** [fɛ:r] *m.* iron; **chemin de —**, railroad; — **à cheval** horseshoe
***ferai** [fɛrɛ] *fut.* faire to do
***ferme** [ferm] *f.* farm
***fermer** [ferme] to close
fertile [fertil] fertile
fête [fɛ:t] *f.* festival, holiday; **jour de —**, holiday
feu [fø] *m.* fire; — **d'artifice** fireworks
feuillage [føja:ʒ] *m.* foliage
feuille [føɛ:j] *f.* leaf
feuillelet [føɛjɛ] *m.* sheet, leaf
***février** [fevrie] *m.* February
fidèle [fidɛl] faithful
fi-er [fjɛ:r], **-ère** proud
fièrement [fjermã] proudly
figure [figy:r] *f.* form, figure, face
figurer [figyre] to figure
***fil** [fil] *m.* wire
***fille** [fi:j] *f.* daughter; **jeune —**, girl
***film** [film] *m.* film, picture
***fils** [fis] *m.* son
fin [fẽ] *adj.* fine
***fin** [fẽ] *f.* end
***finir** [fini:r] to finish
Finistère [finiste:r] “*département*” of France

- *fis [fi] *past def.* faire to do
 *fisse [fis] *impf. subj.* faire to do
 flamme [fla:m] *f.* flame
 flanquer [flāke] to flank
 flatter [flate] to flatter; se —, flatter oneself
 flèche [fleʃ] *f.* arrow, spire
 *fleur [flœ:r] *f.* flower; en —, in flower
 fleuriste [flœrist] *m. & f.* florist
 fleuve [flœ:v] *m.* river (*flowing into the sea*)
 floral [floral] floral
 flot [flo] *m.* wave
 foi [fwa] *f.* faith
 *fois [fwa] *f.* time; deux —, twice
 fond [fō] *m.* bottom; au — de at the bottom of
 fondé [fōde] founded
 fondre [fō:dr] to melt
 *font [fō] *pres. indic.* faire to do
 fontaine [fōtɛ:n] *f.* fountain
 football [futbal] *m.* football
 forêt [fōrɛ] *f.* forest
 former [fōrme] to form
 fort [fō:r] *adj.* strong
 fort [fō:r] *adv.* much, very; loudly
 forteresse [fōrtərəs] *f.* fortress
 fortifié [fōrtifje] fortified
 fortune [fōrtyn] *f.* fortune, good luck; chercher —, to seek one's fortune
 fortuné [fōrtynɛ] fortunate, happy
 *fourchette [furʃet] *f.* fork
 fourmi [furmi] *f.* ant
 fournir [furni:r] to furnish
 *fournure [fury:r] *f.* fur
 frais [frɛ], fraîche cool, fresh, refreshed; faire —, to be cool (*weather*)
 fraise [frɛ:z] *f.* strawberry
 *franc [frā] *m.* franc (*about 4 cents*)
 *français [frāʃɛ] French; un Fran-
- çais a Frenchman; le —, French; leçon de —, French lesson
 *France [frā:s] *f.* France; en —, in(to) France
 Franche-Comté [frāʃ kōtɛ] *f. prov-ince in eastern France*
 franco-allemand [frāko almā] Franco-German
 François I [frāswa prəmje] Francis I (*king of France from 1515 to 1547*)
 Franklin, Benjamin [bɛʒamɛ frāklɛ] *American statesman and philosopher (1706–1790)*
 frapper [frape] to strike, knock, rap
 *Frédéric [frederik] Frederick; — le Grand Frederick the Great, 1712–1786 (*king of Prussia*)
 frémir [fremi:r] to shudder
 fréquent [frekā] frequent
 fréquenté [frekāte] frequented
 fréquenter [frekāte] to frequent
 *frère [frɛ:r] *m.* brother
 friche [friʃ] *f.* waste land
 frisson [frisō] *m.* thrill
 *froid [frwa] *adj.* cold, indifferent; *m.* cold; il fait —, it is cold (*of weather, etc.*); avoir —, to be cold (*of living beings*)
 frontière [frōtjɛ:r] *f.* frontier
 fronton [frōtō] *m.* “fronton” (*for pelota*)
 frotter [frōte] to rub
 *fruit [fruɪ] *m.* fruit (*collective or one piece of fruit*)
 fruiti-er [fruitje], -ère fruit (*adj.*)
 fruste [fryst] rough
 fuir [fui:r] to flee
 *fumer [fyme] to smoke
 furent [fy:r] *past def.* être to be
 furieusement [fyrjɔzmā] furiously
 *fus [fy] *past def.* être to be
 *fusse [fys] *impf. subj.* être to be

G

gages [gaʁʒ] *m. pl.* wages
gagner [gɑ̃ne] to gain, win, earn,
reach

*gai [ge] gay

galerie [galʁi] *f.* gallery

galop [galo] *m.* gallop; au —,
at a gallop

*gant [gɑ̃] *m.* glove

*garçon [garsɔ̃] *m.* waiter; petit
—, boy; en —s as men alone
(bachelors)

garde [gard] *m.* guard, guards-
man

garder [garde] to keep, take care
of

*gare [gaʁ] *f.* station, depot

garni [garni] adorned, furnished,
filled

Garonne [garɔ̃] *f.* river in south-
ern France

Gascogne [gaskɔ̃] *f.* Gascony
(province in southern France)

*gâteau [gato] *m.* cake

gauche [goʃ] *f.* left, left side;
à —, to the left

Gaule [go:l] *f.* Gaul

gaulois [golwa] Gallic

Gavarnie [gavarni] small town and
mountain basin in southern
France

géant [ʒeɑ̃] *m.* giant

geler [ʒəle] to freeze

gendarme [ʒɑ̃darm] *m.* policeman

général [ʒeneral] *adj.* general

général [ʒeneral] *m.* general

génie [ʒeni] *m.* genius

gens [ʒɑ̃] *m. or f. pl.* people

*gentil [ʒɑ̃ti], gentille [ʒɑ̃ti:j] nice,
gentle

géographie [ʒeɔɡrafi] *f.* geography

géométrique [ʒeɔmetrik] geomet-
rical

*Georges [ʒɔʁʒ] *m.* George

gerbe [ʒərb] *f.* bunch, sheaf

Gergovie [ʒɛrgovi] *Gallic city and
name of a plateau in Auvergne*
gisement [ʒizmɑ̃] *m.* deposit,
layer

*glace [glas] *f.* ice; mirror; une
—, ice cream; une — à la
vanille vanilla ice cream

glacé [glase] candied; marron
—, candied chestnut

glacier [glasje] *m.* glacier

glisser [glise] to slip

gloire [glwaʁ] *f.* glory

gorge [ɡɔʁʒ] *f.* gorge

gothique [ɡɔtik] Gothic

gouffre [gufr] *m.* abyss, gulf

gourmet [ɡurmɛ] *m.* epicure

*goût [gu] taste; chacun à son —,
each one to his own taste

goûter [gute] to taste, enjoy

gouvernement [ɡuvernəmɑ̃] *m.*
government

grain [grɛ̃] *m.* grain

*grammaire [ɡrameʁ] *f.* grammar

*grand [grɑ̃] large, great, tall

Grand Bé [grɑ̃ be] island off the
coast of Brittany

grandiose [ɡrɑ̃djo:z] grandiose,
imposing

Grand Palais [grɑ̃ pale] *m.* great
hall at Paris used for expositions

*grand-père [ɡrɑ̃pɛʁ] *m.* grand-
father

granit [grani] *m.* granite

grappe [grap] *f.* bunch

gras [ɡʁɑ], —se fat

Grasse [ɡʁas], comte de French
general (1722–1788)

gratte-ciel [ɡratsjel] *m.* sky-
scraper

gravé [grave] engraved

gravement [ɡravmɑ̃] gravely

grec [ɡʁɛk] *m.* Greek

Grèce [ɡʁɛis] *f.* Greek

Grenoble [ɡʁənobl] city in south-
eastern France

*gris [ɡʁi] grey

*gronder [grōde] to scold, grumble
 *gros [gro], -se big
 grotesque [grōtesk] grotesque
 grotte [grōt] *f.* grotto, cave
 groupe [grup] *m.* group
 guère [gɛ:r]: ne . . . —, hardly
 guérir [gɛ:r] to cure
 guerre [gɛ:r] *f.* war; grande —, World War
 guide [gid] *m.* guide
 Guillaume [gijo:m] *m.* William
 guillotine [gijōtin] *f.* guillotine
 Guise [giz], Henri, duc de —, assassinated by order of Henry III (1550–1588)
 Guyenne [guijɛn] *f.* province in the south central part of France

H

[h aspirate is indicated thus: 'h]

habiller [abiʒe] to dress; s'—, dress oneself
 habit [abi] *m.* suit, coat, garment
 habitant [abitā], -e *m. & f.* inhabitant
 *habiter [abite] to live in
 habitude [abityd] *f.* habit
 habituer [abitye] (s') to become accustomed
 'hameau [amo] *m.* hamlet
 Hamlet [amlet] Hamlet
 'hasard [aza:r] *m.* chance; par —, by chance
 Hastings [astinks] *city in England: battle of Hastings (1066)*
 'hâter [ate] to hurry, hasten; se —, hasten
 'haut [o] *m.* height, top
 'haut [o] high, tall; tout en —, at the very top; de —, height
 'hauteur [otœr] *f.* height
 'Havre (le) [lə:vɛr] *m.* Havre (*city in Normandy*)
 hectare [ɛkta:r] *m.* hectare (about 2½ acres)

hélas! [ela:s] alas!
 hellénique [ɛlenik] Hellenic, Greek
 *Henri [ãri] Henry
 Henri II [ãri dø] *king of France from 1547 to 1559*
 Henri III [ãri trwa] *king of France from 1574 to 1589*
 Henri IV [ãri katr] *king of France from 1589 to 1610*
 herbe [ɛrb] *f.* grass
 héroïne [ɛroin] *f.* heroine
 héroïque [ɛroik] heroic
 héroïquement [ɛroikmã] heroically
 *heure [œ:r] *f.* hour; quelle — est-il? what time is it? à six —s at six o'clock; à six —s moins le quart at a quarter before (of) six; de bonne —, early
 heureusement [œrøzmã] fortunately, happily
 *heureu-x [œrø], -se happy, fortunate
 *hier [jɛ:r] yesterday
 hippodrome [ipōdro:m] *m.* hippodrome
 *histoire [istwa:r] *f.* history
 historique [istorik] historic, historical
 hiver [ivɛ:r] *m.* winter; station d'—, winter resort
 *homme [ɔm] *m.* man; — d'État statesman; —s du Nord Northmen
 'honte [ɔ:t] *f.* shame; avoir —, to be ashamed
 horloge [ɔrlɔ:ʒ] *f.* clock
 hospitali-èr [ɔspitalje], -ère hospitable
 *hôtel [ɔtɛl] *m.* hotel
 Hôtel des Invalides [ɔtɛl dezɛvalid] *m. originally a home for old soldiers; now contains also a museum and the Tomb of Napoleon*

'houblon [ublõ] *m.* hop, hop-vine
'houiller [uje] coal-producing;
bassin —, coal fields

*Hugo, Victor [viktør ygo] *celebrated French poet, novelist and dramatist (1802–1885)*

huile [uil] *f.* oil

*'huit [uit] eight; — jours week

humain [ymē] human

humeur [ymœ:r] *f.* humor, disposition

humide [ymid] wet

hydro-électrique [idrœlektrik]
hydro-electric

I

*ici [isi] here

*idée [ide] *f.* idea

ignorant [inørā], -e *m. & f.* ignorant person

*il [il] he, it

*il y a [ilja] there is, there are
(*simple statement with no idea of pointing*); ago (*followed by expressions of time*)

île [i:l] *f.* island; — de la Cité
island in the Seine at Paris;
—s britanniques British Isles

Île de France [i:l də frās] *former province containing Paris*

illustrer [ilystre] to render illustrious; s'—, become illustrious

îlot [ilo] *m.* islet

*ils [il] they (*m.*)

image [ima:ʒ] *f.* picture

immense [imās] immense

immortel [imørtel], -le immortal

*imparfait [ēparfē] imperfect

impétueu-x [ēpetuø], -se impetuous

important [ēportā] important

impossible [ēpösibl] impossible

impression [ēpresjō] *f.* impression, effect

impressionnant [ēpresjonā] exciting, impressive

incendier [ēsādje] to set fire to, burn

incliner [ēkline] to bend

incompl-et [ēkōplē], -ète incomplete

inconnu [ēkōny] unknown

incorrigible [ēkōrizibl] incorrigible

indépendance [ēdepādās] *f.* independence

individualité [individuālite] *f.* individuality

industrie [ēdystri] *f.* industry

inestimable [inestimabl] inestimable

inférieur [ēferjœ:r] lower, inferior

*infinitif [ēfinitif] *m.* infinitive

infliger [ēfliʒe] to inflict

influent [ēflyā] influential

inimitable [inimitabl] inimitable

inoubliable [inubliabl] unforgettable

inscription [ēskripsjō] *f.* inscription

inscrire [ēskri:r] (s') to be inscribed

insecte [ēsēkt] *m.* insect

installer [ēstale] to install; s'—, install oneself

instant [ēstā] *m.* instant, moment

instrument [ēstrymā] *m.* instrument

intensi-f [ētāsif], -ve intensive

*intention [ētāsijō] *f.* intention; avoir l'—, to intend

interdit [ēterdi] forbidden

*intéressant [ēteresā] interesting

intéresser [ēterese] to interest; s'—, be interested in, take interest in

intérêt [ētere] *m.* interest

intérieur [ēterjœ:r] *m.* interior, inside

interrompre [ēterō:pr] to interrupt

intrépide [ētrepid] intrepid, daring

*inviter [ɛ̃vite] to invite
 *irai [ire] *fut.* aller to go
 *irreguli-er [iregylje], -ère irregular
 Isère [izɛ:r] *f.* river in southeastern France
 *Italie [itali] *f.* Italy
 itinéraire [itinɛ:r] *m.* itinerary

J

Jacques [zak] James
 *jamais [ʒame] ever, never; ne . . . —, never
 *janvier [ʒɑ̃vje] *m.* January
 *jardin [ʒardɛ̃] *m.* garden
 *jaune [ʒo:n] yellow
 *je [ʒə] I
 Jean [ʒɑ̃] John
 Jean Bart [ʒɑ̃ bar] *famous French seaman (1651–1702)*
 Jeanne [ʒɑ:n] Jane, Joan; — d'Arc Joan of Arc (1412–1431)
 Jérico [ʒeriko] Jericho
 Jérusalem [ʒeryzalem] Jerusalem
 *jeter [ʒəte] to throw
 jeu [ʒø] *m.* game
 *jeudi [ʒødi] *m.* Thursday
 *jeune [ʒœn] young; — fille (young) girl
 Joconde [ʒɔkɔ̃:d] (la) "La Gioconda" (*portrait by Leonardo da Vinci of Mona Lisa, wife of Francesco del Giocondo*)
 joie [ʒwa] *f.* joy
 *joli [ʒɔli] pretty
 *jouer [ʒwe] to play; — à (games); — de (instruments)
 jouet [ʒwe] *m.* toy
 jouir [ʒwir] to enjoy
 *jour [ʒur] *m.* day; huit —s week; quinze —s fortnight, two weeks; — de fête holiday; le point du —, daybreak
 *journal [ʒurnal] *m.* newspaper, diary

journée [ʒurne] *f.* day (*implies duration of time*)
 joyau [ʒwajo] *m.* jewel
 joyeu-x [ʒwajø], -se joyous; — vivant one who lives well, "good liver"
 juger [ʒyʒe] to judge
 juif [ʒɥif] *m.* Jew
 *juillet [ʒɥije] *m.* July
 *juin [ʒɥɛ̃] *m.* June
 Jules César [ʒyl seza:r] Julius Cæsar (100–44 B.C.)
 Jura [ʒyra] *m.* region of the Jura mountains in eastern France
 jusqu'à [ʒyska] up to, until
 juste [ʒyst] just
 justice [ʒystis] *f.* justice

K

*kilogramme [kilɔgram] (kilo) [kilo] *m.* kilogram (*about 2½ pounds*)
 *kilomètre [kilɔmɛtr] *m.* kilometer (*about ⅔ of a mile*)

L

*là [la] there (*with idea of pointing*); par —, along, along that way
 *là-bas [labɑ] yonder, over there, down there
 *laboratoire [laboratwa:r] *m.* laboratory
 labourer [labure] to plow
 laboureur [laburœ:r] *m.* farmer, husbandman, plowman
 *lac [lak] *m.* lake
 lacet [lase]: en —, zigzag
 Lac Inférieur [lakɛ̃ferjœ:r] *m.* "Lower Lake" (*in the Bois de Boulogne*)
 La Fayette [lafajet], Marie-Joseph, marquis de (1757–1834) *French general, great friend and*

- helper of the Americans during the Revolution*
- La Fontaine** [lafɔ̃tɛn], Jean de
great French fable-writer (1621–1695)
- ***laisser** [lɛsɛ] to allow, let, leave;
— **tomber** let fall, drop
- ***lait** [lɛ] *m.* milk
- lancer** [lɑ̃sɛ] to launch, throw
- Landes** [lɑ̃:d] a “*département*” in
the south of France with much
sandy, marshy land
- ***langue** [lɑ̃:g] *f.* tongue, language
- Languedoc** [lɑ̃gdɔk] province in
southern France
- lapin** [lapɛ̃] *m.* rabbit
- large** [larʒ] wide, broad; **de** —,
width
- largement** [larʒəmɑ̃] largely, ex-
tensively
- largeur** [larʒœ:r] *f.* width
- latin** [latɛ̃] *m.* Latin
- ***laver** [lave] to wash
- ***le, la, l', les** [lə, la, l, le] the
- ***le, la, l', les** [lə, la, l, le] him, her,
it, them
- ***leçon** [lɛsɔ̃] *f.* lesson
- légende** [lɛʒɑ̃:d] *f.* legend
- lég-er** [lɛʒɛ], **-ère** light
- ***légume** [legym] *m.* vegetable
- lendemain** [lɑ̃dmɛ̃] *m.* the next
day, the morrow
- ***lentement** [lɑ̃tmɑ̃] slowly
- ***lequel, laquelle, lesquels, les-
quelles** [ləkɛl, lakɛl, lekɛl,
lekɛl] who, whom, which (one,
-s), what (one, -s)
- ***lettre** [lɛtr] *f.* letter
- ***leur** [lœ:r] *pers. pron.* to them,
them
- ***leur** [lœ:r] *poss. adj.* their
- leur** [lœ:r]: **le** —, *poss. pron.*
theirs
- ***lever** [ləvɛ] to raise, lift; **se** —,
rise, get up
- lévite** [levit] *m.* Levite
- lèvre** [lɛ:vʁ] *f.* lip
- libre** [libr] free
- lieu** [ljø] *m.* place; **avoir** —, to
take place; **au** — **de** instead of
- ***ligne** [lip] *f.* line; **tête de** —,
terminus
- lilas** [lilɑ] *m.* lilac
- Lille** [lil] city in northern France
- limite** [limit] *f.* boundary
- limiter** [limite] to bound
- ***lire** [li:r] to read
- lis** [lis] *m.* lily
- ***lis** [li] *pres. indic.* lire to read
- ***liste** [list] *f.* list
- ***lit** [li] *m.* bed
- ***litre** [litr] *m.* liter (about one
quart)
- ***livre** [li:vʁ] *m.* book
- ***livre** [li:vʁ] *f.* pound
- Loches** [lɔʃ] castle and town in
Touraine
- loger** [lɔʒɛ] to lodge
- loi** [lwa] *f.* law
- ***loin** [lwɛ̃] far; **de** —, from afar
- Loire** [lwa:r] *f.* river in central
France
- ***Londres** [lɔ̃:dr] *m.* London
- ***long** [lɔ̃], **-ue** [lɔ̃g] long; **de** —,
length; **le** — **de** along
- Longchamp** [lɔ̃ʃɑ̃] race track in the
Bois de Boulogne
- ***longtemps** [lɔ̃tɑ̃] a long time
- longuement** [lɔ̃gmɑ̃] at length, for
a long time
- longueur** [lɔ̃gœ:r] *f.* length
- Lorraine** [lɔrɛ:n] *f.* province in
eastern France; “la bonne —,”
Joan of Arc
- ***lorsque** [lɔrskə] when
- louer** [lwe] to praise; hire, rent
- Louis XI** [lwi ɔ̃:z] king of France
from 1461 to 1483
- Louis XIII** [lwi trɛ:z] king of
France from 1610 to 1643
- Louis XIV** [lwi katɔrz] king of
France from 1643 to 1715

Louis XVI [lwi sɛiz] *king of France from 1774 to 1793*

*Louis XVIII [lwi dizit] *king of France from 1814 to 1824*

*Louis-Philippe [lwi filip] *king of France from 1830 to 1848*

*Louise [lwi:z] *Louise*

loup [lu] *m. wolf*

Louqsor [luksɔ:r] *m. village on the site of ancient Thebes in Egypt*

lourd [lur] *heavy*

lourdement [lurd(ə)mã] *heavily*

Louvre [lu:vr] *m. museum in Paris*

*lu [ly] *past part. lire to read*

lucarne [lykarn] *f. dormer window*

*Lucie [lysi] *Lucy*

lugubre [lygybr] *lugubrious, dismal*

*lui [lɥi] *him, to him, to her, it, himself; he; — même himself, itself; à — tout seul by himself alone*

lumière [lymjɛ:r] *f. light*

lumineu-x [lyminø], -se *luminous*

*lundi [lœdi] *m. Monday*

lune [lyn] *f. moon*

Lutétia [lytesja] *f. (French "Lutèce") Latin name for Paris at the time of the Roman invasion (58 B.C.)*

Luxembourg [lyksābur] *name of a palace, museum, and garden in Paris*

luxueu-x [lyksø], -se *luxurious*
lycée [lise] *m. French school, about the equivalent of the Junior College in the U. S.*

Lyon [ljɔ̃] *Lyons (city in the southeastern part of France)*

M

*macaron [makarɔ̃] *m. macaroon*

*madame [madam] *f. madam, Mrs.*

*mademoiselle [madmwazel] *f. Miss*

magasin [magazɛ̃] *m. store, shop*

magnifique [majifik] *magnificent*

*mai [mɛ] *m. May*

*main [mɛ̃] *f. hand*

*maintenant [mɛ̃t(ə)nã] *now*

*mais [mɛ̃] *but*

maïs [mais] *m. corn*

*maison [mezɔ̃] *f. house; à la —, home, at home; — de banque banking firm*

maître [mɛ:tr] *m. master, head*

majestueu-x [majɛstø], -se *majestic*

mal [mal] *adv. badly*

mal [mal] *m. evil, ill; — de mer seasickness; se faire —, to hurt oneself; — aux yeux eye ache*

*malade [malad] *ill, sick*

maladresse [maladres] *f. clumsiness; avoir la —, to be so clumsy as to*

malgré [malgre] *in spite of*

*malheureusement [malœrøzmã] *unfortunately*

*malheureu-x [malœrø], -se *unhappy*

*malle [mal] *f. trunk; faire sa —, to pack his trunk*

Manche [mã:ʃ] (la) *f. English Channel*

*manger [mã:ʒe] *to eat*

manière [manjɛ:r] *f. manner, way*

manquer [mãke] *to be lacking*

*manteau [mãto] *m. coat, cloak*

marbre [marbr] *m. marble*

marchand [marʃã] *m. merchant*

marché [marʃe] *m. market; (à) bon —, cheap, inexpensive*

*marcher [marʃe] *to walk, march, go; — le premier walk ahead*

*mardi [mardi] *m. Tuesday*

maréchal ferrant [mareʃal ferã] *m. blacksmith*

***marguerite** [margərit] *f.* daisy

***Marie** [mari] Mary

Marie Antoinette [mari ātwanet] *queen of France, wife of Louis XVI (1755–1793)*

Marie de Médicis [mari də me-disi:s] Marie de Medici, 1573–1642 (*queen of France, wife of Henry IV*)

marin [marē] *m.* marine, navy

marine [marin] *f.* navy

Maroc [marək] *m.* Morocco

marque [mark] *f.* make; company

marron [marō] *m.* chestnut; — **glacé** candied chestnut

***mars** [mars] *m.* March; Mars (*god of war*)

marseillais [marsɛjɛ] of Marseilles

Marseillaise [marsɛjɛ:z] (*la*) *f.* the French national song

Marseille [marsɛ:j] Marseilles (*seaport in southeastern France*)

massacrer [masakre] to massacre

massif [masif] *m.* group (of mountains); — **Central group of mountains in south central France**

massif [masif], **-ve** *adj.* massive, solid

match [matʃ] *m.* match (games)

matelot [matlo] *m.* sailor

***matin** [matē] *m.* morning; **au (le)** —, in the morning

***mauvais** [møve] bad

maximum [maksiməm] maximum

***me** [mə] me, to me, for me

mécontent [mekōtā] displeased, dissatisfied

mécontentement [mekōtātmā] *m.* dissatisfaction

médecin [medsē] *m.* doctor

Méditerranée [mediterane] *f.* Mediterranean

***meilleur** [mejœ:r] better; **le** —, best

***même** [mæ:m] (*before noun or pron.*) same; (*after noun or pron.*) self, very, even; (*adv.*) even; **moi** —, myself; **lui** —, himself; **faire de** —, to do the same

menacer [mənase] to menace, threaten

***mener** [mæne] to lead, take, conduct, drive

mer [mɛ:r] *f.* sea; **mal** (*m.*) **de** —, seasickness

***merci** [mersi] thank you, thanks

mercredi [merkɾedi] *m.* Wednesday

***mère** [mɛ:r] *f.* mother

mériter [merite] to deserve, merit

merveille [mervɛ:j] *f.* marvel

merveilleu-x [mervɛjø], **-se** marvelous

messieurs [mesjø] *m. pl.* gentlemen, sirs

mesurer [məzyre] to measure

métallurgique [metalyɾzik] metallurgic, metal

***mètre** [mɛtr] *m.* meter (*about 39.37 inches*)

métropole [metɾɔpɔl] *f.* metropolis

Métropolitain [metɾɔpolitē] *m.* subway company in Paris

***mettre** [mɛtr] to place, put; **se** — **à** begin; **se** — **en colère** get angry; — **le couvert** set the table

***meublé** [mœble] furnished

***meurs** [mœ:r] *pres. indic.* mourir to die

***midi** [midi] *m.* noon, twelve o'clock; southern part of France

***mien** [mjē]: **le** —, mine

***mieux** [mjø] better; **le** —, best

mil [mil] thousand

milieu [miljø] middle; **au** —, in the middle

militaire [militɛ:r] military

- mille** [mil] thousand
Millet [mile], **Jean-François**
French painter (1815–1875)
million [miljɔ̃] *m.* million
mine [min] *f.* mine
minuit [mini] *m.* midnight
***minute** [minyt] *f.* minute
***mis** [mi] *past part.* **mettre** to put
Misérables (les) [le mizerabl]
novel by Victor Hugo
misère [mize:r] *f.* distress, poverty
mode [mɔd] *f.* fashion, mode; à la —, fashionable
***moderne** [mɔdɛrn] modern
modique [mɔdik] moderate
***moi** [mwa] me, to me; I;
 — **-même** (I) myself
***moindre** [mwɛ:dr] *adj.* less; le —, least
***moins** [mwɛ̃] less, least, fewer;
 au (du) —, at least; à six heures — le quart at a quarter before (of) six
***mois** [mwa] *m.* month; au — de in the month of
moisson [mwasɔ̃] *f.* harvest
moitié [mwatje] *f.* half
***Molière** [mɔljɛ:r], **Jean-Baptiste**
French writer of comedy (1622–1673)
***moment** [mɔmɑ̃] *m.* moment
momie [momi] *f.* mummy
***mon, ma, mes** [mɔ̃, ma, me] my
Mona Lisa [mɔna liza] *f.* see Joconde
***monde** [mɔ̃:d] *m.* world, society, people; tout le —, everybody
***monsieur** [mɔsjø] *m.* sir, Mr.; *pl.* messieurs [mesjø] gentlemen
montagne [mɔtɑ̃] *f.* mountain
montagneu-x [mɔtɑ̃ø], —se mountainous
montant [mɔtɑ̃] rising, uphill
Mont Blanc [mɔ blɑ̃] *m.* mountain peak in eastern France
Mont-Dore [mɔ dɔ:r] *mountain with medicinal springs in Auvergne*
***monter** [mɔ̃te] to go up, mount, climb up
***montre** [mɔ̃:tr] *f.* watch; — bracelet *f.* wrist watch; à votre —, by your watch
***Montréal** [mɔ̃real] *m.* Montreal
***montrer** [mɔ̃tre] to show; **montrez-moi** show me
Mont Saint-Michel [mɔ sɛ̃ miʃɛl] *abbey and village in Normandy*
monture [mɔty:r] *f.* mount, beast (for riding), steed
monument [mɔnymɑ̃] *m.* monument
monumental [mɔnymɑ̃tal] monumental
moquer [mɔke]: **se — de** to make fun of
morale [mɔral] *f.* moral
moralité [mɔralite] *f.* morality play
mordre [mɔdr] to bite
morose [mɔro:z] gloomy
***mort** [mɔ:r] *past part.* mourir to die
mort [mɔ:r] *adj.* dead; à demi —, half dead
***mort** [mɔ:r] *f.* death; tête de —, skull
mortalité [mɔrtalite] *f.* mortality
morue [mɔry] *f.* codfish
***mot** [mo] *m.* word
mou [mu], **molle** [mɔl] soft
***mourir** [muri:r] to die
mouton [mutɔ̃] *m.* sheep; “—s Cook” Cook’s tourists
mouvement [muvmɑ̃] *m.* movement
moyen [mwajɛ̃], —ne middle, medium, average; — âge Middle Ages
Mulhouse [mylu:z] *city in eastern France*

munir [myni:r] to furnish
***mur** [my:r] *m.* wall
muraille [myra:j] *f.* wall
murier [myrje] *m.* mulberry tree
Murillo [myriljo or myrillo] *Spanish painter (1617-1682)*
murissant [myrisã] ripening
musée [myze] *m.* museum

N

***naissance** [nesãs:] *f.* birth
***naître** [nætr] to be born; **faire** —, give birth to
Nancy [nãsi] *city in eastern France*
***Napoléon I** [napoleõ prãmje] *emperor of France from 1804 to 1814*
Napoléon III [napoleõ trwa] *emperor of France from 1852 to 1870*
***naquis** [naki] *past def.* **naître** to be born
***natal** [natal] native
national [nasjonal] national; *pl.* **nationaux** citizens, countrymen
naturellement [natyrelmã] of course, naturally
navette [navet] *f.* shuttle; **faire la** —, to go to and fro
navire [navi:r] *m.* ship
***ne** [nə] no, not; **ne (n')** — **pas** not; **n'est-ce pas?** is it not so? are you not? do you not? *etc.*; — ... **ni** ... **ni** neither ... nor; — ... **personne** no one, nobody; — ... **plus** no more, no longer; — ... **que** only, but; — ... **jamais** never; — ... **rien** not anything, nothing
***né** [ne] *past part.* **naître** to be born
***nécessaire** [nesesæ:r] necessary
négliger [neglizε] to neglect
neige [nε:ʒ] *f.* snow
***neiger** [nε:ʒε] to snow

net [nɛt], **—te** clear
neu-f [nœf], **—ve** *adj.* new; **tout** —, quite (“brand”) new
***neuf** [nœf] nine
***neveu** [nævø] *m.* nephew
***New York** [nœ jɔrk] *f.* New York
nez [ne] *m.* nose; **rire au** —, to laugh in one's face
***ni** [ni] neither, nor; **ne** ... — ... —, neither ... nor
Niagara [njagara] *m.* Niagara
Nice [nis] *seaport in southeastern France*
nid [ni] *m.* nest
nier [nje] to deny
Nîmes [nim] *city in southeastern part of France*
“Noces de Cana” [nɔs də kana] *f. pl.* the “Marriage at Cana” (*painting by Paul Veronese*)
***Noël** [nœl] *m.* Christmas; **jour de** —, Christmas day
***noir** [nwa:r] black
***Noiraud** [nwaro] *m.* Blacky
noircir [nwarsi:r] to blacken
noisette [nwazet] *f.* hazelnut
***nom** [nɔ̃] *m.* name
nombre [nɔ̃:br] *m.* number
nombreu-x [nɔ̃brø], **—se** numerous
nommé [nɔme] named
nommer [nɔme] to name, appoint
***non** [nɔ̃] no, not
nord [nɔ:r] *m.* north
Nord-Sud [nɔ:rsyd] *m.* subway company in Paris
normand [nɔrmã] Norman
Normandie [nɔrmãdi] *f.* Normandy (*province in northwestern part of France*)
***note** [nɔt] *f.* grade, mark, bill
***notre, nos** [nɔtr, no] our
***nôtre** [no:tr]: **le** —, ours
Notre-Dame de Paris [nɔtrə dam də pari] *church in Paris; title of a novel by Victor Hugo (1831)*

nourrir [nuri:r] to nourish, feed, bring up

nourriture [nurity:r] *f.* food

***nous** [nu] we, us, to us

***nouv-eau, -el, -elle** [nuvo, nuvel, nuvel] new

***nouvelle** [nuvel] *f.* news; piece of news; **donnez-moi de vos** —s give me news of yourself

Nouvelle Orléans [nuvel orleũ] *f.* New Orleans

***novembre** [nɔvã:br] *m.* November

nu [ny] naked, bare

nul [nyl], **-le** no, no one

numéro [nymero] *m.* number

O

obélisque [ɔbelisk] *m.* obelisk

objet [ɔbzɛ] *m.* object

obliger [ɔbliʒe] to oblige, force

obstacle [ɔpstakl] *m.* obstacle

obtenir [ɔptənir] to obtain

oc [ɔk] *m.* yes (*in old Provençal*)

occasion [ɔkazjɔ] *f.* occasion, opportunity, chance

occidental [ɔksidãtal] western

occupation [ɔkypasjɔ] *f.* occupation

occuper [ɔkype] to occupy

océan [ɔseã] *m.* ocean

***octobre** [ɔktɔbr] *m.* October

œil [œ:j] *m.* eye

œuf [œf] *m.* egg

œuvre [œ:vr] *f.* work

***offert** [ɔfɛ:r] offered

officiellement [ɔfisjelmã] officially

offrir [ɔfri:r] to offer

***oiseau** [wazo] *m.* bird

olive [ɔli:v] *f.* olive

olivier [ɔlivje] *m.* olive tree

***on** [ɔ] one, they, we, you, people, some one

***oncle** [ɔ:kl] *m.* uncle

***ont** [ɔ] *pres. indic. avoir* to have

***onze** [ɔ:z] eleven

***opéra** [ɔpera] *m.* opera

opinion [ɔpinjɔ] *f.* opinion

or [ɔ:r] *m.* gold

orchestre [ɔrkestr] *m.* orchestra

ordinairement [ɔrdinermã] ordinarily

oreille [ɔrɛ:j] *f.* ear

organiser [ɔrganize] to organize

origine [ɔrizin] *f.* origin; **à l'—**, originally

orné [ɔrne] adorned

os [o:s] *m.* bone

osier [ozje] *m.* wicker

ossement [ɔsmã] *m.* bone

***ou** [u] or

***où** [u] where, in which

***oublier** [ublije] to forget

ouest [west] *m.* west

ouf! [uf] whew!

***oui** [wi] yes

ours [urs] *m.* bear

outré [utr] beyond; **passer —**, to pass by on the other side, pass on

ouvert [uveil] *past part. ouvrir* to open

ouvert [uveil] *adj.* open

ouverture [uverty:r] *f.* opening

ouvrier [uvrie] *m.* workingman

***ouvrir** [uvri:r] to open

P

Padirac [padirak] *mountain region in south central part of France*

page [pa:ʒ] *f.* page (*of a book*); *m.* page (*attendant*)

***pain** [pẽ] *m.* bread

***paire** [pɛ:r] *f.* pair

paître [pɛ:tr] to pasture, graze

paix [pɛ] *f.* peace

palais [palɛ] *m.* palace; — **de Justice** the courthouse in Paris; — **de glace** "Ice Palace" (*an indoor skating rink in Paris*)

pâle [pa:l] pale
 pâler [pa:liʁ] to turn pale
 *panier [panje] *m.* basket
 *panne [pan] *f.* engine trouble;
 avoir une —, to have engine
 trouble
 pape [pap] *m.* pope
 *papier [papje] *m.* paper; cor-
 beille à —, wastebasket; —
 écrit paper with writing on it
 *par [par] per, by, through, a; —
 là along, along that way; —
 contre on the other hand
 *paraître [paʁ:tr] to appear, seem
 parapet [paraɛ] *m.* parapet, rail-
 ing
 *parapluie [paraɥi] *m.* umbrella
 parasol [parasol] *m.* parasol
 *parc [park] *m.* park
 *parce que [parskə] because
 parcourir [parkuriʁ] to run
 parcours [parkur] *m.* trip
 *pardessus [pardəsɥ] *m.* overcoat
 par-dessus [pardəsɥ] above, over,
 higher than; — le bord over-
 board
 *pardonner [pardəne] to pardon;
 pardon! (I) beg your pardon!
 pareillement [paʁejmã] similarly,
 also
 parent [parã] *m.* parent, relative
 *paresseu-x [paʁəsø], -se lazy
 parfait [parfɛ] perfect
 parfois [parfwa] at times
 parfum [parfœ] *m.* perfume
 *Paris [paʁi] *m.* Paris
 parisien [paʁizjɛ], -ne Parisian;
 un Parisien a Parisian
 Parisii [paʁizii] *m. pl.* Gallic tribe
 formerly occupying the present
 site of Paris
 *parler [parle] to speak, talk
 parmi [parmi] among
 paroi [parwa] *f.* wall
 *pars [paʁ] *pres. indic.* partir to
 leave

part [paʁ] *f.*: à —, aside
 *partager [partaʒe] to share, di-
 vide
 parterre [paʁtɛʁ] *m.* flower-bed
 particuli-er [partikylje], -ère par-
 ticular, peculiar
 particulièrement [partikyljermã]
 particularly
 *partie [parti] *f.* part, game,
 party
 *partir [paʁtiʁ] to leave, depart,
 go away; à — de beginning with
 partout [partu] everywhere
 *pas [pa] no, not; ne . . . —, no,
 not; — un (ne) not one; — de
 no, not, none; non —, not;
 n'est-ce —? shall we not? *etc.*;
 — du tout not at all
 pas [pa] *m.* step, footstep
 Pascal [paskal], Blaise *French*
philosopher and writer (1623–
 1662)
 Pas-de-Calais [patkale] *m. dis-*
trict, “département” in northern
France
 Pas-Perdus [paɛpɛrɔ] *m. pl.*:
 Salle des —, “Room of Lost
 Steps” (*great hall in the “Palais*
de Justice”)
 passage [pasa:ʒ] *m.* passage, traf-
 fic
 passager [pasaze] *m.* passenger
 passant [pasã], -e *m. & f.*
 passer-by
 *passer [pase] to pass, spend
 (*time*), pass by; — outre pass
 on, pass by on the other side
 passionner [pasjəne] to interest
 strongly
 Paterson [paʁɛsɔn] *city in New*
Jersey, center of silk industry
 *patience [pasjã:s] *f.* patience
 patiner [patine] to skate
 *pâtisserie [patisʁi] *f.* pastry (*pie,*
cake, etc.)
 patrie [patri] *f.* country, fatherland

Pau [po] *city in southwestern part of France*

***Paul** [pɔl] *m. Paul*

***pauvre** [po:vʀ] *poor*

***payer** [peʝe] *to pay, pay for*

***pays** [pei] *m. country (political division)*

paysage [peiza:ʒ] *m. landscape*

paysan [peizɑ̃] *m. peasant, countryman*

peau [po] *m. skin, hide*

***pêche** [pe:ʃ] *f. peach*

pêcher [peʃe] *to fish (for)*

pêcheu-r [peʃœ:r], *-se m. & f. fisherman, fisherwoman*

peindre [pɛ:dr] *to paint*

peine [pe:n] *f. pain, trouble; valoir la —, to be worth the trouble; avoir de la —, have difficulty*

peintre [pɛ:tr] *m. painter*

peinture [pɛty:r] *f. painting*

pelote [plɔt] *f. pelota (game)*

pelouse [plu:z] *f. lawn*

pencher [pɑ̃ʃe] *to bend, incline*

***pendant** [pɑ̃dɑ̃] *during, for; — que while*

pendre [pɑ:dr] *to hang*

pénétrer [penetre] *to penetrate*

pensée [pɑ̃se] *f. pansy*

***penser** [pɑ̃se] *to think; — de have an opinion of; — à turn one's thoughts towards*

***pension** [pɑ̃sjɑ̃] *f. boarding house; board*

percer [pɛrse] *to pierce*

***perdre** [pɛdr] *to lose; ruin*

***père** [pe:r] *m. father*

période [pe:rjɔd] *f. period (unit of time)*

périr [pe:ri:r] *to perish*

perle [pɛrl] *f. pearl*

***permettre** [permetr] *to permit, let*
perpétuel [perpetuel], *-le perpetual, everlasting*

Perrault [pero], *Charles French writer of fairy tales (1628–1703)*

personnage [pɛrsona:ʒ] *m. personage, character, person*

personnalité [pɛrsonalite] *f. personality*

***personne** [pɛrson] *m. anybody, nobody; ne . . . —, not any one, no one, nobody*

***personne** [pɛrson] *f. person; pl. people*

perte [pɛrt] *f. loss; à — de vue as far as the eye can see*

peser [pɛze] *to weigh*

***petit** [pɛti] *little, small*

Petit Palais [pɛti pale] *m. building in Paris used for expositions*

***peu** [pø] *m. little, few; si — de chose so little (a thing)*

peuple [pœpl] *m. people, nation*

peuplé [pœple] *populated*

peur [pœ:r] *f. fear; avoir —, to be afraid*

peut-être [pøtɛ:tr] *perhaps*

peux [pø] *pres. indic. pouvoir to be able*

Philippe-Auguste [filip əgyst] *Philip Augustus (king of France from 1180 to 1223)*

photographier [fɔtɔgrafje] *to photograph*

***phrase** [fraz:z] *f. sentence*

***physique** [fizik] *f. physics*

piano [pjano] *m. piano*

pièce [pjes] *f. piece, play*

***pied** [pje] *m. foot; à —, on foot*

Pierre [pje:r] *Peter*

pierreu-x [pje:rø], *-se stony*

pin [pɛ̃] *m. pine*

pipe [pip] *f. pipe*

***pique-nique** [piknik] *m. picnic; faire un —, to have a picnic*

piscine [pisin] *f. swimming pool*

pitié [pitje] *f. pity; avoir — de to have pity on*

pittoresque [pitɔresk] *picturesque*

place [plas] *f. square, place; position*

Place de la Concorde [plas də la kōkōrd] *f.* public square in Paris

plage [pla:ʒ] *f.* beach, seashore, summer resort

plaie [plɛ] *f.* wound

plaine [plɛn] *f.* plain

***plaie** [plɛ:r] to please; **s'il vous plaît** please, if you please
plaisir [plɛzi:r] *m.* pleasure; **faire — à** to please

plan [plā] *m.* plan

plantureu-x [plātyrø], **-se** very fertile, luxuriant

plat [pla] flat

plateau [plato] *m.* plateau

plate-forme [platfɔrm] *f.* platform

plein [plɛ̃] full; **en — air** in the open air

pleurer [plœre] to cry, weep

***pleuvoir** [plœvwa:r] to rain

plonger [plɔʒe] to plunge, dive

***plu** [ply] *past part.* **pleuvoir** to rain

***plume** [plym] *f.* pen

plupart [plypa:r] *f.* greater part, majority, most

***plus** [ply] more; **le —**, the more, the most; **ne ... —**, no more, no longer; **de —**, more, besides; **de — en —**, more and more

plusieurs [plyzjoær] several

pluvieu-x [plyvjø], **-se** rainy

pneu [pnø] (**pneumatique**) [pnø-matik] *m.* tire; **crever un —**, to burst a tire, have a blowout

poche [pɔʃ] *f.* pocket

poète [pœit] *m.* poet

poétique [pœtik] poetic

poids [pwa] *m.* weight

point [pwɛ̃] *adv.* no, not, not at all; **ne ... — (de)** not any, no

point [pwɛ̃] *m.* point; **— du jour** daybreak; **au — de vue** from the standpoint of

poire [pwair] *f.* pear

poison [pwazɔ̃] *m.* poison

poisson [pwasɔ̃] *m.* fish

poissoneu-x [pwasɔnø], **-se** full of fish

***pomme** [pɔm] *f.* apple; **— de terre** *f.* potato

pommier [pɔmje] *m.* apple tree

pont [pɔ̃] *m.* bridge

Pont du Gard [pɔ̃ dy ga:r] *m.* bridge and old Roman aqueduct

pontifical [pɔ̃tifikal] papal, pontifical

Pont-Neuf [pɔ̃nœf] *m.* bridge in Paris

populaire [pɔpylɛ:r] popular

population [pɔpylasjɔ̃] *f.* population

porphyre [pɔrfi:r] *m.* porphyry (*spotted marble*)

port [pɔ:r] *m.* port

***porte** [pɔrt] *f.* door

***porter** [pɔrte] to carry, wear, bear; **se —**, be (*health*); **— intérêt** take an interest

portrait [pɔrtre] *m.* portrait

poser [poze] to put, place; **— une question** ask a question

positif [pozitif], **-ve** matter-of-fact, materialistic

posséder [pɔsede] to own, possess

***possible** [pɔsibl] possible

postal [pɔstal] postal

***poste** [pɔst] *m.* set; **— de T.S.F.** radio set, wireless

***poste** [pɔst] *f.* post office; **— restante** general delivery

post-scriptum [pɔskriptɔm] *m.* postscript

***pot** [po] *m.* jar

potage [pɔta:ʒ] *m.* soup

poule [pul] *f.* hen

***poulet** [pule] *m.* chicken

***pour** [pur] in order to, to, for; **— que** in order that

pourpre [purpr] purple

*pourquoi [purkwa] why
 *pourrai [pure] *fut.* pouvoir to be able
 poursuivre [pursɥi:vr] to continue, pursue
 pousser [puse] to grow, push forward, utter
 *pouvoir [puvwair] to be able, can, may
 pratique [pratik] practical
 pratiquer [pratike] to practise, arrange; *se* —, be practised
 pré [pre] *m.* meadow; — d'élevage pasture
 Pré Catalan [pre katalã] *m.* *café in the Bois de Boulogne*
 précieux-x [presjø], -se precious, valuable, fine
 précipice [presipis] *m.* precipice
 précipiter [presipite]: *se* —, to rush, hasten
 *précis [presi] precise, exact; neuf heures —es exactly nine o'clock
 *préférer [prefere] to prefer, like better
 préhistorique [preistorik] prehistoric
 *premi-er [prəmje], -ère first, leading; *marcher le* —, to walk ahead
 *prendre [prã:dr] to take, get, catch, seize; — un billet buy a ticket; — contact come into touch
 préoccupation [preokypasjõ] *f.* preoccupation
 *près de [pre də] near
 présent [prezã] present
 présenter [prezãte] to introduce, present; *se* —, present oneself, introduce oneself
 président [prezidã] *m.* president
 Président-Wilson [prezidã vilsõ], l'avenue du street in Paris named for President Wilson

presque [præsk] almost, nearly
 *prêt [pre] ready
 prêter [prete] to lend
 prêtre [pre:tr] *m.* priest
 preuve [prœ:v] *f.* proof
 prévenir [prevni:r] to prevent
 *prier [prije] to beg, ask
 primeur [primœ:r] *f.* early fruit, vegetable, *etc.*
 primiti-f [primitif], -ve primitive
 principal [prēsipal] chief, principal
 principalement [prēsipalmã] principally
 *printemps [prêtã] *m.* spring; au —, in the spring
 *pris [pri] *past def.* prendre to take
 *pris [pri] *past part.* prendre to take
 *prise [pri:z] *f.* capture, taking
 prison [prizõ] *f.* prison
 privilégié [privilezje] privileged, favored
 *prix [pri] *m.* price, prize
 procession [prəsəsijõ] *f.* procession
 *prochain [prõžẽ], -e next; l'année —e next year
 producti-f [prødyktif], -ve productive
 production [prødyksijõ] *f.* production
 produire [prødyir] to produce
 *professeur [prøfesœ:r] *m.* professor
 profiter [prøfite] to profit
 profond [prøfõ] deep
 profondeur [prøfõdœ:r] *f.* depth
 projecteur [prøzektœ:r] *m.* projector, spotlight
 *promenade [prømnad] *f.* walk, promenade, trip; faire une — à pied (*en auto*) to take a walk (*an auto ride*), *etc.*
 *promener [prømne] to take walking; *se* —, go walking or riding; *se* — *en automobile* go riding in an automobile

promettre [prɔmɛtr] to promise
promontoire [prɔmɔ̃twa:r] *f.*
 promontory
prononcer [prɔnɔ̃se] to pronounce
propice [prɔpis] propitious
propos [prɔpo]: à —, fitting,
 timely
proposer [prɔpoze] to propose,
 suggest
***propriétaire** [prɔpriɛtɛ:r] *m. & f.*
 proprietor, landlord, landlady
prospérité [prɔsperite] *f.* pros-
 perity
protecteur [prɔtɛktœ:r] *m.* pro-
 tector, patron
protéger [prɔteʒe] to protect
provençal [prɔvɑ̃sal] of Provence,
 Provençal
Provence [prɔvɑ̃:s] *f.* province in
 southeastern France
proverbe [prɔvɛrb] *m.* proverb
proverbial [prɔvɛrbjal] proverbial
province [prɔvɛ̃s] *f.* province
provision [prɔvizjɔ̃] *f.* supply
prudent [prydɑ̃] prudent, care-
 ful
Prusse [prys] *f.* Prussia (*state in*
Germany)
***pu** [py] *past part.* **pouvoir** to be
 able
publi-c [pyblik], -que public
***puis** [pɥi] then
puisque [pɥiskə] since
puissant [pɥisɑ̃] powerful
***puisse** [pɥis] *pres. subj.* **pouvoir**
 to be able
puits [pɥi] *m.* well
punir [pyɛn:r] to punish
pur [py:r] pure
***pusse** [pys] *impf. subj.* **pouvoir**
 to be able
Puy-de-Dôme [pɥi də do:m] *m.*
 mountain in Auvergne
Pyrénées [pirene] *f. pl.* Pyrenees
 (mountains between France and
 Spain)

Q

quai [ke] *m.* quay, wharf
qualité [kalite] *f.* quality
***quand** [kɑ̃] when; **depuis** —?
 how long? since when?
***quant à** [kɑ̃t a] as for
quarante [karɑ̃t] forty
***quart** [ka:r] *m.* quarter
quartier [kartje] *m.* quarter, district
Quasimodo [kazimɔdo] *m.* dwarf
 in Victor Hugo's novel "Notre
 Dame de Paris"
quatorze [katɔrz] fourteen
quatorzième [katɔrzjem] four-
 teenth
***quatre** [katr] four
quatre-vingt(s) [katrɔvɛ̃] eighty
quatre-vingt-neuf [katrɔvɛ̃nœf]
 eighty-nine
quatre-vingt-six [katrɔvɛ̃sis]
 eighty-six
quatre-vingt-treize [katrɔvɛ̃tre:z]
 ninety-three
***que** [kə] *conj.* that, as, than
***que** [kə] *pron.* whom, which,
 that, what; **qu'est-ce qui?**
 what? who? **qu'est-ce — c'est**
 —? what is? **ce —**, that which,
 what; **qu'est-ce —?** what?
***que** [kə] *adv.* how, how many,
 how much, what (a), than;
ne . . . —, only, but
***quel** [kɛl], -le what, which;
 who; —le question! what a
 question!
***quelque(s)** [kɛlkə] some, a few,
 several; — **chose** (*m.*) some-
 thing; — **chose de bon** some-
 thing good
***quelqu'un** [kɛlkœ̃], **quelques-uns**
 [kɛlkəzœ̃] some one, some
***question** [kɛstjɔ̃] *f.* question;
poser une —, to ask a question
***qui** [ki] who, which, that, whom;
 à —, whose; **ce —**, what

- ***quinze** [kɛ̃ːz] fifteen; — **jours** fortnight, two weeks
quinzième [kɛ̃ːzjɛm] fifteenth
 ***quitter** [kite] to leave, quit
 ***quoi** [kwa] what; **en** —, of what (*material*)
 ***quoique** [kwakə] although

R

- Rabelais** [rablɛ], **François** *French writer* (1490–1553)
 ***raconter** [rakɔ̃tɛ] to relate, tell
 ***raison** [rezɔ̃] *f.* reason, sense; **avoir** —, to be (in the) right
ramasser [ramasɛ] to pick up, collect, gather together
Raphaël [rafaɛl], **Sanzio** *Raphael (celebrated Italian painter, 1483–1520)*
rapide [rapid] rapid
rappeler [raplɛ] to recall; **se** —, remember, recall
ravissement [ravismɑ̃] *m.* delight; **être dans le** —, to be delighted
rebondir [rɛbɔ̃diːr] to rebound, bound back
 ***recevoir** [rɛsɔvwaːr] to receive
recherche [rɛʃɛʁʃ] *f.* search, research; **à la** — **de** in search of
réclame [reklaːm] *f.* advertisement
 ***reçois** [rɛswa] *pres. indic. recevoir* to receive
récompenser [rekɔ̃pɑ̃sɛ] to reward
reconnaître [rɛkɔ̃nɛːtr] to recognize
reconnu [rɛkɔ̃ny] *past part. reconnaître* to recognize
reconstruire [rɛkɔ̃stʁuiːr] to rebuild
recouvert [rɛkuvɛːr] covered
 ***reçu** [rɛsy] *past part. recevoir* to receive

- refaire** [rɛfɛːr] to do again, repack
refuser [rɛfyzɛ] to refuse
regard [rɛgaːr] *m.* manhole
 ***regarder** [rɛgarde] to look (at); **regarde un peu** look, just look; — **la campagne** look around
région [rezjɔ̃] *f.* region
 ***régner** [reɲɛ] to rule, reign
 ***regretter** [rɛgrete] to regret, be sorry
Reims [rɛːs] *Rheims (city in northern France)*
 ***reine** [rɛːn] *f.* queen
rejoindre [rɛʒwɛːdr] to join again, join
réjouir [rɛʒwiːr] to rejoice; **se** —, be joyful
relater [rɛlate] to relate
relever [rɛlvɛ] to lift up
remarquer [rɛmarke] to notice, remark
remercier [rɛmɛrsje] to thank
remettre [rɛmɛtr] to restore, put back; **se** — **en route** set out again
remonter [rɛmɔ̃te] to go up
rempart [rɛpaːr] *m.* rampart
remplir [rɛ̃plir] to fill
remporter [rɛ̃pɔ̃rte] to win, gain
remuer [rɛmɥɛ] to move, stir; **bien remué** well worked (*land*)
Renaissance [rɛnɛsɑ̃ːs] *f.* Renaissance (*in France, 15th and 16th centuries*)
rencontre [rɛ̃kɔ̃ːtr] *f.* meeting
rencontrer [rɛ̃kɔ̃tre] to meet, find
rendement [rɛ̃dmɑ̃] *m.* yield
rendre [rɛ̃ːdr] to give back, make; **se** —, make oneself, surrender
renfermer [rɛ̃fɛrme] to enclose, contain
renommé [rɛ̃nɔ̃me] renowned, celebrated
rentrer [rɛ̃tʁɛ] to return home, reënter

renvoyer [rãvwaje] to send away
 repas [rãpa] *m.* meal
 *répéter [repete] to repeat
 répliquer [replike] to reply
 répondre [repõ:dr] to answer
 réponse [repõ:s] *f.* reply, answer
 repos [rãpo] *m.* rest
 reposer [rãpoze] to repose, rest, lie
 reprendre [rãprã:dr] to take back again, reply
 représentation [rãprezãtasjõ] *f.* performance
 représenter [rãprezãte] to represent
 reproche [rãprõʃ] *m.* reproach
 *république [repyblik] *f.* republic
 réputation [repytasjõ] *f.* reputation
 réseau [rezo] *m.* net, network, system
 résidence [rezidã:s] *f.* residence
 résider [rezide] to dwell
 résister [reziste] to resist
 résolu [rezõly] resolved
 ressemblance [rãsãblã:s] *f.* resemblance
 ressembler [rãsãble] to resemble
 resserré [rãsere] narrow, constricted
 ressource [rãsurs] *f.* resource
 *restaurant [rãstørã] *m.* restaurant
 reste [rãst] *m.* remainder, remains
 *rester [rãste] to remain, stay
 *retard [rãta:r] *m.* delay; être en —, to be late (belated)
 *retarder [rãtarde] to delay; — (de) be slow (*watch*)
 retirer [rãtire] to pull out; se —, retire, withdraw
 retour [rãtu:r] *m.* return; à son —, upon his return
 retourner [rãturne] to return, turn up; se —, turn around

retraite [rãtret] *f.* retreat, departure
 retrouver [rãtruvẽ] to find again; find, meet again
 réunir [reyni:r] to meet; se —, assemble together, meet
 *réussir [reysi:r] to succeed
 réveiller [reveje] to waken; se —, wake up
 *revenir [rãvni:r] to return, come back
 rêver [reve] to dream
 *revoir [rãvwair] to see again; au —, good-bye
 révolution [revõlysjõ] *f.* revolution; — française French Revolution (1789)
 révolutionnaire [revõlysjõnã:r] revolutionary
 revue [rãvy] *f.* review
 Rhin [rẽ] *m.* river in eastern France and Germany
 Rhône [ro:n] *f.* river in southeastern France
 *riche [riʃ] rich
 richesse [riʃes] *f.* riches, source of wealth
 ridicule [ridikyl] *m.* ridicule; tourner en —, to ridicule
 *rie [ri] *pres. subj.* rire to laugh
 *rien [rjẽ] anything, nothing; ne . . . —, not anything, nothing
 *rire [ri:r] *m.* laughter
 rire [ri:r] to laugh; — aux éclats burst out laughing; — au nez laugh in one's face
 risque [risk] *m.* risk, danger
 rival [rival] *m.* rival
 rivaliser [rivalize] to rival
 rive [ri:v] *f.* bank
 Riviera [rivjera] *f.* name commonly given to the Mediterranean coast from Nice to Spezia in Italy (*French form Rivièr* *f.*)
 rivière [rivjẽ:r] *f.* river (*flowing into another river*)

*robe [rɔb] *f.* dress
 *Robert [rɔbɛ:r] Robert
 Robespierre [rɔbɛspjɛ:r] (1758–1794) *chief revolutionary leader during the “Reign of Terror”*
 Rocamadour [rɔkamadu:r] *village in south central part of France*
 Rochambeau [rɔʃābo] (1725–1807) *French general in command of troops sent to help the Americans in the ‘Revolutionary War’*
 rocher [rɔʃe] *m.* rock, cliff
 rocheu-x [rɔʃø], -se *rocky*
 *roi [rwa] *m.* king
 Rollon [rɔlɔ̃] Rollo (*viking, first duke of Normandy, died in 931*)
 romain [rɔmɛ̃] Roman
 roman [rɔmā] *adj.* romance
 roman [rɔmā] *m.* novel
 romance [rɔmās] *f.* ballad
 romancier [rɔmāsje] *m.* novelist
 romanesque [rɔmanesk] *romantic*
 romantisme [rɔmātism] *m.* romanticism
 rompre [rɔ:pr] *to break*
 rond [rɔ̃] *round; tout en —, all in a circle*
 ronde [rɔ̃:d] *f.* inspection, roundelay; *chemin de —, sentinel’s beat*
 rosace [rozas] *f.* rose window
 *rose [ro:z] *f.* rose
 Rostand [rɔstā], Édmond *French playwright, author of “Cyrano de Bergerac”*
 *rôtir [rɔti:r] *to roast*
 Rouen [rwā] *capital of Normandy*
 *rouge [ru:ʒ] *red*
 Rouget de Lisle [ruʒɛ də lil] (1760–1836) *composer of “La Marseillaise”*
 rougir [ruʒi:r] *to blush*
 rouleau [rulo] *m.* roll
 rouler [rule] *to roll*

route [rut] *f.* route; *en —, on the way*
 royal [rwajal] *royal, regal*
 royaume [rwajo:m] *m.* kingdom
 rude [ryd] *rough, rude, hard*
 *rue [ry] *f.* street
 ruine [rɥin] *f.* ruin

S

sable [sa:bl] *m.* sand
 *sac [sak] *m.* sack, bag
 *sache [saʃ] *pres. subj. savoir to know*
 sacrer [sakre] *to crown, anoint*
 sage [sa:ʒ] *wise*
 saint [sɛ̃] *adj.* holy, sacred; *terre —e Holy Land*
 saint [sɛ̃] *m.* saint
 Saint-Cloud [sɛ̃ klu] *small city southwest of Paris, near which is the park of Saint-Cloud*
 Sainte-Chapelle [sɛ̃t ʃapel] *f. small church in Paris built in the 13th century during the reign of Louis IX*
 Saint Louis [sɛ̃ lwi] *Louis IX, king of France from 1226 to 1270*
 Saint-Malo [sɛ̃ malo] *village in Brittany*
 Saint-Michel [sɛ̃ miʃel] *boulevard in Paris, the center of the Latin Quarter*
 *sais [se] *pres. indic. savoir to know*
 saisir [sezi:r] *to seize*
 saisissant [sezisā] *startling, “gripping”*
 saison [sezɔ̃] *f.* season
 *salade [salad] *f.* salad
 salir [sali:r] *to soil*
 *salle [sal] *f.* room; — *de classe classroom; — à manger dining room*
 saluer [salqe] *to salute, bow, speak to*

Samaritain [samaritɛ̃] *m.* Samaritan (*a Biblical character*)

***samedi** [samdi] *m.* Saturday

sanctuaire [sɑ̃ktɥɛ:r] *m.* sanctuary

***sandwich** [sɑ̃dwitʃ] *m.* sandwich

***sans** [sɑ̃] without; — **que** without (that)

Saône [so:n] *f.* river in eastern France

saphir [safir] *m.* sapphire

sarcophage [sarkɔfa:ʒ] *m.* sarcophagus

sardine [sardin] *f.* sardine

satisfait [satisfɛ] satisfied

sau-f [so:f], **-ve** except

***saurai** [sɔre] *fut.* **savoir** to know

sauter [sote] to leap, jump

sauver [sove] to save

Savoie [savwa] *f.* province in eastern France

***savoir** [savwa:r] to know, know how

savon [savɔ̃] *m.* soap

scène [sɛ:n] *f.* scene, stage

science [sjɑ̃s] *f.* science

scolaire [skɔlə:r] school

sculpté [skylte] carved

sculpture [skylty:r] *f.* sculpture

***se** [sə] oneself, to oneself, himself, herself, *etc.*

séance [seɑ̃s] meeting, performance

sec [sɛk], **sèche** [sɛ:ʃ] dry

***second** [sɛgɔ̃] second

secours [sɛku:r] *m.* help

secr-et [sɛkrɛ], **-ète** secret

section [sɛksjɔ̃] *f.* section

séduire [sedɥir] to charm

seigneur [sɛnœ:r] *m.* lord

Seine [sɛ:n] *f.* Seine (*river flowing through Paris*)

seize [sɛ:z] sixteen

seizième [sezjem] sixteenth

séjour [sezɥ:r] *m.* stay, sojourn;

faire un —, to stay

séjourner [sezurne] to live, stay

selon [səlɔ̃] according to

semaine [səmen] *f.* week

sembler [sāble] to seem

sénat [sena] *m.* Senate

sens [sɑ̃s] *m.* sense, direction, way

sentir [sɑ̃tir] to feel; **se** —, feel oneself

séparer [separe] to separate

***sept** [sɛt] seven

***septembre** [septɑ̃:br] *m.* September

septième [sɛtjem] seventh

Sequana [sekwana] *f.* early Latin name for the Seine

***serai** [sɛre] *fut.* **être** to be

sérieusement [sɛrjɔzmɑ̃] seriously

sérieu-x [sɛrjɔ], **-se** serious

service [sɛrvis] *m.* service

servir [sɛrvir] to serve; — **à** serve (*for the purpose of*)

***seul** [sœl] alone, single; **à lui tout** —, to himself alone

seulement [sœlmɑ̃] only

***Sévigné** [sevipe] (**Mme de**) (1626–1696) *French writer celebrated for her "Letters"*

***si** [si] if, whether; **s'il vous plaît** please, if you please

***si** [si] so, however

siècle [sjɛkl] *m.* century

siège [sjɛ:ʒ] *m.* siege; seat; **avoir son** —, to be located

***sien** [sjɛ̃]: **le** —, his, hers, its

siffler [sifle] to whistle

sifflet [sifle] *m.* whistle

signe [sjɛ̃] *m.* sign

signer [sjɛ̃] to sign

silence [silɑ̃s] *m.* silence, stillness

***s'il vous plaît** [silvuple] please, if you please

simple [sɛ̃:pl] *adj.* simple

simple [sɛ̃:pl] *m.* singles (*tennis*); **en** —, in singles

***simplement** [sɛ̃pləmɑ̃] simply

- sire [sir] *m.* sire, Your Majesty
 sitôt [sito] so soon
 situation [sitʷasjɔ̃] *f.* situation
 situé [sitɥe] situated
 *six [sis] six
 société [sɔsjete] *f.* society, organization
 *sœur [sœr] *f.* sister
 *soie [swa] *f.* silk
 *soif [swaf] *f.* thirst; avoir —, to be thirsty
 soigné [swaɲe] carefully prepared
 soigner [swaɲe] to care for, treat
 soigneusement [swaɲøzmã] carefully
 soin [swê] *m.* care; avoir —, prendre —, to take care
 *soir [swa:r] *m.* evening; au (le) —, in the evening; hier —, last evening (*night, up to bedtime*); le — même that very evening
 *sois [swa] *pres. subj. être* to be
 soixante [swasã:t] sixty
 soixante-cinq [swasãtsɛ:k] sixty-five
 *soixante-douze [swasãtdu:z] seventy-two
 soixante-onze [swasãtɔ̃:z] seventy-one
 sol [sol] *m.* soil
 soldat [solda] *m.* soldier
 soleil [sɔlɛ:j] *m.* sun
 solennel [sɔlanɛl] solemn
 solitaire [sɔlitɛ:r] alone, solitary
 sombre [sɔ:br] sombre, dark, gloomy
 somme [sɔm] *f.* sum
 *sommeil [sɔmɛ:j] *m.* sleep; avoir —, to be sleepy
 *sommes [sɔm] *pres. indic. être* to be
 sommet [sɔmɛ] *m.* summit, top
 somptueux [sɔptɥø], —se sumptuous
 son [sɔ̃] *m.* sound
 *son, sa, ses [sɔ̃, sa, se] his, her, its
 sonner [sɔne] to sound, ring
 *sont [sɔ̃] *pres. indic. être* to be
 Sorbonne [sɔrbɔn] the college of Liberal Arts and Sciences of the University of Paris
 *sort [sɔ:r] *m.* fate
 sortie [sorti] *f.* exit, outlet, going out, leaving
 *sortir [sorti:r] to go (come) out, stick out; faire —, make come out, expel
 sot [so], —te foolish, silly
 sou [su] *m.* sou (5 centimes), penny, copper
 souhait [swɛ] *m.* wish; à —, to one's heart's content
 souhaiter [swɛte] to wish
 soulagement [sulazmã] *m.* relief
 soulager [sulaze] to relieve
 soulier [sulje] *m.* shoe
 soupe [sup] *f.* soup
 source [surs] *f.* spring
 souriant [surjã] smiling, agreeable, pleasing
 *sous [su] under
 soutenir [sutni:r] to sustain
 souterrain [suterɛ̃] subterranean, underground
 souvenir [suvni:r] *m.* memory; souvenir
 souvenir [suvni:r]: se —, to remember
 *souvent [suvã] often
 souverain [suvrɛ̃] sovereign
 *soyez [swaje] *pres. subj. être* to be
 spécialiser [spesjalize] to specialize
 spécialité [spesjalite] *f.* speciality
 spectacle [spektakl] *m.* sight, performance
 spectateur [spektatœ:r] *m.* spectator
 spectre [spektr] *m.* specter, ghost

*sport [spɔ:r] *m.* sport
 square [skwa:r] *m.* square
 stade [stad] *m.* stadium
 station [stasjɔ̃] *f.* station; —
 d'hiver winter resort
 statue [staty] *f.* statue
 stentor [stãtɔ:r] *m.* stentor; de
 —, stentorian
 stérile [steril] sterile, barren
 Strasbourg [strazbu:r] *city in*
eastern France
 *stupide [stypid] silly, stupid
 *subir [sybi:r] to undergo, take
 *subjonctif [sybʒɔ̃ktif] *m.* sub-
 junctive
 subsister [sypsiste] to subsist
 succéder [syksede] to succeed
 succès [sykse] *m.* success
 successeur [syksesœ:r] *m.* suc-
 cessor
 succursale [sykyrsal] *f.* branch
 office
 sucre [sykr] *m.* sugar
 sud [syd] *m.* south; au —, in
 the south
 sud-ouest [sydwest] southwest
 *suis [sqi] *pres. indic. être* to be
 suisse [sqis] Swiss
 Suisse [sqis] *f.* Switzerland
 *suite [sqit] *f.* continuation; par
 —, in consequence; tout de —,
 immediately
 *suivant [sqivã] following
 suivre [sqi:vr] to follow; suivant sa
 coutume according to his custom
 *sujet [syʒe] *m.* subject
 superficie [syperfisi] *f.* area
 supplément [syplemã] *m.* addition
 suprême [syprɛ:m] supreme, high-
 est, latest
 *sur [syr] on, upon, over, by
 sûr [syr] sure
 surgir [syrʒi:r] to surge up
 surpris [syrpri] surprised
 surtout [syrtu] above all, es-
 pecially

*sus [sy] *past def. savoir* to know
 suspendu [syspãdy] hanging, sus-
 pended
 *Suzanne [syzan] Susan
 symboliser [sẽbɔlize] to symbolize

T

*table [tabl] *f.* table; — d'hôte
 table d'hôte (*meals at a fixed*
price); — de marbre marble
 slab, tablet
 *tableau [tablo] *m.* picture; —
 noir blackboard
 tâcher [ta:ʃe] to try
 tambour [tãbu:r] *m.* drum
 tandis que [tãdi(s)kə] while,
 whilst
 *tant [tã] so, so many, so much;
 — mieux so much the better
 *tante [tã:t] *f.* aunt
 Tarascon [taraskɔ̃] *city in south-*
eastern France
 *tard [ta:r] late (*at a late hour*);
 plus —, later
 Tartarin [tartarẽ] *hero of Daudet's*
novel "Tartarin de Tarascon"
 tasse [tas] *f.* cup
 tâter [tarte] to feel
 taureau [tɔro] *m.* bull
 *taxi [taksi] *m.* taxi
 *tel [tel], -le such (a), like
 télégraphique [telegrafik] tele-
 graphic
 *téléphoner [telefɔne] to tele-
 phone
 *téléphonie [telefɔni] *f.* telephony
 téléphonique [telefɔnik] tele-
 phonic
 *temps [tã] *m.* time, weather;
 faire beau (mauvais) —, to be
 fine (bad) weather; à —, in
 time; de — en —, from time
 to time
 tendresse [tãdres] *f.* love, affec-
 tion

- tenir** [tənir] to hold, hold on, keep; consider; **se** —, stand, stay; — **à** **insister**; **tenez-vous heureux** consider yourself fortunate; — **au courant** keep informed; **s'en** —, confine oneself; — **à honneur** consider as a point of honor
- *tennis** [tenis] *m.* tennis
- tentative** [tātati:v] *f.* attempt
- tenter** [tâte] to tempt
- tenu** [təny] *past part.* **tenir** to keep
- terminer** [termine] to end, terminate
- *terrain** [terē] *m.* field, land; court (*tennis*)
- terrasse** [teras] *f.* terrace
- terre** [tɛ:r] *f.* earth, ground, land; — **sainte** Holy Land; **par** (**à**) —, on the ground
- terreur** [terœ:r] *f.* terror
- Terreur** [terœ:r] (*la*) *f.* “*Reign of Terror*” during the French Revolution (May 31, 1793–July 27, 1794)
- testament** [testamā] *m.* will
- tête** [tɛ:t] *f.* head; — **de mort** skull; — **de ligne terminus**
- thé** [te] *m.* tea
- *théâtre** [teatr] *m.* theater; **coup de** —, dramatic turn of events, unexpected happening
- théière** [teje:r] *f.* teapot
- thermal** [termal] thermal; **eaux** —es hot springs
- Thomas** [tōma] Thomas
- tiens** [tjē] *pres. indic.* **tenir** to hold
- tiers** [tje:r] *m.* third
- tigre** [tigr] *m.* tiger
- *timbre(-poste)** [tēbr(pōst)] *m.* stamp (*postage*)
- tins** [tē] *past def.* **tenir** to hold
- tirer** [tire] to draw, take
- tiroir** [tirwar] *m.* drawer
- Titien** [tisjē] Titian (*celebrated Italian painter, 1477–1576*)
- titre** [titr] *m.* title
- toile** [twal] *f.* linen
- toilette** [twalet] *f.* toilet; clothes
- toit** [twa] *m.* roof
- tombeau** [tōbo] *m.* tomb
- *tomber** [tōbe] to fall; **laisser** —, drop, let fall
- ton** [tō] *m.* tone, manner
- *tort** [tɔ:r] *m.* wrong; **avoir** —, to be (in the) wrong; **à** —, wrongfully
- tortueu-x** [tɔrtuø], —se winding
- toucher** [tuʃe] to touch
- *toujours** [tuʒur] always, still
- toulousain** [tuluzē] of Toulouse
- Toulouse** [tuluz] *city in southern France*
- tour** [tur] *f.* tower; *m.* tour, trip
- Tour Eiffel** [tur efel] *f.* Eiffel Tower
- Touraine** [ture:n] *f.* province in central part of France
- Tourangeau** [turāzo] *m.* inhabitant of Touraine (*pl.* **Tourangeaux**)
- touriste** [turist] *m. & f.* tourist
- ournée** [turne] *f.* tour
- tourner** [turne] to turn; — **en** ridicule
- Tours** [tur] *former capital of Touraine*
- *tout, toute, tous, toutes** [tu, tut, tu(s), tut] all, whole, any, every; quite; everything; — **le monde** everybody; — **de suite** immediately, at once; — **à l'heure** presently or a little while ago; **tous (les) deux** both; — **à fait** entirely; **pas du** —, not at all; — **neuf** quite (“brand”) new; — **en haut** at the very top; — **seul** all alone, alone
- tradition** [tradisjō] *f.* tradition
- trahir** [trair] to betray
- *train** [trē] *m.* train

trait [trɛ] *m.* trait, action
traité [trɛtɛ] *m.* treaty
trajet [traʒɛ] *m.* journey, trip
tramway [tramwe] *m.* street car, car; **en** —, by street car
***tranquille** [trākil] tranquil, easy in mind
tranquillement [trākilmā] calmly
tranquillité [trākilite] tranquillity, quiet
transatlantique [trāsatlātik] transatlantic
transformer [trāsfɔrmɛ] to transform
transition [trāzisiʒɔ̃] *f.* transition
travail [trava:j] *m.* work, labor
***travailler** [travaje] to work
travailleur [travajœ:r] *m.* worker, workman
travers [travɛ:r]: **à** —, across
traversée [traverse] *f.* crossing
traverser [traverse] to cross, traverse, go through
treize [trɛ:z] thirteen
treizième [trɛzjɛm] thirteenth
trembler [trāble] to tremble
***trente** [trā:t] thirty
trente-cinq [trātsɛ̃k] thirty-five
***très** [trɛ] very
trésor [trezɔ:r] *m.* treasure
Trianon [trianɔ̃]: **le Grand** — **et le Petit** —, *two châteaux in the park of Versailles*
Tribunal Révolutionnaire [tribynal revɔlysjɔnɛ:r] *m.* Revolutionary Tribunal during the "Reign of Terror"
triomphe [trio:f] *m.* triumph
triste [trist] sad
***trois** [trwa] three
***troisième** [trwazjɛm] third
tromper [trɔpɛ] to deceive; **se** —, be mistaken
trône [tro:n] *m.* throne
***trop** [trɔ] too, too much, too many

trottoir [trɔtwair] *m.* sidewalk
troubadour [trubadu:r] *m.* troubadour (*poet of southern France*)
troupe [trup] *f.* troop, company
***trouver** [truve] to find; think; **se** —, be (*position, condition*), find oneself, be situated
truffe [tryf] *f.* mushroom
***T.S.F.** [te ɛs ɛf] *f.* (téléphonie sans fil) wireless telephony; **un poste de** —, radio set
tuer [tɥɛ] to kill
Tuileries [tɥilri] *f. pl.* a garden in Paris
***tulipe** [tylip] *f.* tulip
Tunisie [tynizi] *f.* Tunis
tunnel [tynɛl] *m.* tunnel
type [tip] *m.* type

U

***un, une** [œ, yn] a, an, one; **l'** — **et l'autre** both; **encore** —, another (*additional one*)
unique [ynik] single, only
unir [yni:r] to unite
unité [ynite] *f.* unity
universel [yniversɛl], **—le** universal
universitaire [yniversite:r] university, belonging to the university
***université** [yniversite] *f.* university
usage [yza:ʒ] *m.* usage, custom
***usine** [yzin] *f.* factory
usurpé [yzyrpɛ] usurped
***utile** [ytil] useful
utilité [ytilite] *f.* use

V

***vacances** [vakā:s] *f. pl.* vacation
vache [vaʃ] *f.* cow
vaillant [vajā] valiant
***vais** [vɛ] *pres. indic.* aller to go
vaisseau [veso] *m.* ship

- valeur** [valœr] *f.* value, worth
valise [vali:z] *f.* suitcase
vallée [vale] *f.* valley
valoir [valwa:r] to be worth; —
 mieux be better; — **la peine**
 be worth the trouble or worth
 while
***vanille** [vani:j] *f.* vanilla; **une**
 glace à la —, vanilla ice cream
vase [va:z] *m.* vase
vaste [vast] vast
***vendre** [vã:dr] to sell
***vendredi** [vãdrædi] *m.* Friday
***venir** [vəni:r] to come; — **de**
 (+ *infin.*) have just; **faire —**,
 call, send for
vent [vã] *m.* wind
***venu** [vəny] *past part.* **venir** to
 come
Vénus de Milo [veny:s də milo]
 f. the famous statue of Venus
 from the island of Milo in the
 Grecian Archipelago
ver [vœ:r] *m.* worm; — **à soie**
 silkworm
***verbe** [vərb] *m.* verb
Vercingétorix [versẽzetərɪks] *Gal-*
 lic leader in the time of Cæsar
 (72?–46 B.C.)
verdoyant [verdwa:jã] verdant,
 green
***vérité** [verite] *f.* truth
vernir [vəni:r] to varnish
Véronèse [verœnɛ:z], **Paul Paul**
 Veronese (*Italian painter, 1528–*
 1588)
***verrai** [vɛrɛ] *fut.* **voir** to see
***verre** [vœ:r] *m.* glass (*for water,*
 etc.)
verrerie [vɛrri] *f.* glassware, glass
 factory
***vers** [vœ:r] *adv.* toward, in the
 direction of
vers [vœ:r] *m.* verse
Versailles [versɑ:j] *m.* city about
 12 miles southwest of Paris, near
 which are the palace and park
 of Versailles
verser [vɛrsɛ] to pour
vertigineu-x [vɛrtizinø], –se dizzy
***vestibule** [vɛstibyl] *m.* hall
***veuillez** [vœje] (+ *infin.*) please
***veux** [vø] *pres. indic.* **vouloir** to
 wish
***viande** [vjã:d] *f.* meat
victime [viktim] *f.* victim
victoire [viktwa:r] *f.* victory
vide [vid] empty
***vie** [vi] *f.* life, living
vieillard [vjɛja:r] *m.* old man
vieillir [vjɛjir] to grow old
***viendrai** [vjɛdre] *fut.* **venir** to
 come
***vienne** [vjɛn] *pres. subj.* **venir** to
 come
***viens** [vjɛ] *pres. indic.* **venir** to
 come
***vieux, vieil, vieille** [vjø, vjɛ:j,
 vjɛ:j] old
vi-f [vif], –ve alive, rapid; **à**
 vive allure at a rapid rate
vigne [vin] *f.* grapevine(s), vine-
 yard
vignoble [vinøbl] *m.* vineyard
vigoureux-x [vigurø], –se vigorous,
 strong
viking [vikin] *m.* viking
village [vila:ʒ] *m.* village
***ville** [vil] *f.* city; **en —**, down-
 town
vin [vɛ] *m.* wine
Vinci, Léonard de [leɔna:r də
 vɛsi] Leonardo da Vinci (*Italian*
 painter, 1452–1519)
***vingt** [vɛ] twenty
vingt-cinq [vɛtsɛ:k] twenty-five
***vins** [vɛ] *past def.* **venir** to come
violette [vjølet] *f.* violet
virage [vira:ʒ] *m.* veering
visite [vizit] *f.* visit
***visiter** [vizite] to visit, examine;
 faire —, show (*to visitors*)

visit-eur [vizitœ:r], **-euse** *m. & f.*
 visitor
***vite** [vit] quickly
vitesse [vites] *f.* speed
vitrine [vitrin] *f.* show case
vivant [vivā] *m.*: **joyeux** —, one
 who lives well, "good liver"
vivant [vivā] living
vivement [vivmā] keenly
vivre [vi:v] to live
***voici** [vwasi] here is, here are
 (*with idea of pointing*)
***voie** [vwa] *f.* track
***voilà** [vwala] there is, there are
 (*with idea of pointing*); —!
 there you are!
***voir** [vwair] to see
***vois** [vwa] *pres. indic.* **voir** to see
voisin [vwazē] neighboring, near
voiture [vwaty:r] *f.* car, carriage
voix [vwa] *f.* voice
volaille [vɔla:j] *f.* fowl, poultry
volcan [vɔlkā] *m.* volcano
voler [vɔle] to steal, rob
voleur [vɔlə:r] *m.* thief
volontiers [vɔlɔ̃tje] willingly,
 freely
***Voltaire** [vɔlte:r] *French writer*
 (1694–1778)
Vosges [vo:ʒ] (les) *mountains in*
eastern France
***votre, vos** [vɔtr, vɔ] your
***vôtre** [vo:tr]: le —, yours
***voudrais** [vudrɛ] *cond.* **vouloir** to
 wish
***vouloir** [vulwair] to wish, want,
 be willing; **je voudrais bien** I
 want (wish), should like; —
dire mean; **voulez-vous?** do

you wish (want)? will you? **en**
 — **à** be angry with
***voulu** [vuly] *past part.* **vouloir**
 to wish
voulut [vuly] *past def.* **vouloir** to
 wish
***vous** [vu] you, to you, yourself,
 yourselves
voyage [vwaja:ʒ] *m.* trip, voyage,
 travel
***voyager** [vwajaze] to travel
voyag-eur [vwajaʒœ:r], **-euse** *m.*
 & *f.* traveler, passenger
***voyons!** [vwajɔ̃] let's see! come
 now!
vrai [vrɛ] true
vraiment [vrɛmā] really, truly
***vu** [vy] *past part.* **voir** to see
vue [vy] *f.* view, sight; **à perte**
de —, as far as the eye can see

W

wagon [vagɔ̃] *m.* car (*railroad*)
Washington [wəʒintɔ̃], **George**
George Washington (1732–1799)

Y

***y** [i] there; il — **a** there is, there
 are (*simple statement with no*
idea of pointing); il — **a** (*followed*
by expressions of time) ago
***yeux** [jø] *m. pl.* of *œil* eyes
Yorktown [jɔrktaun] town in
Virginia

Z

zone [zo:n] *f.* zone

VOCABULARY

ENGLISH-FRENCH

A

a (an) un, une; **ten francs** — dozen dix francs la douzaine; **ten francs** — day dix francs par jour; **what** — ! quel!

able: **be** —, pouvoir, savoir

about de, autour de, environ, à peu près; — **it en**

absolutely absolument

abundant abondant

accept accepter

accident accident *m.*

accompany accompagner

accomplished accompli

according: — **to** selon, suivant

account: **on** — **of** à cause de, en

accuse accuser

ache: **have a head** —, avoir mal à la tête

acquaintance connaissance *f.*

acquainted: **be** — **with** connaître

acquire acquérir

acquit acquitter

act agir, se conduire

action action *f.*, trait *m.*

active actif (active), agile

add ajouter

admiral: **rear** —, chef (*m.*) d'escadre (*pl.* chefs d'escadre)

admit admettre

advice conseil *m.*; **good** —, bons conseils

advise conseiller, recommander

affair affaire *f.*, accident *m.*; **the whole** —, toute l'affaire

affirm affirmer

afford avoir les moyens de

afraid: **be** — (of) avoir peur (de), craindre; **be much** —, avoir grand'peur, avoir bien peur

after conj. après que

after prep. and adv. après; **twenty minutes** — **10:00** dix heures (et) vingt (minutes)

afternoon après-midi *m. or f.*; **good** — ! bonjour!

afterwards ensuite, puis

again encore, encore une fois, de nouveau

against contre

age âge *m.*; **be twenty years of** —, avoir vingt ans; **be of** — (to do so) être en âge (de le faire)

ago il y a; **two weeks** —, il y a quinze jours

agreeable agréable

ahead: **walk** —, marcher le premier

air air *m.*

airplane aéroplane *m.*

alas! hélas!

Alice Alice

alive vivant

all tout, toute (*pl.* tous, toutes); **after** —, après tout; **not at** —, pas du tout, point; — **over the house** par toute la maison; **it's** — **the same to me** cela m'est égal; — **of a sudden** tout d'un coup

allow laisser, permettre

almost presque

alone seul; **let** —, laisser tranquille

- along** par, le long de
aloud à haute voix
already déjà
also aussi
although bien que, quoique
always toujours
A.M. du matin; **8:00** —, huit heures du matin
am see be (être)
ambition ambition *f.*
American américain
among, amongst parmi, entre, chez
amuse amuser; — **oneself** s'amuser
an see a
and et
angry: be —, être fâché, se fâcher; — **with** fâché contre; **get** —, se fâcher
animal animal *m.* (*pl.* animaux), bête *f.*
announce annoncer
another (*a different one*) un (une) autre; (*an additional one*) encore un (une)
answer n. réponse *f.*
answer v. répondre; — **for them** en répondre
ant fourmi *f.*
antechamber antichambre *f.*
antique antique *m.*, antiquité *f.*
antiquity antiquité *f.*
anxious: be — to tenir à; **he is** — **that I see** il tient à ce que je voie
any du, de la, des, de, en; aucun, aucune; **not** — (+ *noun*) pas de; — **one** (*with neg.*) personne; — **thing** (*with neg.*) rien; **I haven't** —, je n'en ai pas; **don't give him** —, ne lui en donnez pas; **at** — **hour** n'importe quelle heure
anybody quelqu'un, quelqu'une, on; **not** —, ne ... personne, ne ... aucun (aucune)
anything quelque chose *m.*; **not** —, ne ... rien; — **good** quelque chose de bon; **not** — **good** ne ... rien de bon
apartment appartement *m.*
appetite appétit *m.*
apple pomme *f.*
apply applique; — **oneself** s'appliquer
appoint nommer
appreciate apprécier
approach approcher de, s'approcher de
approve trouver bon
April avril *m.*
apron tablier *m.*
Arab Arabe *m.*
are see be (être)
area superficie *f.*
arise se lever
arm bras *m.*
armchair fauteuil *m.*
armistice armistice *m.*
army armée *f.*
around autour (de); **go** — **the park** faire le tour du parc
arouse exciter
arrange arranger
arrest arrêter
arrival arrivée *f.*
arrive arriver
article article *m.*, objet *m.*
artist artiste *m.*
as comme, aussi, si, que; (*time*) pendant que; — **many**, — **much** autant (de + *noun*); — **much** — **possible** le plus possible; — **soon** —, aussitôt que; **have** — **good a time** — **possible** s'amuser le plus possible; — **fast** —, aussi vite que; — **for** quant à; **the same thing** —, la même chose que; — **they went along** chemin faisant; **twice** — **much** — **it is worth** deux fois plus (cher) qu'il ne

vaut; ten times — many things
dix fois plus de choses
ascend monter
ashamed: be —, feel —, avoir
honte
aside à part
ask demander, prier; — to de-
mander de, prier de; — **him**
for it le lui demander; — a
question faire (poser) une ques-
tion; — **somebody something**
demander quelque chose à
quelqu'un
asleep endormi; be —, être en-
dormi, dormir; **fall** —, s'en-
dormir
assemble assembler
assist aider
assure assurer
astonish étonner
astonishing étonnant
at à, chez, de; — **the home**
(house) of chez (+ owner); **he**
is — **home** il est chez lui; —
our home chez nous; — **John's**
chez Jean; — **least** au moins;
— **once** tout de suite
athlete athlète *m.*
attack attaquer
attain atteindre
attend assister à
attention attention *f.*; pay —,
faire attention
August août *m.*
Augustus Auguste
aunt tante *f.*; **to your** —'s home
chez votre tante
author auteur *m.*
automobile automobile *f.*, auto *f.*
autumn *adj.* automnal, d'automne
autumn *n.* automne *m.*; **in** —, en
automne
aviator aviateur *m.*
avoid éviter
awake *intr.* se réveiller
away: go —, s'en aller, partir;

far —, loin, loin d'ici; run —,
se sauver

B

bachelor garçon *m.*
back dos *m.*
back: come —, revenir; go —,
retourner; be —, être de retour;
look —, regarder en arrière
bacon lard *m.*
bad mauvais, méchant
bag sac *m.*
baker boulanger *m.*
ball (toy) balle *f.*
Balzac, Honoré de *French writer*
(1799–1850)
banana banane *f.*
bandage bander; — **again** bander
de nouveau
banker banquier *m.*
banking house maison de ban-
que *f.*
bareheaded: to be —, avoir la
tête nue
barn écurie *f.* (horses); étable *f.*
(cattle)
Baron de Dietrich le baron de
Dietrich (*Mayor of Strasbourg*)
Bart, Jean celebrated *French sailor*
(1650–1702)
basement cave *f.*
basket panier *m.*
Bastille Bastille *f.*
bathe se baigner
battalion bataillon *m.*
battle bataille *f.*
Bayard illustrious *French knight*
and warrior (1473–1524)
be (when sign of progressive form,
not translated in French); être;
— **able** pouvoir; — **about to**
aller, être sur le point de; —
afraid avoir peur; (age) avoir;
— **born** naître; — **cold** (persons)
avoir froid; — **fast** (watch)
avancer; — **slow** retarder;

(*health*) se porter, aller; **how are you?** comment vous portez-vous? comment allez-vous? **I am well** je me porte bien; — **only** se borner à; (*situation*) se trouver; (*weather*) faire; **he is to go this evening** il doit partir ce soir; **here is (are)** voici; **there is (are)** voilà, il y a; **isn't it?** n'est-ce pas? **it is I who spoke** c'est moi qui ai parlé
beard barbe *f.*; **with a white —**, à barbe blanche
beast animal *m.*, bête *f.*; (*for riding*) monture *f.*
beat battre
beautiful beau (bel), belle, beaux, belles
beautify embellir; orner
beauty beauté *f.*
because parce que
become devenir (*conjugated like* venir), se faire; (*suit*) convenir à, aller à; **what has — of her?** qu'est-ce qu'elle est devenue? **this dress is becoming to her** cette robe lui va bien
bed lit *m.*; **go to —**, se coucher
before *conj.* avant que
before *prep.* (*of place*) devant, (*of time*) avant, (+ *verb*) avant de
beg prier, demander, mendier; **I — your pardon!** pardon! je vous demande pardon!
begin commencer, se mettre à; — **again** recommencer; — **by** commencer par
beginning commencement *m.*
behead décapiter
behind derrière
believe croire; — **in God (in some one)** croire en Dieu (en quelqu'un); **it was believed on** croyait
bell cloche *f.*, sonnette *f.*
belong: — **to être** à, appartenir à;

this book belongs to me ce livre est à moi
bend courber
Benjamin Benjamin
beside à côté de
besides d'ailleurs, de plus
best *adj.* le meilleur; *adv.* le mieux
better *adj.* meilleur; *adv.* mieux; **to like —**, aimer mieux; **be —**, se porter mieux; **be — (be worth more)** valoir mieux; **peace is — than war** la paix vaut mieux que la guerre
between entre
beyond au delà de
bicycle bicyclette *f.*; **on a —**, à bicyclette; **take — rides** se promener à bicyclette
big grand, gros (grosse)
bill: **a dollar —**, un billet d'un dollar, un dollar
bill of fare carte *f.*
billion milliard *m.*; **a (one) — francs** un milliard de francs
bind up bander
bird oiseau *m.* (*pl.* oiseaux)
birthday fête *f.*, anniversaire (*m.*) de ma (sa) naissance
bishop évêque *m.*
bite mordre
black noir; **a — one** un noir
blackboard tableau (noir) *m.*
blacksmith forgeron *m.*, maréchal ferrant *m.*
Blacky Noiraud
blade brin *m.*
Blanche of Castile Blanche de Castille, 1188–1252 (*wife of Louis VIII*)
blind aveugle
blindly aveuglément
blue bleu (*pl.* bleus); **room painted —**, chambre (*f.*) peinte en bleu
blunt brusque
blush rougir

board pension *f.*, bord *m.*; **on** — (*a ship*) à bord de
boarding house pension *f.*
boat bateau *m.*; **row**—, canot *m.*;
go for a — ride faire une promenade (se promener) en bateau
boil bouillir
book livre *m.*
bore ennuyer
born: **be** —, naître; **she was** —, elle est née
borrow emprunter
both l'un (une) et l'autre, tous, toutes (les) deux, les deux
bottom fond *m.*
bouquet bouquet *m.*
box boîte *f.*
boy (petit) garçon *m.*, enfant *m.*;
my —, mon enfant *m.*; — **friend** camarade *m.*, copain *m.*
brave courageux (courageuse), brave
bravo! bravo!
bread pain *m.*
break casser, rompre; — **one's arm** se casser le bras; — **loose** s'échapper; — **the stick** rompre le bâton
breakfast (petit) déjeuner *m.*
bride nouvelle mariée *f.*
bridegroom marié *m.*
bridge pont *m.*
bring apporter, (*lead*) amener; — **back** ramener; — **down** descendre; — **up** (*rear*) élever
British britannique
brother frère *m.*
brown brun
brush brosse *f.*
buffet buffet *m.*
build bâtir, construire
building bâtiment *m.*, édifice *m.*
bullet balle *f.*
burn brûler
burst *n.*: — **of laughter** éclat de rire *m.*

burst *v.* crever
bury enterrer
business affaires *f. pl.*; — **is** —, les affaires sont les affaires; **in** —, dans les affaires; **on** —, pour affaires; **sell his** —, vendre son fonds
busy occupé; **be** — **doing something**, **be** — **at something** être en train de faire quelque chose, être à faire quelque chose
but mais; **nothing** —, ne . . . rien, ne . . . que
butter beurre *m.*
buy acheter
by par, de, sur, à, en; — **rubbing** en frottant; — **sight** de vue; — **your watch** à votre montre; — **the way** à propos; — **what he says** à ce qu'il dit; **loved** —, aimé de

C

cabbage chou *m.* (*pl.* choux)
Cæsarea Césarée *f.*
café café *m.*
cake gâteau *m.* (*pl.* gâteaux)
California Californie *f.*
call appeler, faire venir, faire appeler
callers: **to have** —, avoir du monde; **she has** —, elle a du monde
camel chameau *m.* (*pl.* chameaux)
campus campus *m.*
can pouvoir, savoir
Canada Canada *m.*; **in** —, **to** —, au Canada; **from** —, du Canada
Canadian Canadien *m.*, Canadienne *f.*
candlestick chandelier *m.*, bougeoir *m.*
candy (*collective*) bonbons *m. pl.*; **a piece of** —, un bonbon
cap casquette *f.*

- captain** capitaine *m.*
car: motor —, automobile *f.*,
 auto *f.*; street —, tramway *m.*;
 — (*R.R.*) wagon *m.*, voiture *f.*;
take a ride in a —, faire une
 promenade (se promener) en
 auto(mobile)
caravan caravane *f.*
care soin *m.*; **take** —, prendre
 garde, avoir soin, faire atten-
 tion; **take** — of garder, avoir
 soin de, soigner; — **for** soigner
carefully soigneusement
carry porter: — **off** emporter
cartridge cartouche *f.*
case cas *m.*; **in** — (**that**) au cas
 que (+ *subjunctive*)
cat chat *m.*
catch attraper, prendre; — (**a**)
 cold s'enrhumer
cattle bétail *m. sing.* (bestiaux *m.*
pl.)
cause *n.* cause *f.*
cause *v.* causer, exciter
cease cesser; — **to** cesser de
celebrate célébrer
celebrated célèbre
Celtic celtique
cent sou *m.*
center milieu *m.*, centre *m.*
centime centime *m.* ($1/100$ of a
franc)
century siècle *m.*
ceremony cérémonie *f.*
certain certain, sûr
chair chaise *f.*; **arm** —, fauteuil *m.*
chance hasard *m.*; **by** —, par
 hasard
change *n.* monnaie *f.*; **French** —,
 de la monnaie française
change *v.* changer
charitable charitable
Charlemagne King of the Franks
 and Emperor of the West (742–
 814)
Charles Charles
charm *n.* charme *m.*
charm *v.* charmer, enchanter
charming charmant, ravissant
charmingly à ravir
chat causer
Chateaubriand French writer
 (1768–1848)
cheap (à) bon marché
cheaply à bon marché
check chèque *m.*
cheek joue *f.*
cheer égayer; — **up!** courage!
chemistry chimie *f.*
cherry cerise *f.*
chevalier chevalier *m.*
chicken poulet *m.*
child enfant *m. or f.*
childhood enfance *f.*
chin menton *m.*
chocolate chocolat *m.*
choose choisir
Christmas Noël *m.*; — **day** jour
 de Noël
church église *f.*; **at** (to) —, à
 l'église
cigar cigare *m.*
cigarette cigarette *f.*
citizen citoyen *m.*
city ville *f.*; **in the** —, à la ville,
 en ville
civil civil
clarinet clarinette *f.*
class classe *f.*; **French** —, classe
 de français
classroom salle (*f.*) de classe,
 classe *f.*
clean *adj.* propre
clean *v.* nettoyer
clear clair
clerk commis *m.*
clever habile, fort
climb grimper, monter
clock (town) horloge *f.*; (*in rooms*)
 pendule *f.*
close fermer
closed fermé

- clothes** vêtements *m. pl.*, habits *m. pl.*
clumsy maladroit; **be so — as** avoir la maladresse de
coal charbon *m.*
coat (*cloak*) manteau *m.* (*pl.* manteaux), veston *m.*
coffee café *m.*
coffin cercueil *m.*
coin pièce *f.*
Colbert, Jean-Baptiste *minister and royal treasurer under Louis XIV (1619–1683)*
cold *adj.* froid; *n.* froid *m.*; **be —** (*of living beings*) avoir froid; **be —** (*of weather*) faire froid; **have — hands, my hands are —**, j'ai froid aux mains; **catch** (a) —, s'enrhumer
collar col *m.*, faux-col *m.*
collection collection *f.*
collide faire collision
collision collision *f.*
color couleur *f.*; **it will spoil its —**, cela en gâtera la couleur
comb *n.* peigne *m.*
comb *v.* peigner, se peigner
combat combattre
come venir, arriver; **— back** revenir; **— in** (into) entrer (dans + *noun*); **— out** sortir; **— to** (and) **see** venir voir; **— down** descendre; **— up** monter; **— now!** allons! voyons! **— to** revenir à soi; **when I came to** quand je revins à moi
comfortable (*for things*) confortable; (*for persons*) à l'aise, à son aise; **a — chair** une chaise confortable; **I am —**, je suis à l'aise, à mon aise, bien
comforting confortant
command commander
commence commencer; **— by** commencer par
commit commettre
companion compagnon *m.*, compagne *f.*, camarade *m. or f.*
compassion compassion *f.*
complain se plaindre
complete complet (complète)
compose composer
composition composition *f.*
comrade camarade *m. or f.*
concert concert *m.*
conclude conclure
condemn condamner; **— to death** condamner à mort
condition état *m.*, condition *f.*
conduct *n.* conduite *f.*
conduct *v.* conduire
confess avouer
congratulate féliciter (de or sur)
conquer conquérir, vaincre
consent consentir
consequently par conséquent
consider considérer, regarder; **he did not —**, il ne regardait pas
considering that attendu que
constantly constamment
construct construire
contain contenir
continue continuer; **— to continue** à
contractor entrepreneur *m.*
contradict démentir, contredire
contrary: on the —, au contraire
contribute contribuer
convince convaincre
cook cuisinier *m.*, cuisinière *f.*
cool frais; **it is —** (*of weather*) il fait frais
coolly tranquillement
copper (*coin*) sou *m.*; cuivre *m.*
copy *n.* exemplaire *m.*
copy *v.* copier
correct corriger
corridor corridor *m.*
Corsica Corse *f.*
cost coûter
costly coûteux (coûteuse); **— for**

everybody coûteux à tout le monde

could *past or conditional of can* pouvoir

count compter

country (*political division*) pays *m.*,
(*opposed to city*) campagne *f.*;
in the —, à la campagne;
(*native land*) patrie *f.*

courage courage *m.*; take —,
prendre (avoir) courage

courageous courageux (courageuse)

course: of —, bien entendu, naturellement

court (*tennis*) terrain *m.*; cour *f.*

courtier courtisan *m.*

cousin cousin *m.*, cousine *f.*

cover couvrir; covered with cou-
vert de

cow vache *f.*

cream crème *f.*

crime crime *m.*

cripple estropié *m.*

critic critique *m.*

criticism critique *f.*

crops récolte *f.*

cross traverser

crowd foule *f.*

crown couronner

cruel cruel (cruelle)

crush écraser

cry pleurer, crier

cultivation culture *f.*

cup tasse *f.*

cupboard buffet *m.*

curiosity curiosité *f.*

curtain rideau *m.* (*pl.* rideaux)

cushion coussin *m.*

customer client *m.*

cut *n.* coupure *f.*; the — was not
deep la coupure n'était pas
profonde

cut *v.* couper; — oneself se
couper; she — herself 'elle
s'est coupée; she — her finger
elle s'est coupé le doigt

D

damage endommager

danger danger *m.*

dangerous dangereux (dangereuse)

dare oser

dark sombre, noir; be —, faire
noir, faire obscur

date (*time*) date *f.*, (*fruit*) datte *f.*;
— back remonter à

daughter fille *f.*

day jour *m.*, journée *f.*; good —!

bonjour! every —, tous les
jours; the whole —, toute la

journée; Christmas —, jour de
Noël; all — long toute la

journée; by the —, à la journée;
from — to —, de jour en jour;

from this —, dès ce jour, dès
aujourd'hui

daybreak point (*m.*) du jour; at
(since) —, dès le point du jour

dead mort

deal: a great (good) —, beaucoup,
bien

dear cher (chère); not so —, pas
si cher, moins cher

death mort *f.*

debt dette *f.*

deceive tromper

December décembre *m.*

decide décider

decidedly décidément

decorate décorer

deep profond

defeat battre, vaincre

delicious délicieux (délicieuse)

delighted charmé, enchanté

deny nier

depart partir, s'en aller

depend: that —s on you cela
dépend de vous

descend descendre

describe décrire

deserve mériter

desire désirer, vouloir

- dessert dessert *m.*
 destination destination *f.*; reach
 one's —, arriver à destination
 destroy détruire
 detain retenir
 devil diable *m.*
 dialect dialecte *m.*, patois *m.*
 dictionary dictionnaire *m.*
 did *see do*
 die mourir; she died (*or is dead*)
 elle est morte
 difference différence *f.*; that makes
 no —, cela ne fait rien
 different différent
 difficult difficile
 difficulty difficulté *f.*, peine *f.*;
 have — in avoir de la peine à
 dig (up) retourner, bêcher; —
 everywhere in the field re-
 tourner le champs en tous sens
 dignitary dignitaire *m.*
 dime une pièce de dix "cents"
 (*present value about 2½ francs*)
 dine dîner
 dining room salle à manger *f.*
 dinner dîner *m.*; take —, dîner;
 have a good —, dîner bien,
 faire un bon dîner
 disappear disparaître
 discover découvrir
 discretion discrétion *f.*
 dismiss renvoyer, (*thoughts*) ban-
 nir
 disobey désobéir
 displease déplaire à
 disturb déranger
 do faire (*English auxiliary not*
 translated into French); — not
 (*don't*) talk ne parlez pas; he
 did not (*didn't*) speak il n'a
 pas parlé; he works, doesn't
 he? il travaille, n'est-ce pas?
 — without se passer de; —
 my best faire de mon mieux
 doctor médecin *m.*, docteur *m.*
 dog chien *m.*
 doll poupée *f.*
 dollar dollar *m.* (*present value*
 about 25 francs); a — a dozen
 un dollar la douzaine
 donkey âne *m.*
 don't *see do*: — be late ne soyez
 pas en retard
 door porte *f.*
 doubt *n.* doute *m.*; no —, sans
 doute
 doubt *v.* douter
 doubtless sans doute
 down: bent —, courbé; —stairs
 en bas; come —, go —(stairs)
 descendre, aller en bas; sit —,
 s'asseoir
 downtown en ville; go —, aller
 en ville
 dozen douzaine *f.*
 draw tirer; — near s'approcher
 de
 drawer tiroir *m.*
 drawing dessin *m.*
 drawing room salon *m.*
 dream *n.* songe *m.*, rêve *m.*
 dream *v.* rêver
 dress *n.* robe *f.*, toilette *f.*
 dress *v.* habiller, (*refl.*) s'habiller
 dresser commode *f.*
 drink boire
 drive *n.*: go for a —, se promener
 en auto (en voiture)
 drive *v.* conduire; — away chas-
 ser
 drop laisser tomber; — into the
 sea laisser tomber par dessus
 le bord, laisser tomber à la
 mer
 drum *n.* tambour *m.*; play the —,
 battre du tambour
 ducat ducat *m.*
 duck canard *m.*
 during pendant
 duty devoir *m.*
 dye teindre
 dying: to the —, aux mourants

E

each *adj.* chaque
each *pron.* chacun, chacune; —
 one chacun, chacune
eagerly avec empressement
ear (*of wheat*) épi *m.*
early de bonne heure
earn gagner
earth terre *f.*
ease: **be at** —, être à l'aise,
 être à son aise; **live at** —,
 vivre à l'aise (à son aise)
easily facilement, aisément
easy facile
eat manger
edition édition *f.*
educated instruit
education éducation *f.*; **receive a**
 good —, faire de bonnes études
egg œuf *m.*
eight huit
eighteen dix-huit
eightieth quatre-vingtième
eighty quatre-vingt(s)
either: **he hasn't any** —, il n'en
 a pas non plus
elect élire
elegantly élégamment
eleven onze
eleventh onzième
elsewhere autre part, ailleurs
embarrassing embarrassant
embellish embellir
embrace embrasser
embrasure embrasure *f.*
emperor empereur *m.*
empire empire *m.*
employ employer: **admit into his**
 —, admettre chez lui
empty vide
end *n.* fin *f.*, bout *m.*
end *v.* finir, (se) terminer
enemy ennemi *m. sing.*; enne-
 mis *m. pl.*
engineer ingénieur *m.*

engine trouble panne *f.*; **have** —,
 avoir une panne
England Angleterre *f.*; **in** —, **to**
 —, en Angleterre
English *adj.* anglais; *n.* (*the lan-*
 guage) l'anglais, anglais *m.*;
 —**man** Anglais *m.*
enjoy jouir de; — **oneself** s'amu-
 ser
enough assez (de)
enter entrer (dans + *noun*)
entertain amuser
enthusiastic enthousiaste
erase effacer
erect droit
Ernest Ernest
errand commission *f.*
error erreur *f.*
escape éviter, échapper; **have a**
 narrow —, l'échapper belle
especially surtout
Europe Europe *f.*; **in** —, **to** —,
 en Europe
even même; — **if**, — **though**
 quand même
evening soir *m.*, soirée *f.*; **in the**
 —, le (au) soir; **last** —, **yester-**
 day —, hier (au) soir; **the** —
 before la veille
ever jamais
every tout, toute; tous les, toutes
 les; chaque; — **day** tous les
 jours, chaque jour
everybody tout le monde *m.*
everyone chacun, chacune
everything tout, toute chose
everywhere partout, en tous sens
evidence évidence; **in** —, en
 évidence
evident: **it is** —, il est évident
evidently évidemment
exact exact, précis
exactly exactement, précisément;
 (*with time*) précis; **at two**
 o'clock —, à deux heures pré-
 cises

exaggerate exagérer
 examination examen *m.*
 examine examiner
 example exemple *m.*; for —, par exemple; set a good —, donner le bon exemple
 exception exception *f.*
 excite exciter
 exclaim s'écrier
 excuse *n.* excuse *f.*
 excuse *v.* excuser; — me! pardon!
 exhausted épuisé
 expect attendre, s'attendre à, espérer
 expenditure dépense *f.*
 expense dépense *f.*
 expensive cher (chère); too —, trop cher
 experience expérience *f.*
 eye œil *m.* (*pl.* yeux)

F

face figure *f.*
 factory usine *f.*
 fail manquer
 faithful fidèle
 fall tomber; let —, laisser tomber; — asleep s'endormir
 familiar familier
 family famille *f.*
 famous fameux (fameuse), célèbre
 fan éventail *m.*
 far *adv.* loin; — from loin de; — away loin, loin d'ici; as — as jusqu'à; how — is it? combien y a-t-il?
 farm ferme *f.*; to (on) the —, à la ferme
 farmer fermier *m.*
 farther plus loin; — off plus loin; — on plus loin
 fast vite
 father père *m.*
 fatigue fatigue *f.*
 fault faute *f.*
 fear *n.* crainte *f.*; peur *f.*; for — that de crainte que; for — of de crainte de
 fear *v.* craindre, avoir peur
 February février *m.*
 feed nourrir
 feel sentir; (*touch*) tâter
 feeling sentiment *m.*
 fell abattre
 fellow garçon *m.*, individu *m.*, type *m.*; my good —, mon ami *m.*
 festivity fête *f.*
 fever fièvre *f.*
 few peu, peu de, quelques; a —, quelques-uns, quelques-unes; but —, ne . . . guère
 field champ *m.*; wheat —, champ de blé
 fifteen quinze
 fifteenth quinzième
 fifth cinquième
 fiftieth cinquantième
 fifty cinquante; about —, une cinquantaine
 fight combattre, se battre
 fill remplir; — with remplir de
 film film *m.*
 finally enfin, à la fin
 find trouver; — out découvrir; be found se trouver
 fine beau (bel), belle; it is — weather il fait beau (temps); —! à la bonne heure!
 finger doigt *m.*
 finish finir; — by finir par
 fire *n.* feu *m.*
 fire *v.* tirer
 fireplace cheminée *f.*
 first *adj.* premier (première); the — time la première fois
 first *adv.* d'abord; at —, d'abord
 fish *n.* poisson *m.*
 fish *v.* pêcher
 fisherman pêcheur *m.*
 fishing pêche *f.*; — trip partie (*f.*) de pêche

fitting convenable
 five cinq
 flag drapeau *m.*
 flat plat
 flatter flatter
 flee fuir, s'enfuir
 floor étage *m.*
 flower fleur *f.*
 fluently couramment
 flute flûte *f.*
 fly voler; — away s'envoler
 follow suivre
 following: the — day le jour suivant, le lendemain
 fond: be — of aimer
 food nourriture *f.*
 foot pied *m.*; go on —, aller à pied; have a sore —, avoir mal au pied; a ten— table une table longue de dix pieds
 football football *m.*
 for conj. car
 for prep. pour, (*during*) pendant, à, de; (*since*) depuis, contre; as —, quant à; — it en; — a moment un moment; — a long time (depuis) longtemps; — a week (depuis) une semaine
 forbid défendre
 force forcer
 foreign étranger (*étrangère*)
 foreigner étranger *m.*, étrangère *f.*
 foresee prévoir
 forever pour toujours
 forget oublier; — to oublier de
 forgive pardonner
 fork fourchette *f.*
 former: the —, celui-là, celle-là
 formerly autrefois
 fortify fortifier
 fortnight quinze jours *m. pl.*; a — ago il y a quinze jours
 fortunate heureux (*heureuse*)
 fortunately heureusement
 fortune fortune *f.*; good —, bonheur *m.*

forty quarante
 forward en avant
 fountain fontaine *f.*
 four quatre
 fourteen quatorze
 fourth quatrième; — part le quart
 fowl volaille *f.*, poulet *m.*
 franc franc *m.* (*about four cents*)
 France France *f.*; in —, to —, en France; from —, de France
 Francis François
 Franklin, Benjamin *American statesman and publicist* (1706–1790)
 Frederick Frédéric; — the Great Frédéric le Grand *king of Prussia* (1712–1786)
 free libre
 freeze geler
 French *adj.* français; *n.* (*the language*) le français, français; —man Français *m.*; — class classe (*f.*) de français; — grammar grammaire française; — lesson leçon (*f.*) de français
 fresh frais (*fraîche*)
 freshly fraîchement
 freshness fraîcheur *f.*
 Friday vendredi *m.*
 friend ami *m.*, amie *f.*; a — of yours un de vos amis
 friendship amitié *f.*
 frightfully affreusement, d'une manière affreuse
 from de, depuis; — day to day de jour en jour; — to-day à partir d'aujourd'hui; take — the table prendre sur la table
 front: in — of devant
 fruit fruit *m.* (*pl. when meaning more than one piece of fruit*)
 full plein, au complet
 fun: to make — of se moquer de
 fur fourrure *f.*

furniture meuble *m.*; pieces of —, meubles *m. pl.*
 furnace calorifère *m.*
 furnished meublé
 furthermore d'ailleurs
 future avenir *m.*

G

gallery galerie *f.*
 Gallic gaulois
 gallop galop *m.*; at a —, au gallop
 game partie *f.*, match *m.*
 garage garage *m.*
 garden jardin *m.*; rose —, jardin de roses
 gasoline essence *f.*
 gate barrière *f.*, porte *f.*
 gather cueillir
 Gaul (*country*) Gaule *f.*, (*citizen*) Gaulois *m.*
 gay gai
 general *adj.* général
 general *n.* général *m.* (*pl.* généraux)
 generally en général, généralement, ordinairement
 generosity générosité *f.*
 generous généreux (généreuse)
 genius génie *m.*, talent *m.*
 gentle doux (douce)
 gentleman monsieur *m.* (*pl.* messieurs)
 George, Georges
 Germany Allemagne *f.*
 get prendre, avoir, obtenir; — angry se fâcher; — in monter; — made faire faire; — married se marier; — out descendre; — up se lever, monter; — up behind me (*on a horse*) monter sur la croupe de mon cheval; go and —, aller chercher
 gift cadeau *m.*
 girl jeune fille *f.*, fille *f.*
 give donner; — away donner; — back rendre; — too much for payer trop cher
 glad content (de), charmé (de)
 gladly volontiers, avec plaisir
 glass verre *m.*
 glory gloire *f.*
 glove gant *m.*
 go aller, se rendre, marcher; — and . . . aller (+ *inf.*); — away s'en aller, partir; — back retourner; — by passer (devant); — down descendre, (*stairs*) aller en bas; — up monter, (*stairs*) aller en haut; — for a row se promener en bateau; — for a walk aller se promener, faire une promenade (à pied); — home aller chez moi (lui, elle, *etc.*); — out sortir; — there! allez y! — to bed se coucher; — to sleep s'endormir; — with accompagner, aller avec; — to France aller en France; as they — (*went*) along chemin faisant; so goes ainsi va
 God Dieu; believe in —, croire en Dieu; may — be praised! Dieu soit loué! would to —! plutôt à Dieu!
 godfather parrain *m.*
 godmother marraine *f.*
 gold *adj.* d'or, en or
 gold *n.* or *m.*
 good *adj.* bon, bonne
 good *n.* bien *m.*; do —, faire du bien
 good-bye au revoir, adieu
 good-for-nothing vaurien *m.*
 goodness bonté *f.*
 govern gouverner, régner
 grade note *f.*
 grain grain *m.*
 grammar grammaire *f.*
 grandfather grand-père *m.*
 grandmother grand'mère *f.*

grant accorder; — him success
 lui accorder le succès
 grass herbe *f.*
 grateful reconnaissant
 great grand; a — deal beau-
 coup
 greatly beaucoup
 Great War Grande Guerre *f.*
 Greek grec (grecque)
 green vert; light —, vert clair
 greet saluer
 grey gris
 grieve avoir du chagrin (de), être
 affligé
 grind moudre
 grocer épicier *m.*
 ground terre *f.*; (upon) on the —,
 à terre, par terre
 group groupe *m.*
 grow croître, pousser; many po-
 tatoes are grown there on y
 récolte beaucoup de pommes de
 terre
 guardian gardien *m.*

H

habit habitude *f.*
 hair cheveux *m. pl.*
 half *adj.* demi; — an hour une
 demi-heure; an hour and a —,
 une heure et demie; — past
 10:00 dix heures et demie
 half *n.* moitié *f.*; (one) — the
 apple la moitié de la pomme
 hall corridor *m.*, vestibule *m.*
 ham jambon *m.*
 hammer marteau *m.*; hold the —
 with both hands tenez le mar-
 teau des deux mains
 hand main *f.*; on the right —, à
 droite; on the left —, à gauche;
 in his —, à la main
 handkerchief mouchoir *m.*
 handsome beau (bel), belle
 happen arriver, venir à, avoir lieu;

she happened to pass elle vint
 à passer
 happily heureusement
 happy heureux (heureuse), con-
 tent
 hard difficile, dur; work —, tra-
 vailler ferme
 hardly à peine
 harm faire mal à
 harness atteler
 harvest moisson *f.*
 hasten se hâter, se dépêcher; —
 to (do something) se hâter de
 (+ *inf.*); — into the presence
 of accourir auprès de
 Hastings Hastings city in England;
 battle of Hastings (1066)
 hat chapeau *m.* (*pl.* chapeaux);
 have —(s) on être couvert(s),
 avoir le chapeau sur la tête;
 have —(s) off être découvert(s)
 hate haïr
 have avoir; (*as auxiliary*) avoir,
 être; — a good dinner dîner
 bien, faire un bon dîner; — a
 good time s'amuser (bien); —
 as good a time as possible
 s'amuser le plus possible; —
 just (+ *verb*) venir de (+ *inf.*);
 — made (done) faire faire;
 — on 'porter; — to avoir à,
 être obligé de; haven't you
 (they, etc.)? n'est-ce pas?
 Havre le Havre *m.*
 hazelnut noisette *f.*
 he il, lui, ce; — who celui qui
 head tête *f.*; maître *m.*
 headache: have a —, avoir mal à
 la tête
 health santé *f.*
 hear entendre: — of entendre par-
 ler de
 heart cœur *m.*; to our heart's
 content à cœur joie
 heat chauffer
 heavily lourdement; — weighted

- lourd, lourdement chargé, lourdement incliné vers la terre
heavy lourd
height hauteur *f.*, taille *f.*; **about the same** —, à peu près de la même taille
Helen Hélène
hello! allô!
help secours *m.*; —! au secours!
help aider; — **to** aider à
henceforth désormais
Henry, Patrick *American patriot and orator (1736–1799)*
Henry Henri; — **IV** Henri Quatre (*king of France from 1589 to 1610*)
her *adj.* son, sa, ses; **she washes** — **hands** elle se lave les mains
her *pers. pron.* la, elle; **to** —, lui, à elle; **with** —, avec elle
here ici; — **is** (**are**) voici; — **and there** par-ci par-là
hero héros *m.*
hers le sien, la sienne, à elle
herself se, elle-même
hesitate hésiter
hide cacher (*se*)
high haut
hill colline *f.*
him le, lui; **to** —, lui; **with** —, avec lui; **for** —, lui; — **who** celui qui
himself lui-même, se; **to** —, en lui-même
his *adj.* son, sa, ses
his *pron.* le sien, la sienne, à lui; **a friend of** —, un de ses amis
historical historique
history histoire *f.*; — **lesson** leçon d'histoire *f.*
hither: — **and thither** ça et là
hold tenir; — **out** tendre
hole trou *m.*
holiday jour (*m.*) de fête; — **s** vacances *f. pl.*; **on a** —, un jour de fête; **national** —, fête nationale
home (*or at home*) à la maison, chez moi (lui, elle, *etc.*); **go** —, aller chez moi (lui, elle, *etc.*); — **of a friend** chez un ami
honest honnête
honesty loyauté *f.*, probité *f.*
honor honneur *m.*; **in** —, en l'honneur
hope espérer, compter
horse cheval *m.* (*pl.* chevaux); **on** — **back** à cheval
horseshoe fer (*m.*) à cheval
hospital hôpital *m.*
hot chaud, brûlant; **it is** — (*weather*) il fait chaud
hotel hôtel *m.*
hour heure *f.*
house maison *f.*; **at the** — **of** chez; **at my** —, chez moi; **at whose** —? chez qui? **at Mr. B's** (—) chez monsieur B.
how comment, comme, combien; — **much**, — **many**? combien (de + *noun*)? — **long have you been here**? depuis quand êtes-vous ici? — **old are you**? quel âge avez-vous? — **do you do**, — **are you**? comment vous portez-vous? comment allez-vous? — **is she**? comment va-t-elle?
however cependant; — **that may be** quoi qu'il en soit; — **unfortunate we may be** quelque malheureux que nous soyons
Hugo, Victor *French writer (1802–1885)*
humble humble, petit
humor: **in good** —, de bonne humeur
hundred cent; **a (one)** — **francs** cent francs; — **s** des centaines (*f.*)
hunger faim *f.*
hungry: **be** —, avoir faim
hunt (*for*) chasser, chercher

hunting chasse *f.*
hurrah! hurra! *n.* vivat *m.*
hurry: — **up** se dépêcher (de);
be in a —, être pressé
hurt faire mal à; — **oneself** se
 faire mal; **my shoes** — **my**
 feet mes souliers me font mal
 aux pieds
husband mari *m.*
husbandman laboureur *m.*
hush! chut!
hydrophobia rage *f.*

I

I je, moi
ice cream glace *f.*; **a vanilla** —,
 une glace à la vanille
idea idée *f.*
if si
ignorant ignorant; **be** — **of** ignorer
ill malade
imagine s'imaginer
imitate imiter
immediately tout de suite
immortal immortel
important important
in dans, a, en, de, sur; — **it y**;
 — **the morning** le (au) matin;
8:00 o'clock — **the morning**
 huit heures du matin; — **the**
evening le (au) soir; — **the**
west à l'ouest; — (*following a*
superlative) **de**; — **order to**
 afin de, pour; — **order that**
 afin que, pour que; — **the**
reign of sous
inasmuch as attendu que, d'au-
 tant que
increase augmenter
indeed! vraiment!
indoors dans la maison, dedans
infinitive infinitif *m.*
influential influent
inhabitant habitant *m.*
ink encre *f.*

inn auberge *f.*
innkeeper aubergiste *m.*
inside à l'intérieur, en dedans, de-
 dans
insist insister
instead of au lieu de
instrument instrument *m.*
intend avoir l'intention (de),
 compter
intent: **be** — **on** tenir à
interest intérêt *m.*; **take** — **in**
 prendre intérêt à, s'intéresser à
interesting intéressant
interrupt interrompre
into dans, en, à; **fall** — **the sea**
 tomber à la mer; — **it y**, de-
 dans; — **his presence** auprès
 de lui
introduce présenter
invention invention *f.*
invitation invitation *f.*
invite inviter; — **to** inviter à
Ireland Irlande *f.*
Irishman Irlandais *m.*
iron *adj.* de fer
iron *n.* fer *m.*
irregular irrégulier (irrégulière)
is *see* **be** (être)
island île *f.*
it il, elle, ce, le, la, cela; **of** —, en;
in —, y; — **is I** c'est moi; **it's**
 all the same to me cela m'est
 égal
Italy Italie *f.*; **in** —, **to** —, en
 Italie

J

jail prison *f.*
jam confiture *f.*
James Jacques
January janvier *m.*
Jericho Jéricho
Jersey Jersey *f.*; **island of** —,
 île de Jersey
Jerusalem Jérusalem
jewel bijou *m.* (*pl.* bijoux)

Job Job *m.*
 John Jean
 joke plaisanter
 Joseph Joseph
 journey voyage *m.*; set out again
 on a —, se remettre en route
 joy joie *f.*
 judge juge *m.*
 Julius Cæsar Jules César
 July juillet *m.*
 jump sauter; — over sauter par-
 dessus
 June juin *m.*
 just *adj.* juste, précis
 just *adv.* justement; have —
 (+ verb) venir de (+ *inf.*); —
 look! regardez un peu! — as
 au moment où
 justice justice *f.*

K

keep garder, tenir; — one's
 promise tenir sa promesse
 kilogram kilo(gramme) *m.* (about
 2½ pounds)
 kind *adj.* bon (bonne), aimable;
 — to bon pour; — of you bon
 de votre part
 kind *n.* espèce *f.*, sorte *f.*
 kindly avec bonté
 king roi *m.*
 kingdom royaume *m.*
 kitchen cuisine *f.*
 kite cerf-volant *m.*; fly a —, faire
 voler un cerf-volant
 knife: pen—, canif *m.*; table —,
 couteau *m.* (*pl.* couteaux)
 knock frapper
 know (*take mental possession of*)
 savoir; — (*to be acquainted*
with) connaître; — how sa-
 voir

L

labor travail *m.*
 laboratory laboratoire *m.*; physics
 —, laboratoire de physique *m.*

lace dentelle *f.*
 lack: I — two dollars il me faut
 deux dollars
 lady dame *f.*; young — (*unmar-*
ried) jeune fille, jeune personne,
 demoiselle
 Laffitte French financier (1767–
 1844)
 lake lac *m.*
 Lamartine, Alphonse de French
 poet (1790–1869)
 land *n.* terre *f.*
 land *v.* atterrir
 landlady propriétaire *f.*
 landlord propriétaire *m.*
 landscape paysage *m.*
 language langue *f.*
 large grand, gros (grosse)
 last *adj.* dernier (dernière), passé;
 at —, enfin, à la fin; — night,
 — evening hier soir; — year
 l'année dernière
 last *v.* durer
 late: (*hour*) tard; (*belated*) en
 retard; it is —, il est tard;
 he is —, il est en retard; it is
 getting —, il se fait tard
 latter: the —, celui-ci, celle-ci
 laugh rire; — at rire de, se mo-
 quer de; feel like laughing
 avoir envie de rire; — aloud
 (loudly) rire aux éclats
 laughter rire *m.*
 law loi *f.*
 lawyer avocat *m.*
 laziness paresse *f.*
 lazy paresseux (paresseuse)
 lead *n.* plomb *m.*
 lead *v.* mener, amener; — back
 ramener
 leaf feuille *f.*
 learn apprendre; — to apprendre
 à
 learned savant
 least (le) moindre; at —; au
 moins, du moins

- leathern** de cuir
leave *intr.* partir, sortir, s'en aller
leave *tr.* quitter, laisser; — **the house** quitter la maison
left gauche; **on the** — (*hand*) à (la) gauche
leg jambe *f.*, (*paw*) patte *f.*
leisure loisir *m.*
lemonade citronnade *f.*
lend prêter
less moins (*de* + *noun*)
lesson leçon *f.*; **French** —, leçon de français
let laisser, permettre; — **us go** allons; — **him go** qu'il s'en aille; — **us buy** achetons; — **us have** ayons; **let's see!** voyons!
letter lettre *f.*
Levite lévite *m.*
liberty liberté *f.*
lie (*speak falsely*) mentir; — **down** se coucher
life vie *f.*
lift (*up*) lever
light *adj.* léger (légère)
light *n.* lumière *f.*
light *v.* allumer
like *prep.* comme, en; — **that** comme cela
like *v.* aimer, désirer, vouloir; — **better** aimer mieux, préférer; — **to** aimer (à); **I should** — **to go** je voudrais (bien) aller
Lindbergh, Charles Augustus celebrated American aviator
line ligne *f.*
list liste *f.*
listen écouter
liter litre *m.* (*about* 1 quart)
literature littérature *f.*
little *adj.* petit; — **Augustus** le petit Auguste; **a** — **boy** un enfant, un petit garçon
little *adv.* peu; **a** —, un peu (*de* + *noun*); **a** — **while ago** il y a quelques moments; — **by** —, peu à peu
live demeurer, vivre; — **in** demeurer (à, dans, *etc.*), habiter; — **on** vivre de; **long** —! vive(nt)!
living *n.* vie *f.*, vivant *m.*; — **is dear** la vie est chère; **to the** —, aux vivants
load fardeau *m.*
local local
lock fermer à clef
lodge se loger
London Londres *m.*
long *adj.* long (longue); **a** — **time** (*while*) longtemps
long *adv.* longtemps; **how** —? depuis quand? **no longer** ne... plus; **be** — **in** tarder à
long *v.*: **I** — **to** il me tarde de
look regarder; — **at** regarder; — **around** regarder autour; — **back** regarder en arrière; — **for** chercher; — **out** prendre garde; — **out!** attention! — **out of the window** regarder par la fenêtre
loose: **break** —, s'échapper
lord seigneur *m.*
lose perdre, égarer; — **one's way** s'égarer
lot (*of*) beaucoup (*de*)
loud (*ly*) fort, haut
Louis Louis; — **Eleventh** Louis Onze (*king of France from 1461 to 1483*); — **Fourteenth** Louis Quatorze (*king of France from 1643 to 1715*)
Louise Louise
love amour *m.*, affection *f.*, tendresse *f.*
love *v.* aimer
lovely charmant, ravissant
low bas
loyal loyal, honnête, fidèle

luck: good —, fortune *f.*, bonheur *m.*, chance *f.*

Lucy Lucie

lunch *n.* déjeuner *m.*, goûter *m.*

lunch *v.* déjeuner

M

macaroon macaron *m.*

machine machine *f.*; sewing —, machine à coudre; thrashing —, machine à battre

Madam madame *f.* (*pl.* mesdames)

mahogany acajou *m.*; in —, en acajou

mail mettre à la poste

majority majorité *f.*

make faire; — use of se servir de; — up one's mind prendre un parti; — the children sit down faire asseoir les enfants; — him come le faire venir; — him remain in bed le faire rester au lit

maltreat maltraiter

man homme *m.*, monsieur *m.*; young men jeunes gens *m. pl.*

many: very —, a great (good) —, beaucoup (de), bien (des); so —, tant (de); ten times as —, dix fois plus de; as —, autant (de); how —? combien (de)? too —, trop (de); — people beaucoup de personnes, beaucoup de monde

marble marbre *f.*

March mars *m.*

Margaret Marguerite

market marché *m.*; to, at (the) —, au marché

marry (*give in marriage*) marier, (*take in marriage*) se marier avec, épouser; be married, get married se marier

Marseilles Marseille *f.*

marshal maréchal *m.*

Mary Marie

master maître *m.*

matter affaire *f.*; what is the — with you? qu'avez-vous? qu'y a-t-il? de quoi s'agit-il? no —, that does not —, n'importe

May *n.* mai *m.*

may *v.* pouvoir

mayor maire *m.*

me me, moi; to —, me, moi; with —, avec moi

meadow pré *m.*, prairie *f.*

meal repas *m.*

mean vouloir dire; what does that —? que veut dire cela, qu'est-ce que cela veut dire?

meat viande *f.*

meddle se mêler de

medicine médecine *f.*

meet rencontrer

member membre *m.*

merchandise marchandise *f.*

merchant marchand *m.*

merit mériter

messenger messenger *m.*

Mexico Mexique *m.*

middle milieu *m.*; in the —, au milieu

midnight minuit *m.*

midst milieu *m.*; in the — of au milieu de

mile mille *m.*

military militaire

milk *n.* lait *m.*

milk *v.* traire

mill moulin *m.*

million million; a (one) — francs un million de francs

mind esprit *m.*; make up one's —, prendre un parti; never —! n'importe!

mine le mien, la mienne, à moi; a friend of —, un de mes amis

minister ministre *m.*, pasteur *m.*

minor mineur *m.*, mineure *f.*

minute minute *f.*; **ten** —s to one
une heure moins dix

mirror miroir *m.*

Miss *n.* mademoiselle *f.* (*pl.* mesdemoiselles)

miss *v.* manquer

mistake *n.* faute *f.*, erreur *f.*

mistake *v.*: **make a** —, se tromper;
be mistaken se tromper

mix mêler

modern moderne

modest modeste

Molière, Jean-Baptiste *French*
writer of comedy (1622-1673)

moment moment *m.*

Monday lundi *m.*

money argent *m.*

monk moine *m.*

monkey singe *m.*

month mois *m.*; **in the** — of
November au mois de novembre;
what day of the — is it?
quel jour du mois est-ce aujourd'hui?

Montreal Montréal *m.*

monument monument *m.*

more plus (*de*); **no** —, ne...
plus; **pay** —, payer plus cher;
I have no —, **I have not any** —,
je n'en ai plus; — **than three**
hours plus de trois heures; —
apples than pears plus de
pommes que de poires; —
money than John plus d'argent
que Jean; — **than two chairs**
plus de deux chaises; — **than**
once plus d'une fois; — **and** —,
de plus en plus

morning matin *m.*, matinée *f.*
(*duration of time*); **good** —,
bonjour; **in the** —, le (au)
matin; **8:00 in the** —, huit
heures du matin; **the next** —,
le lendemain matin

morrow lendemain *m.*

mortal mortel

most: — **people** la plupart des
gens

mother mère *f.*

mountain montagne *f.*

mouth bouche *f.*

move mouvoir, changer de place;
— **around** circuler

moved ému

"movies" cinéma (*cinématographe*) *m.*

Mr. monsieur, *M.* (*pl.* messieurs)

Mrs. madame, *Mme* (*pl.* mesdames)

much beaucoup (*de* + *noun*), bien,
très; **very** —, beaucoup; **how**
—? combien (*de* + *noun*)? **too**
—, trop (*de* + *noun*); **so** —,
tant (*de* + *noun*); **pay twice**
as —, payer deux fois plus cher;
as — **as** autant... que; **pay**
too —, payer trop cher

mud boue *f.*

museum musée *m.*

music musique *f.*

musician musicien *m.*, musicienne
f.

must falloir (*Lesson XXIII*),
devoir (*Lesson XXXVIII*); **I**
— **go** il me faut partir; **he**
— **have done it** il a dû le faire

mute muet (*muette*)

my mon, ma, mes; **I wash** —
hands je me lave les mains

myself me, moi, moi-même

N

nail clou *m.*

name *n.* nom *m.*; **my** — is John
je m'appelle Jean

name *v.* appeler; **be named** s'appeler;
what is the — of? comment s'appelle?

Napoleon Napoléon; — **First**
Napoléon Premier (*emperor of*
France from 1804 to 1814)

narrow étroit; **have a — escape** l'échapper belle
national national
natural naturel
naughty méchant
near près de
nearly près de, presque
necessary nécessaire; **be —**, être nécessaire (de), falloir (*in affirmative only*)
necessity nécessité *f.*
need avoir besoin de, falloir; **I — money** j'ai besoin d'argent; **il me faut de l'argent**; **what does he —?** de quoi a-t-il besoin?
needle aiguille *f.*
neglect négliger
negligence négligence *f.*
neighbor voisin *m.*
neighborhood voisinage *m.*
neighboring voisin
neither ni l'un ni l'autre . . . ne; — . . . nor ne . . . ni . . . ni
nephew neveu *m.* (*pl.* neveux)
nest nid *m.*
never ne . . . jamais, jamais
nevertheless cependant
new (*newly acquired*) nouveau (nouvel), nouvelle; (*newly made*) neuf (neuve)
New Orleans la Nouvelle Orléans
news nouvelles *f. pl.*; **give — of oneself** donner de ses nouvelles; **what is the —?** qu'y a-t-il de nouveau?
newspaper journal *m.* (*pl.* journaux)
New York New York *f.*
next prochain; **the — day** le lendemain; — **time** la prochaine fois; — **year** l'année prochaine; — **week** la semaine prochaine
nice gentil (gentille)
nicely agréablement
night nuit *f.*, (*evening*) soir *m.*; **last —** (*evening*) hier soir,

(*after bedtime*) cette nuit; **all —**, toute la nuit
nine neuf
nineteen dix-neuf
ninety quatre-vingt-dix
ninety-fifth quatre-vingt-quinzième
ninety-five quatre-vingt-quinze
ninth neuvième
no non, ne . . . pas, pas; — **longer**, — **more** ne . . . plus; — **one** ne . . . personne, personne, aucun, aucune
nobody ne . . . personne, personne
Nohant town in France
noise bruit *m.*
none: **I have —**, je n'en ai pas; **there are —**, il n'y en a pas;
nonsense! allons donc!
noon midi *m.*
Normand Normand *m.*
north nord *m.*, du nord
nose nez *m.*
not ne . . . pas, pas, non; — **at all** ne . . . point, pas du tout; **is (has) he (she, etc.) —?** **are (have) you (they, etc.) —?** n'est-ce pas? — **one**, — **any** ne . . . aucun, aucune; (ne . . .) nul, nulle, (ne . . .) pas un, pas une; — **any** n'en . . . pas; — . . . or . . . ne . . . ni . . . ni
note billet *m.*, mot *m.*
notebook cahier *m.*
nothing ne . . . rien, rien; **that is — to him** cela ne lui fait rien; — **good** ne . . . rien de bon; **do — but** ne faire que
notice apercevoir, s'apercevoir, remarquer
November novembre *m.*
now maintenant, à présent; — **and then** de temps en temps
number numéro *m.*, nombre *m.*
numerous nombreux (nombreuse)
nut noix *f.*

O

obedient obéissant
obey obéir (à)
oblige obliger, forcer
observe remarquer
o'clock heure(s) *f.*; **at nine** — **in the morning** à neuf heures du matin
October octobre *m.*
of de; — **it**, — **them** en
offend: **be offended at** en vouloir à
offer offrir
office bureau *m.*, cabinet *m.*; **at the** — **of** chez
officer officier *m.*; **be an** —, être officier
official official *m.*
often souvent; **how** —, combien de fois
oh! oh! ah!
oil huile *f.*
old vieux (vieil), vieille, âgé, (*former*) ancien (ancienne); **how** — **are you?** quel âge avez-vous? **I am twenty years** —, j'ai vingt ans; **twenty years** —, âgé de vingt ans; — **man** vieillard *m.*; **to be five years older than I** être de cinq ans plus âgé que moi, avoir cinq ans de plus que moi
omit omettre
on sur, à, de, en; — **board** (*a ship*) à bord de; — **the contrary** au contraire; — **the fifth of May** le cinq mai; — **foot** à pied; — **Monday** lundi; — **the right** à la droite
once une fois, autrefois; **at** —, tout de suite; **more than** —, plus d'une fois
one *num.* un, une
one *pron.* on, nous, vous, *etc.*; **no** —, ne . . . personne, per-

sonne; **the** — **who** celui qui; **this** —, celui-ci; **that** —, celui-là; **the** — **s** ceux, celles; **which** —? lequel? laquelle?
each —, chacun, chacune; **not** —, ne . . . aucun, aucune, (ne . . .) nul, nulle, (ne . . .) pas un, pas une; — **must eat** il faut manger; **a small** —, un petit
only ne . . . que, seulement; **be** —, se borner à; **not** —, non seulement; **the** — **one** le seul; **he has** — **one** il n'en a qu'un(e)
open *adj.* ouvert
open *v.* ouvrir
opera opéra *m.*
opinion opinion *f.*, avis *m.*
opportunity occasion *f.*
opposite contraire, en face de
or ou; **no** . . . —, ne . . . ni . . . ni
orange orange *f.*
order *n.* commande *f.*, ordre *m.*
order *v.* ordonner, commander
order: **in** — **to** afin de, pour; **in** — **that** afin que, pour que; **out of** —, hors de service
ordinary ordinaire
other autre; — **s** d'autres
ought devoir (Lesson XXXVIII); **he** — **to do it** il devrait le faire; **he** — **to have done it** il aurait dû le faire
our *adj.* notre, nos
ours *pron.* le nôtre, la nôtre; à nous
ourselves nous, nous-mêmes
out: **come** —, **go** —, sortir; — **doors** dehors; — **of order** hors de service
outburst éclat *m.*
outside au dehors, dehors
over par, par-dessus; — **there** là-bas; **all** — **the house** par toute la maison

overcoat pardessus *m.*
 overcome accabler; — **by** fatigue
 accablé de fatigue
 overshoes (*rubbers*) caoutchoucs
 m. pl.
 owe devoir
 own *adj.* propre; **my** —, le mien;
 of his —, à lui
 own *v.* posséder, être propriétaire
 de, avoir
 ox bœuf *m.*

P

pack: — **a trunk** faire une malle
 package paquet *m.*
 page (*of book*) page *f.*, (*servant*)
 page *m.*
 paint peindre; **painted in** blue
 peint en bleu
 pair paire *f.*, couple *m.*
 palace palais *m.*, château *m.*
 paper papier *m.*; (**news**)—, journal
 (*pl. journaux*)
 parade parade *f.*
 pardon pardonner
 parent parent *m.*
 Paris Paris *m.*; **in** —, à Paris
 Parisian parisien (*parisienne*)
 park parc *m.*
 part partie *f.*, région *f.*
 partner associé *m.*
 pass (*go past*) passer; — **through**
 traverser; — **by on the other**
 side passer outre
 passion passion *f.*
 past passé; **at half** — 10:00 à
 dix heures et demie
 Pasteur, Louis *great French scien-*
 tist (1822–1895)
 pathway chemin *m.*
 patience patience *f.*
 patrol patrouille *f.*
 Paul Paul
 paw patte *f.*; **broken** —, patte
 cassée
 pay (**for**) payer; — **more** payer

 plus cher; — **attention** faire
 attention
 payment paiement *m.*
 peace paix *f.*
 peach pêche *f.*
 pear poire *f.*
 pearl perle *f.*
 peasant paysan *m.*, paysanne *f.*
 pebble caillou *m.*
 peel peler
 peep: **at the very** — **of day** dès
 le point du jour
 pen plume *f.*
 pencil crayon *m.*
 penholder porte-plume *m.*
 penknife canif *m.*
 people peuple *m.*, on, gens *m. or f.*;
 monde *m.*; **few** —, peu de gens;
 most —, la plupart des gens;
 many —, beaucoup de monde,
 beaucoup de personnes
 per par
 perfect parfait
 perhaps peut-être
 peril péril *m.*
 permission permission *f.*
 permit permettre; — **me to per-**
 mettez-moi de
 person personne *f.*
 persuade persuader
 Peter Pierre
 physics physique *f.*
 piano piano *m.*; **play the** —, jouer
 du piano
 pick cueillir; — **up** ramasser
 picnic pique-nique *m.*
 picture tableau *m.*
 picturesque pittoresque
 piece morceau *m.*; **small square**
 — **s of wood** petits morceaux de
 bois carrés; — **s of fruit** fruits
 m. pl.
 pig cochon *m.*, porc *m.*
 pin épingle *f.*
 pink rose
 pious pieux (*pieuse*)

pipe pipe *f.*
 pitcher cruche *f.*
 pitifully à faire pitié
 pity *n.* pitié *f.*, dommage *m.*; it's
 a —, c'est dommage; what a
 —! quel dommage!
 pity *v.* avoir pitié de, plaindre
 place *n.* endroit *m.*, lieu *m.*, place
f.; take —, avoir lieu; it is
 your — to c'est à vous de;
 in their —s à leur place
 place *v.* mettre, placer
 plate assiette *f.*
 platter plateau *m.*
 play *n.*: new —s nouvelles for-
 mations
 play *v.* jouer; (*games*) jouer à;
 (*musical instruments*) jouer de;
 — it (*game*) y jouer; — it
 (*instrument*) en jouer
 playmate camarade *m.* (de jeu)
 pleasant agréable, aimable
 please plaire à, faire plaisir à;
 if you —, s'il vous plaît; as
 you —, comme il vous plaira;
 — (*imperative*) veuillez, voulez-
 vous (+ *inf.*)
 pleased content, charmé; be —
 with être content(e)(s) de
 pleasure plaisir *m.*; give — to
 faire plaisir à; that would give
 them much —, cela leur ferait
 beaucoup de plaisir
 plenty beaucoup (de)
 plough labourer
 P.M. de l'après-midi, du soir;
 3:00 —, trois heures de l'après-
 midi, 15 heures; 8:00 —, huit
 heures du soir, 20 heures
 pocket poche *f.*
 pocketbook porte-monnaie *m.*
 poet poète *m.*
 point point *m.*; (*sharp end*) pointe *f.*
 policeman agent (de police) *m.*,
 gardien (de la paix) *m.*
 polite poli

pond étang *m.*
 pony poney *m.*
 poor *adj.* pauvre
 poor *n.* pauvre *m.*; be good to the
 —, être bon pour les pauvres
 population population *f.*
 portfolio portefeuille *m.*
 position place *f.*, situation *f.*
 possible possible
 postage stamp timbre-poste *m.*,
 timbre *m.*
 postman facteur *m.*
 post office poste *f.*, bureau (*m.*)
 de poste
 potato pomme de terre *f.*, (*pl.*
 pommes de terre)
 pound livre *f.*
 pour verser
 powerful puissant
 praise louer
 pray prier, prier Dieu
 precisely précisément; at — ten
 o'clock à dix heures précises
 predict prédire
 prefer préférer, aimer mieux
 preference préférence *f.*
 prepare préparer
 presence présence *f.*; into his —,
 auprès de lui; in the — of en
 présence de
 present *adj.* présent; at —, à
 présent; be — at assister à
 present *n.* cadeau *m.* (*pl.* ca-
 deaux); give a —, faire un
 cadeau
 present *v.* présenter
 presently tout à l'heure
 president (monsieur) le président
 pretend faire semblant de
 pretty joli
 prevent empêcher
 previous précédent
 price prix *m.*; a high —, un prix
 élevé; at half —, à moitié prix
 prick piquer
 priest prêtre *m.*

prince prince *m.*; **Prince of Wales**
 le prince de Galles
principal principal
prison prison *f.*
prize prix *m.*
probably probablement
problem problème *m.*
produce produire
professor professeur *m.*, maître *m.*
profoundly profondément
promise *n.* promesse *f.*; **keep**
 one's —, tenir sa promesse
promise *v.* promettre
pronounce prononcer
proof preuve *f.*
property propriété *f.*; **a piece of**
 —, une propriété
proprietor propriétaire *m. or f.*
protect protéger
protection protection *f.*
proud fier (fière)
proudly fièrement
provided that pourvu que
provisions vivres *m.*, aliments *m.*
prudent prudent
prudently prudemment
publish publier
puff: **a — of wind** un coup de vent
punish punir
punishment punition *f.*
pupil élève *m. or f.*
purchase achat *m.*, emplette *f.*
pure pur
purity pureté *f.*
purposely exprès
purse porte-monnaie *m.*
pursue poursuivre, continuer
put mettre; — **to death** mettre
 à mort; — **out (fire)** éteindre;
 — **off... to another day** re-
 mettre... à un autre jour

Q

quantity quantité *f.*
quarter quart *m.*; **a — past two**

deux heures (et) un quart; **a**
 — **to two** deux heures moins un
 (le) quart; **in a — of an hour**
 dans un quart d'heure
queen reine *f.*
question *n.* question *f.*; **ask a —**,
 faire (poser) une question; **it**
is a — of il s'agit de; **ask many**
 —s faire (poser) beaucoup de
 questions
question *v.* faire (poser) une ques-
 tion
quickly vite
quiet tranquille
quite tout à fait, très, assez

R

rabbit lapin *m.*
Racine French writer of tragedy
 (1639–1699)
radio set poste (*m.*) de T. S. F.
 (Téléphonie Sans Fil)
railroad chemin (*m.*) de fer
rain *n.* pluie *f.*
rain *v.* pleuvoir
raise lever, élever; — **again** relever
rare rare
rate: **at any —**, en tout cas
rather assez
reach arriver à, atteindre
read lire; — **again** relire
reading lecture *f.*; **amuse oneself**
 —, s'amuser à lire
ready prêt
real réel, vrai
reappear reparaître
rear admiral chef (*m.*) d'escadre
 (*pl.* chefs d'escadre)
reason raison *f.*
recall se rappeler
receive recevoir
recognize reconnaître
recommend recommander, con-
 seiller
red rouge

- refuse** refuser
regiment régiment *m.*
regret regretter
reign *n.* règne *m.*
reign *v.* régner
rejoice (at) se rejouir (de)
rejoin rejoindre
relate raconter
relative parent *m.*
remain rester
remainder reste *m.*, restant *m.*
remark remarque *f.*
remember se souvenir de, se rap-
 peler
rent louer
repairs réparations *f. pl.*
repeat répéter
reply *n.* réponse *f.*
reply *v.* répondre (à)
represent représenter
republic république *f.*
resemble ressembler à
resolve résoudre, décider
respect *n.* respect *m.*
respect *v.* respecter
responsible responsable; — **for**
 responsable de
rest se reposer
restaurant restaurant *m.*
result résultat *m.*
resume reprendre
retain garder
retire se retirer
return *n.* retour *m.*; **on my** —, à
 mon retour
return *v.* (come back) revenir;
 (go back) retourner; (give back)
 rendre; — **home** rentrer
reward récompenser
Rhine Rhin *m.* (river in eastern
 France and Germany)
rich riche
ride *n.* promenade *f.*; **take a** —,
 faire une promenade, se prome-
 ner; **automobile** —, promenade
 (*f.*) en auto(mobile)
ride *v.* se promener, faire une
 promenade en auto (à cheval,
 à bicyclette, etc.)
right *adj.* droit; **on the** — (hand),
 to the —, à (la) droite
right *n.* droit *m.*; **be (in the)** —,
 avoir raison; **all** —! à la bonne
 heure! **be in the** —, être dans
 son droit; **that's** —, c'est cela,
 c'est bien
ring *n.* bague *f.*, anneau *m.*
ring *v.* sonner
ripe mûr
rise se lever
risk: run the —, risquer, hasar-
 der
road route *f.*, chemin *m.*; **on the**
 —, en route
rob voler
Robert Robert
rock roche *f.*
roll *n.* rouleau *m.*
roll *v.* rouler
Roman *adj.* romain
Roman *n.* Romain *m.*
roof toit *m.*
room chambre *f.*, pièce *f.*, salle
f.; **in(to) my** —, chez moi;
dining —, salle à manger *f.*;
bed—, chambre (à coucher) *f.*
rose rose *f.*; — **bush** rosier *m.*;
 — **garden** jardin (*m.*) de roses
rosy de rose, vermeil
Rouget de Lisle author of "La
 Marseillaise" (1760–1836)
Rousseau, Jean-Jacques French
 writer (1712–1778)
row ramer
rub frotter, se frotter; — **out**
 effacer, rayer, enlever, (*grains*)
 rouler entre les doigts pour faire
 sortir
rubbers (*overshoes*) caoutchoucs
m. pl.
ruin perdre
rule gouverner, régner

run courir; — away se sauver; —
over écraser
rush se précipiter, s'élancer, ac-
courir

S

sack sac *m.*
sailor matelot *m.*
salad salade *f.*
Samaritan Samaritain *m.*
same même (*placed before noun*);
it's all the — to me cela m'est égal
sand sable *m.*
Sand, George *French woman novel-*
ist (1804–1876)
sandwich sandwich *m.*
satisfied content, satisfait
Saturday samedi *m.*
saucer soucoupe *f.*
save économiser
say dire; — ! dites donc ! dis donc !
I should — so ! je (le) crois
bien ! it is said on dit; you
don't — ! vraiment ! par exem-
ple !
scarce (scarcely) à peine, ne ...
guère
scene scène *f.*
school école *f.*; at —, à l'école
scold gronder
Scotchman Écossais *m.*
Scotland Écosse *f.*
scratch griffer
sea mer *f.*
season saison *f.*
seated assis
second deuxième, (*of only two*)
second
secret secret *m.*
see voir, regarder; — again re-
voir; — clearly (*in it*) y voir
clair; let me — ! voyons !
seek chercher
seem sembler; it seems to me il
me semble; you do not —,
vous n'avez pas l'air (de)

seize saisir
self même, se
sell vendre
send envoyer; — for envoyer
chercher, faire venir (appeler);
— again renvoyer de nouveau
sentence phrase *f.*
September septembre *m.*
serve servir; — as servir de
set *n.* poste *m.*; a wireless —,
un poste de T. S. F. (Téléphonie
Sans Fil)
set *v.* mettre; — out partir
seven sept
seventeen dix-sept
seventy soixante-dix
several plusieurs, quelques
severe sévère
sew coudre; sewing machine
machine (*f.*) à coudre
shade nuance *f.*
share partager
shawl châle *m.*
she elle, ce
sheep mouton *m.*
shine briller; the sun is shining
il fait du soleil
ship vaisseau *m.*
shoe soulier *m.*
shop boutique *f.*, magasin *m.*
short court
shorten raccourcir
should *cond.*, Lesson XXVIII;
devoir Lesson XXXVIII
show montrer, faire voir; — me
montrez-moi
shut fermer
sick malade
side côté *m.*; on this —, de ce
côté; on the other —, de l'autre
côté (de); by the — of à côté
(de); on one —, d'un côté
sight vue *f.*; by —, de vue
sign signer
silence silence *m.*
silk soie *f.*

- silly stupide, bête, sot (sotte)
 silver *adj.* d'argent, en argent
 silver *n.* argent *m.*
 silverware argenterie *f.*
 sin pécher
 since *conj.* puisque
 since *prep.* depuis
 sincere sincère
 sing chanter
 single seul
 sir monsieur *m.*
 sire sire *m.*
 sister sœur *f.*
 sister-in-law belle-sœur *f.*
 sit s'asseoir; — down (*impv.*)
 asseyez-vous
 sitting assis(e)
 situated situé
 six six
 sixteen seize
 sixth sixième
 sixty soixante
 skill adresse *f.*
 skin écorcher
 sky ciel *m.*
 slander médire (de)
 sleep *n.* sommeil *m.*
 sleep *v.* dormir; go to —, s'endor-
 mir
 sleepy: be —, avoir sommeil
 sleigh traîneau *m.* (*pl.* traîneaux);
 go — riding faire une prome-
 nade en traîneau
 slip glisser, s'échapper
 slow: my watch is ten minutes —,
 ma montre retarde de dix mi-
 nutes
 slowly lentement
 small petit
 smoke *n.* fumée *f.*
 smoke *v.* fumer
 snow *n.* neige *f.*
 snow *v.* neiger; it is snowing il
 neige
 so si, ainsi, aussi, (*for it*) le; —
 many, — much tant (de); —
 as to afin (de); — that afin
 que, pour que; — well si bien;
 to say —, le dire; he did —, il
 l'a fait; I should say —! je le
 crois (bien) !
 soap savon *m.*
 sobriety sobriété *f.*
 soldier soldat *m.*
 some *adj.* du, de la, des, quelque(s)
 some *pron.* en, quelques-uns,
 quelques-unes; — body (one)
 quelqu'un, quelqu'une (*pl.* quel-
 ques-uns, quelques-unes); — of
 it en; — of the certains (*adj.*);
 he has —, il en a; — . . . others
 . . . quelques-uns . . . d'autres
 somebody (some one) quelqu'un,
 on
 something quelque chose *m.*;
 — good quelque chose de bon
 sometimes quelquefois
 son fils *m.*
 song chanson *f.*, chant *m.*
 soon bientôt; as — as aussitôt
 que; too —, trop tôt
 sore: have a — foot avoir mal
 au pied
 sorry fâché; be —, regretter (de),
 être fâché (de); I am — for her
 elle me fait pitié; he is — for
 his dog il a pitié de son chien
 soul âme *f.*
 sound son *m.*
 soup potage *m.*
 south sud *m.*; to the —, au sud
 South America Amérique (*f.*) du
 Sud
 souvenir souvenir *m.*
 Spain Espagne *f.*; in —, to —,
 en Espagne
 speak parler; French is spoken
 here ici on parle français;
 speaking truly à vrai dire; —
 no more of it n'en parlez plus
 speed: at full —, à toute (grande)
 vitesse

spend (*time*) passer, (*money*) dépenser; — **the afternoon** passer l'après-midi

spite: **in** — **of** malgré

spoil gâter

spoon cuiller *f.*

spot endroit *m.*

spring printemps *m.*; **in the** —, au printemps

square *adj.* carré

square *n.* place *f.*

stable (*for horses*) écurie *f.*, (*for cattle*) étable *f.*

Staël (**Mme de**) *French writer* (1766–1817)

stagnant stagnant; — **water** de l'eau stagnante

stairs escalier *m.*; **up**—, en haut; **go up**—, monter; **go down**—, descendre

stake: **be at** —, y aller de; **his life is at** —, il y va de sa vie

stalk tige *f.*; **the** —**s are made into walking sticks** avec les tiges on fait des cannes

stamp timbre *m.*; **postage** —, timbre-poste *m.* (*pl.* timbres-poste)

stand être debout; **standing** debout; — **upright** se tenir droit

start commencer; — **off** partir

starvation inanition *f.*; **threatened with** —, menacé de mourir de faim, d'inanition

statesman homme (*m.*) d'État

station (*railway*) gare *f.*

stay rester; — **in** rester à la maison

steal voler

steamboat steamer *m.*, vapeur *m.*

steel *adj.* d'acier

step pas *m.*

stick bâton *m.*; **walking** —, canne *f.*

stick out sortir

still encore, toujours

stir remuer

stocking bas *m.*

stone pierre *f.*

stoop se baisser

stop arrêter, (*refl.*) s'arrêter, cesser (de); — **short** s'arrêter court; — **there!** halte-là! — **thief!** au voleur!

storm tempête *f.*

story histoire *f.*, conte *m.*

straight droit

straw paille *f.*

strawberry fraise *f.*

street rue *f.*

street car tramway *m.*

strike frapper

strip dépouiller

strong fort

student étudiant *m.*, étudiante *f.*

study *n.* étude *f.*

study *v.* étudier

stupid stupide, bête, sot (sotte)

subjunctive subjonctif *m.*

succeed réussir; — **in** réussir à **success** succès *m.*

successor successeur *m.*

such tel (telle), (*adv.*) tellement; — **a un tel**; — **a man un tel** homme

sudden: **all of a** —, tout d'un coup

suddenly tout à coup

suffer souffrir, subir

suffice suffire

sugar sucre *m.*

suit *n.* complet *m.*

suit *v.* convenir

summer été *m.*; **in** —, en été; — **season** saison (*f.*) d'été

sun soleil *m.*; **the** — **is shining** il fait du soleil

Sunday dimanche *m.*

superb superbe

suppose supposer, croire

suppress supprimer

sure sûr

surprise *n.* surprise *f.*
 surprise *v.* étonner, faire une surprise
 surprised surpris, étonné
 surrender (se) rendre
 surround entourer
 Sweden Suède *f.*
 sweep balayer
 swim nager
 Switzerland Suisse *f.*

T

table table *f.*
 take prendre, (*lead*) amener, mener, conduire; — **an automobile ride** se promener, faire une promenade en auto(mobile); — **care not to** prendre garde de; — **care of** garder, prendre soin de, avoir soin de; — **dinner** dîner; — **interest in** s'intéresser à; — **lunch** déjeuner; — **off** ôter, quitter; — **one's hat off** se découvrir; — **place** avoir lieu; — **a walk** se promener, faire une promenade
 talk parler
 tall grand, haut
 taste *n.* goût *m.*
 taste *v.* goûter *m.*
 taxi(cab) taxi(mètre) *m.*
 tea thé *m.*
 teach enseigner, apprendre
 teacher professeur *m.* or *f.*, maître *m.*, maîtresse *f.*
 team équipe *f.*
 teapot théière *f.*
 tease taquiner
 telephone téléphoner
 tell dire, raconter; — **him to come** dites-lui de venir; **I am told** on me dit
 tempt tenter
 temptation tentation *f.*
 ten dix

tennis tennis *m.*; **play** —, jouer au tennis
 than que (de + *numerals*)
 thank remercier (de); — **you** (**very much**) merci (beaucoup, bien) — **some one for something** remercier quelqu'un de quelque chose
 that *dem. adj.* ce (cet), cette, ce . . . là
 that *conj.* que; **in order** —, **so** —, afin que, pour que
 that *dem. pron.* ce, cela, celui(-là), celle(-là); — **one** celui(-là), celle(-là)
 that *rel. pron.* qui, que, lequel, laquelle; — **which** ce qui, ce que
 the le, la, les
 theater théâtre *m.*
 their *adj.* leur, leurs
 theirs *pron.* le leur, la leur, à eux, à elles
 them les, leur, eux, elles; **of** —, **en**; **to** —, leur, y; **with** —, avec eux, elles
 themselves eux-même, elles-même, se
 then puis, ensuite, alors
 there là, là-bas, y; — **is** (**are**) (*with idea of pointing*) voilà; (*simple statement*) il y a; **over** (**down**) —, là-bas; — **she is!** la voilà!
 therefore aussi, par conséquent
 these *dem. adj.* ces, ces . . . ci
 these *dem. pron.* ce, ceux(-ci), celles(-ci)
 they ils, elles, on, ce; **there** — **are** les voilà; **it is** —, ce sont eux (elles)
 thief voleur *m.*, brigand *m.*
 thing chose *f.*, affaire *f.*
 think penser, croire, songer, réfléchir; (*have an opinion of*) penser de; (*turn one's thoughts toward*) penser à; **what do you** —

- of me? que pensez-vous de moi? — of me pensez à moi; what are you thinking about? à quoi pensez-vous?
- third troisième, trois, tiers; the — time la troisième fois; two —s deux tiers
- thirsty: be —, avoir soif *f.*; be very —, avoir bien soif, mourir de soif
- thirteen treize
- thirty trente
- this *dem. adj.* ce (cet), cette, ce . . .-ci
- this *dem. pron.* ce, ceci, celui, (-ci), celle(-ci); — one celui(-ci), celle(-ci)
- thither: hither and —, ça et là
- Thomas Thomas
- those *dem. adj.* ces, ces . . .-là
- those *dem. pron.* ce, ceux(-là), celles(-là)
- though: as —, comme si
- thousand mille, mil; a (one) — francs mille francs
- thrash battre; thrashing machine machine à battre *f.*
- threaten menacer
- three trois
- through par, à travers; — the window par la fenêtre
- throw jeter; — away jeter
- thunder tonner; it is thundering il tonne
- Thursday jeudi *m.*
- thus ainsi
- ticket billet *m.*
- tie *n.* cravate *f.*
- tie *v.* attacher
- till jusqu'à ce que, que
- time heure *f.*, temps *m.*, fois *f.*; at that —, dans ce temps-là, à cette époque, à ce moment; be — to être temps de; for some —, quelque temps; from — to —, de temps en temps; have a good —, s'amuser (bien); have as good a — as possible s'amuser le plus possible; have — to avoir le temps de; it is — to leave il est temps de partir; the last —, la dernière fois; a long —, longtemps; lose one's — looking for it perdre son temps à le chercher; most of the —, la plupart du temps; much —, beaucoup de temps; next —, la prochaine fois; on —, à l'heure; several —s plusieurs fois; ten —s as many dix fois plus de; three —s trois fois; what — is it? quelle heure est-il?
- tire *n.* pneu *m.* (*pl.* pneus); the — gave way le pneu a crevé
- tire *v.* fatiguer
- tired fatigué, ennuyé
- tiresome ennuyeux (ennuyeuse), fatigant
- title titre *m.*
- to à, chez, pour, jusqu'à, en; — (*in order to*) pour; I am going — Italy je vais en Italie; five minutes — 10:00 dix heures moins cinq
- to-day aujourd'hui; a week from —, d'aujourd'hui en huit
- together ensemble
- to-morrow demain; day after —, après-demain
- tongue langue *f.*
- too aussi, trop; — much (many) trop (de); — good to do that trop bon pour faire cela
- tooth dent *f.*
- toothache mal (*m.*) aux dents
- top haut *m.*
- touch toucher
- towards vers, envers
- towel serviette *f.*
- tower tour *f.*; — of London la tour de Londres

town ville *f.*; in —, down —,
 en ville; to —, à la ville, en ville
 toy jouet *m.*
 trade métier *m.*, profession *f.*
 train train *m.*
 translate traduire
 travel voyager
 traveler voyageur *m.*
 treasure trésor *m.*
 tree arbre *m.*
 tremble trembler
 trespasses: Forgive us our —
 as we forgive . . . Pardonne(ez)-
 nous nos offenses comme nous
 pardonnons à ceux qui nous
 ont offensés
 trip promenade *f.*, voyage *m.*
 trouble *n.* peine *f.*; engine —,
 panne *f.*
 trouble *v.* déranger
 true vrai
 truly vraiment; yours —, bien
 à vous, votre bien dévoué
 trunk malle *f.*
 trust avoir confiance en, se fier à
 truth vérité *f.*
 try essayer, tâcher; — to essayer
 de, tâcher de; — on essayer;
 — (*test*) a car essayer une auto
 T. S. F. Téléphonie (*f.*) Sans Fil
 Tuesday mardi *m.*
 tulip tulipe *f.*
 turkey hen dinde *f.*
 turn tourner; — round se re-
 tourner; it is her — to speak
 c'est à elle à parler
 twelve douze; — (o'clock) (*noon*)
 midi *m.*, (*midnight*) minuit *m.*
 twentieth vingtième
 twenty vingt
 twenty-one vingt et un
 twice deux fois
 two deux; — weeks deux se-
 maines, quinze jours; — thirds
 deux tiers
 typewriter machine (*f.*) à écrire

U

ugly laid
 umbrella parapluie *m.*
 uncle oncle *m.*
 under sous
 undergo subir
 understand comprendre; we —
 nothing about it nous n'y com-
 prenons rien
 undertake entreprendre
 unfortunate malheureux (*malheu-*
reuse); however —, si mal-
 heureux que (+ *subjunctive*)
 unfortunately malheureusement
 United States États-Unis *m. pl.*;
 in the —, to the —, aux États-
 Unis
 university université *f.*
 unknown inconnu, à l'insu (*de*)
 unless à moins que . . . ne (+ *sub-*
junctive)
 until jusqu'à, jusqu'à ce que
 up en haut; to be —, être levé;
 get —, se lever; — to jusqu'à
 upon sur; — entering en en-
 trant
 upright droit
 upset renverser
 upstairs en haut
 urge presser, pousser
 us nous
 use *n.* usage *m.*; make — of
 employer, se servir de; what's
 the —, à quoi bon (+ *inf.*);
 be of some —, être de quelque
 utilité
 use *v.* employer, se servir de
 used to (+ *inf.*) is often trans-
 lated by the imperfect tense of
 the verb; he — do it il le faisait
 useful utile
 useless inutile, avoir beau
 (+ *inf.*); it is — for him to
 work il a beau travailler
 usual: as —, comme d'habitude

usually ordinairement
utter proférer, articuler

V

vacation vacances *f. pl.*
vaccine vaccin *m.*
vain vain; **be in** — (+ *inf.*)
avoir beau (+ *inf.*)
value valeur *f.*; **be of** —, valoir
vary varier
vase vase *m.*
vegetable légume *m.*
vehemently avec véhémence
verb verbe *m.*
Vercingetorix Vercingétorix (*Gallic leader in the time of Cæsar; 72?–46 B.C.*)
Versailles Versailles
very très, bien, beaucoup; —
much beaucoup, très; **that** —
evening ce (le) soir même
vest gilet *m.*
vice vice *m.*
victim victime *f.*
Victoria: **Queen** —, la reine Victoria
victory victoire *f.*
vigorous vigoureux
village village *m.*
violin violon *m.*
violet violette *f.*
virtue vertu *f.*
visit visiter, faire (une) visite
visitor visiteur *m.*, visiteuse *f.*
voice voix *f.*; **gentle** —, la voix douce
Voltaire *French writer (1694–1778)*
vote voter

W

wages gages *m. pl.*
wait (for) attendre; — upon
servir; — upon oneself se
servir

waiter garçon *m.*
wake éveiller, réveiller; se réveiller
Wales: **Prince of** —, le prince de Galles
walk *n.* promenade *f.*; **take** (go for) a —, (aller) se promener, faire une promenade (à pied); **take long** —s faire de longues promenades
walk *v.* se promener, marcher, aller (à pied); — **back** revenir à pied
walking: **go** —, se promener, faire une promenade (à pied)
wall mur *m.*
wander s'égarer, s'écarter
want vouloir, désirer; **for** — of care faute de soin
war guerre *f.*; — **stories** histoires de guerre
warm chaud; **be** — (*of living beings*) avoir chaud; **be** — (*things*) être chaud(e); **be** — (*weather*) faire chaud
was see be (être)
wash laver; — **oneself** se laver
Washington, George (1732–1799)
wastebasket corbeille (*f.*) à papier
watch *n.* montre *f.*; **wrist** —, montre-bracelet *f.*
watch *v.* suivre des yeux, garder, regarder
watchword mot d'ordre *m.*
water *n.* eau *f.*; **over the deep and dark** —s au-dessus les eaux noires et profondes; **in cold** (**warm**) —, à l'eau froide (chaude)
water *v.* abreuver
Waterloo *village in Belgium near which was fought the battle of Waterloo (1815)*
way route *f.*, chemin *m.*; **on the** —, en route, chemin faisant; **by the** —, à propos; **the good** —, le bon chemin; **in such a** —,

- de telle sorte; **in this** —, de cette façon; **lose one's** —, s'égarer
- we** nous, on
- weak** faible
- wear** porter, mettre; — **an overcoat** porter un pardessus
- weather** temps *m.*; **what kind of** — **is it?** quel temps fait-il?
- it's fine** —, il fait beau (temps)
- wedding:** — **trip** voyage (*m.*) de noce
- Wednesday** mercredi *m.*
- week** semaine *f.*, huit jours *m. pl.*; **last** —, la semaine dernière; **next** —, la semaine prochaine; **once a** —, une fois par semaine; **from** — **to** —, de semaine en semaine; **a** — **from to-day** d'aujourd'hui en huit; **two** — **from to-day** d'aujourd'hui en quinze
- weep** pleurer
- weigh** peser
- weighted** lourd, chargé
- welcome** *n.* réception *f.*; **the most enthusiastic** —, la réception la plus enthousiaste
- welcome** *v.* accueillir; **be** —, être le bienvenu
- well** *adv.* bien; —! eh bien! **very** —, très bien; — **done!** à la bonne heure! **as** — **as** aussi bien que; **he is** —, il se porte bien
- well** *n.* puits *m.*
- were** *imperfect of to be* (être); **if you** — **to go there** si vous y alliez
- what** *adj.* quel, quelle; — **a!** quel! **at** — **time?** à quelle heure?
- what** *pron.* que, quoi, ce qui, ce que, qu'est-ce que? qu'est-ce qui? qu'est-ce que c'est que? ce que c'est que; — **is his name?** comment s'appelle-t-il?
- **is that?** qu'est-ce que c'est que cela?
- whatever** tout ce qui (que)
- wheat** blé *m.*; — **field** champ (*m.*) de blé
- wheel: the back** —, la roue d'arrière
- when** quand, lorsque (*not used interrogatively*)
- whenever** quand, lorsque, toutes les fois que
- where** où; **from** —, d'où
- whereas** tandis que
- whether** si, que, soit que
- which** *int. adj.* quel, quelle; — **ones?** lesquels? lesquelles?
- which** *int. pron.* lequel, laquelle
- which** *rel. pron.* qui, que, lequel, laquelle; **of** —, dont; **at** —, où, auquel, à laquelle; **in** —, où, dans lequel, dans laquelle; **that** —, ce qui, ce que
- while** *conj.* pendant (que), en (+ *pres. part.*); tandis que; — **eating** en mangeant
- while** *n.*: **a long** —, longtemps; **in a little** —, tout à l'heure, bientôt
- whistle** *n.* sifflet *m.*
- whistle** *v.* siffler
- white** blanc (blanche)
- who** qui, quel, lequel, laquelle; qui est-ce qui? — **goes there!** qui vive!
- whoever** qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque
- whole** tout, toute; **the** — **house** toute la maison
- whom** qui, que, lequel, laquelle; **of** —, dont, de qui, duquel, de laquelle; qui est-ce que?
- whose** à qui, de qui, dont, duquel, de laquelle; **at** — **house** chez qui
- whosoever** qui que, qui que ce soit, quiconque

why pourquoi
wicked méchant
widow veuve *f.*
widower veuf *m.*
wife femme *f.*, épouse *f.*
will *n.* (*document*) testament *m.*
will *v.* vouloir; — **you close the door?** voulez-vous (veuillez) fermer la porte?
William Guillaume
willing: **be** —, vouloir bien
willingly volontiers
win remporter, gagner
wind *n.* vent *m.*
wind *v.* remonter
window fenêtre *f.*; **out of the** —, par la fenêtre
windy: **to be** —, faire du vent
wine vin *m.*
wing aile *f.*
winter hiver *m.*; **in the** —, en hiver
wireless sans fil
wise sage
wish désirer, vouloir
with avec, de
withdraw se retirer
without *conj.* sans que
without *prep.* sans; **do** —, se passer de
woman femme *f.*
wood(s) bois *m.*
word mot *m.*, parole *f.*; **man of his** —, homme de parole; — **for** —, mot à mot
work *n.* travail *m.*, œuvre *f.*; — **s of Racine** œuvres de Racine
work *v.* travailler; — **on the dress** travailler à la robe
worker travailleur *m.*
world monde *m.*
worn usé; — **out** usé
worry tourmenter, se tourmenter, se soucier

worse plus mauvais, pire
worth valeur *f.*; **be** —, valoir;
feel his own —, sentir ce qu'il vaut; **be** — **the trouble** (**while**) valoir la peine
worthy digne, brave
wound *n.* blessure *f.*, plaie *f.*
wound *v.* blesser
wrap envelopper (*de*)
wrist watch montre-bracelet *f.*
write écrire; — **to each other** s'écrire
writer auteur *m.*, écrivain *m.*
wrong mal *m.*; **be** (**in the**) —, avoir tort, être dans l'erreur

Y

yard cour *f.*
year an *m.*, année *f.*; **this** —, cette année; **last** —, l'année dernière, l'année passée; **20 francs a** —, 20 francs par an; **all the** — **round** (pendant) toute l'année
yellow jaune
yes oui, (*answering a negative question*) si
yesterday hier
yet encore, toujours, déjà, cependant
yield céder
you vous, tu, te, toi, on
young jeune; **to be five years younger than I** être de cinq ans plus jeune que moi, avoir cinq ans de moins que moi
your *adj.* votre, vos, ton, ta, tes
yours *pron.* le vôtre, la vôtre, le tien, la tienne, à vous, à toi; — **truly** bien à vous, votre bien dévoué
yourself vous, te, toi, vous-même, toi-même, (*refl.*) vous, te
youth jeunesse *f.*

INDEX

A

- à**, contraction with **le** and **les**, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317; with infinitive, § 98, 4, 5, § 279; with names of countries and cities, § 113, 3, 4, § 333, 3; of indirect object, § 362, 2, § 451, 1; verb + **à** = Eng. tran., § 296, 2; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; denoting possession after **être**, § 118, § 377, 1; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; = *concerning, of*, § 436, 2; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2; of 'motion towards,' § 451, 2; = *with* (characteristic), § 454, 4.
- abbreviations, § 461.
- about*, § 436.
- accent, acute, § 5, 1; circumflex, § 5, 3; grave, § 5, 2.
- acheter**, orthographic changes, § 75, 2, § 90, *a*, § 158, 2.
- adjectival phrases with **de**, § 80, 6, § 325, 2.
- adjectives, plural of, § 38, § 52, §§ 338–339; feminine of, §§ 57–58, §§ 336–337; with two masculine forms, § 58, 3, § 337, 1, (3); position, § 59, §§ 350–353; comparison, § 83, §§ 345–349; followed by **de** or **à** + infinitive, § 98, 3, 5, § 355, § 356; agreement, §§ 340–344; as adv., § 410, § 343, 1; nouns as adjs., § 344; advs. as adjs., § 358, *b*; with **en**, § 357; with **envers**, § 358; *see also* possessive, demonstr., interrog., indef., numeral.
- adverbs, of quantity, § 80, 5, § 325, 1; comparison, § 84, § 412; list, § 408; in **-ment** from adjs., § 409; adjs. as advs., § 410; adverbial locutions, § 411; position, § 413; negatives, §§ 414–419; distinctions in use, § 420; numeral advs., § 426.
- afin que**, with subjunctive, § 105, § 455, § 271, 2.
- after*, § 437.
- age, idioms, § 141, 5.
- agir**, impers., § 252, 1, obs.
- agreement, of possessive adjs., § 28, § 375; of past part. with **avoir**, § 54, § 291; with **être**, § 65, 2, § 244, § 290; with reflexive obj., § 73, § 244; of present part., § 100, § 286, 1; of possessive pronouns, § 117, § 375; of relative pronouns, § 126, § 396.
- aïeul**, pl., § 309.
- ail**, pl., § 309.
- aimer**, + **à**, without prep., § 281, 1.
- aller**, conjugation, § 64, § 87, § 90, § 96, § 106, § 110, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 160; + infin., § 230, 8; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; **s'en aller**, § 247; **allez, allons**, special force, § 267, *b*.
- alphabet, names of letters, § 4.
- âme qui vive, âme vivante**, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *c*.
- à moins que**, with **ne**, § 419, 1.
- among*, § 438.
- amour**, gender, § 304, 3, *b*.
- and*, untranslated, § 456, 2; = **ni**, § 457, 2.
- any*, in partitive constr., § 42, § 80, §§ 322–326.
- apostrophe, § 5, 6, § 19, 1; apostrophe and *s*, § 29.
- appeler**, orthographic changes, § 75, 3, § 90, *a*, § 158, 2.
- apposition, use of art., § 330, 4.
- approuvé**, § 289, *a*.
- après**, § 437.
- après**, + infin., § 282, 4.
- après-midi**, gender, § 304, 3, *a*.
- arriver**, impers., § 252, 1.
- articles, § 22, § 25, §§ 315–335; *see also* def. art. and indef. art.; agree-

ment and repetition, § 318; use with nouns, §§ 319–335; omission, § 80, § 330; in apposition, § 330, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; with proper names, §§ 332–335.

at, § 439.

attendant: *en — que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

attendu, § 289, *a*.

au = *à* + *le*; **aux** = *à* + *les*, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317.

aucun, § 134, 3, § 135, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with *ne*, § 415.

aucunement, with *ne*, § 415.

au-dessous de, § 453, 2.

au-dessus de, § 448, 1.

aussi, in comparison (adj.), § 345; (adv.), § 412.

autant, § 420, 2.

automobile, § 304, 3, *c*.

autour de, § 436, 1.

autre, § 134, 3, § 403, 3; **un autre** distinguished from **encore un**, Less. XXXV, vocabulary; use, § 406, 2; with *ne*, § 419, 3, *n*.

autrement, with *ne*, § 419, 3, *n*.

autrui, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 1.

aux = *à* + *les*, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317.

auxiliary verbs, word order, § 49; table, § 154; use, §§ 227–229; modal auxs., § 230, 5, *n*.

avant, § 440, 2.

avant que, with subj., § 105, § 455, § 271, 1; with *ne*, § 419, 1, *b*.

avec, § 454, 1, 3.

avoir, conjugation, § 24, § 26, § 33, § 47, § 48, § 70, § 87, § 89, § 95, § 99, § 101, § 107, § 112, § 148, Less. XL; table, § 154; forming compound tenses, § 48, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 227, § 229; **avoir besoin**, etc., § 81, § 330, 1; **y avoir**, § 250; **il y a** and **voilà**, § 250, 3; **avoir l'air**, agreement of adj. with, § 343, 4, *c*; denoting dimension, § 428, obs. 3; denoting age, § 141, 5, § 430.

B

beaucoup, + *de*, § 80, 5; agreement of verb, § 232, 2, *a*, *b*; with partitive, § 325, 1, *d*; replaced by plu-

sieurs, § 406, 4; comparison, § 412, 2.

before, § 440.

bel, § 58, 3, § 337, 1, (3).

bestiaux, § 308, 4, *n*.

bétail, pl., § 308, 4, *n*.

bien, with partitive, § 325, 1, *b*; irreg. comparison, § 84, 2, § 412, 2.

bien que, with subj., § 105, § 455, § 271, 4.

boire, conjugation, § 132, § 150; Less. XL; table, § 181.

bon, comparison, § 83, 3, § 346; + *à* or *pour*, § 355, *a*, § 358, *a*.

bouger, with *ne* alone, § 418, 4.

bout: *au — de*, § 437, 2.

brin, with *ne*, § 415, 2, *b*.

by, § 441; of 'dimension,' § 428, *a*.

C

c', § 378, 2, obs.

ça, for *cela*, § 122, § 388, *e*, *f*; distinguished from *çà* and *çà!*, § 388, *f*, *n*.

çà, **çà!**, distinguished from **ça**, § 388, *f*, *n*.

capital letters, § 21.

cardinals, § 137, § 427; in dates, etc., § 141, § 427; for ordinals, § 141, 2, § 427.

cas: *au — où*, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*, *n*.; *au — que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3; *dans le — où*, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*, *n*.; *en — que*, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.

case relations, of nouns, § 313; of conjunctive pers. prons., § 362.

ce, **cet**, **cette**, **ces**, § 51, § 378, 1, obs.; use, § 380.

ce (pron.), §§ 121–122, § 378, 2; agreement of verb with, § 232, 3; use, §§ 383–387; + *être*, § 77, 3, § 383, § 384; **c'est** and **il est**, § 78, § 384; + *a* relat., § 127, 7, § 385; in phrases, § 386; **ce semble**, § 386, *a*; pleonastic, § 387; **ce n'est pas que** + subj., § 455.

ceci, §§ 121–122, § 378, 2; use, § 388.

cedilla, § 5, 4.

ce dont, § 127, 7, § 385.

- cela**, §§ 121–122, § 378, 2; use, § 388; replaced by *là*, § 388, *d*.
- celui** (-*ci*, -*là*), §§ 121–122, § 378, 2; use, § 381, § 382; replacing *celui*, § 381, *b*; **celui qui**, § 127, 8, § 381.
- cent**, § 137, 2, 3, § 421, *b*, *c*, *d*, *e*; Appendix.
- ce que, ce qui**, § 127, 7, § 385.
- cer**, verbs in, § 156.
- certain**, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 1.
- certifié**, § 289, *a*.
- cesser**, with *ne* alone, § 418, 4.
- c'est, ce sont**, with logical subject, § 77, 3, § 78.
- cet**, for *ce*, § 378, 1, obs.
- chacun**, § 134, 2, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 2.
- chaque**, § 134, 1, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 2.
- chez**, § 439, 2, § 451, 2, § 454, 2.
- ci**, § 51, 2, § 380.
- ciel**, pl., § 309.
- ci-inclus**, § 289, *b*.
- ci-joint**, § 289, *b*.
- cinq**, § 137, *a*, § 421.
- classroom expressions, *see* Introduction.
- collationné**, § 289, *a*.
- collectives, § 423.
- combien**, agreement, § 232, 2, *b*.
- comme**, for *que* in comparison, § 345, *b*.
- commencer**, orthographic changes, § 79, § 156; imperfect, § 87.
- comparison, of adjs., § 83, §§ 345–349; of advs., § 84, § 412; irreg. (adj.), § 83, 3, § 346; irreg. (adv.), § 84, 2, § 412, 2; remarks, § 349; followed by *ne*, § 419, 3.
- complement, predicative, § 295; prepositional, § 296; composite, § 298.
- compound adjectives, pl., § 343, 2; nouns, pl., § 311.
- compound tenses, with **avoir**, § 48, § 54, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 227; with **être**, § 65, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 228; of reflexive verbs, § 72, § 242; word order, § 49; tense sequence of subs., § 103, § 149, § 273; position of negatives, § 135, *a*, § 416; table, § 155; formation, §§ 227–229; in cond. sent., § 275, *a*.
- compris** (*y*), **non** —, § 289.
- concerning*, § 436, 2.
- condition: à la — que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *c*.
- conditional anterior, tense, § 266; replaced by plupf. subj., § 272, 3; by impf. indic. in 'result' clause, § 275, *c*.
- conditional mood and sentences, §§ 107–110, § 265, § 274, § 275; use of mood and tense, § 275.
- conjugations, table, regular, §§ 153–155; irreg. §§ 160–225; *see* **donner**, **finir**, **vendre** (**rompre**), etc.
- conjunction, list, § 455; with indic., subj., indic. or subj., *see* list, § 455; use of certain, §§ 456–459; distinctions, § 459.
- conjunctive pronoun, § 359 and *n*.; use, §§ 362–371, *see* personal pronouns.
- connaître**, conjugation, § 136, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 188; distinguished from **savoir**, § 136, *a*.
- consonants, §§ 16–17; doubled consonants, § 17, § 19.
- contractions, **de** with **le** and **les**, § 41, § 118, 2, § 317; **à** with **le** and **les**, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317.
- countries, etc., with article, § 113, § 333.
- couple**, gender, § 304, 3, *f*.
- craindre**, with *ne*, § 419, 2.
- crainte: de — que ... ne**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.
- croire**, conjugation, § 133, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 191.

D

- d'abord**, § 426, *a*.
- dans**, § 444, 1, 3.
- dates, § 141, § 427; idioms, § 141, 5, § 421, *c*, *d*, § 427, Appendix.
- dative, of pers. pron., § 362, 2; ethical, § 362, *n*.
- davantage**, § 420, 3.
- days, of week, Less. XXIII, vocabulary; numerals with days of month, § 141, 2, § 427.
- de**, contraction with **le** and **les**, § 41, § 118, 2, § 317; denoting possession, § 29; in partitive construction,

- § 42, § 80, §§ 323–325, Appendix; after nouns and adverbs of quantity (**douzaine**, **beaucoup**, etc.), § 80, 4, 5, § 325; after **million**, etc., § 137, 2; in adjectival phrases, § 80, 6, § 325, 2; for *in* after superlative, § 83, footnote 2, § 347, 2; for *than* before numerals, § 83, footnote 1, § 412, *b*; before countries, § 113, 2, § 333, 2; after **quelqu'un**, **rien**, etc., before adjs., § 134, 2, *a*; agent after passive, § 240, § 441, 1; after adjs., § 98, 2, 3, § 356; verb + **de** = Eng. transitive, § 296, 1; idiomatic with verbs, § 296, 4; denoting 'by how much,' after superl., § 349, 2; pleonastic after interrog., § 391, *n*.; of 'dimension,' § 428, obs. 1, § 430, obs. 3; in prepositional phrases, § 432; repetition, § 434; **de** = *by* (measure), § 441, 3; **de** = *from*, § 443, 1; of 'place' (after superl.), § 444, 4; **de** = *of*, § 445, 1; **de** = *with*, § 454, 6; **de** = *concerning*, *of*, § 436.
- de ce que**, constr., § 269, 4, *b*.
- décider**, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 2.
- défier**, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 3.
- definite article, § 22; plural of, § 38, 2; with general nouns, § 61, § 321; used for possessive adj., § 74, § 328; with superl., § 83, 2, §§ 347–349; with names of countries, etc., § 113, § 333; of persons, § 332; of cities, etc., § 334; of mountains and rivers, § 335; forms of def. art., § 22, § 38, 2, § 316; contractions, § 41, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317; agreement and repetition, § 318, § 347, *a*; with partitive noun, § 323; in titles, § 327; distributively, § 329; omission, § 80, § 324, § 325, § 330, § 333, 4; unclassified examples, § 331; replacing demonstrative adj., § 380, *b*; in fractions, § 424, *b*.
- délice**, gender, § 304, 2, *d*.
- demi**, § 144, 2; Appendix; agreement, § 343, 4, *a*; in compounds, § 311, 2, *a*, § 343, 4, *a*; in fractions, § 424, *a*.
- demonstrative adjectives, § 51; forms, § 378, 1; agreement, § 379; repetition, § 379, *a*; use, § 380; replaced by def. art., § 380, *b*.
- demonstrative pronouns, §§ 121–122; **ce** + **être**, § 77, 3, § 78; forms, § 378, 2; agreement, § 379; use, §§ 381–388.
- depuis**, § 443, 3; — **quand** with idiomatic present, § 50, *a*, § 257, 2; with **ne**, § 419, 6; — **que** distinguished from **puisque**, § 459, 3.
- dernier**, + subj., § 270, 3; + **à** + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
- des** = **de** + **les**, § 41, § 118, 2, § 317.
- dès**, § 443, 3.
- déscendre**, + **à**, + dir. infin., § 281, 4.
- désobéir**, passive use, § 241, 1.
- determinatives, position, § 353.
- déterminer**, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 5.
- deuxième**, for **second**, § 422, *b*.
- devant**, § 440, 1.
- devoir**, conjugation, § 146, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 214; idioms with, Less. XXXVIII, vocabulary; + infin., § 230, 2; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6.
- différents**, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3.
- dire**, conjugation, § 71, § 87, § 90, § 96, § 106, § 110, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 193; + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 6.
- direct obj., § 293; *see* personal pronouns.
- disjunctive pronouns, §§ 76–77, § 359 and *n*.; use, § 372; avoided, § 372, 6, *n*.
- divers**, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 3.
- donner**, conjugation, §§ 35–37, § 47, § 48, § 86, § 89, § 95, § 99, § 101, § 107, § 111, § 148, Less. XL; tables, § 153, § 155.
- dont**, § 125, § 127, 3, § 395; **ce dont**, § 127, 7; use, § 398.
- double**, as adv. § 425, *a*.
- du** = **de** + **le**, § 41, § 118, 2, § 317.
- dû**, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.
- dur**, + **pour**, § 358, *a*.
- durant**, position, § 433, *b*.

E

- écrire**, conjugation, § 128, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 194.

either: nor —, not —, § 135, § 457, 3.

-eler, verbs in, § 158, 2.

elision, § 19.

elle = *it*, § 30, footnote 2.

elliptical tense forms, § 256.

empêcher, with **ne**, § 419.

empresser (s'), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 7.

en, prep., with present participle, § 98, 6; before countries, § 113, 2, 3, § 333, 2; in gerunds, § 286, 3; repetition, § 434; of 'place,' 'time,' § 439, 1, § 444, 2, 3; of 'material,' § 445, 2; of 'motion towards,' § 451, 2.

en, pronoun, § 43, 3, § 360; meaning of *it*, § 42, 3, *a*; position, § 42, 3, § 67, 2 and 3, § 69, 3, § 370; past participle does not agree with it, § 54, § 292, 3, *a*; use, § 367, § 372, 6, *n*.

encore que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

encore un, § 406, 2, *a*.

en premier lieu, § 426, *a*.

ensuite, § 426, *a*.

entendre, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.

entendu, § 289, *a*, § 292, 4, *a*.

entre, § 438, 1, 2; **d'entre**, after superl., § 347, 2.

envers, § 451, 3.

environ, § 436, 4.

envoyer, orthographic changes, § 79, 3, § 157; conjugation, § 123, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 161.

ès = **en les**, § 317, *n*. 2.

espérer, orthographic changes, § 75, *a*, § 90, *a*, § 158, 1; used with indic., § 102, *n*.

-esse, fem. ending, § 306.

est-ce-que? § 27, footnote 1; § 44, 3; use of, § 236, 4.

et (conj.), use of, § 456.

été, invar., § 239, obs.

-eter, verbs in, § 158.

ethical dative, § 362, *n*.

être, § 154; conjugation, § 24, § 27, § 30, § 34, § 47, § 48, § 70, § 87, § 89, § 95, § 99, § 101, § 107, § 112, § 148, Less. XL; table, § 154; forming compound tenses, § 65, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 228, § 229; with reflexives, § 72, § 242; **être** + **à**

denoting ownership, § 118, § 377, 1; forming passive, § 239; as impersonal verb, § 250, 2; + **à** + infin., § 279; + **à** . . . **de**, + **à** . . . **à**, § 281, 8; *see also* **c'est** and **il est**.

eu, past participle, agreement, § 292, 4, *d*.

-eur, fem. of, § 337, 2, (2).

éviter, with **ne**, § 419, 1.

excepté, § 289, *a*.

F

faché, + **contre**, § 356, *a*.

façon: de — que, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.

faire, conjugation, § 68, § 87, § 90, § 96, § 106, § 109, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 195; in expressions of natural phenomena, § 92, § 249, 2; + infin., § 230, 6; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6, *b*; + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *a*; passive force of trans. infin., § 241, 3.

fait (past part.), agreement, § 292, 4, *c*.

falloir, § 251; conjugation, § 94, § 106, § 110, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 218; impersonal, § 92, *a*; obligation, § 102, 3.

fatiguer (**se**), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 9.

feu, § 343, 4, *b*.

finir, conjugation, § 35, § 43, § 47, § 48, § 86, § 89, § 95, § 99, § 101, § 107, § 111, § 148, § 153, Less. XL; tables, § 153, § 155; + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 9.

first, § 141, 2, § 427.

fois (**une fois**), § 425, 2.

fol, § 337, 1, (3).

for, § 442.

force, agreement, § 232, 2, *a*.

fort, + **sur**, § 357, *a*.

foudre, gender, § 304, 3, *i*.

fractions, § 144, § 424; fractions of hours, § 145.

franc de port, § 343, 4, *a*.

from, § 443.

future, §§ 89–91, § 263; in condl. sent., § 275; replaced by pres., § 91, footnote 1, § 257, 4, 5; replaced by condl., § 265, 3.

future anterior, § 264; replaced by past indef., § 259, 3.

G

garde-, in compounds, § 311, 5, *a*.
gender, § 23, of nouns, § 300; by meaning, § 303; by endings, § 302; by derivation, § 301; double, § 304; of compounds, § 305; formation of fem., § 306, §§ 336–337; of adjs., §§ 57–58, §§ 336–337.
general nouns, § 61, § 321; and partitive, § 42, § 326.
gens, gender, § 304, 3, *k*.
gent, pl., § 308, 5.
gerund, § 286, 3; English, § 287, 2.
goutte, with *ne*, § 415, 2.
guère, with *ne*, § 415, *b*.

H

haïr, + *de* + infin., § 279, 6, *c*.
half, § 144, 2.
haut, for *hauteur*, § 428, obs. 4.
homme qui vive, with *ne*, § 415, 2, *c*.
however, § 404, 5, *b* and *n*.
huit, § 137, *b*, § 421.
hymne, gender, § 304, 3.
hyphen, § 5, 7, § 26, footnote 2, § 39, § 62, 2; *see also* interrogation; Appendix.

I

ignorant, + *sur*, § 357, *a*.
ignorer, + negative, constr. after, § 269, 5, *d*.
il, = *it*, § 30, footnote 2; with impersonal verbs, § 92, § 248, § 252, 2, § 253; agreement, § 232, 4, § 361, *d*; **il y a**, Less. II, vocabulary, with *ne*, § 419, 6; **il est**, § 250, 2, § 383, 1, *a* and *b*; with expressions of time, § 92, § 145, § 429; **il faut**, § 251, *see falloir*; **il s'en faut**, § 251, 5, § 419, 5; distinguished from **ce**, § 78, § 384, 1; **il est vrai**, § 384, 1, *a*; **il semble**, § 386, *a*.
il est, distinguished from **c'est**, § 78; with expressions of time, § 92, § 145, § 429.

il faut, *see falloir*.

il y a, Less. II, vocabulary, § 250.

imperative mood, § 37, § 39, § 69, § 70, § 267; subj. for third person imperative, § 70, footnote 1, § 272, *a*; tables, § 153, § 154; retention of **-s** in 2 sg. before **y** or **en**, § 153, § 159, 4; in condl. sentences, § 275; replaced by fut. § 263, 4.

imperfect (indic.), §§ 86–88, § 258; in narrative, examples of, § 261; in condl. sentences, § 275; replacing plupf. or condl. anterior in condl. sentences, § 275, *c*; (subj.), §§ 148–150, § 273, 2, *a*.

impersonal verbs, §§ 92–94, §§ 248–253; with subj., § 102, 3; verbs used impersonally, § 252; **de** + infin. as logical subj. of, § 280, 1.

importe (qu'), § 232, 4, *a*.

in, § 444.

indefinite adjs., § 134; forms, § 403, 1–3, § 407, 1; use, § 404, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 416.

indefinite article, § 25; forms, § 315; agreement and repetition, § 318; use, § 320; omission, § 330; unclassified examples, § 331; with names of persons, § 332, 3.

indefinite pronouns, § 62, § 134; forms, § 403, 2, 3, § 407, 2; use, § 405, § 406, § 407; position in negation, § 135, § 416.

indicative mood, § 254, tables, §§ 153–155; present, § 24, § 26, § 27, § 30, § 33, § 34, § 36, § 43, § 46, § 72, § 75, § 257; idiomatic present, § 50, *a*, § 257, 2; imperfect, §§ 86–88, § 258; past indefinite, § 48, § 50, § 65, § 72, § 259; past definite, §§ 95–97, § 260; future, §§ 89–91, § 263; pluperfect, § 86, *b*, § 262; in conditions, § 275, obs.; of reflexive verbs, § 72, § 242; *see also* **donner**, **finir**, **vendre (rompre)**, etc.

indirect discourse, mood of, § 254, *n*. 1; tense of, § 258, 5.

indirect obj. § 293, 2, § 294, § 362, § 451, 1; *see* personal prons.

indulgent, + *pour* or *à*, § 358, *a*.

-ine, fem. ending, § 306, 3.

infinitive mood, § 35, § 98, § 276;

without prep., § 98, 1, § 278; with **de**, § 98, 2, 3, § 280; with **à**, § 98, 4, 5, § 279; reference lists, § 278, 6, § 279, 6, § 280; historical, § 280, 4; distinctions, § 281; with other preps., § 282; for subordinate clauses, § 104, § 283; with passive force, § 284; for Eng. *-ing*, § 64, footnote 2, § 285, § 287.

interjection, § 460.

interrogation, § 26, § 26, footnote 1, § 44, § 45, § 60, § 130, § 131; Appendix; word order, § 236; indirect, § 238.

interrogative adjs., § 60; forms, § 389, 1; agreement, § 390; use, § 391, § 392, 1, *b*, 2.

interrogative locutions, § 394.

interrogative pronouns, § 45, §§ 130–131; forms, § 389, 2; agreement, § 390; use, §§ 392–393.

into, § 444.

intransitive verbs, § 294.

inversions, rhetorical, § 237.

irregular verbs, §§ 156–225; list of, § 226; in *-er*, §§ 156–161; in *-cer*, *-ger*, § 156; in *-yer*, § 157; with stem vowel *e* (*é*), § 158; in *-eler*, *-eter*, § 158; in *-ir*, §§ 162–179; in *-re*, §§ 180–211; in *-oir*, §§ 212–225; in *-andre*, *-endre*, *-erdre*, *-ondre*, *-ordre*, § 210.

-issime, superl. ending, § 348, *a*.

J

jamais, with **ne**, § 135, § 415.

je soussigné, § 372, 2, *n*.

jeter, orthographic changes, § 75, *b*, § 90, *a*, § 158, 2.

jumelle, § 337, 1, (3).

jurer, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 11.

jusqu'à, § 451, 4; *jusqu'à ce que*, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 1.

L

-là, § 51, 2, § 380.

laissé, § 292, 4, *a*.

laisser, + infin., § 230, 7; + **de** + infin., § 278, 6, *c*; + **à**, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 12; constr. of obj., § 293, *b*.

large, for *largeur*, § 428, obs. 4.

lasser (**se**), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 13.

le, *la*, *les*, *see* def. art. and pers. pron.; contraction with **de**, § 41, § 118, 2, § 317; with **à**, § 53, § 118, 2, § 317; predicative, § 364; pleonastic, § 365; = *one*, *so*, § 365, *b*.

length, *see* quantity.

lequel? § 130, § 131, 6, § 389, 2; use, § 391.

lequel, § 125, § 127, 5, § 395; use, § 400.

less; *less and less*, § 345, *d*; *the less*, § 345, *d*; *less than*, (adv. of quantity), § 412, *b*.

lever: **se** —, § 72; orthographic changes, § 75, § 158.

liaison, § 18.

lire, conjugation, § 129, § 150, *Less*. XL; table, § 197.

loin que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.

long, for *longueur*, § 428, obs. 4.

lorsque, distinguished from *quand*, § 459, 1.

l'un, § 406, 7, (1), *a*.

l'un l'autre, § 406, 7, (2).

M

maint, § 403, 1; use, § 404.

mal, irreg. comparison, § 412, 2.

malgré que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.

ma mie, *m'amour*, § 374, *n*.

manger, orthographic changes, § 79, 2, § 156, 2; imperfect, § 87.

manière: **de** — **que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.

manquer, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 14.

mauvais, irreg. comparison, § 346.

meilleur, § 83, 3, § 346.

même, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 3.

mener, orthographic changes, § 75, § 90, *a*, § 158.

mettre, conjugation, § 138, § 150, *Less*. XL; table, § 198.

mie, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *b*.

mien, etc., for *le mien*, § 377, 2.

mieux, § 84, 2, § 412, 2.

mil, § 141; in dates, § 421, *c*; Appendix.

mille, § 137, 2, 3, § 421, *e*; Appendix.

million, *milliard*, § 137, 2.

mine, etc., translated, § 377, 1.
moi, for **me**, § 370, 3, obs.
moindre, § 346.
moins, § 83, § 84, § 412, 2; (adj.), § 345; (adv.), § 412; — **de**, § 412, 1, *b*; **à** — **que** . . . **ne**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3; — + **de deux**, agreement of, § 232, 2, *c*.
moitié, § 144, 2.
mol, § 337, 1, (3).
mon, for **ma**, § 40, 2, § 374, 1, obs. 1; in address, § 376, 4.
months, § 141, 3.
mood, *see* indicative, infinitive, participle, imperative, subjunctive, conditional; of subordinate clause, § 254, n. 2.
more; more and more, § 345, *d*; *the more*, § 345, *d*; *more than*, (adv. of quantity), § 412, *b*.
mot, with **ne**, § 415, 2, *b*.
mourir, conjugation, § 143, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 174.
multiplicatives, § 425.

N

naître, conjugation, § 142, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 200.
names, of countries, etc., § 113; of days, Less. XXIII, vocabulary; of months, § 141, 3; of seasons, § 141, 4.
nasalization, § 12, 2, 4, § 13, 3, § 14, 2.
natural phenomena, § 92, § 249.
n'avoir garde, § 418, 5.
ne, § 32, § 134, § 135, § 415; position, § 416; omission, Less. XXIV, Sect. A, footnote, § 417; alone as negative, § 418; pleonastic, § 105, *a*, § 419; **ne** . . . **que**, position, § 135, *a*, § 416, *c*; **ne** . . . **ni**, position, § 135, *a*, § 416, *d*; **ne** . . . **que** and **seulement**, § 420, 4.
negation, § 32, § 42, 2, § 80, 1, § 134, § 135, §§ 414–419; *see also* **ne**, **non**, **pas**, etc.
neither . . . *nor*, translated, § 416, *d*, § 457, 3.
ni, use, § 135, § 233, *b*, § 457, 1; with **ne**, § 135, § 415; position, § 135, *a*, § 416, *d*.

n'importe, § 418, 5.
nombre, + **de**, agreement with verb, § 232, 2, *a*.
non (**pas**, **point**), § 414; **que non**, § 420, 1, *a*.
nonante, § 421, n.
nonobstant que, + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
non (**pas**) **que**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
nor: — . . . *either*, § 457, 3.
not: — . . . *either*, § 457, 3.
nouns, general, § 61, § 321; with partitive construction, § 42, § 80, § 322, § 326; of quantity, § 80, 4, § 325, 1; gender, §§ 300–306; §§ 336–337; number, § 38, § 52, §§ 307–312; case relation, § 313; agreement, § 314; as adjs., § 343, 3, § 344, § 352, 2, (3).
nous, for **je**, § 361, *a*; pleonastic, § 372, 5, *a*; **nous autres**, § 406, 2, *c*.
nouvel, § 58, 3, § 337, 1, (3).
nu, agreement, § 343, 4, *a*.
nul, § 403, 3, § 337, 1, (2), *b*; use, § 406, 1; with **ne**, § 415.
nullement, with **ne**, § 415.
number of nouns, general rule, § 38, § 307; exceptions, § 52, § 308; double pl., § 309; foreign nouns, § 310; comp. nouns, § 311; pl. of proper nouns, § 312; of adjs., § 38, § 52, §§ 338–339.
numerals, cardinal, § 137, § 421, Appendix; in dates, days, titles, § 141, § 427; Appendix; ordinal, § 140, § 422; fractions, § 144, § 424; collectives, § 423; multiplicatives, § 425; adverb, § 426; remarks on use, §§ 427–430; for dimension, § 428; for time of day, § 92, § 145, § 429; for age, § 141, 5, § 430.

O

obéir, in passive, § 241, 1.
object, dir. and indir., § 293; position, § 297, *see* personal pronouns.
obliger, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 15.
occuper (**s'**), + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 16.
octante, § 421, n.

œil, pl. of, § 309.
œuvre, gender, § 304, 3, *j*.
of, § 445; *a friend of mine*, etc., § 377, 3.
on (*l'on*), § 62, § 134, 2, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 3; replacing passive, § 241, 2, *a*.
on, § 446.
once, § 425, 2.
one = **le**, § 365, *b*.
only, translated, § 420, 4.
onze, § 137, *b*, § 421.
or = **ni**, § 457, 2.
order, *see* word order.
ordinals, § 140, § 422.
orge, gender, § 304, 3, *h*.
orthographic signs, § 5; changes, (**mener**, **acheter**, **appeler**, **espérer**, **jeter**), § 75, § 90, *a*, § 158, (**commencer**, **manger**, **envoyer**, **payer**), § 79, §§ 156–157.
osé, agreement, § 292, 4.
oser, + infin., § 230, 5; with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
others, § 405, § 406, 2, *b*.
où, § 127, 4, § 395; use, § 399, § 398, *b*.
oui, § 420, 1; **que oui**, § 420, 1, *a*.
oui, § 289, *a*.
ouïr, + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.
out of, § 447.
ouvrir, conjugation, § 150, § 151, Less. XL; table, § 176.
over, § 448.
own, translated, § 376, 3, § 377, 4.
ownership, article with parts of body, clothing, etc., § 74, § 328; **être** + **à**, § 118, § 377, 1; *whose* = **à qui**, § 131, 2, § 392, 2.

P

pal, pl., § 309.
pâque(s), gender, § 304, 3, *g*.
par, § 441, 1, 2, § 443, 2, § 448, 2, § 449, 1, 2; agent after passive, § 240; + infin., § 282, 1; of price, § 329, 1, *a*.
par-dessus, § 448, 2.
paraître, **il paraît**, constr. after, § 269, 5, *b*.

pardonner, in passive, § 241, 1.
parler français, § 321, *a*.
parmi, § 438, 1.
participles, present, § 64, footnote 2, § 98, 6, §§ 99–100, § 286; past, § 47, § 48, § 65, §§ 288–292; agreement, § 54, § 65, 2, § 73; Eng. forms in *-ing*, § 64, footnote 2, § 287; as adjs., position, § 352, 1, (3).
partir, conjugation, § 114, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 166; **à — de**, § 443, 3.
partitive construction, § 42, § 80; *partitive noun*, §§ 322–326; *partitive and general noun*, § 326.
pas, with **ne**, § 32, § 135, § 415; omitted, Less. XXIV, Sect. A, footnote, § 418; position of, § 135, *a*, § 416; without verb, § 417, *a*; without **ne** (fam.), § 415, n. 2.
passé, § 289, *a*.
passive, **on** for English passive, § 62, 3, § 405, 3, *a*; formation, § 239; agreement of past participle, § 239 and obs.; agent after, § 240; limitations and substitutes, § 241.
past anterior, § 262.
past definite, §§ 95–97, § 260; in narrative, examples, § 97, § 261; replaced by impf., § 258, 8; in 'if' clauses, § 275, *f*.
past indefinite, § 48, § 50, § 65, § 72, § 259; in narrative, examples, § 261; subj. sequence after, § 273, 2, *a*.
past participle, agreement in passive, § 239 and obs.; without aux., § 289; as prep., § 289, *a*; with **être**, § 65, 2, § 73, § 290, § 244; with **avoir**, § 54, § 291; invar. after impers. **être**, § 290, *a*; remarks, § 292.
pas un, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 1; with **ne**, § 415.
payé, § 289, *a*.
payer, orthographic changes, § 79, 3, § 157.
pendant que, distinguished from **tandis que**, § 459, 2.
penser, + **à**, + dir. infin., § 281, 17.
perfect subj., § 101, *a*, § 273, 1, *b*;
for plupf., § 273, 2, *b*.

- periphrastic forms, § 36, footnote 1;
in conjugation, § 255, § 287, 1.
- personal pronouns, object, § 31, § 38, 3, § 63, § 66; position, § 31, § 39, § 63, 2, § 67, § 69, §§ 235–238, § 369; disjunctive, §§ 76–77, § 372; forms of pers. prons., § 66, § 67, 3, § 359; agreement, § 361; case relations and use of conjunctives, § 362; reflexives, § 72, § 366; omission of object, § 371; in address, § 373.
- personne**, § 134, 2, § 135, § 403, 2; use of, § 405, 4, with **ne**, § 415; gender, § 405, 4, n.
- petit**, irreg. comparison, § 346.
- peu**, irreg. comparison, § 84, 2, § 412, 2; + **de**, § 232, 2, *a*, *b*; with partitive, § 325, 1, *d*.
- peur**: **de** — **que** . . . **ne**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 2.
- peut-être que**, constr., § 269, 5, n.; no inversion, § 237, 3.
- phonetic symbols, § 3; transcription, *see* Introduction.
- pire**, § 346.
- pis**, § 412, 2.
- plein**, when invar., § 343, 4, *a*.
- pleuvoir**, conjugation, § 93, § 106, § 110, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 220.
- plupart**, agreement of verb, § 232, 2, *a*, *b*; with partitive, § 325, 1, *c*.
- pluperfect (indic.), § 86, *b*, § 262; replaced by plupf. subj., § 272, 3; replaced by impf. indic., § 275, *c*; replaced by perf. subj., § 273, 3, *c*; plupf. subj. replacing plupf. indic. or cond. ant., § 272, 3; sequence, § 103, § 149, § 273, 2, *b*; replacing plupf. indic. in 'if' clause or 'result' clause, § 275, *b*.
- plural, of nouns, § 38, § 52, §§ 307–312; of adjs., § 38, § 52, §§ 338–339; of definite article, § 38, 2; of personal pronouns **le**, **la**, **l'**, § 38, 3.
- plus**, § 80, 5, § 412, 2; in comparisons, (adj.), § 83, § 345; (adv.), § 84, § 412; negative with **ne**, § 135, § 415; — **de**, § 412, 1, *b*; **plus** and **d'avantage**, § 420, 3; — **d'un**, agreement, § 232, 2, *c*.
- plusieurs**, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 4.
- plus tôt**, with **ne**, § 419, 3, n.
- plutôt**, with **ne**, § 419, 3, n.
- point**, with **ne**, § 135, § 415 and n. 1; position, § 416.
- possession, apostrophe and *s*, § 29.
- possessive adjectives, forms, § 28, § 40, § 374, 1; agreement, § 28, § 375; repetition, § 28, § 375, *a*; use, § 376; def. art. for, § 74, § 328, § 376, 1; **en**, + def. art. for, § 367, 2, (2), § 376, 2.
- possessive pronouns, forms, §§ 116–118, § 374, 2; agreement, § 117, § 375; use, § 118, § 377.
- pour**, § 442, 1, 2, 3; + infin., § 282, 2; — **que**, + subj., § 105, § 455, § 271, 2; — **peu que** + subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — . . . **que**, constr., § 404, 5, n.
- pourvu que**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
- pouvoir**, conjugation, § 85, § 87, § 90, § 96, § 106, § 110, § 112, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 221; + infin., § 230, 3; impers., § 252, 1, obs.; with **ne** alone, § 418, 4.
- predicate noun, omission of article, § 330, 3.
- predicative complement, § 295, § 330, 3.
- premier**, in dates, etc., § 141, 2, § 427, § 330, 4, *a*; + subj., § 270, 3; + **à** + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
- prendre**, conjugation, § 139, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 202.
- prendre garde**, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 18.
- preposition, list of simple, § 431; position, § 433; locutions, § 432; repetition, § 434; idiomatic distinctions, §§ 435–454.
- prepositional complement, § 296.
- près**: — **de**, § 436, 4; **à peu** —, § 436, 4.
- present, indicative, § 24, § 26, § 27, § 30, § 33, § 34, 3, § 36, § 43, § 46, § 72, § 75, § 257; for historical past, examples, § 261; idiomatic present, § 50, *a*, § 257, 2; replaced by impf., § 258, 5; in conditional sentences, § 275.
- present participle, § 64, footnote 2, § 98, 6, §§ 99–100, § 286.

present subjunctive, § 101, § 106, § 273.

prétendre, + **à**, + **dir.** infin., § 281, 19.

prier, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 20.

primary tenses, *see* principal parts.

primo (**secundo**, etc.), § 426, *a*.

principal parts, tenses formed from them, § 111, § 159, table of, Less. XL.

pronominal adverbs, § 360.

pronouns, §§ 359–407; *see also* demonstrative, indefinite, interrogative, personal, relative, reflexive pronouns.

pronunciation, §§ 1–19; of numerals, § 137, *a*, *b*, *c*, § 421.

proper nouns, pl., § 312; use of art. with, §§ 332–335.

propre, § 376, 3.

pu, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.'

puis, § 426, *a*.

puisque, distinguished from **depuis** **que**, § 459, 3.

punctuation, § 20.

Q

qualifier de, § 330, 3, *b*.

quand, distinguished from **lorsque**, § 459, 1.

quand (**même**), cond. after, § 265, 6, § 275, *e*; sometimes takes subj., § 271, 4, *c*; + indic. or subj., § 271, 4, *c*, § 455.

quantité, + **de**, agreement of verb, § 232, 2.

quart, § 422, n. 1.

quatre-vingt(s), § 137, § 421, *b*; Appendix.

que, pronoun, relative, § 55, § 125, § 127, 1, § 395; use, § 397; in inversions (emphatic), § 397, 2, n., § 385, *a*, n.; past participle invar. after, § 292, 5; interrogative, § 45, § 130, § 131, 3, § 389, 2; use, § 393.

que, conjunction, after comparatives, § 83, § 345, § 412; cond. after, § 265, 6; replacing other conjs., § 271, 6, § 458, 2; with **ne**, § 135, § 415; for **à moins que**, § 419, 1; + indic. or subj., § 102, 1, 4,

§ 455, § 269, § 271, 6, § 458; not omitted, § 102, 4, § 458, 3.

que! § 393, 1, *b*.

quel? § 60, § 131, 3, footnote 1, § 389, 1; use, § 391, § 392, 2.

quel! § 60, § 391, *a*.

quelconque, § 407; with **ne**, § 415, 2, *a*.

quel que, + subj. of **être**, § 407.

quelque, § 134, 1, § 403, 1; use, § 404, 5; as adv., § 404, 5, *a*.

quelque chose, § 134, 2, § 405, 6.

quelque . . . que, + subj., § 407.

quelqu'un, § 134, 2, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 5.

qu'est-ce que? § 45, § 130, footnote 1.

qu'est-ce qui? § 131, 4, § 393, 2.

question, direct, § 236; indirect, § 238.

qui? § 130, § 131, 1, § 389, 2; use, § 392; replaced by **quel**, § 391, *b*, § 392, *b*; **à qui**, **de qui**, § 131, 2, § 392, 2.

qui, § 55, § 125, § 127, 1, 2, § 395; use, § 397; replacing **celui qui**, **les uns . . . les autres**, **ce qui**, § 127, 7, § 397, 1, *a*, *b*; **qui . . . que** + subj. of **être**, § 407; — **que ce soit**, § 407; — **que ce soit** + **ne**, § 415, 2, *a*.

quiconque, § 407.

qui est-ce qui (que)? § 130, footnote 1. **quint**, § 422, n. 2.

quinze-vingt(s), § 421, n.

quoi, relative, § 127, 6, § 395; use, § 401; — **que . . .** + subj., § 407; — **que ce soit**, § 407; with **ne**, § 415, 2, *a*; interrogative, § 131, 5, § 389, 2; use, § 393.

quoique, with subj., § 105, § 455, § 271, 4.

R

recevoir, conjugation, § 147, § 150; Less. XL; table, § 213.

reciprocal, verbs, § 243.

reflexive personal pronouns, §§ 72–73, § 366.

reflexive verbs, conjugation, § 72; agreement of past participle, § 73, § 244; formation of compound tenses, § 242; with reciprocal

force, § 243; omission of reflexive obj., § 245; comparison with English, § 246; replacing passive, § 241, 2, *b*.
refuser, + *à*, + *de*, § 281, 21.
 regular conjugations, § 35, tables, § 153, § 155; *see* **donner**, **finir**, **vendre** (**rompre**), etc.
 relative pronouns, § 55, §§ 125–127; forms, § 125, § 395; agreement, § 126, § 396; use, § 127, §§ 397–402; remarks, § 402; not omitted, § 402, 1; relative clauses for English *-ing*, § 287, 3; indef. relat., § 407.
répéter, orthographic changes, § 75, *b*, § 90, *a*, § 158, 1.
résoudre, + *à*, + *de*, § 281, 22.
 result clause, § 108, § 265.
 Review Lessons. After Lessons IV, IX, XVIII, XXIX, XXXIX.
rien, § 134, 2, § 135, § 403, 2; use, § 405, 4; with *ne*, § 135, § 415.
rire, conjugation, § 150, § 152, Less. XL; table, § 204.
rompre, conjugation, § 153.

S

sache, irreg. use, § 272, 2.
sans, + infin., § 282, 3; — **doute que**, constr., § 269, 5, *n*.; — **que** + subj., § 455, § 271, 5.
savoir, conjugation, § 119, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 222; distinguished from **connaître**, § 136, *a*; + infin., § 230, 4; with *ne* alone, § 418, 4.
se, reflexive pronoun, § 72, § 366, 1.
 seasons, § 141, 4.
second, § 140, *a*, § 422, *b*.
sembler: *il semble*, constr. after, § 269, 5, *b*, § 269, 6, *c*.
s'en aller, conjugation, § 247.
s'en falloir, § 251, 5.
septante, § 421, *n*.
 sequence of subj. tenses, § 103, § 149, § 273.
seul, + subj., § 270, 3; + *à*, + infin., § 279, 3, *a*.
seulement, § 420, 4.
should, distinctions, Less. XXXVIII, vocabulary, § 265, 1, *b*.
si, elision of *i*, § 19; tenses after *si* meaning *if*, § 91, footnote 1, § 275; subj. after, § 275, *b*; replaced by **que** + subj., § 271, 6; in condl. sentences, § 274; omission, § 275, *d*; **si** (= *whether*) + fut. or condl., § 275, *g*; for **aussi**, § 345, *a*, § 412, *a*; + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 3, *a*; — **bien que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; — **peu que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 4; **si . . . (que)**, constr., § 404, 5, *n*.
si (= *yes*), **si fait**, § 420, 1; **que si**, § 420, 1, *a*.
six-vingt(s), § 421, *n*.
so = *le*, § 365, *b*.
soi, reflexive pronoun, § 366, 2.
soi-disant, § 286, 2, *n*. 2.
soit que . . . soit que (*ou que*), + subj., § 455, § 271, 4.
some in partitive construction, § 42, § 80, §§ 322–326.
son for *sa*, § 40, 2, § 374, 1, obs. 1; for indef., § 375, *b*.
sorte: *de (telle)* — **que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*; *en* — **que**, + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.
 sounds, § 2.
sous, § 453, 1.
 stress, § 7.
 subjunctive mood, tables, §§ 153–155; formation, § 111; present, § 101, § 106; imperfect, §§ 148–150; perfect, § 101, *a*, § 273, 1, *b*; subj. or infin., § 104, § 283; uses of, § 102, § 105, §§ 268–271; in noun clause, § 269; in adj. clause, § 270; in adverbial clause, § 271; tense sequence, § 103, § 149, § 273; in principal clauses, § 272; as imperative, § 70, footnote 1, § 272, 1, *a*.
such, § 134, 3, § 406, 5 and *n*.
suffire, + *pour* + infin., § 279, 6, *a*.
 superlative, of adjs., § 83, 2, §§ 347–349; of advs., § 84, § 412, 3; relative, § 347; absolute, § 348; remarks, § 349.
supposant: *en* — **que**, + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.
supposé, § 289, *a*; — **que** + subj., § 455, § 271, 3.

sur = *with, about* (the person), § 436, 3; = *by* (relative dimension), § 441, 3; = *on, upon*, § 446; of 'motion above,' § 448, 2.
 syllabication, § 6.
 symbols, table of, § 3.

T

—**t**—, inserted as interrog., § 26, footnote 2, § 236, 1, *a*.
 table of French letters, symbols and sounds, *see* Introduction.
tandis que, distinguished from **pendant que**, § 459, 2.
tant, § 80, 5, § 420, 2.
tel, § 134, 3, § 403, 3; use, § 406, 5.
tellement . . . que + indic. or subj., § 455, § 271, 2, *a*.
témoin, § 344, *a*.
 temperature, *see* natural phenomena.
 tense sequence, § 103, § 149, § 273.
 tenses, formation, § 111, of compound tenses, § 155, § 159, 3, §§ 227–229; with **avoir**, § 48, § 54, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 227; with **être**, § 65, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 228; of indic., §§ 255–266; periphrastic Eng., § 255; elliptical Eng., § 256; in narration, §§ 258–261; tense sequence of subj., § 103, § 149, § 273.
—teur, fem. of, § 337, 2, (3).
through, § 449.
tiers, § 422, n. 1.
till, § 450.
 time, how expressed, § 92, § 145, § 249, 1, § 429.
 titles, § 141, § 427.
to, § 451.
toi, for **te**, § 370, 3, obs. 1.
tolérances, *see* Appendix.
ton, for **ta**, § 40, 2, § 374, 1, obs.
tous (les) deux, § 406, 6.
tout, § 82, § 134, 3, § 403, 3, § 406, 6; as adv. (variable), § 406, 6, *a*; with **gens**, § 304, 3, *k*.
tout . . . que, constr., § 404, 5, *b*, n.
tout-puissant, § 406, 6, *a*.
towards, § 452.
traiter de, § 330, 3, *b*.
 transitive verbs, § 293, § 294, n.;

in Fr. = Eng. verb + prep., § 296, 3.

travail, pl., § 309.

travers: **à** —, **au** — **de**, § 449, 1.

trembler, + **à**, + **de**, § 281, 23.

tu = *you, thou*, in address, § 26, note, § 373, 1, 2.

U

un, une (indef. article), § 25, § 315, *see* indef. article.
un (adj. pronoun), § 403, 3; use of, § 406, 7.
un (num.), § 137, § 421, *a*.
under, § 453.
underneath, § 453.
unique, + subj., § 270, 3.
until, § 450.
upon, § 446.

V

va, special force, § 267, *b*.
valoir, impers., § 252, 1, obs.
vendre, conjugation, § 35, § 46, § 47, § 48, § 86, § 89, § 95, § 99, § 101, § 107, § 111, § 148, Less. XL; table, § 210; for model *see* **rompre**, § 153, § 155.
venir, past definite, § 96; conjugation, § 115, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 178; + **de** + infin., § 230, 9; + **à**, + **de**, + dir. infin., § 281, 24.
 verbs, regular conjugations, §§ 153–155; orthographic changes, § 75, § 79, §§ 156–158; irregular verbs, §§ 156–226; formation of tenses, § 111; of compound tenses, § 155, § 159, 3, §§ 227–229; with **avoir**, § 48, § 54, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 227; with **être**, § 65, § 86, *b*, § 101, *a*, § 155, § 228; passive voice, §§ 239–241; reflexives, § 72, § 73, §§ 242–247; impersonals, §§ 92–94, §§ 248–253; followed by no prep., by **de**, by **à**, § 98, §§ 278–280; phrases, § 230; agreement with subject, §§ 231–234; position of subject, §§ 235–238; government, §§ 293–299; moods and tenses, §§ 254–292; indicative, §§ 254–266; imperative, § 267;

- subjunctive, §§ 268–273; infinitive, §§ 276–285; participles, §§ 286–292; *see also* conjugations, moods, tenses.
- vers**, § 436, 4, § 451, 3.
- vieil**, § 58, 3, § 337, 1, (3).
- vingt**, § 137, *c*, § 421, Appendix.
- voici**, position of personal pronoun obj., § 31, § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a*.
- voilà**, § 31, Less. IV, Vocabulary; distinguished from *il y a*, § 250, 3; position of pers. pron. obj., § 369, 2, n. 2, § 433, *a*; with **ne**, § 419, 6.
- voir**, conjugation, § 124, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 224; + infin., constr. of obj., § 293, 2, *b*.
- votre (vos)**, for politeness, § 376, 5.
- vouloir**, conjugation, § 120, § 150, Less. XL; table, § 225; + infin., § 230, 1.
- voulu**, agreement, § 292, 4, *b*.
- vous**, agreement, § 361, *b*, § 239, obs. 2, § 244, 2, n. 2, § 340, *b*; replacing **on**, § 405, 3, *c*; — **autres**, § 406, 2, *c*; pleonastic, § 372, 5, *a*; in address, § 373.
- voyons**, special force, § 267.
- vu**, § 289, *a*, § 292, 4, *a*.

W

- weather, *see* natural phenomena.
- what* = **ce qui**, **ce que**, § 127, 7, § 131, 4, § 401, 2.
- what?* = **que?** or **qu'est-ce que?** § 45, § 130, footnote 1, § 131, 3, 4, 5; as subject, § 393, 2.
- whatever*, § 407.
- whose* = **à qui**, § 131, 2, § 392, 2.
- will*, distinctions, § 263, 1.
- with*, § 454.
- would*, distinctions, § 265, 1, *b*.

Y

- y**, § 360; use of, § 56, § 368, § 372, 6, n.; position, § 56, § 67, 2 and 3, § 69, § 369, 1, *c*, n.; + **avoir**, § 250.
- yer**, verbs in, § 157.

APPENDIX

The following are the deviations permitted by the decree of the French Minister of Public Instruction:

- § 232, 2. Verb may agree with pl. complement of **de**.
- § 232, 2, *c*. **Plus d'un**, when followed by a pl. complement, may have verb in sing. or pl.
- § 232, 3. Either **est** or **sont** may be used before a pl. subst. or a pl. pron. in 3d pers.
- § 233, *b, c, e, f*. Verb may be either sing. or pl. in such cases.
- § 236, 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
- § 289, *a, b*. Agreement optional in either position.
- § 292, 4 and 4, *a*. Past part. may, in all such cases, be invariable.
- § 304, 1 and 3, *a*. **Enfant** and **automne**, masc. or fem.
- § 304, 3, *b, d*. **Amour** and **orgue** masc. in sing., and masc. or fem. in pl.
- § 304, 3, *e*. **Hymne**, masc. or fem. in all senses.
- § 304, 3, *g*. **Pâques** may be fem., either as a date or as a church festival.
- § 304, 3, *h, k*. Any adj. agreeing with **orge** or **gens** may be fem.
- § 310. Such nouns, if fully naturalized, may have pl. in -s, *e.g.*, **déficits**, **exéats**.
- § 311. All compound nouns may be written without hyphen.
- § 312. Any proper noun preceded by a pl. art. may take the pl. sign.
- § 324, 1. It is permissible to use **du**, **de la**, **des**, before adj. + noun.
- § 332, 2. A mistake in this usage is not to be counted an error.
- § 341, 1, *b*. Adj. may be masc. pl., no matter which noun is nearest.
- § 342. Phrases like **l'histoire ancienne et la moderne** may omit the second art.
- § 343, 1, *a*. **Fort** may agree like an adj.
- § 343, 2. Compound adjs., *e.g.*, **nouveau-né**, **court-vêtu**, etc., may be written as one word, and may form fem. and pl. by the general rule.
- § 343, 4, *a*. **Franc**, agreement optional when preceding.
- § 343, 4, *a, b*. **Nu**, **demi**, **feu**, may agree when preceding their subst.
- § 343, 4, *c*. Adj. may agree either with the subst. fem. or with **air**.
- § 348. The def. art. may agree.
- § 376, 6. The object possessed may be either sing. or pl.
- § 405, 2, *a, c*. Either **son** or **leur** may be used indifferently.
- § 406, 3 (2). Hyphen may be omitted.
- § 419, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5. **Ne** may be omitted in all such cases.
- § 421, obs. 1. The hyphen may be omitted.
- § 421, *b*. **Vingt** and **cent** may take -s even before another numeral.
- § 421, *c*. **Mille** or **mil** may be used.

29

FEB -0 1942

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 116 557 A

